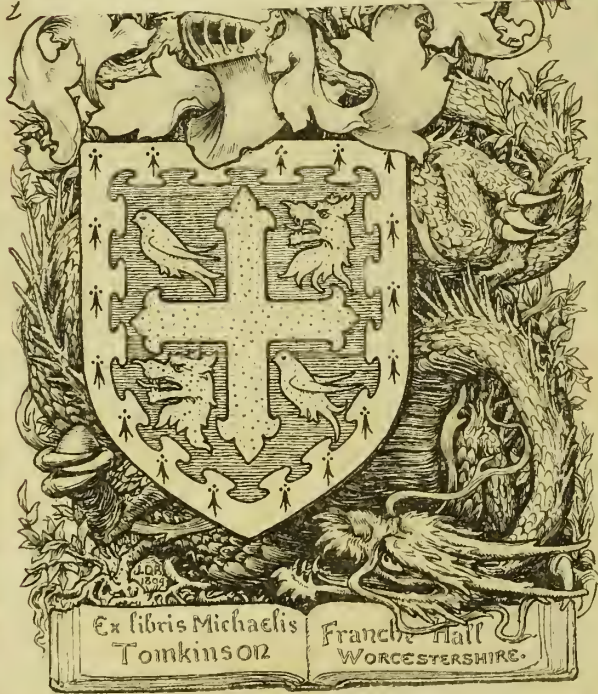



PURCHASED  
FROM THE INCOME  
OF THE FUND GIVEN TO  
THE PUBLIC LIBRARY OF  
THE CITY OF BOSTON BY  
JOSIAH HENRY BENTON  
1843-1917



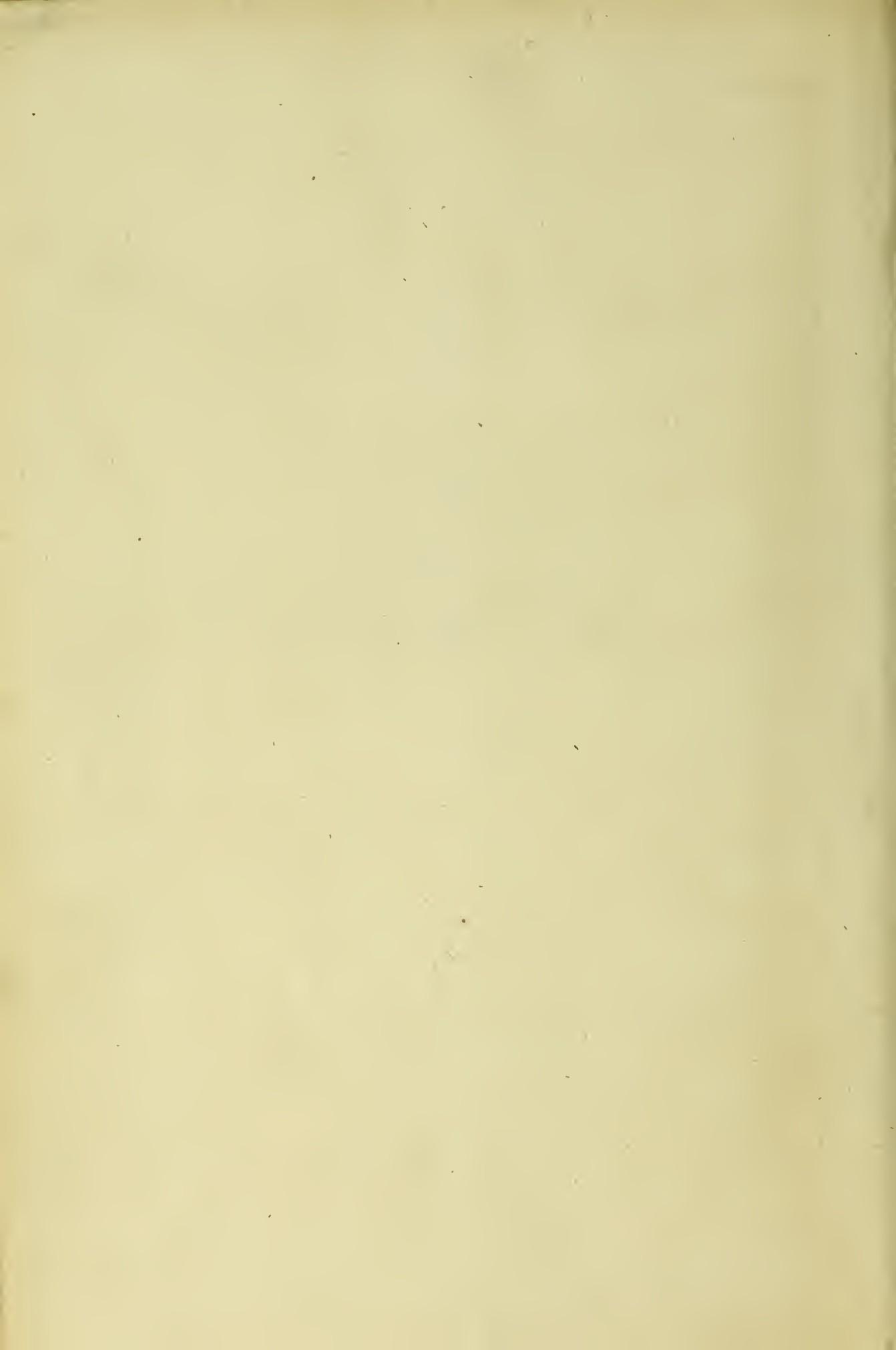




Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2015

<https://archive.org/details/chronycleofenglo00word>

The Chronicle of the Kings and  
descriptions of England  
and the reign of King Henry the  
Second in the year 1154  
preceding "descriptions" —



**H**ere begynneth a shorte & a breue  
 table on these Cronycles/and ye  
 must vnderstande that euery leet of the  
 a b c is marked in the margyne vnder  
 nethe. .i. and .ij. and .iij. and so forth to  
 .vi. all the letters vnto the boke ende/  
 What soeuer ye fynde shortly wyrtten in  
 this table/ye shall fynde it openly in the  
 same nombre of that letter.

**The Prolgue.** *John Bouh*  
 a i ij

The werke of the fyrst .vi. dayes  
 Adam the fyrst man  
 Eua the fyrst wman  
 Seth sone to Adam  
 Delbora syster to Abell  
 Abell sone to Adam  
 Cayn and Calmana syster and wyf  
 to Cayn

Enos  
 Chanam  
 Malaleel. Jarech. Enoch. of the lyne  
 of Cryste  
 Matulale. Lamech. of Crystes lyne

a ij  
 Tuball the fyrste grauer  
 Jabe founde the fyrst pauelyons  
 Juball founde the fyrst crafte to playe  
 Neoma founde fyrst weuyng  
 Noe the shypp/the raynboowe  
 Cham. Sem. and Japhet Noes sones  
 Arphaxat and his childern  
 Chus and his childern  
 Sale and his sone  
 Heber and his childern

a iij  
 Phaleg  
 Facten. Neutroth. and Sulphen the  
 buylders of the Toure of Babylon  
 How gentylman began  
 Saruk of Crystes lyne  
 Belus kynge of Babylon  
 Nynus kynge of Babylon

a iiij  
 Thare of the lyne of Cryste  
 a v

**H**ere begynneth the hystoie of the ho  
 ly Patryarkes & contynued to Brute.

Abraham and his brethern with theyr  
 progenye

Abrahams wyues  
 Melchisedech kynge of Salem  
 Semiramis kynge of Babylon  
 Ninus kynge of Babylon  
 Arrius kynge of Babylon  
 Plaac of the lyne of Cryste and of his  
 wyues and his sones

Of Gomorra and of the wyf of Loth  
 Jacob of the lyne of Cryste and his  
 wyues and theyr progenye

Serles kynge of Babylon  
 Armanictre after hym  
 Belocus kynge of Babylon  
 Inachus the fyrst kynge of Grece  
 Phoromius was kynge after hym  
 Judas of the lyne of Cryste

a v  
 Belus kynge of Assurion  
 Athlas an Astronomer  
 Sarapis kynge of Grekes  
 Argus kynge of Grekes  
 Onogires put fyrst oxen to the plough

Belus kynge of Babylon  
 Pharao kynge of Egypte  
 Amithus kynge of Babylon  
 Pharao kynge of Egypte  
 Aram of Crystes lyne

Job the holy man  
 Moyles the Juge of Israell  
 Aron the byshop

Dafrus kynge of Babylon  
 Cyprops kynge of Athenes  
 Amynadab of Crystes lyne

Moyles the fyrst Juge  
 Aron the fyrst byshop  
 Pharao kynge of Egypte  
 Nalon sone to Amynadab  
 Whan the lawe of god was gyuen  
 in the hylle of Synay

Salmen of the lyne of Cryste  
 Iolue the Juge  
 Eleazar byshop

Tabula.

Dhonyell Juge  
Aoth Juge  
Jonas the fyrst kynge of Vtaly  
Amictus kynge of Babylon  
Boos of the lyne of Cryste  
a vi

Sanger Juge  
Delboia Juge  
Phenics bysshop  
Saturnus kynge of Vtaly  
Picus kynge of Vtaly  
Gedcon Juge  
Bocci bysshop  
Abimalech Juge  
Tola Juge  
Bocci bysshop  
Jayr Juge  
Janus kynge of Vtaly  
Latinus kynge of Vtaly  
Tauranus kynge of Babylon  
Lamydon kynge of Troy  
The newe synnes of Israell  
Dzy bysshop  
Eballam Juge  
Abialon Juge  
Abdon Juge  
Anthamanis kynge of assertum  
Agamenon kynge of Grece  
Eneas kynge of Vtaly  
Dlixes an eloquent man  
Dbeth of the lyne of Cryste  
Samplon Juge  
b i

Jesse of the lyne of Cryste  
Saul kynge of Israell  
Alcanius kynge of Vtaly  
Siluius kynge of Vtaly  
Henes and Padua were buylded  
Homere the grete poete  
b ij

Here begynneth the seconde parte  
of the kyngdome of Byspayne.

Albyon the fyrst woman that was  
in Englonde  
b ij iij

Bruce kynge of Byspayne  
b iij iij v  
Loctrin kynge of Byspayne  
Madan kynge of Byspayne  
Dauid kyng of Israell  
b vi

Mempris kynge of Byspayne  
Salomon kynge of peas  
Sadoch bysshop  
Roboas kynge of peas  
Achimis bysshop  
Jeroboas kynge of Israell  
Abdias kynge of Jewes  
Ala kynge of Jewes  
Azarias bysshop  
Bala kynge of Israell  
Hela kynge of Israell  
Amri kynge of Israell  
Archa kynge of Israell  
Ebrach kynge of Byspayne  
Bute Grenelhelde kyng of Byspayne  
Leyll kynge of Byspayne  
c i

Josaphat kynge of Jewes  
Helyas the grete prophete  
Macheas and Abdias prophetes  
Dholias kynge of Israell  
Lud Ludibras kynge of Byspayne  
Bladud kynge of Byspayne  
Joram kynge of Jewes  
Whan Helyas was rauysshed in  
to Paradyse  
Dholias or Alarias kyng of Jewes  
Athalia quene of Jewes  
Joram kynge of Israell  
Jehen kynge of Israell  
Athalia moder to Azari kyng of Jewes  
Joam kynge of Jewes  
Joachas kynge of Israell  
Joam kynge of Israell  
c ij

Leyr kynge of Byspayne  
c ij iij

Amalias kynge of Jewes  
Jeroboam kynge of Israell  
Dzias kynge of Jewes  
Dzee bysshop and prophete



## Tabula.

Joell Ananias and Abdias prophetes  
 Zacharias kynge of Israell  
 Phalecia kynge of Israell  
 Phale kynge of Israell

c iij

Morgan and Conedag kynges of Byrtayne

Reynolde Gorbodian ferres and Porres kynges of Byrtayne

How foure kynges helde all Byrtayne and of theyr names

Scater and Dawalier kynges

Rudac and Cloten kynges

Donebant kynge of Byrtayne

c iiij

Brenne & Belin kynges of Byrtayne

c v

Combratus kynge of Byrtayne

c v vi

Joathan kynge of Jewes

Amarias bysshop

Olympias were sette in Grece

Acham kynge of Jewes

Achitob bysshop

Dzee kynge of Israell

c vi

There begynnech the thyrde parte and contynued to the Natpuyte of Cryste.

Rome was buylde by Romulus

Ezechias kynge of Jewes

Sadoch bysshop

Manasses kynge of Jewes

c vi

Sellum and Echias bysshoppes

Numa kynge of Rome

Amon kynge of Jewes

Jolias kynge of Jewes

Azaltas bysshop

Tobias the holy man

Tulius kynge of Rome

Nabugodonolor kynge of Babylon

Ancus kynge of Rome

Danyell the prophete

Joathas kynge of Jewes

Jachim kynge of Jewes

Samias bysshop

Joachim kynge of Jewes

Sedechias kynge of Jewes

✠

Josedech bysshop

Abacub prophete

The Transmygratyon

Pulcus Corquimus kynge of Rome

Nabugodonolor and Enylmerodach

kynges of Babylon

d i

How the playe of Chesse was founde

Salathiell of the lynce of Cryste

Seruius Tullius kynge of Rome

Regular Sabulardach and Balthasar

kynges of Babylon

Monarchia Perlarum

Darius kynge of Babylon

Cyrus Emperour of Perles

Babylon was destroyed

Tarquinius Superbus kynge of Rome

Lucrea a wyf

How the gouernaunce of Rome was

chaunged after the kynges

Historia libri Eldre

Zorobabell the duke

Eldras preest

Lambyles kynge of Perles

d ii

Encereydes & Darius kynges of Perles

Abiuth of the lynce of Cryste

Joachim bysshop

Senatours of Rome were ordeyned

Arthaxarles & Zerles kynges of Perle

Segdianus kynge of Perle

Elyac of the lynce of Cryste

Eldras an holy man

Neemias the butclere

Permenides. Socrates. Democritus

and Ppocras phylolophes

Azor of the lynce of Cryste

Elyalyb bysshop

Lamillus dictator of Rome

Darius kynge of Perle

✠

Plato a phylolopher

Titus dictator of Rome

Gaius a Senatour

Marcus Valerius a Senatour

Aa iij

## Tabula.

Archaxerles Artamus and Darius  
kynge of Perse

Jodas and Johannes byshoppes  
Aristotiles and Socrate phylosophres

d iiij

Guentholen. Seysell. Kymoz. howan.  
Norwich kynge of Byrtayne  
Grandobodiam. Artogaill. and Helyz  
der kynge of Byrtayne

How .xxiij. kynge regned in peas cche  
after other in Byrtayne

Lud kynge of Byrtayne

Sadoch of the lyne of Cryste

Judas byshop

d iiij

Eneas byshop

Manilius & Fabius Consules of Rome

Monarchia Grecoz

Alexander kynge

Achym of the lyne of Cryste

Symon and Eleazarus byshoppes

Dolobela Emilius. Marcus Turius

Genutius Consules of Rome

Ptholomeus kynge of Egypte

Elyud of the lyne of Cryste

Onias and Symon byshoppes

Sempronius. Appius. Claudius. and

many mo Senatours of Rome

Ptholomias kynge of Egypte

Hanyball kynge of Penoz

d v

Lucacius. Simpronius. Valerius ic.

were Consules at Rome

Epiphanes kynge of Egypte

Antiochus kynge of Syrry

Onias and Symon byshoppes

Eleazar of the lyne of Cryste

Onias byshop

Paulus Scipio Senatours at Rome

Philometor kyng of Egypte

Mathathias an holy man

Judas Machabeus and Jonathas his

brother byshoppes

Antiochus kynge of Syrry

Quintus Marcius and Tiberius wez

re Senatours of Rome

Mathon of the lyne of Cryste

Symon and Johannes byshoppes  
Publius. Lucius. Lucius. and Lucius  
Senatours of Rome

d vi

Ptholomeus kynge of Egypte

Aristobolus kynge and preest

Alexander byshop

Seruius. Lucius. Fabius Senatours  
of Rome

Ptholomeus kynge of Egypte

Jacob of the lyne of Cryste

Alexandria wyf and byshop

Hircanus kynge of Jewes

Dyrgyll the grete poete

Diarius and Salustius hystoricus

Quintus & Gaius Consules of Rome

Pompeius. Marcus. and Julius were  
dictatours of Rome

e i

Cathon phylosopher

Callybolon kynge of Englonde

Andriagen kynge of Englonde

Joseph of the lyne of Cryste

Anthigonus byshop

e ij

Titus Livius and Duidius hystoricus

Octavian Emperour

The hulbondes of saynt Anna

Herode Alcolonita kynge of Jewes

Kymbalyn kynge of Englonde

e iij

¶ Here begynneth the fourth parte & co  
tynued to the comynge of the Saxons.

The Natpuyte of Cryste

e iij

Annius Rufus and Valeri<sup>9</sup> Graccus  
byshoppes

Pylatus the Juge

Of pylatus natpuyte

Duidius Nalo

Tyberius Emperour

Mathia the appostle

Judas scaryoth

e iij

The makynge of the Credo



## Tabula.

The foure Euangelystes		Constantyne kynge of Englonde
Peter the fyrst pope		Octavian kynge of Englonde
Gaius Emperour	✠	Maximian kynge of Englonde
Gynder kynge of Englonde		f iij
e v		Of the .xi. thousande maydens
Armager kynge of Englonde		Gracian kynge of Englonde
Westmer kynge of Englonde		f v
Coill kynge of Englonde		Constantyne kynge of Englonde
e vi	✠	Constance kynge of Englonde
Claudius Emperour		Sother a martyr and pope
James the more the appostle		Elentherius a martyr and pope
Nero Emperour		f vi
Seneca Neroes mayster		Marcus Anthonius and Lucius Como
Juuenalis and Lucanus poetes		dius were Emperours
James the lesse the appostle		Helius Emperour
Linus a martyr and pope	✠	Victor a martyr and pope
Galba Emperour		Zepherinus a martyr and pope
Otho Emperour	✠	Ougenes the noble clerke
Vitellus Emperour		Calistus a martyr and pope
Vespasianus Emperour		Anthonius Emperour
Vletus a martyr and pope		Anthonius Marcus Emperour
Titus Emperour		Alisander Emperour
f i	✠	Urbanus a martyr and pope
Domician Emperour		Pontianus a martyr and pope
Clemens a martyr pope		Anteros a martyr and pope
Nerua Emperour		Marimianus Emperour
Tratanus Emperour	✠	Gordian Emperour
Anacletus a martyr and pope		Phyllyp Emperour
Plinius Orator		Decius Emperour
Euariltus a martyr and pope		fabianus a martyr and pope
Alexander a martyr and pope		Cornelius a martyr and pope
Sixtus a martyr and pope		Lucius pope
Adrianus and Eustachius Emperours		Gallus and Volucianus Emperours
Thelephorus a martyr and pope		Valerian Emperour
f ij		Stephanus a martyr pope
Ignius a martyr and pope		Sixtus a martyr pope
Anthonius Emperour		Dyonisius a martyr pope
Pompeius hystoriographus	✠	g i
Pius a martyr and pope		felix a martyr and pope
Anicetus a martyr and pope		Claudius Emperour
Galienus a leche		Euticianus a martyr and pope
Marcus and Lucius Emperours		Aurelius Emperour
Lucie kynge of Englonde		Tacitus Emperour
Altelepades kynge of Englonde		Probus Emperour
Coill kynge of Englonde		Larus and his two sones Emperours
f iij		Dyoclesian Emperour
Constance kynge of Englonde		Maximian Emperour

# Tabula.

**Salus** pope and martyr  
**Arcellinus** a martyr and pope  
**Marcellus** a martyr and pope  
**Eusebius** a martyr and pope  
**Melchisedech** a martyr and pope  
**Galerius** Emperour 2  
**Siluester** pope  
**Constantyne** Emperour  
**Sayne Nicholas**  
**Anastalius** byllhop / and he made Qui-  
 cūqz vult saluus esse  
**Mercus** pope  
**Julius** pope  
**Constantinus** Emperour ✠  
 g ij  
**Liberius** pope  
**Felix** pope  
**Julianus** apostata Emperour  
**Jovinianus** Emperour  
**Valentinian** Emperour  
**Damascus** pope  
**Valens** Emperour  
**Augustinus** rethoricus ✠  
**Siricius** pope  
**Theodosius** Emperour  
**Claudius** poeta  
**Arcadius** Emperour  
**Honorius** Emperour ✠  
**Jerom** the doctour  
**Sanctus** heracides  
**Johannes** Crystostomus  
**Anastalius** pope  
**Innocencius** pope  
**Zozimus** pope ✠  
 g iij  
**Bonifacius** pope  
**Celestinus** pope  
**Theodosius** Emperour  
**Sixtus** and **Leo** popes  
**Marcianus** and **Valentinianus** we-  
 re Emperours  
 g iiij

There begynneth the .v. parte and con-  
 tynued to the compnge of the Danys.

Engist

**Wostiger** kyng of Englonde  
**Wostimer** kyng of Englonde  
 g iij v vi and h i  
**Aurilambros** kyng of Englonde  
 h i ij  
**Wterpendragon** kyng of Englonde  
 h ij iij iiij  
**Arthur** kyng of Englonde  
 h iij v vi and i i ij iij iiij  
**Constantyne**  
**Adelbryght**  
**Edell**  
**Luran** ✠  
**Conan**  
**Coityf**  
**Gurmonde** all kynges of Englonde  
 i iij v vi  
**Adelbryght**  
**Sicwich**  
**Elfride**  
**Brecinall** all kynges of Englonde  
 i vi  
**Ladewan**  
**Olwalde**  
**Olwy**  
**Edwyn**  
**Ladwalin** all kynges of Englonde  
 h i  
**Ladwaldre** kyng of Englonde  
 h ij  
**Offa**  
**Olbryght**  
**Elle** all kynges of Englonde  
 h iij  
**Sayne Edmonde**  
**Edelf**  
**Edred** all kynges of Englonde  
 h iiij

Here begynnen the popes and Empe-  
 rours & other notable thynge in the ty-  
 me of the Saxons beyng in Englonde

**Leo** the fyrst Emperour  
**Leo** pope  
**Hellarius** pope  
**Simplicius** pope

# Tabula.

Zeno Emperour  
 felix pope  
 Geladius pope  
 Anastalius Emperour  
 Anastalius pope  
 Simachus pope  
 k iij  
 Clodianus kynge of fraunce  
 Hornulda pope  
 Iustinus Emperour  
 Pulcianus grāmaticus  
 Johannes pope  
 felix the fourth pope  
 Iustinianus Emperour  
 Bonifacius pope  
 Johannes the seconde pope  
 Agapitus a confessor pope  
 Siluerius a martyr pope  
 Virgilius pope  
 Synodus quarta  
 Delagius pope  
 Johannes the thyrde pope  
 Iustinus the seconde Emperour  
 Tyberius the seconde Emperour  
 Benedictus pope  
 Delagius Emperour  
 Mauricius Emperour 3  
 k v  
 What tyme saynt Austyn came in  
 to Englonde  
 Jocas Emperour  
 Gregorius the fyrst pope  
 Saninianus pope  
 Bonifacius the thyrde pope  
 Bonifacius the fourth pope  
 Heraclius Emperour  
 Deus dedit pope  
 Bonifacius the fyfth pope  
 Machomite the duke of sarralyns  
 k vi  
 Constantyne the thyrde Emperour  
 Martinus the fyrst pope  
 Eugenijs pope  
 Vitellianus pope  
 Adeodatus pope  
 Constantyne the fourth Emperour  
 Demus a Romayne pope

Bonifacius pope  
 Agatho pope  
 Leo pope  
 Benedictus the seconde pope  
 Iustinianus the seconde Emperour  
 l i  
 Johannes the fyfth pope  
 Zeno pope  
 Sergius pope  
 Saynt Beda  
 Leo the seconde pope  
 Liberius Emperour  
 Leo the thyrde pope  
 Johannes the sixte pope  
 Johannes the .vij. pope  
 Iustinianus Emperour  
 Splanius pope  
 Constantyne pope  
 Philyp the seconde Emperour  
 Anastalius the seconde Emperour  
 Gregorius the seconde pope  
 Theodosius Emperour  
 l ij  
 Leo and Constantyne Emperours  
 Gregorius the thyrde pope  
 Constantinus Emperour  
 Zacharias pope  
 Stephanus the seconde pope  
 Paulus a Romayne pope  
 Constantyne the seconde pope  
 Karolus magnus  
 Stephanus the thyrde pope  
 Adrianus pope  
 Leo the fourth pope  
 Constantinus Emperour  
 l iij  
 Nychoferus Emperour  
 Michaell Emperour  
 Karolus magnus the fyrst a layn e  
 Leo pope  
 Ludouicus Emperour  
 Stephanus the fourth pope  
 Palchall pope  
 Eugenijs the fourth pope  
 Valentinus pope  
 Gregorius the fourth pope  
 Lotharius pope

# Tabula.

Sergius the seconde pope  
 Leo pope  
 Benedictus a Romayne pope  
 l iij

Ludouicus Emperour  
 Johannes a woman pope ∴  
 Nicholaus pope  
 Adrianus pope  
 l v

¶ Here begynneth the .vi. parte & conty-  
 nued to the comynge of the Normans.

Alured kynge of Englonde  
 l v vi

Johannes the .viij. pope  
 Karolus the seconde Emperour  
 Martinus pope  
 Adrianus the thyrde pope ∴ ∴  
 Stephanus the fyfth pope  
 Karolus the thyrde Emperour  
 Arnulphus Emperour [AT]  
 Formolus pope  
 Bonifacius pope  
 Stephanus the .vi. pope  
 Johannes the .ix. and .x. popes  
 Theodorus pope  
 Johannes the .xi. pope  
 Benedictus the .iij. pope  
 Leo pope  
 Kristoforus the fyrst pope  
 Ludouicus the thyrde Emperour  
 Beryngarius & Conradus Emperours  
 Edwarde kynge of Englonde  
 Sergius the thyrde pope  
 Anastalius pope  
 Laudo and Johannes popes  
 l vi

Henricus Emperour  
 Adelstone kynge of Englonde  
 Edmonde kynge of Englonde  
 Eldred kynge of Englonde  
 Edwyn kynge of Englonde  
 Leo the .vi. pope  
 Stephanus the .vij. and .viij. popes  
 Martinus the thyrde pope  
 Agapitus pope

Johannes the .xij. pope  
 m i  
 Edgar kynge of Englonde  
 m i ij

Beryngarius the thyrde Emperour  
 Lotharius Emperour  
 Beryngarius the fourth Emperour  
 Leo the .viij. pope  
 Johannes the .xiij. pope  
 Benedictus the .vi. pope  
 Otto the fyrst Emperour  
 Otto the seconde Emperour  
 m ij

Of saynt Edwarde martyr and kyn-  
 ge of Englonde

Eldred kynge of Englonde  
 Swyne kynge of Englonde and  
 of Denmarke  
 Bonus pope  
 Bonifacius pope  
 Benedictus pope  
 Johannes the .xiiij. .xv. and .xvi. popes  
 Gregorius the .v. pope  
 m iij

Otto the thyrde Emperour  
 Silvester the seconde pope  
 Johannes the .xviij. and .xix. popes  
 Henricus the fyrst Emperour  
 Benedictus pope  
 Johannes the .xx. pope  
 Knoght kynge of Englonde  
 Emonde Irenlyde kynge of Englonde  
 m iij

Knoght kynge of Englonde  
 m v

Benedictus the .ix. pope  
 Conradus Emperour  
 Harolde kynge of Englonde  
 Hardiknoght kynge of Englonde  
 Of the dylany that the Danys dyde to  
 the Englysshmen  
 Of Godewin the fals traytour  
 Alured martyr  
 m vi

Silvester the thyrde pope  
 Damalius the seconde pope  
 n i

# Tabula.

Saynt Edwarde kynge of Englonde  
and confellour

n i ij

Victor the seconde pope  
Henry the seconde Emperour  
Stephanus the .ix. pope  
Benedictus pope  
Henricus the thyrde Emperour  
Nicholaus the seconde pope  
Alexander the seconde pope  
Harolde kynge of Englonde

n ij

¶ Here begynneth the .vij. parte & conty-  
nued vnto our dayes / his to laye / kynge  
Edwardes regne þ fourth the .xiiij. yere

Wylliam conquerour  
Gregorius the .vij. pope  
Victor the thyrde pope  
Urbanus pope

n iij

Wylliam Rous kynge of Englonde  
Palschall pope

n v

Henry Beauclerke kynge of Englonde

n v vi

Henricus the fourth Emperour  
Gelalius pope  
Calixtus pope

n vi

Honorius pope  
Lotharius Emperour  
Hugo de sancto victore  
The ordre of saynt Johan Baptyst  
Innocencius pope

o i

Stephen kynge of Englonde

o i ij

Celestinus the seconde pope  
Lucius pope  
Eugenius the seconde pope  
Petrus Lombardus byllhop *and scholar*  
Petrus Comestor *and gystowar*  
Fredericus the fyrst Emperour  
Anastalius pope

o ij

Henry the seconde kynge of Englonde

o ij iij

Adrianus the fourth pope  
Alexander the thyrde pope  
Lucius the thyrde pope  
Urbanus the thyrde pope  
Gregorius the .vij. pope  
Clemens the thyrde pope

o iij

Rycharde the fyrst kynge of Englonde

o iij iij

Henricus the fyfch Emperour  
Celestinus the thyrde pope  
Innocencius the thyrde pope  
Wylliam of Parys  
Franciscus an Pcalyon

o iij

Johan kynge of Englonde

o iij v vi and p i ij iij

Fredericus the seconde Emperour  
Honorius the thyrde pope

p iij

Henry the thyrde kynge of Englonde

p iij iij v

Gregorius the .ix. pope  
Celestinus the fourth pope  
Innocencius the fourth pope

p v

Thomas de Aquine  
Albertus magnus  
Eustacius Bonaventure  
Alexander and Urbanus popes  
Rycharde Emperour  
Clemens the fourth pope  
Gregorius the .x. pope  
Innocencius the .v. pope  
Adrianus pope

Johannes the .xxi. pope

Nicholaus the thyrde pope

Radulphus Emperour *100*

Martinus the fourth pope

Nicholaus de Iyra

Honorius the fourth pope

Nicholaus the fourth pope

p vi

Edwarde the fyrst kynge of Englonde

p vi and all q and r i

## Tabula.

Celestinus pope  
 Bonifacius pope ✠  
 Benedictus the .xi. pope  
 Adulphus Emperour  
 Albertus Emperour  
 Clemens pope  
 Johannes the .xxij. pope  
 Henry the .vi. Emperour  
     r i  
 Edwarde the seconde kyng of Englonde  
     r all and t all and t i  
 Lodowicus Emperour  
 Johan Mandeuyl a doctour of phys-  
 syke and knyght  
 Benedictus pope 200  
     t i  
 Edwarde the thyrde kyng of Englonde  
     t all v all x all and y all  
 Clemens the .vi. pope  
 Karolus the fourth Emperoar  
 Innocencencius the .vi. pope  
 Urbanus the .v. pope  
 Gregorius the .xi. pope  
 Wenselaus Emperour ✠  
 Urbanus pope  
     y vi  
 Bonifacius the .ix. pope  
     z i  
 Rycharde y seconde kyng of Englonde  
     z all and z i  
 Innocencius the .viij. pope  
 Robert Emperour  
 Johannes the .xxij. pope  
 Sygylmundus Emperour  
     z ij  
 Henry the fourth kyng of Englonde  
     z ij iij iij v  
 Martyne the .v. pope  
 Eugenius pope  
     z vi  
 Henry the fyfth kyng of Englonde  
     z vi and all aa  
 Felix the fyfth pope  
 Alberte Emperour  
 Fredericus the thyrde Emperour  
 Nicholaus the .v. pope  
     bb i

Henry the .vi. kyng of Englonde  
     bb all and cc i ij iij iij v  
     vi vij viij ix x xi xij  
 Calixtus the thyrde pope  
 Prynters of bokes  
 Pius the seconde pope  
     cc xij ✠  
 Paulus a Venecyan pope  
 Sixtus the fourth pope  
     cc xij

The descrypcyon of Englonde. Walys  
 Scotlonde and Irlonde in the later ens-  
 de of this presente Cronycles.

Thus endeth the Table.



**I**n so moche that it is necessary to all creatures of crysten relygion/ or of fals relygion/ or gentyles/ & machomytes/ to knowe ther prynce/ or pryncis/ þ regne vpon them/ & them to obey. So it is comodious to knowe ther noble actes & dedes/ & the circũstaunce of ther lyues. Therefore in the yere of our lordes .M. CCC. lxxiij. yere of the regne of kynge Edwarde the fourth at saynt Albons/ so that all men may knowe the actes namely of our noble kynges of Englonde/ is compyled togyder this boke/ & more ouer is tranllated out of latyn in to englyshe/ fro the begynnynge of the worlde þ lygnage of Cryst/ from Adam tyll it be comen to Dauyd. And from Dauyd þ kynges of Israel & of Jewes the hyghe bysshops in ther dayes with þ Judges & prophetes. The foure pryncypall reames of the worlde/ that is to say of Babylon. of Percees. of Grekes. and of Romayns. And all the Emperours of Rome/ or Popes/ by ordie/ & ther names. And many a notable fader werten of ther actes. As more playnly is declared in the chapytre next after. And here ben reherced the names of the Austours/ of whome these Cronycles ben tranllated moost namely. Salfridus Nunmoth monke in his boke of Brute Saynt Bede in the actes of Englonde. Jm Bede in his boke of tymes. Gyl das in the actes of Brytayne. William Malmesbury monke in the actes of kynges of Englonde & bysshops. Cassider of the actes of Emperours & bysshops. Saynt Austyn de ci. dei. Titus Liuius de gestis Romanoy. Martyn Penitencyary to the pope in his Cronycles of Emperours & Bysshops. And namely Theobald Cartulienlis conteynyng in his boke the progresse of all notable faders from the begynnynge of the worlde vnto our tyme/ with the notable actes of þ same. In this newe tranllacyon are conteyned many notable & meruaylous

thynges. And those ben alledged by auctorite of many famous clerkes. And that euery man may knowe how these Cronycles ben ordered. Ye shall vnderstande / that this boke is dyuyded in to vij. partes. Of the whiche the fyrst parte conteyned from Adam tyll Brute came in to Brytayne. The seconde parte conteyneth from Brute came fyrst in to Englonde. vnto the cyte of Rome was buylded by Romolus. The thyrde parte conteyneth syth Rome was buylded / vnto Cryst was born of our lady Mary. The fourth from thens vnto the comynge of Saxons in to Englonde. The fyfth parte from thens/ vnto the comynge of the Danys. The sixte parte from thens/ vnto þ comynge of the Normans. The seuenth parte fro the Normans / vnto our tyme/ whiche is vnder the regne of kynge Edwarde the fourth .xxiij. yere/ whoos noble cronycles by/ custeme may not be seen. And so in euery parte of these. vij. partes/ ben shewed the moost & necessary actes of all the kynges of Englonde/ & theyr names wyrtten aboue in the margent/ that euery man may fynde them loone. And afore the kynge of Englondes actes ben wyrtten / there is wyrtten þ lygnage of Cryst from Adam tyll that Cryste was borne of our lady/ with the hye bysshop & the Juge that were in þ tyme/ and certen of ther actes necessary/ tyll it be comyn tyll Cryste was borne. And after that Cryst was borne/ & Peter was Pope of Rome/ is shewed by ordie the names of all the popes & emperours of Rome/ afore/ and after/ with certen of ther actes breuyatly/ & many oþer dyuers thynges & merueyles in those mennes dayes fallynge. And it is thewed euery thyng in his place/ how many yere it fell after þ begynnynge of the worlde/ & how longe afore þ Cryst was borne. And whan þ I come to Cryst was borne/ then it is wyrtten/ how longe ony thyng felle after the Natyuyte of Cryst

And this is the ordie of this boke / & the thynges that ben spoken of.

**A**ND as to men desyring / to haue a very knowlehe / of these Croyces / or of any other / it is necessary / to knowe .vi. thynges. ¶ The fyrst is the states of thynges / & those ben two. One is fro the begynnynge of the worlde vnto Cryste / the whiche is called the state of Diuiciation. The seconde is from Cryste to the ende of the worlde / the whiche is called the state of Reconciliacōn. ¶ The seconde thyng is the diuylsion of tymes and those ben thre. One is afore the lawe of Moyses / & an other is vnder the lawe of Moyses / an other is vnder the lawe of grace after crist dyed. ¶ The thyrde is / the gouernynge of kyngdomes. And as for that ye must knowe / that all though there were foure pryncypal kyngdomes / that is to saye. Of Babylon / of Persees / of Grekis / & Romayns. Neuer theles / as to the cours of the worlde / & the ordie of holy scrypture / the fyrst gouernynge was vnder faders / from Adam vnto Moyses. The seconde / vnder Jugis from Moyses vnto Saul. The thyrde / vnder kynges / from Saul vnto Zorobabel. The fourth vnder bysshops / from Zorobabel vnto Cryste. ¶ The fourth is the dyuersyte of lawes / & those were fyue. The fyrst was / the lawe of nature / and that was comyn to all men. The seconde is / the lawe or the custome of Gentyles / whan they vnder kynges syno began the people to worlshipp fals goddes. The thyrde is vnder the lawe wyrtten / the lawe of Jewes / whan Circumcysion deuyded the Jewes from other peple. The fourth is / vnder Cryste / the lawe of crysten men / whan fayth & grace of the sacramentes / enformed the lyfe of men. The fyfthe vnder Machomete / the lawe of Sarrahyngs & Turkes. ¶ The fyfth is / the noblenesse / or vnnoblenesse in dedes. ¶ And as to these / it is to knowe

we that .viij. perlones ben redde of / whome the dedes many tymes are hadde in mynde in hystories. That is to wyte / of a prync in his reame / of a knyght in batayll / of a Juge in his place / of a bysshop in the clergy / of a polycyph man in the peple / of an husbonde man in his hous / & of an abbot in his chirche. And of these are wyrtten many tymes / the laudes of good men / & the punysshmentes of the cursyd men. ¶ The sixthe is the true countynge of the yeres. And as to that / it is to be knowe / that there were .viij. maner of nombrynge / or couētyng of the yeres. Thre after the hebrewes. Thre after the Grekis. One after the Romayns. And one now after the crysten men. The hebrewes / thre maner of wyle begynneth ther yere. After the hebrewes ther is the yere vsuall / begynnynge at January / the whiche they vse in couenaūtes & barges makynge. And the yere leyffull begynnynge at Marche / the whiche they vse in theyr cerymonyes. And the yere Emergens from May begynnynge whan they wente from Egypt / they vse in theyr cronycles & calculacions. ¶ The Grekis nombreth ther yeres thre manere of wyle. fyrst to the glory & Joye of ther victory / counteth ther yeres from the destrucyon of Troy. The fyrste / the seconde / the thyrde / the fourth .iij. ¶ Thenne after the chynualty beganne at the hylle of Olympus / they notefyed the yeres after the same Olympiadū. And what Olympiades is / ye shall knowe after in the boke. The thyrde / whan they began to haue lordshipp of all the worlde / they notefyed ther yeres thele maner of wyle. In the yere of the regne of Grekis the .iij. the .x. the .xv. .iij. as it is open in the boke of Machabeoz. ¶ Thenne after the Romayns gouernynge the worlde / counted and nombred ther yeres (ab vrbē condita) ¶ The last of all Crysten men counteth ther yeres from the Incarnacyon of Crist. And bycause we ben Crysten men

We blei moost to nombre / from the begynnyng of the worlde / vnto Cryste was borne . And fro Cryste was borne / vnto our tyme . And this ordre is obserued & kepte in all the booke / of euery thyng in his place as it is layd afore.

¶ Explicit Prologus.

¶ Hic incipit fructus temporis.

**B**y cause of this bookes made / to tell what tyme of any thyng notable was. Therefore þe begynnyng of all tymes shortly shall be touched. for the whiche after doctours it is to be knowen / þe foure thynges were made fyrste / & in one tyme / & of one age. That is to wyte / the heuen Imperyall / angels nature / the matere of the foure elementes / & tyme. And that doctours calle / the werke of the creacion / the whiche was made afore any daye or nyght / of the myghty power of god. And was made of no thyng. ¶ Thenne after foloweth the werke of the diuylon / the whiche was made in thre of the fyrste dayes / in whiche is shewed the hyghe wysedom of the maker. ¶ Thenne after foloweth þe arapenng of this werke in the whiche is shewed the goodnes of the creature / the whiche was made .iij. of the nexte dayes folowynge (vt patz clare in textu gen. p. 1<sup>o</sup>) ¶ The fyrste day god made / & dpyded the lyght from the derkeuelse. ¶ The seconde daye god made / and ordeyned the fyrment / & dpyded the water from the water. ¶ The thyrde day god made in the whiche he gadred the waters in to one place / & þe erthe tho apperid. ¶ The fourth daye god made / in the whiche he ordeyned the sonne / the mone / & the sterres & put them in þe fyrment. ¶ The fyfth daye god made / in the whiche he

ordeyned fyshes & foules / & grete whales in the water. ¶ The sixt day god ordeyned / in the whiche he made beest and man. ¶ The seuenth daye god made / & in that daye he rested of all werkes that he had ordeyned / not as in werkyng bepyuge wery / but he lessid to make mo newe creatures (vide plura gen. i.)

**B**e it knowe that Adam the fyrste man / of whome it is wyrtten in this fyrst aege next folowynge / lyued .ix. hondred yere and .xxx. And he gate .xxxij. lones / & as many doughters.

¶ Anno mundi .i. Et ante xpi natiuitatem .v. M. Lxxxix.



**I**n the fyrst yere of the worlde the sixt day / god made Adan in þe felde Damalceñ & Eua of his rybbes / put tyng them in paradys. And badde them to kepe his comaūdemēt / þe they sholde not ete of the fruyte of lyf / vnder þe payne of deth. And the same daye that they had synned / anone he caste them out of paradys / in to the londe of curlydnesse / that they sholde lyue there with swetpnyng & sorowe tyll they dyed (vide plura Gen. i.) ¶ This Adam was an holy man all þe dayes of his lyf / grete penaūce & dayly he dyde. And he comaūded

his children to lyue ryghtwysly. And namely þ they holde auoyde in all wyse from þ company of Cayn & his childn. Nor þ they holde not marve w none of them. ¶ This man Adam was our fyrste fað. And for oo synne he put vs out of Paradys. But thugh his holy cōuersacion & penaūce, he gaue vs en ensample to come to þ kyngdom of heuen. And he þ wyll not folowe his holy cōuersacion & example, for oo synne ryghtwysly, he can not cōplaine on hym, as we do many. ¶ Seth sone to Adam was borne after þ begynnynge of the worlde. L. z. xxx peres, & lyued. ix. L. z. xij. But Hoyles ouerlhypped an hondred of those, in the whiche Abell wept in þ vale of ploracy on nyghe Ebron. This Seth for þ oyle of mercy to be gotten, wente to paradys. ¶ Delbora was syster to Abell. ¶ Abell was slayne of Cayn his broð. This Abell þ fyrst martyr began the chirche of god. This man after Austyn made þ cyte of god, & he was the fyrst cyteyzyn of þ cyte. And by cause þ he was ryghtwys our lord receyued his offrynge. ¶ Calmana was syster & wyf to Cayn. This Cayn was a curlyd man, & he made the fyrst erthly cyte that euer in this worlde was, in the whiche he put his people for drede, in so moche as he vled raun & by olence. For he trusteth luche thyng to be done to hym, as he dyde to other, therfore he put hym & his in to a spher place. This man slewe his brother Abell for enuye, & he was punysshed of god, and wandied about in a dispeyre. And after was slayne of Lamech a blynde man.

¶ Anno mundi. iij. L. xxxv. Et ante xpi natiuitatē. iij. M. ix. L. lxxiij.

**A**nos of the lyne of Cryst lyued. ix. L. yere & .v. This Enos began to calle the name of our lord. It myght happe he foude some wordes of prayer, or made some ymages for god to be wor

shypped, as now is in þ chirche. ¶ Chanaan lyued after. ix. L. yere and .x.

¶ Anno mundi. vij. L. lxxxv. Et ante xpi natiuitatē. iij. M. iij. L. iij.

**M**alaleel of the lyne of Cryst lyued. vij. L. lxxxv. yere. ¶ Jareth of þ same lyne lyued. ix. L. lxxij. ¶ Enoch of the same lyne lyued. iij. L. yere. lxx. This Enoch was a ryghtwys man, & pleased god. And for his grete holynesse our lord translated hym in to paradys where he lyuech with hely, in grete rest of body & soule, tyll the comynge of Antecryst. Thenne they shall go forth for the confortacion of good men. And they shall be crowned with the crowne of martyrdom.

**M**atufale of Crystis lyne / lyued. ix. L. lxxix. peres. This matufale was the oldest man þ euer ony scrypture hath mynde of. For whan he had lyued nyghe fyue hondred yere, our lord sayd to hym. Buylde the an hous & thou wyll, for yet thou shalt lyue. v. hondred yere. And he answered & sayd. for so lytel a tyme as. v. hondred yere. I wyl buylde no hous. But rested vnder trees and hegges, and there slept, as he was wonte to do for a tyme.

¶ Anno mundi. M. iij. L. liij. Et ante xpi natiuitatē. iij. M. vij. L. xlv.

**L**amech was of aege. vij. hondred lxxvij. This Lamech the fyrst agaynst nature & good maners, ordeyned that a man myght haue two wyues, in doynge his auowtry. And he was sore punysshed of them. for they gaue hym many a strypp. For it is soo, that by what thyng a man synneth, by the same he is punysshed. This Lamech slewe Cayn wylfully not. But whan he was olde & blynde, he was ladde of a childe, þ whis

che crowed / that he had seen a wylde beete / and sayd to his mayster / that he sholde chote / & so he slewe Cayn. Wherfore he bete the childe so sore that the childe also was deed. ¶ And it is to be knowen that all craftes / or scyences lyberall / or honde craftes / or of phylsike seruyng to the curyosyte of man / are redde / þ they were fouden of the childern of Lameith And for they dradde the perylle to come of the flood & of the fyre / therfore Tuball graued the same craftes in two pylers. The one was of Marbyll / and the other of tyle or byrche. ¶ Tuball foude fyrst the crafte to werke golde & syluer / & yren . And was the fyrst grauer that euer was. ¶ Jabe founde fyrst Tentoria for shepeherdes / and pauelyons for other men . ¶ Tuball founde fyrste the crafte to playe vpon an harpe & organs & ocher mulycall Instrumentes he vlied. ¶ Noema founde fyrst the crafte for to weue linnen & wollen cloth / and to drawa thredes of wulle and flexe. And afore that tyme / the people vled the skynnes of bestes for ther clothes.

¶ Anno mundi .M. vi. L. xliij. Et ante xpi natiuitate .iij. M. v. L. lvij.

¶ The shyppe of Noe had in length .iij. hondred cubytes / in brede .l. in altytue .xxx. (Vide plura genesis .vi. ¶ Knowe ye after doctours / that a conuenient payne this tyme was ordeyned to the world. for thenne lechery habouded the whiche defouled mannes body. And there by water the erthe was washsed & clenfed / in spgne of the promyle / that god made to man / that there sholde neuer be such a flood agayne. ¶ And the Rayne howe hath two pryncypall coloures the whiche represente the two Jugement. The water colour representeth the flood that is passyd. The fyre colour betokeneth the Jugement to come / & fyre / by the whiche we certainly abyde in

the ende of this worlde / by cause touetyse shall haboude / by fyre it shall be bren te. Golde and syluer by the fyre is wonte to be clenfyd.



¶ This Noe was a ryghtwys man and founde grace ayenst god / Whan Noe was fyue hondred yere of aage / he had gotten Cham. Sem. & Japhet. That tyme by the comaundement of god / he began to make a shyppe. And he made it partyt in an hondred yere. And the hondred yere complete / our lord god appered agayne to hym / & comaunded hym / that he with his wyf & his childern / & the wyues of them / sholde entre the shyppe with all maner of beestes / & all maner of foules also &c. And anone the flood came / and stode aboue all hylles .xv. cubytes (Vide plura gen. viij.) ¶ After the flood a grete dronkenesse betyde vnto Noe . And thoughg occalyon of that dronkenesse / he blessyd his two sones. Sem & Japhet / for the faders honour that they had to hym / & for the honest shame / that they couered mekely ther faders membes / whan he was slepyng. And his sone Cham / for his scornynge and his vnreuerence / he cursyd . ¶ And here after saynt Austyn is made / the fyrste mencyon of boundage / and of noblynesse contrary to it. for Noe sayd / þ Cham sholde be seruaunt in bondage to Sem & Japhet / for his vnreuerence . Neuertheles ye shall not

trouwe / that all that descended of Cham were vnnoble men & of no power . for they began fyrst to be mygghy men of þe erthe. As it is open of Nemroth & þe kynge of Lanaan & Alcoz. Nor all of Sem & Japhet were vertuous & noble & mygghy men / whan almoost eueryche one fell in to þe cypine of ydolatre / & were oft tymes oppreslyd of other men . But this blessing & this cursynge hath a respect to vertue & vyce / for þe whiche a man is called truely a noble man or an vnnoble man. for he þe vertuous is a noble mā & he þe vnuertuous is not noble . The same maner of wyle / tho þe foloweth the sayth of Abrahā / rather were called his childern than the Jewes / the whiche carnally descended from hym. Neuertheles they had a spiryтуall preuilege of god / for þe faders mercy & his blessing. And of these .iij. lones of Noe he beynge alpye after thistory of Philois were born .xxiiij. M. & .viij. C. men without wýmen & childern And they had on them thre prynces Nemroth. Jectan. & Suphen.

Anno mundi .ij. M. ij. C. xliij. Et ante xpi natiuitate .ij. M. vi. C. lviij.

**S**em lone to Noe the seconde yere after þe flood gate Arphaxat / & other whyle he is called Melchisedech The whiche fyrst after the flood made þe cyte of Salem / & now it is called Jerusalem. Cham his broð opteined Africam / & gate lones tweyne. Thus and Melraym . And these two gate lones & daughters / and many a Regyon was of them / & many of them to vs ben vnknowen. for they enhabyte & haue theyr mānyons in the occidentall Vnde. Japhet was broð vnto Cham / & was blessed of his fader / & this Japhet had .viij. lones. as Somor. Magog. Maday. Janam. Tuball. Molog. & Jras. And these .viij. gate lones & doughties / & of them came many a regyon (Vide plura Gen. xv.)

**A**rphaxat lone to Sem lyued .cccc. & xxx. yere . And gate Elam. Assure. Lud / de / & Aram / and they gate many a lone & doughter (vt p3 gen) This Assur / by cause he wolde not rebell ayenst god. in the edefyng & buyldynge of þe toure of Babylon / as Nemroth dyde / therfor he was dyspuen vnto the londe of Sennaars londe / whiche was ryght straunge to hym / and was not afore enhabyted / The whiche was called after his name Assuria. And there he edefyed & buylded a cyte after warde named Ninie / þe whiche was the Metropolon of all the kyngdom of Assuria. Thus lone to Cham was fader to Nemroth. This Nemroth was a gyaunt of .x. cubytes longe. And he began to be mygghy in the worlde / & he is called a boytous hunter afore god This man began that wretched vyce of coueytousnesse by his tyranny / with the whiche vyce euer more after this worlde is fulfpylled. And the pryncypalest kyngdom that he had was Babylon. And he had Archade. Edilla. Selencia / and the londe of Sennaar. Sale lone to Arphaxat lyued .cccc. and .xxxiiij. yeres. And of hym in scrypture is no thyng wyrtten / but that Moyles nombred hym in the lyne that cometh of Cryste. This Sale gate a lone þe was named Heber / The whiche after the hebrewes hadde the spyrte of prophete. And of this Heber the hebrewes ben named. for the hebrewes tonge bode allone in his hous in the confusyon of the langage. And that langage was called mannes langage / the whiche euery man vled afore þe toure of Babylon was buylded . This Heber hadde two lones / and one was called Jectan thurgh ensample of Nemroth descendynge from Cham toke the pryncchode vpon the childern of Sem. And he hadde .xiiij. lones . But these le people after Jerom are not knowen of vs / for fernelle of the countree / or mutacyon and chaungynge of the people /

or elles of some other maner cause.

Anno mudi .ij. M. vi. C. xliij. Et ante  
te xpi natiuitate .ij. M. v. C. lvi.



¶ Turris Babylonis.

**D**haleg lyued two hondred and  
.xxxix. yeres. This phaleg was  
the yonger sone of Heber / & in his dayes  
was made the confulyon of langages /  
for in his hous abode the olde tonge al-  
lone / and that was Hebrewe. Wherfore  
after saynt Austyn / in hym apered a gre-  
te stedfastnesse of ryghtwylnes. For this  
hous was free of that payne / as not con-  
sentynce to the buyldynge of the toure.  
(Et scdm Aug) there was .lxxij. gene-  
racjons / & so there were .lxxij. langage  
¶ Factan brod to Dhaleg of Semir Nem-  
roth prynce of Cham Sulphen of Jas-  
phet / these thre prynces with ther people  
gadred them togyder in þe felde of Sen-  
naar / dreyng the flood to come ayen

sayd. Lete vs buylde a toure / of the whi-  
che the heyghe shall reche to heuen &c.  
Gen. xij. Dur lord save the folyshnes  
of the people. Meruayllously for þe pay-  
ne of ther synne / he confounded the ton-  
ge of them. In so moche þe none vnder-  
stode what an other sayd. And soo they  
were disperpled & asondred by all þe worl-  
de ¶ Of the malyce of this Nemroth bo-  
kes ben wyten ful. ¶ And after the con-  
fulyon of the langage / he wente to the  
londe of Perlees / & there he enstructe &  
taught them to adoure & worshyp the fy-  
re as god. And he lefte his sone Belus  
in Babylon / the whiche Bel<sup>o</sup> succeded  
hy. And so from thens his progenye op-  
teyned that kyngdom / vnto the tyme of  
many a yere after. ¶ In this tyme be-  
gan many kyngdomes. And the moost  
of all those kyngdomes / was the kyng-  
dome of Scitar. But there were so ma-  
ny rude & boystous people in it / that þe  
crite was neuer hadde in worshyp. And it  
was a stronge and a myghty regyon of  
dystaunce. ¶ And about this tyme be-  
ganne the kyngdom of Egypt / the whi-  
che with dyuers and many alteracions  
often tymes was chaunged. And also it  
is spoken of many tymes in scrypture /  
¶ Noblynesse or gentylmen abowte  
this sayd tyme began. And this nobly-  
nesse or gentylmen / was ordeyned for  
many causes. ¶ The fyrst cause was ne-  
cessyte. for whan mankynde grewe loze  
& men were prompte & redy to do euyll.  
it was very necessary / to withstande the  
greate malyce of the cursyd people / a-  
gaynst good men. Therof a man is cal-  
led a gentylman / or a noble man / as be-  
fore other in vertues notable. ¶ Wherof  
Jerom sayth. I see no thynge elles in  
noblesse / or in gentylmen / but that they  
are bounden in a certeyn necessaryte / that  
they shall not recede fro the vertue / and  
the gentylnesse of ther noble auncestours  
¶ The seconde was þe dyuers worshyp-  
ge of the people. for no man worshyp-  
p

chenne/ but as his naturall reason gaf. And they knewe not ryghtwylly what they holde worlshyp/ all though they lyued peaslyble amonge themself. for they were so dull of wytte/ & they coude ponder no grete thynge/ but that was publyshed by & comyn peple. Wherfore it was expedient for ther peas to be kepte/ that they holde haue prynces of noble byrth

¶ The thyrde cause procedeth of some synguler strength. Many tymes the comynalte were greued thruugh ennyes comynge vpon them. And then they sayd & who some euer wolde deffende & kepe them from these peryles/ he holde haue & ryght of noblenesse for hym & his heyres for euer more. And in this maner of wyle many are radde to be noble men.

¶ The fourth cause of noblynelle/ was greate habundaunce of goodes. Somtyme the people were holden with grete penyury of mete & drynke. And then they to be them & theyrs to some ryche man / & thruugh that couenaunt they holde tempre the grete straytnesse of ther hungre/ & after that they holde knowe hym as ther lord & a noble man. ¶ Also there he foude certen noble men by the prouysyon of god/ though they were but fewe of the whiche some abode in vertue / as Dauid/ & some sayled anone/ as Saul & Jeroboam. Also it is radde/ that many were noble men by tyranny & vpolence. Of the whiche some were destroyed anone. And some abode in stablenesse/ as Paynemes myght.

¶ Anno mūdi .ij. M. ix. C. z. v. Et ante xpi natiuitate .ij. M. ij. C. lxxiij.

¶ S Aruk lyneally descended from our forn fader Adam to Abrahā And Nachor was his sone / & he lyued an hondred and .xlviij. yere. ¶ And about this tyme ydolatry began to to encrease myghtely. And yf ye reuolue and loke the hystories/ ye shall fynde / that

the thynges pryncypally brought men to the synne of ydolatry. That is to vnderstonde. The affectyon whiche they had to deed men. Dredde & flaterynge agaynst ther prynces. And the dyligence of artyfycers & crafty men about sculures or grauynges. Wycked fendes therē entred in to the ydolis/ and gaue answers to the people. And these wycked spyrytes conformed the error of the people myghtely. In so moche/ that what some euer manere of persone/ wolde not conforme hym to the reason/ he holde greuously luffre the payne of dethe. Also there was added and put to these thynges the dyscepyunge laude and praylsynge of Poetes / the whiche wretches and also dampned men in to heuen with all theyr gaye aourned wyptynges exalted/ And that same tyme/ whanne deuylles beganne for to speke / so fayrly/ and so mehely to man. The good lord of his grete and habundaunt mercy/ sente his aungelles/ that they spolde sheke to his elected men in dyslybly/ lest that all mankynde holde peryshe with this mylcheuous error.

¶ Belus sone to Nemroth this tyme was kynge of Babylon. And he was the fyrste kynge of this worlde/ And this man was he/ whom the error of the people fyrst crowed / holde be a god/ wherfore dyuers peple named hym dyuersly. And some called hym Bell/ some Baall/ some Baalim / some Beelphagor / and some Belsabub. And this vnhappy error stode in mankynde more than two thousande yeres. ¶ Ninus sone to Belus the seconde kynge of Babylon or of Assurionum / regned .liij. yeres. And this Ninus despyred for to haue lordshyp and worlshyp. And to that entente that he myght be lord of all the countree about hym / he gaue bataylle to all that dwelled nyghe aboute hym. And by cause that tyme the people were rude and had not the conynge of fygh



tyngge nor armour, and ne he subdued vn  
to h̄y all Aliam. And there was made h̄  
fyrst Monarche in þeest party. And whā  
his herte was sorpy for the deyth of his fa  
der Belus, he made to be made to hym  
for his comforte an ymage of his fað, to  
whom he gaf so myghty reuerence, that  
what someuer gylty man hadde fledde  
to h̄ ymage, ther sholde no man do vnto  
hym no hurte, & he pardouned h̄y of all  
his trespasse. And thugh his ensample  
many a man began to worshyp h̄ deyd  
ymage, of theyr dere frendes. Thenne  
these malicyous spirytes, sepyngge h̄ curyo  
lyte of the people / h̄yde them within  
them, & gaaf answers vnto h̄ people, &  
sayd they were goddes. And comaūded  
them to do reuerence vnto them as god  
des. Thus h̄ vnhappy lynne of ydolatry  
was brought in / the whiche repugned  
myghtely to goddes mageste. And in so  
moche this madnesse grewe, that he shol  
de suffre the payne of deche, that sayd,  
they were men, but goddes.

¶ Anno mundi .iij. M. C. xiiij. Et ante  
xpi natiuitatē .ij. M. lxxv.

**T**hare sone to Nachor lyued .ij. C  
and .v. yere. This Thare after  
the deyth of Aram, went from Hyr of Cal  
de, & passed in to Charram with his chil  
dern & his neuwes. And it is sayd, by  
cause he wolde not worshyp the fyre, as  
Nemroth had taught, he was banysshed  
the coūtree. And the comyn oppnyon of  
the Hebrewes is. Nemroth regned there  
the whiche was called an other name,  
Amraphel the kyng of Sennaar, who  
me longe tyme after this Abraham o  
uercame (vt dicit Gen. xiiij.)

¶ Anno mūdi .iij. M. C. lxxiiij. Et an  
te xpi natiuitatē .ij. M. xv.

**H**ere begynneth the deuoute & hos  
ly storpe of holy Patrarkes / the



whiche worshypt the very god, & in the  
worshypppyngge, they taught it (vide pla  
gen. xij. vsqz ad finē) ¶ This Abraham  
a faythfull louer of god was borne the  
xliij. yere of Ninus kyng of Babylon.  
And knowe ye h̄ the. lxxv. yere of Abra  
ham, thorough the myghty glorie of the  
h̄ye god. The worde of mercy descended  
vpon mankynde / for thenne he gan to  
appere the oraculus of the promyle of  
god (vide Au. xvi. de ci. dei. Jtm gen. xv.  
for this tyme holy aungels appered to  
vs in forme of mankynde. ¶ This A  
braham had two brethern, Aram & Na  
chor. And Aram gate Loth a ryght wys  
man & an holy. And he deserued to be  
vilyted w̄ aūgels as his vncle Abraham  
was. And for this Loth Abraham smote  
iiij. kyngs, for they toke Loth (gen. xiiij.  
Of whome one was sayd / to be Nem  
roth / but he is called here Amraphel.  
¶ And Abraham had many wyues, as  
Sarat & Algar. And his childern & his  
brethern had many childern. But for vs  
that wyte Cronycles, it is not necessa  
ry, to speke of all men, but of the noble  
faders (sed vide plura sine gen) ¶ Mel  
chisedech this tyme was kyng of Sa  
lem. This man was called a ryght wys  
kyngge, for his excedyngge holynesse. And  
he offred briede and wyne to Abraham,  
in sygne of a grete mystery. He was also  
the preest of the h̄ye god. ¶ Semiramis

the thyrde kynge of Babylon/he ordey-  
ned an army/ & wente in to Jude/ & op-  
teyned þ̄ coūtree. And so by all Alyam/  
the kyngdome of Assurioꝝ was dilated  
And he multiplied the cyte of Babylon  
myghely. & made walles about it. This  
Semiraniſ had a wyf/ and he forloke  
her. And it is wyrtē/ that she was slay-  
ne of her sone Ninus/ by cause she pro-  
uoked hym to the vnefull concupyscen-  
ce (sic di. au. .xviij. de ci. dei.) And the  
mayster in his stoꝝes sayth/ þ̄ she wed-  
ded her owne sone & he gate a childe on  
her/ the whiche ordered Babylon/ to be  
the heed of all his reame. ¶ Ninus the  
fourth kynge of Babylon/ was sone to  
grete Ninus. Of this man lptell is wy-  
ten/ but that he clewe his owne moder/  
as is sayd afore. ¶ Arrius was the fyfth  
kynge of Babylon. And vnder hym was  
borne Plaac.

**A**llo Plaac sone of Abraham/ of  
the lyne of Cryst/ lyued. L. lxxx.  
yere. This Plaac had a wyf called Re-  
becca/ & on her he gate two sones/ Elau  
& Jacob. This Elau solde his enhery-  
taunce to his broð Jacob. And he was the  
fad̄ of Joumeoꝝ/ & he had in possel-  
yon the hylle of Seyr/ & put fyrst marys to  
asses wherof was eugēdred mules. ¶ A-  
bout this tyme. xxx. loꝝhypps & Gomor-  
ra for ther horryble synne were ouerthio-  
wen. The wyf of Loth/ lokynge back/  
warde torned in to a salt stone/ she weth  
that no man in the waye of delyberacy  
on tholde delyre thynge past (hec Aug<sup>9</sup>  
de ciuitate dei)

¶ Anno mūdi .iij. M. iij. C. clviij. Et an-  
te xpi natiuitatē .M. viij. C. lvi.

**J**acob lyued. L. clviij. yere. This  
Jacob hadꝝ foure wyues or some  
concupynes/ that is to wyte. Lyam. Ba-  
lam. Zelpham/ and Rachel. Lyam was  
the fyrst wyf/ & she was blere eyed. And

the bare hym .vi. sones. Judas. Ruben.  
Symeon. Leuy. Plachar. Zabulon/ and  
a doughter that hyghē Dyna. Bala ser-  
uaunt to Lya & concubyne to Jacob/ bar-  
re hym two sones. Dan and Neptalym  
¶ Rachel the seconde wyf to Jacob was  
barayne longe tyme/ & at the last she ba-  
re hym two sones. Joseph & Beniamyn  
Zelpha seruaunt to Rachel bare Jacob  
two sones. Gad & Aser/ & eueryche of  
these made a tꝝbe/ of whom in this pla-  
ce it is not necessary to speke (vide p̄ta-  
gen) ¶ Joseph sone to Jacob was borne  
lxxx. yere of his faders aege/ & he lyued  
L. i. yere. ¶ Serles this tyme was kynge  
of Babylon/ vnder whome was borne  
Jacob/ & he was the .vij. kynge of Ba-  
bylon ¶ Armanicre was kynge after h̄  
And after saynt Austyn in that mānes  
dayes our loide appered to plaac/ pro-  
mysynge hym thole thynge/ the whiche  
he prompled to his fader. ¶ Beloc<sup>9</sup> the  
.ix. kynge of Babylon was after this  
man. And vnder Belocus/ or in this tꝝ-  
me our loide spake with Jacob/ promp-  
synge hym/ that he had prompled to his  
fader/ the whiche were two. The possel-  
lyon of the londe of promyslyon & Cha-  
naam/ & the benediccyon of all the peo-  
ple in his seed/ the whiche is our loide  
Jhesu Cryste. ¶ Abraham aboute this  
tyme decessyd/ and was buryed in Hes-  
bron. ¶ Inachus the fyrste kynge that  
euer was in Grece was this tyme/ for  
then the kyngdome began. ¶ Phoront-  
us was kynge after hym/ & he ordered  
lawes to the Grekis ic.

¶ Anno mūdi .iij. M. iij. C. iij. Et an-  
te xpi natiuitatē .M. viij. C. lxxxix.

**J**udas sone of Jacob descended of  
hym/ & of this tꝝbe of Judas ca-  
me the kyngs progenye/ & at þ̄ last Cr-  
ste our loide. Judas gate Phares/ & Pha-  
res Elron/ & of these men lptell is had  
in scꝝpture/ but Math reherceth them.

**B**elus in this Phares dayes was kyng of Assurion / or of Babylon / and he was the .x. kyng / vnder whome Vlaac decessed. **A**thlas the grete astronomer was also / the whiche is sayd to bere vp heuen on his sholder / for the very knowlege of the sterres. **S**arapis was the chyfde kyng of Arguion / or of Grecoz / & this Sarapis was called otherwyle Apis / and he came in to Egypte with a myghty nauy / & there decessed / and was made of the blynde gentyles the Egypciens / the grettest god amonge theym. And that tyme began a meruaylous supersticion in ydolatrie / of a calf of two colours whiche they called Apem / & that calf deyed / the deuylls procured a lybe calf to that / for to be made / that they myght deceyue the rude people / & after that it came that the childern of Israel dyde on the same wyle (vt patet) And what chyng coude be more wretched or folyllhe in man haupnge reason. **A**rgus was the fourth kyng of Grekis / after whome the noble cyte of Argus toke his name. **C**ycropis edefyed Athenes in Grecia / & this cyte was the nourysshur of lyberall scyence / & of many phyllosophers / yet they were deceyued by dyuylles / and grete supersticyolste in the cyte was made (vide aug<sup>9</sup>. et mirabilē fabulā reperies) **A**dmogires the fyrst man put oxen to the ploughe. **B**elus this tyme was kyng of Babylon / & he was the .x. kyng of the regyon / & vnder hē deyed Vlaac. **P**harao was kyng of Egypte / whiche receyued Joseph / & exalted hym for chynterpretacyon of his dreames (vide scientiā pulcherrimāqz historiā. gen. xliij. rē. **A**mithus was the .xij. kyng of Babylon / vnder whome dyed Joseph a blesyd man in chastyte **P**harao Emonophis about Eldroms dayes was kyng of Egypte / & this Pharaoknewe not Joseph ne none of his lpgnage / & he cōmaūded the childn of Israel to be drowned / as it is had (Exodi .i.º)

Pe clerkes may loke that boke / and we laye wyll loke to cronycles / but aboute this tyme the storpe of Exodi began.

**A**nno mūdi .iij. M. v. C. xliij. Et ante xpi natiuitatē .M. v. C. lx.

**A**ram sone to Elrom of the lyne of cryst was about this tyme / & he gate Aminadab / Naalon / of thele men lptell is wyfte in scrypture / & therefore I procede to other maters. **J**ob a holy man & of all pacyence ensample about this tyme was borne / of the lyne of Nachor the broder of Abraham / & he lyued many yeres / & after that god had vityted hym / & had assayed his pacyence / he lyued an. L. and. xl. yere (p aug. greg. & lit) **M**oyles aboute this tyme was borne / & the childern of Israel were in grete trybulacyon & bondage. And Moyles was put in the water to be drowned **A**ron aboute this tyme was borne. **D**afrus was kyng of Babylon and was the .xiiij. kyng / & Moyles was borne vnder hē in Egypte. **C**ycrops was the fyrste kyng of Athenes. And after saynt Austyn / that tyme many lesyngs were wyften / in the histories of the Grekis / the whiche comynly were lesse than the comyn fame sayth / of a lptell thynge they wrote a greate matere / by cause to shewe ther connyng / for there was the vnyuersyte of Grekys.

**A**nno mūdi .iij. M. vi. C. lxxviij. Et ante xpi natiuitatē .M. v. C. xi.

**A**mynadab sone to Aron / of crystys lyne was this tyme. This Amynadab fyrste after Moyles with a full fayth / entred in to the reed see / and dradde not whan many a hondred were ferde lest they sholde be drowned / & therefore he deserued to brynge forth the kyniges lpgnage / of whome descended our lord Ihesu Cryst. Moyles was the fyrst

the people / he was sore hurte in warre.  
 & whan he myght not suffre the payne  
 of his sore with the whiche he was gre-  
 ued. Hylfelf he rāne in to þ fyre / & whan  
 he was deed / he was worshypped amonge  
 the goddes of the Gentyles myghtely.

¶ Circa annū mūdi .iij. M. ix. C. lxxv.  
 Et ante xpī natiuitatē .M. ij. C. xliij.

**A**fter the deeth of Jayr Juge of Is-  
 raell / the people of Israel added  
 newe synnes to theyr olde. And our lord  
 toke them in to the power of the Philli-  
 styens & to the childern of Amon .xviij.  
 yere. And they were gretely opprestyd / &  
 thenne they cryed to our lord. Thenne  
 Rephte was elpyed with almyghty god / &  
 faught agaynst Amon & ledycuous peo-  
 ple of the hylle of Efraym. And for an  
 vnprudent boys / he slewe his owne dou-  
 ghter folysibly / & dyde sacrefyce to god  
 with her (Judicū. xi. et. xij.) ¶ Dzy this  
 tyme was byllhop in Israel / & he was  
 of the seed of Aron / by the lyne of Elea-  
 zari / the whiche deed / thugh the prouy-  
 syon of god the byllhopryche toined to  
 the lyne of Pthamar an. C. & .xx. yere / in  
 the whiche lyne hely was the fyrst hygh  
 byllhop. And Abiathar was the laste /  
 ¶ Eballam was Juge in Israel .viij. ye-  
 re / and he was the .xij. Juge / and he was  
 named othewyle Boos the whiche wed-  
 ded Ruth. ¶ Abialon the .xix. Juge of  
 Israel was Juge .x. yere. And vnder  
 these tymes the childern of Israel we-  
 re qupete. And therfore none notable  
 thynge were done in these dayes. ¶ Ab-  
 don the .xiiij. Juge gouerned in Israel  
 .viij. yeres. And about this tyme the hy-  
 storpe of Ruth was wyrtē. ¶ Aulha-  
 manis this tyme was kynge of Alleriz-  
 um / and Priamus kynge of Troy lone  
 to Lamidon that buylded his cyte agay-  
 ne merueyllously stronge. And began ba-  
 capll with the Grekes vnto his owne  
 hurte. And he hadde a lone was called

Hector a leyffull gentyll lone by his wyf  
 Ecuba. This man was faythfull & wy-  
 se / and Incomparable of strengthe and  
 noblynesse This Priamus had an other  
 lone that was called Parys / the whiche  
 toke awaye fro the londe of Grekes He-  
 lena wyf to Menelai⁹ the kynge. ¶ Aga-  
 menon the kynge brother to Menelai⁹  
 the leder of all the Grekes holte faught  
 ayenst Troy / and at the last he wanne  
 the cyte fallly / and to the Grekes moost  
 shame and sclaunder that myght be /  
 for certaynly that myght be called an  
 vnhappy batayll where no man gyuech  
 lounge to the Grekes / but euery man  
 reporteth shame.

¶ Aneas was kynge in Ptalys thre yez-  
 re. And this Aneas after Troy was de-  
 stroyed of the Grekes / came in to Ptalys  
 with .xx. thypptes / & dyde myghty batay-  
 les there. And this man hadde wedded  
 Priamus doughter Elinfaram. And he  
 was made a god thourgh the errour of  
 the comyn people / & of this man came  
 Juli⁹ cesar & Octavian⁹ august⁹ ¶ Olix-  
 es an eloquent man among all the Gre-  
 kes / after many perylls on the see wen-  
 te home to his Penelopem / the moost  
 faythfull & the moost chaste woman that  
 is radde of. And the Grekes peryllshed  
 wretchedly after that they had destroyed  
 Troy / both on the water & on the londe  
 as they wente homewarde apen. ¶ And  
 that was the princypal date of ther wy-  
 tyng after that victory. For they wrote  
 ther histories & other wytyng (sic an⁹  
 pri⁹ vel lido. ic. post Troiam captam)  
 And that was the thyrde yere of Abdon  
 Juge of Israel.

¶ Circa annū mundi .iij. M. xlv. Et  
 ante xpī natiuitatē .M. C. lxxiiij.

**O**beth of crystis lyne lone to Boos  
 is reherced in Ma. ¶ Sampson  
 the .xv. Juge regned .xx. yere / this Sam-  
 son was the moost strongest man that

euer was / & he deliuered Israel from the Philistines / & for his meruaylous streng<sup>th</sup> the men crowed he had ben hercules (et eius mirabilia opa vide Iudiciū. xij.)

¶ Anno mūdi. iij. M. lxxv. Et ante xpī natiuitatē. M. L. xij.

**E**lle sone to Obeth of the lynne of Cryst / other wyse called Play sad to Dauyd / this tyme lyued a notable man in honeste. No kynge / ne grete gouernour. But of hī many tymes is made mencyon in holy scrypture. for of hī descended Cryste our sauour. ¶ This tyme Ely was Juge & bysshop in Israel The whiche had two sones Ophni & Phinees. And for he corrected them not suffyciently / he & they were punysshed bothe of our lord. for they were slayne of the Philistiens. And Ely felle of his lete and brake his necke. ¶ This Ely was Juge next after Samplon / & not of the lygnage of Aran / that was fyrst bysshop of god electe / but of Pthamar / the lygnage dured an hondred and .xx. yere. In the whiche lygnage Ely was fyrst bysshop / & Abiathar the last (vide plura pñ<sup>o</sup> regū)

**T**his tyme Saul was kyng in Israel after the mayster in his hys<sup>to</sup>ryes / & Joseph<sup>o</sup> in his. viij. boke. This Saul was fyrst kyng in Israel / & regned. xx. yere / the whiche or he was kyng was a good man & elect of god / but afterwarde wretchedly he fayled / & he was slayne & his thre sones in the hylles of Gylboi. ¶ In the tyme of Saull Samuel was Juge & prophete in Israel / an holy man / and borne of a barayne moder many a daye. And he mynystred afore oure lord. from a childe to his aerge. And was not hyghe bysshop / but he Judged Israell all the dayes of his lyl. And was the very prophete of god. Two kynges he anoynted. Saul fyrst / and after

Dauyd. This Samuel alone / & Moy ses are radde / that they prayed for theyr enemyes in all the olde Testament. Of this Samuel & Saul be dyuers oppynyons. ¶ Ilyder sayth / h Samuel & Saul ruled Israel. xl. yere. ¶ And Josephus in his. viij. boke / & h mayster in his storyes laye. Samuel to be Juge. xij. yere alone. And after hym Saul to regne. xx. yere / (plura vide pñ<sup>o</sup> regū)

**A**Scanius the. vij. kyng of Ytaly was sone to Eneas / & buylded the cyte of Albion. And he was called h kyng of Albanoz. This Alcanius ga<sup>te</sup> Siluius the. viij. kyng of ytaly / the whiche Siluius was fader vnto Brute kyng of Brytayne / now called Englonde. And I leue of the kyngs of ytaly / for they dyde but lptell noble thynge / tyll it be comen to Romulus & Remus that Rome buylded. And thenne shall those kynges come apen / & now to procede to the cronycles of Englonde / for the whiche namely this booke is made. ¶ And Venes and Padua were buylded about this tyme / of h relydue of the Troyans ¶ Homerc the grete poete about this tyme was / the whiche wrote & fayned gloriously many a lcyng.

¶ Incipit regnum Britanie.  
nunc di. tur Anglia.



¶ Afore that I wpll speke of Britte / it shall be shewed / how the londe of Englonde was fyrst named Albion / and by what encheleon it was so named.

**O**f the noble londe of Sirie / there was a ryall kynge & myghty & a man of grete renomee / that called was Dyocelesyan / that well & worthely hym governed & ruled thugh his noble chyualry. So that he conquered all the lordes about hym / so that almost all the kynges of the worlde to hym were attendaunt. ¶ It befell thus / þ this Dyocelesyan spowied a gentyll damoysele þ was wonder fayre / that was his emys daughter Labana. And she loued hþ as reason wolde / so that he gate vpon her .xxxiij. daughters / of the whiche þ eldest was called Albine. And these damoyseles whan they came vnto aege became soo fayre þ it was wonder / wherof Dyocelesyan anone lete make a sompnynge / & comaunded by his letters þ all the kynges that helde of hym sholde come at a certayne dave / as in his letters were conteyned to make a feest ryall. At whiche dave thycher they came / & brought with them Admyralles prynces & dukes / and noble chyualry. The feest was ryally arrayed / and there they lpyed in Joye and myrthe ynough / that it was wonder to wyte. And it befell thus / that Dyocelesyan thought to marye his daughters amonge all tho kynges that were at that solempnyte. ¶ And so they spake & dyde / that Albine his eldest daughter & all her systers rychely were maryed vnto .xxxiij. kynges / that were lordes of grete honour and of power at this solempnyte. And whan the solempnyte was done / euery kyng toke his wyf and ladde them in ther owne countree & there made them quenes. ¶ And it befell thus afterwarde that this dame Albine became so stoute & so sterne / that she tolde lpyll pryce of her lorde / and of hym had

scome & despyte / and wolde not do his wyll / but she wolde haue her owne wyll in dyuers maters. And all her other systers euerychone bare them soo euill as penyit ther lordes that it was wonder to wyte. And for as moche þ them thought that ther hylbondes were not of so hysghe parentage come as ther fader. But thole kynges that were ther lordes / wold haue chastysed them with fayre manere vpon all loue & frendshyp / þ they sholde amende ther selfwylled cōdycons: But al was for nought / for they dyde ther owne wyll in all thynge that them lpyed. & had of power. Wherfore thole .xxxiij. kynges vpon a tyme / and oft tyme. bete ther wyues. for they wende. that they wolde amende theyr fatches. and ther wychednelle. But of suche condycions they were / that for fayre speche and warnynge / the dyde all the wors / and for betynge efflones moche the wors. Wherfore the kyng that had wedded Albine. wrote þ fatches and condycions of his wyfe Albine / and the lettre sente to Dyocelesyan his fader. And whan the other kynges herde. that Albines lorde had sent a letter to Dioclesian. anone they sente letters sealed with ther seales. the condycions and fatches of ther wyues. Whan the kyng Dioclesian sawe & herde so many playntes of his daughters. he was sore alhamyd / and became wonder angrye and wrothe towarde his daughters. and thought. how he thenne myghte amende it that they so myfloyde. And anone sente his letters vnto the .xxxiij. kynges. that they sholde come to hym / and brynge wþ theym theyr wyues euerychone att a certeyne dave. for he wolde there chastyle theym of theyr wychednelle / yf he myghte in ony manere wyse. Soo the kynges came all att that tyme and dave þ tho was sette betwene hym and the kynges. Dyocelesyan receyued theym with moche honour / and made a solempne feest to all that were vnderneath his lord

Thypp. And the thyrde daye after that solemnyte / the kynge Dyoclesyan sente after his. xxxij. doughters that they sholde come & speke with hym in his chambere. And whan they were come / he spake to them of ther wyckednesse & of ther cruelte / & spyteuouly them reprevued & blamed / and to them he sayd . That yf they wolde not be chastyled / they sholde his loue lese for euer more. And whan y ladyes herde all this / they became abashed & gretely athamed. And to ther fader they sayd / that they wolde make all amendes / & so they departed out of ther faders chambere. And dame Albine that was the eldest syster ladde them all to her chambere / and tho made to voyde all that were therein so that no persone was amonge them but she and her systers togyder. ¶ Tho sayd Albine. My fayr systers / weil we knowe that the kyng our fader vs hath reprevued shamed and dyspylled / for by cause to make vs obedyent vnto our husbondes. But certes that shall I neuer whyles that I lve / syth I am come of a more hygher kyngs bloode than myn husbonde . And whan she had thus sayd / all her systers sayd the same. And tho sayd Albine. Well I wote fayre systers that our husbondes haue complayned vnto our fader vpon vs wherfore he hath vs thus foule reprevued & dyspylled / wherfore systers my coucell is / that this nyght whan our husbondes ben a bedde / all we with one assente for to kytte ther throtes / & thenne we may be in peas of them. And better we mow do this thyng vnder our faders power than ouer where elles. And anone all the ladyes consented and graunted to this counsell. And whan nyght was comen / the lordes and ladyes wente to bedde / And anone as ther lordes were a slepe / they kytte all theyr husbondes throtes / and so they slewe them all. Whan that Dyoclesyan theyr fader herde of this thyng / he became furyously wrothe a /

gaynst his doughters / and anone wolde them all haue brente. But all y barons & lordes of Sirrie counseyled not so for to do suche streynesse to his owne doughters / but oonly sholde voyde the londe of them for euer more / so that they neuer sholde come apen / and so he dyde . And Dyoclesyan that was ther fader anone comaunded them to go in to thypp / and delyuerd to them vtylles for half a yere. And whan this was done / all the systers wente in to the thypp and saylled forth in the see / & betoke all ther frendes to Apolin that was ther god. And so longe they saylled in the see / tyll at the last they came and arryued in an yle / that was all wyldernesse . And whan dame Albion was come to that londe & al her systers. This Albine wente fyrste forth out of the thypp / and sayd to her other systers. for as moche sayd she as I am the eldest syster of all this company / & fyrst this londe hath taken / and for as moche as myn name is Albine . I wyll that this londe be called Albion / after myn owne name. And anone all her systers graunted to her with a good wyll / Tho wente out all the systers of y thypp & tooke the londe Albyon as ther syster called it. And there they wente vpon & downe / and founde neyther man ne woman / ne childe / but wyld beestes of dyuerse kyndes . And whan the vtylles were dyspended & they sayled / they fedde them with herbes and fruytes in the season of the yere / and so they lyued as they best myght. And after that they toke the flesshe of dyuerse beestes and became wonder fatte. And so they delyred mannes company / & mannes kynde I them sayled. And for hete they wered wonder courageous of kynde / so that they delysred more mannes company than ony other solace and myrthe . Whan the deyll that perceyued / wente by dyuerse countrees and toke a body of the ayre & lykynge natures had of men / & came

in to the londe of Albion / & laye by the wyemen & hadde the natures vpon them & they conceyued / & after brought forth gyautes. Of the whiche one was called Gogmagog / & an other Longherigam And so they were named by dyuers names / & in this maner they came forth & were borne horryble gyautes in Albion And they dwelled in caues & in hylles at ther wyll. And had the londe of Albion as them lyked / vnto the tyme that Brute arryued & came to Totnes / that was in the yle of Albion. And there this Brute conquered and scomfytred the gyautes aboute sayd.

¶ Explicit prima pars.

¶ Here begynneth now how Brute was gotten / & how he slewe fyrst his moder & after his fader. And how he conquered Albion / that after he named Brytayne after his owne name that now is callid Englonde after the name of Engylt of Saxonie. ¶ This Brute came in to Brytayne about the .xviij. yere of hely.

**B**E it knowen that in the noble cyte of grete Troy / there was a noble knyght & a man of grete power that was called Eneas. And whan the cyte of Troy was losse & destroyed though them of Grece. This Eneas with all his meyne fledde thens & came to Rombardey. That tho was lorde & gouernour of þe londe a kynge that was called Latyne. And an other kynge there was that was called Turocelyne / that strongely warred vpon this kynge Latyne / that oftentimes dyde hym moche harme. And whan this kynge Latyne herde þe Eneas was come / he receyued hym with moche honour / & hym with helde for as moche as he had herde of hym / & wyll well that he was a noble knyght & a worthy of his body & of his dedes. This Eneas as helped kynge Latyne in his warre /

And shortly for to telle / so well and so worthely he dyde that he slewe Turocelyne / and dyscomfytred hym and all his people. And whan all this was done / kynge Latyne gaaf all that londe that was Turocelynes / to this noble man Eneas in maryage w<sup>th</sup> Laupne his daughter / the moost fayrest creature that on ny man wyll. And so they lyued toggyder in Joye and myrthe all the dayes of ther lyf tyme. ¶ And after Alcanius sonne to Eneas wedded a wyf / & vpon her he gate a sone that was called Silueyne. And this Silueyne whan he coude some reason of man / vnderstondyng his fader and ayent his wyll aqweynted hym with a damoyzell that was colyn to Laupne / that was kynge Latynes daughter the quene that was Eneas wyf / and brought the damoyzell with childe. And whan Alcanius his fader it wyll / anon lete enquiryre of the wylest maysters & of the grettest clerkes / what childe the damoyzell holde byngge forth / & they answered and sayd / that she holde byngge forth a sone that holde kille bothe his fader & also his moder. And so he dyde. for his moder deped in beryngge of hym. And whan this childe was borne / his fader lete calle hym Brute. And the maysters sayd that he holde do moche harme and sorowe in many dyuers places / and after he holde come to grete honour and worthyp. This kynge Alcanius deped whan god wolde / and Silueyne his sone receyued the londe / and made hym wonderly well beloued amonge his people. And so whan Brute that was Silueynes sone was .xv. yere olde / he wente vpon a daye with his fader for to playe & solace. And as Brute holde haue shot vnto an herte / his arrowe myshapped & glaced / and so there Brute slewe his fader.

¶ How Brute was dryuen out of the londe / & how he helde hym in Grece.



**A**nd whan this mylchaunce was befall/all the people of the londe made sorowe ynough & were sore anged And for encheison therof they drove Brute out of the londe / & wolde not suffre hym amonge them. And whan he sawe that he myght not there abyde/ he wente from thens in to Grece / & there he founde .vij. thousande men that were of the lpgnage and kynrede of Troy that were come of grete blood as the story telleth/as of men & wymmnen & children/the whiche were all holde in thral dome & bondage of the kynge Pandras of Grece/for the deth of Achilles that was betrayed & slayne at Troy. This Brute was a wonder fayre man and a stronge & a huge of his aege & of gladd chere & semblaunt / and also worthy of body/and was wel beloued amonge his people. This kynge pandras herde speke of his goodnes & his condicions / & anone made hym dwelle with hym/soo that Brute became wonder preuy & moche beloued with the kynge/so that longe tyme Brute dwelled with the kynge So at the last they of Troy and Brute spake toggyders of kynrede & of lpgnage & of acquayntaunce/and there playned them vnto Brute of ther sorowe & of ther bondage/and of many other shames that the kynge Pandras had them done. And vnto Brute they sayd vpon a tyme. Ye be a lorde of our lpgnage & a stronge man & a myghty/ye be our cappytaine & lorde / and gouernour / and we wyll become your men/& your comaudmentes do in all maner of thynges/& brynge vs out of this wretchednesse and bondage / and we wyll fyghte with the kynge for trouthe with the grace of the grete god/we shall hym ouercome/& we shall make you kynge of the londe/and to you do homage / and of you we shall holde euer more. Brute had tho grete pyte of theyr bondage & they were brought in. And pryuely wente theym from the

kynge's court/and tho them that were of Troy/went & put them in to woodes & in to mountaynes & them there helde And sente vnto kynge Pandras/that he sholde gyue them leue sauely for to wende out of the londe / for they wolde no longer dwelle in his bondage. The kynge Pandras wexed tho sore anoyed/and tho swore that he sholde slee them eurychone/& ordeyned a grete power & wente towarde them all for to fyght. But Brute & his men manly them defended and fyrly fought & slewe all the kynge's men that none of them escaped/and toke the kynge & helde hym in pylson/ & ordeyned coucell bytwene them what they myght done. And some sayd/that he sholde be put to deth/and some sayd that he sholde be exiled out of the londe And some sayd/that he sholde be brenste. And tho spake a wyle knyght that was called Hemyris/and layd to Brute & to all tho of Troy. Vt kynge Pandras wolde yelde hym & haue his lyf. I counseyll that he gyue vnto Brute that is our duke & our souerayne/his daughter Gennogen to a wyf / & in maryage with her an hondred shyppes well arayde/and all his tresoure of golde & syluer of corne and of wyne/and as moche as we nede to haue of oo thyng and other And thenne go we out of this londe / & ordeyne vs a londe elles where. for we ne none of our kynrede that come after vs shall neuer haue peas in this londe amonge theym of Grece. for we haue slayne soo many of ther knyghtes and of other frendes / that euermore warre and contake sholde be amonge vs. Brute tho and all his folke consented well to that counseyll. And this thyng they tolde to kynge Pandras. And he for to haue his lyf graunted as moche as they axed/and anone gaf vnto Brute Gennogen his daughter to wyf/and an hondred shyppes w almoche as them neded of all bytaylles/as afore was ordeyned

Brute tho toke his wyf & all his men / that forloke the londe of Grece & went them vnto the see & had wynde & weder at ther wyll / and came the thyrde dape in to an Ile that was called Lozgres. This Brute anone sente of his men a londe for to espye the maner of the coustree. And they foude an olde cyte all wasted & forlet / that nas therin nother man ne woman / ne no thyng dwellynge / & in the myddell of this cyte they founde an olde temple of a fayre lady & was called Dyana the goddesse. And they came ayen vnto Brute & tolde hym what they had seen & founde. And they counseilled hym to go & do sacrefyce vnto dame Dyana / for she was wonte to yeue answere of what thyng that euer men prayed her / and namely vnto them that her honoured with sacrefyce. Brute wente vnto that ymage and sayd . Dyana noble goddesse that all thyng halste in thy myght and power / wyndes / waters. wodes / feldes / and all thyng of the worlde / and all manere of beestes that therin ben. To you I make my prayer / that ye me counseyll and telle / where / and in what place . I shall haue a couenable dwellynge for me and for my people / and there I shall make in honour of you a well fayre temple and a noble / wherin ye shall alwaye be honoured / Whan he had done his prayer. Dyana answered in this maner Brute sayd she go euen forth thy waye ouer the see in to fraunce towarde the west / and there ye shall fynde an yle that is called Albyon / and that yle is becompassed all wth the see / and no man may come therin but it be by shyppes / and in that londe were wonte to dwelle gyautes / but now it is not so / but all wyldernes. And that londe is destenped and ordeyned for you and for your people.

¶ How Corin became Brutes man / & how kynge Goffar was dyscomfyted.

¶ Whenne whan Brute had this answere of Dyana & goddes. Anone he lete the ankers wynde vp & sayled in to the hygge see. And whan he & his men had saylled .xx. dapes & moo / they foude fast belyde a cost of the see a thoulande men of the lynnage & kynrede of Troy. And ther souerayne & ther master of all was called Corin. And whan Brute wyst whens they were / he tho to he them with moche Joye in to his shyppes / and ladde theym forth with hym. This Corin there became Brutes man & to hym dyde homage . And so longe they saylled forth in the see tyll they came vnto Gascopne. And anone they arryued in the hauen of Lpegers / & there they dwelled .viij. dapes them for to rest. & ther saylles to amende there & it was nede . Tydynge loone came to kynge Goffar that was lorde of that londe how that moche people of straunge londe were arryued in to his londe in the hauen of Lpegers wherfore he was sore angred & anoyed / that they came and arryued in his londe withoute his lycence & his leue. And anone ordened hym a grette power for to dryue out Brute & to destroye hym & all his people. But it was so that kynge Goffar was dyscomfyted & all his people. And hymself fledde in to fraunce / there for helpe & locour. And in that tyme regned in fraunce .xij. kyniges / and an .xi. of them assembled a grette power for to helpe Goffar & for to fyght ayenst Brute. This Goffar dwelled with them of fraunce half a yere & more . And in the meane tyme whan Goffar was in fraunce. Brute and his company destroyed all the londe of Gascopne / and lete take all the tresour that kynge Goffar had / & there lete bynng it all in to his shyppes. And this Brute founde in that londe a fayry place and couenable / & there Brute made a fayre castell and a stronge. ¶ Whan that this was done / kynge Goffar came from

fraunce & xi. kynges with hym & broughte with hym .xx. M. men for to fyght w<sup>th</sup> Brute & his company / and Brute had but .vij. M. and .ccc. men. And neuer theles whan the two hostes mette toggyder. Brutes folke thorough helpe of hym self & of Turin his colyn / and of Corin that well & manly hym defended / and fought so tyll that lytell tyme they had slayne of the frenshmen two thousande & mo. Anone all þ were a lyue fledde awaye. And in this batayll Turin Brutes colyn was slayne. And Brute lete entere hym worthely whan he had space & lepler in the castell that he had made / & cho lete calle that same castell Toures / for by cause of the name of Turin that there was entered. And yet vnto this daye there is a noble cyte that is called Toures. And kynge Goffar wyft that Turin was deed he came agayne with his men / & after yaued a stronge batayll vnto Brute. But Brute & his men were so wery for fyghtynge / þ they myght no lenger endure / but to megre hym and all his. And thenne Brute yede in to his castell with his men / and made the gates faste for to saue them / and for to take wylle amonge them what were best for to do. Brute and Corin gaf counsell and ordeyned pryuelly / that Corin sholde go out and busshen hym in a wood tyl on the morn / so þ in the mornynge whan that Brute sholde fyght with his ennemyes / thenne Corin sholde come with his folke in the one syde / and flee and do all the harme that he myght. And in a mornynge in the dawninge of the day Brute wente out of the castell / and fyrstely faught with his ennemyes / and they manly defended them. But within a lytell tyme Brute and his folke slewe .vij. hondred of kynge Goffars men. thenne came Corin with the busshement and smote to grounde he & his company all those that wolde stonde or abyde. so that the kynge Goffar & his compa-

ny were dylcomfyted / & fast they began to flee. And Brute and Corin with ther company fyrstely them pursuwed / & slewe mo of them in the fleynge than they dyde in the batayll. And in this manere Brute had the victory. And neuertheles Brute made moche sorowe for his colyn Turin that there was slayne / and other also that he had lost of his men. That is to saye. vij. hondred and .xv. The whiche nobly he entered in the same castell of Toures / there where he had entered Turin his colyn.

**H**ow Brute arryued at Totnesse in the Ple thenne called Albion / and of the batayll that was betwixt Corin & Gogmagog.

**S**o whatt all this was done Brute wolde no lenger there dwelle / for to fyght / nor for to lese no moo of his people. for kynge Goffars people myght every daye encrease inoo & moo. And Brutes lessened. And therefore he toke all his men and wente vnto the see and hadde wynde and wedder atte theyr wyll. And the fyfth daye after they arryued in an hauen at Totnesse / and came in to the ple of Albion. And there neyther man nor woman as the story telleth they founde but Gyautes. And they dwelled in hylles & in caues. And Brute sawe the londe was fayre and at his lykyng. And was good also for hym and for all his people / as Dyana the goddesse had hym behyght. And therefore was Brute wonder gladd / and lete assembled vpon a daye all his folke / to make a solempne sacrefyce and a grette feest in honour and reuerence of Dyana the goddesse / of the whiche he hadde counseyll fyrst for to come in to this londe. And thenne whan that they hadde ther solempnyte done / as they vpon a daye late at ther meete / there came in vpon them .xxx. gyautes & slewe of Brutes

men .xxx. Brute and his men anone  
 sterte vp and faught with the gyauntes  
 and slewe them euerychone/excepte one  
 that was called Gogmagog. And he  
 was mayster of all the Gyauntes. And  
 he was stronger and hygher than ony of  
 the ocher. And Brute keppe hym for by  
 cause that he sholde wrestyll with Corin  
 that was Brutes man. for he was gre-  
 ter and hygher than ony of Brutes men  
 from the gyrdelstede vpwarde. ¶ Gog-  
 magog and Corin vndertoke there for  
 to wrestyll. And so togyders they wente/  
 and wrestlyd a longe tyme / but at the  
 last Gogmagog helde Corin soo fast  
 that he brake two rybbes of his syde/  
 Wherfore Corin was sore angry. And  
 there he toke Gogmagog betwixt his  
 armes and cast hym downe vpon a ro-  
 che/so that Gogmagog brake all to pe-  
 ces/and so he deyed an euyll dethe. And  
 therfore þ place is called vnto this dape  
 the laut of Gogmagog. ¶ And thenne  
 after Brute paue all that countree vnto  
 Corin. And there Corin called it after  
 his name Cornewayle. And his men be  
 called Cornewaylles/and so sholde men  
 of that countree be called for euermore/  
 And in that couñtree dwelled Corin and  
 his men. And they made townes and  
 houles/and enhabtyed the londe by ther  
 owne wyll.



¶ London.

**B**Rute & his men wente forth/and  
 blawe abowte in dyuers places/  
 where that they myghte fynde a good  
 place and couenable / that they myghte  
 make a cyte for hym and for his folke.  
 And so at the laste they came by a fayre  
 Ryuer that is called Tamys/and the-  
 re Brute began to buylde a fayre cyte/  
 and lete calle it newe Troy / in mynde  
 and remembraunce of the grete Troy/  
 from the whiche place all ther lygnage  
 was comen. And this Brute lete felle  
 downe woodes / and lete eere and lowe  
 londes / and also lete mawe downe mes-  
 dowes for sustenaunce of hym and of  
 all his people. And thenne he departed  
 the londe to theym / so that eueryche of  
 theym had a parte/and a certayne place  
 for to dwelle in. And thenne Brute lete  
 ralle all this londe Brytayne after his  
 owne name / and his folke he lete calle  
 Brytons. And this Brute had gotten on  
 his wyf Gennogen thre lones/that we-  
 re worthy of dedes. The fyrste was cal-  
 led Lotrin/the seconde Albanak / & the

How Brute buylde London/and cal-  
 led this londe Brytayne/and Scotlons  
 de Albany./and Walys Lamber.

chynde Cambar. And Brute bare crowne in the cyte of Troy. xx. yere after þ̄ tyme that the cyte was made. And there he made the lawes þ̄ the Brytons holde / & this Brute was wonderly well beloued among all men. And Brutes soncs also loued wonderly wel togyder. And whan Brute had fought all þ̄ londe in length & also in brede he foude a londe þ̄ Joyned to Brytayne / that was in the northe and that londe Brute yaued to Albanak his sone. And lete calle it Albanie after his name / that now is called Scotlonde. And Brute foude an other coūtree towarde the west / & yaued that to Cambar his other sone / and lete calle it Cambar after his name / & now is called Walys. And whan Brute had regned. xx. yere as before is sayd / thenne he deyed in the cyte of newe Troy.

How Lotryn that was Brutes sone entred w̄ moche honour / & gouerned the londe well & worthely.

After Brute regned Lotryn his sone / that was the seconde kyng in Brytayne. The whiche began to regne the seconde yere of Samuell. And this Lotryn was crowned kyng w̄ moche solempnyte & glory of all the londe of Brytayne. And after whan he was crowned kyng. Albanak and Cambar his two brethern went agayn in to ther owne coūtree and there they lyued w̄ moche honour & worshyp. And Lotryn ther brother regned / & was kyng & gouerned it well and wysely / for he was a good man & wonderly well beloued of all his londe. And it befell so that Albanak dwelled in his owne londe w̄ moche honour & worshyp. And thenne came kyng Humbar of Hunlonde w̄ a grete power & aryued in Albanye / & wolde haue conquered the londe / & began to warre vpon kyng Albanak / and hym slewe in batall. Whan Albanak was

slayne / the people of that londe fledde vnto Lotryn & tolde hym for he was kyng of Brytayne / how that his brother was slayne / & prayed hym of his helpe and of his socour for to auenge his brothers dech. Lotryn there anone lete assemble all the Brytons of Kente / of Douer in to Derewent of Northfolke & Southfolke / of Kestefen / and Lyndestey. And whan they were assembled they spedde them faste towarde ther enemyes for to yeue them batayll. And Lotryn had sent to Cambar his brother that he sholde come vnto hym w̄ all the power that he myght make hym for to helpe / & so he dyde w̄ a good wyll. And so they came togyders / & toke ther waye pryuely for to go and leke Humbar where they myght hym fynde. And so it befell that this Humbar was belyde a water that was a grete ryuer w̄ his folke / hym for to dysporte. And there came Lotryn & Cambar his brother w̄ all ther people sodaynly or that ony of that other wylt. And whan Humbar sawe them come he was sore adradde / for as moche as his men wylt it not afore / and also they were vnarmed. And anone Humbar for drede lepte in to the water / and drowned hymself / and so he deyed / and his men were all slayne so that noue of them escaped. And therfore is that water called Humbar / and euer more shall be / for by cause that this kyng Humbar therin was drowned. And after that Lotryn wente to his schyppes & toke there golde and syluer as moche as he founde vnto hymself. And all that othre pylfere he gaaf vnto othre folke of the hoste. And they founde in one of the schyppes a fayr damoyfell / that was kynges Humbars doughter / & she was called Estrylde. And whan Lotryn sawe her / he toke her w̄ hym for her fayrnesse / And for her he was ouertaken in lone. & wolde haue wedded her. This tydyns ges came to Lotryn / and anone thought

to auenge hym vpon Lotryn. for as moche as Lotryn had made couenaunt for to spowse Lozins doughter/that was called Guentolin. And Lozin in hast wente vnto hym vnto newe Troy / & thus he layd to Lotryn. Now certes sayd he/ ye rewarde me full euyl/for all the paynes that I haue suffred & had many tymes for Bruce your fader. And therefore syth it is so I wyl auenge me now vpon you. And he drewe his fawcon on hygh and wolde haue slayne this Lotryn the kynge. But the damoyzell wente bytweene tho and made them to be accorded in this manere. That Lotryn sholde wedde or spowse Guentolin that was Lozins doughter/ & so Lotryn dyd. And notwithstanding whan that he had spowled Guentolin Lozins doughter/ pryuelly he came to Estrylde/ & brought her with childe/ & gate vpon her a doughter/ the whiche was called Abram. And it befell so that anone after Lozin deyed/ & after whan he was deed. Lotryn forloke Guentolin that was his wyf / and made Estrylde quene. And there Guentolin that was his wyf wente from thens all in greete yre & wrathe vnto Cornewayle/ & there sealed all the londe in to her owne honde / for as moche as she was her faders heyre/ she vndertoke feautes and homages of all the men of the londe. And afterwarde assembled a grete hoste and a grete power of men / for to be auenged vpon Lotryn that was her lorde/ and to hym came & gaue hym a stronge batayle and there was Lotryn her husbonde slayne and his men dyscomfyted/ in the .v. yere of his regne. Guentolin lete take Estrylde and Abram her doughter/ and bounde them bothe honde & foot/ & cast them bothe in to a water/ & so they were drowned. Wherfore that water was euer more after called Abram/ after the name of the damoyzell that was Estryldes doughter. And Englyshe men call that water Senerne/ & Walchmen call

it Abram vnto this daye to. And whan this was done Guentolin lete crowne her quene of all the londe / & gouerned the londe full well & wysely vnto the tyme þ Madan her sone that Lotryn had gotten vpon her was of .xx. yere of age/ þ he myght be kynge/ & so the quene reigned .xv. yere. And thenne lete she crowne her sone kynge/ and he reigned & gouerned the londe well & worthely. And she wente in to Cornewayle/ and there she dwelled all her lyues tyme.

How Madan reigned in peas all his lyfe.

*Madan buried in London*

Madan sone to Lotryn reigned on the Brytains .xl. yere/ the whiche began to regne the .xv. yere of Saul. And this Madan lyued in peas all his dayes/ & gotte two sones. Dempris and Maulin. Thenne he deyed and lyeth at newe Troy.

Anno mundi .iij. M. Lxxij. Et ante xpi natiuitate M. lxxliij.



Dauid the seconde kynge in Israel reigned this tyme a man chosen after the desyre of god. And he was anoynted in his yonge aenge by Samuel & after the deeth of Saul reigned .xl. yere this Dauid was as a meruaylle in all mankynde. In whom euer was founde

so moche power & so moche humylyte/  
 so moche noblynes & so moche inchenes  
 so grete a charge of seculary thynges/ &  
 so pure & deuoute a contemplacōn of spi  
 rytual thynge/ so many men to kyllé/ &  
 so many teres to wepe for his trespaas.  
 (Plura vide. i. regū) ¶ Abiathar this ty  
 me was byshop / & he fledde fro Saull  
 vnto Dauid / & he was glorypous with  
 hym all his dayes. Gad. Nathan / and  
 Aloph were prophetes thenne. And Na  
 than was brother sone to Dauid.

¶ How Memphis slewe his brother  
 Haulyn.

**T**his Memphis and his brother  
 Haulyn stroue fast for the londe  
 And Memphis began to regne the .xxxv  
 yere of Dauid. And for by cause that he  
 was the eldest sone / he wolde haue had  
 all the londe / & Haulyn wolde not suf  
 fre hym / so that they toke a daye of lo  
 ne & accorde. And at this daye Memphis  
 lete kyllé his brother thowgh treason / &  
 hymself afterwarde helde y londe. And  
 anone lete crowne hym kyng & regned  
 And after became so lyther a man that  
 he destroyed within a whyle all the men  
 of his londe. And at the laste he became  
 so wycked and so lecherous / that he for  
 soke his owne wyfe and vled the lynne  
 of Sodomy. Wherfore almyghty god  
 was gretely dyspleased and sore wrothe  
 with hym. And vpon hym toke vengā  
 ce for by cause of his wyckednesse. for  
 on a daye as he wente forth on huntyn  
 ge in a forest / there he losse all his men  
 that were with hym and wylt not what  
 he shold do / and so he wente vp & dow  
 ne hymself alone / & cryed after his men  
 but they were gone. And there camen  
 wulues anone and all to drewe hym in  
 peces whan he had regned .xxiiij. yere.  
 Whan his people herde that he was so  
 deed / they made Joye & myrthe ynough  
 and anone made Ebrac his sone kyng

and he regned with moche honour.

¶ Anno mundi .iiij. M. C. lxx. Et ante  
 xpi natiuitatē .M. xxxiiij.

**S**alomon the kyng of peas of the  
 gyfte of our lord / had a lyngu  
 ler excedynge aboue all men þ euer was  
 in this world / but alonly god in wysdom  
 & in ryches / in depntees & in glory & fas  
 mylyartye w god. And all thowgh Moy  
 ses & Dauid. Peter & Paul. Jerom & Au  
 styn & other mo / exceded hy in holynesse  
 but yet they exceded hy not in glory & ry  
 ches. And this man so excedynge all men  
 wretchedly felle. Of this Salomō is red  
 in a ppsle of sayt Jerom þ he gote a chil  
 de on y daughter of Pharao at .xi. yere  
 of his aege (vid plura regū) ¶ Sadoch  
 this tyme was byshop / & for he declyned  
 not to þ part of Adonie Dauid sone but  
 was w Nathan for Salomon / & Abya  
 thar on the other parte was deposed.

¶ Anno mundi .iiij. M. ij. C. v. Et ante  
 xpi natiuitatē .ix. C. lxxxiiij.

**R**oboas succeeded Salomon his  
 fader in his kyngdome / but not  
 in wysdom. He was dysceyued thugh y  
 coulell of yonge men. And lost .x. tribus  
 in so moche as he answered not wysely  
 the people / as it is open (vi. regū) ¶ A  
 chimias was byshop / & was the sone of  
 Sadoch (Et pz pti? parali.)

¶ Reges Israel incipiunt.

**I**heroboas regned kyng in Israel  
 .xxij. yere / & he was fyrst of y hono  
 of Salomon & a good man / but whan  
 he was made kyng he was a mylchuo  
 man in ydolatry / & made Israel to lyne  
 in ydolatry / & many grete Inconuencens  
 were done / almost to y destruccōn of Is  
 rael. for he was y fygyure of Machomete  
 (Plura vide. iij. regū) ¶ Abdias the soz

12. 12. 12.

ne of Roboas regned in the Jury thre yere / & other whyle a good man & holpen by god / and other whyle wretchedly dysposed in ydolatrie / & therfore our lord suffred hym to regne lytell tyme (Vt pz. iij. regū et. ij. parali.)

¶ Anno mūdi .iiij. M. ij. C. xlv. Et ante xpi natiuitatē .ix. C. lxxiij.

**A**Sa the sone of Abdias regned xvi. yere. In the begynnynge of his regne he was a ryght wys man and walked as Dauid dyde. And he ouercame the Ehyopes / & destroyed ydolles / But after þ he was lwoine to the kyng of Syrie Benedab. For Baala kyng of Israel / thenne began to fyght ayenst hym / the whiche dyspleased god. Wherfore he sende to hym the prophete Anan / whome he put in pylon / and therfore he hadde the godde strongely & deyed therof (Vt pz. iij. regū. ij. para) ¶ Azarias sone to Achonias was byshop. Nadab kyng of Israell regned two yere / the whiche beganne to regne the seconde yere of Ala kyng of Jewes / and dyde not as his fader. And Baala ouerthrewe hym and regned for hym (Vt pz. iij. regū) ¶ Baala kyng of Israel regned xxiij. yere / the whiche began to regne the thyrde yere of Ala kyng of Jewes / & he walked in the synnes of Jeroboam and slewe Jehu the prophete. ¶ Shela the sone of Baala regned in Israel two yere / & Zamri slewe hym & regned .vij. dayes. ¶ Amri regned .xij. yere / & dyde not as his predecestours dyde. ¶ Archa sone to Amri regned on Israell .xxij. yere / & aboue all that were afore hym he was curlyd / for wycked Jelabell ruled more than he / & meued hym to folowe her (Vt pz. iij. regū)

¶ Of kyng Ebrac / the whiche began to regne the .xv. yere of Dauid / & how he conquered fraunce.

**T**his Ebrac regned .lx. yere / & a stronge man he was & a myghty And this Ebrac thourgh his myght & helpe of his Brytons cōquered all fraunce. And wanne there so moche golde & syluer / þ whan he came ayen in to this londe he made a cyte / & after his owne name he lete calle it Ebrac / þ is called Euerywh. And this kyng made the castell of Maydens / that now is called Edenbrugh. This kyng had .xx. sones and .xxiij. doughters by dyuers wýmen gotten / and thes sones were called as ye shal here. Brute. Brenelchelde. Margādc. Jakyn. Kymbar. Rolelm. Spadogh. Godeberl. Thormnan. Gldough. Jorhanghut. Harbor. Kctyn. Rother. Kaier / & Allaruth. And all þ doughters hyght as ye shal here after. Eligene. Ymogen Dghdas. Guenbrian. Gnardith. Auganel. Gnenthold. Tangustell. Gortghon. Michel. Medhan. Mailour. Dndie. Lambredan. Ragā. Kenhely. Neest Cheghan. Skaloud. Gladus. herberhyn. Abalaghe and Blandan. And thes were tho .xxij. doughters. And the brethren became good knyghtes & worthy in many countrees.

¶ Of kyng Brute Brenelchelde the fyrst sone of Ebrac kyng.

**A**fter the deche of kyng Ebrac / regned Brute Brenelchelde. his sone .xxx. yere / that was Ebracs fyrste sone / that well and nobly regned. And whan tyme came he deyed / & lyeth at Porke.

¶ Of kyng Leyl that was Brute Brenelcheldes sone.

**A**nd whan that Brute Brenelchelde was deed / regned his sone Leyl .xxij. yere. And he made a fayre towne and lete calle it Karlel after his owne name. And he was a worthy man



and well beloued of his people . And so whan he had regned .xxij. yere he dyed/ & lyeth at Karlyll . ¶ And in his tyme regned kynge Salomon in Jerusalem/ & made the noble Temple. And to hym came quene Sibylle quene of Saba for to here & see yf it were soth þ men spake of the grete & noble wyfte & wpldome of kynge Salomon . And she founde it sothe that men had her tolde.

¶ Anno mūdi .iiij. M. ij. L. lxxvi. Et ante xpi natiuitatē .ix. L. xliij.

**I**slaphat kynge of Jewes/was a good man & a ryche/and a deuoute in the waye of our lord/and regned .xxv. yere/and dyde none yll/ but to the curlyd kynge of Israell gaue helpe/ & ocher lytell thynge. And therefore our lord was with hym (vt pz. ij. para) ¶ He/lyas þ grete prophete was this tyme an holy man/ þ was lyfted vp in to paradyse wiyh grete solace in a chayre. ¶ Macheas & Abdias prophecied wiyh hym. ¶ Dcholypas sone of Achab regned in Israell .ij. yere. And sende to Bellabub god of Acharam to be helpd. for þ whiche he deped/after the sayenge of Help. (vt pz. iij. Regum)

¶ Of kynge Lud Ludibrias that was kynge Leyles sone.

**L**ud Ludibrias this kynge made the cyte of Caunterbury & Wynchestre. And he regned .xxxix. yere & then he deped & lyeth at Wynchestre.

¶ Of kynge Bladud that was Ludibrias sone/ how he regned & was a good man/ & a Nygromancer.

**S**o after this Ludibrias regned/ Bladud his sone / a greate Nygromancer . And though his craffe of Nygromancy / he made the meruayls

lous hote bathe/as the geste telleth. And he regned .xxi. yere/and he lyeth at the newe Troy.

¶ Anno mundi .iiij. M. ij. L. lxxxvi. Et ante xpi natiuitatē .ix. L. viij.

**I**oram kynge of Jewes sone to Josaphat regned .viij. yere / this Joram was a curlyd man & had a good fader/ & slewe his brother/ & wyckedly lyued/as dyde the kynge of Israell. Therefore he was sore corrected & dyed vnhappely (vt pz. ij. para) ¶ This tyme He/lyas was tauysshed in to the Paradyse. ¶ Dcholias or Alarias kynge of Jewes regned oo yere/ & lyued not as his fader dyde / & anone was slayne wiyh all the hous of Achab. ¶ Athalia moder to Alarias toke the kyngdom/ & slewe all the kynges blood/ & regned .x. yere. And the .viij. yere of Joiada bysshop she was slayne (iij. regū) This Alarias & his sone Joas/ & his newewe Amalia . Macheus the gospeller putteth not in the lynne of Dyrste for ther offences. ¶ Joram kynge of Israell regned .xij. yeres/ the whiche began to regne the .xviij. yere of Josaphat for his brother Dcholie/ & curledly he lyued/and was slayne of Jehu wiyh all his faders housholde (vt pz.) ¶ Jehu anoynted of the childe of Helpse/ vpon Israell slewe Achariam the kynge of Jewes/ & Joram the kynge of Israell and Jelabell moder to Joram/ and .lxx. childern of Achab/ and .xliij. brethern of Azari/ & all the preestes of Baall. And he regned .xviij. yere. ¶ Athalia moder to Azari kynge of Jewes / doughter to Achab regned on the Jewes .vi. yere and slewe the kyngs blood of Joram/ except Joas the sone of Azari/ the whiche was kepte amonge shepherdes / and after she was slayne.

¶ Anno mundi .iiij. M. ij. L. lx. Et ante xpi natiuitatē .viij. L. lxxxiiij.

**I**dam lone to Achazie regned in the Jury .xl. yere / whom Joiada þ byshop crowned kyng at .vii. yere of age And he lyued well as longe as he was ruled by Joiada / but after he forsoke god / & martred Azarias þ tyme byshop lone to Joiada / for he blamed hym þ he forsoke his god (Vide plura .ii. para) ¶ Joathas lone to Jehen / regned in Israell .xviij. yere / in whoos dayes Helyse þ prophete deyed. And he began to regne the .xx. yere of Joas (Vide plura .iiij. regū) ¶ Joam lone of Joathas regned in Israell .xviij. yere / & he troubled Amazia (plura vide .iiij. regū .xiij.)

**O**f kynge Leyr lone to Bladud / and of the answer of his yongest doughter / that graciously was maryed to the kynge of fraunce.

**A**fter kyng Bladud regned Leyr his lone. And this Leyr made þ towne of Lyncetre / & lete calle the towne after his name / & he gouerned þ towne well & nobly. This kyng Leyr had thre doughters. The fyrst was called Gonorill. The seconde Rigan. And the thyrde Cordeill / and the yongest doughter was fayrest & best of condicions. The kyng ther fader became an olde man / & wolde þ his doughters were maryed or þ he dyed. But fyrst he thought to assaye which of them loued hym moost & best. for she þ loued hym best sholde best be maryed And he axed of the fyrst doughter how well she loued hym. And she answered & sayd / better than her owne lyf. Now certes sayd her fader / that is a grete loue / Thenne he axed the seconde doughter / how moche she loued hym And she sayd more & passynge all the creatures of the worlde. Per ma foy sayde her fader I may no more axe. And tho axed he of þ thyrde doughter / how moche she loued hym. Certes fader sayd she / my systers haue tolde you glosynge wordes / but I

shall tell you the trowth / for I loue you as I ought to loue my fader. And for to brynge you more in certayne how I loue you. I shall tell you. As moche as ye be worth / so shall ye be loued. The kyng her fader wende þ she had scorned hym / & became wonder wiothe / & swore by he uen & erthe she sholde neuer haue good of hym / but his doughters þ loued hym so moche sholde be well auanced & maryed. And the fyrst doughter he maryed to Hangles kynge of Scotlonde. And the seconde he maryed to Hanemos erle of Cornewayle. And they ordened & spahe bytwene them þ they sholde departe the reame bytwene them two after the deche of kyng Leyr ther fader / so that Cordeill his yongest doughter sholde no thyng haue of his londe. But this Cordeill was wonder fayre & of good condicions and maners. That the kyng of fraunce Agampe herde of her fame / & sente to the kyng Leyr her fader for to haue her vnto his wyf / and prayed hym therof. And kyng Leyr her fader sente hym worde þ he had departed his londe & yeuen it all vnto his two doughters be fore sayd / & he sayd he had no more londe wherwith her to marye. And whan Agampe the kyng of fraunce herde this answer / he sente anone ayen to Leyr and sayd. That he axed no thyng with her but oonly her clothyng & her body. And anone kyng Leyr sente her ouer see to the kyng of fraunce. And he receyued her with moche worthyp / and with solempnyte he spowled her / and made her quene of fraunce.

**H**ow kyng Leyr was dyuen oute of his londe thorough his folke. And how Cordeill his yongest doughter halpe hy in his nede.

**T**hus it befell afterwarde / that tho two eldest doughters wolde not abyde tyll Leyr her fader was deed.

but warred vppon hym whyles that he was on lyue / & dyde hym moche sorowe & shame / wherfore they toke from hym holy the reame / & bytwene them had or depned / & one of them sholde haue kyng Leyr to sojourne all his lyfe tyme with .lx. knyghtes & squyres / that he myght worshyppfully ryde & go whether that he wolde / & in to what countree that hym lyked to playe & to solace. So that Haugles kynge of Scotlonde hadde kynge Leyr with hym in the maner as is aboue sayd. And on the other half yere were passed. Honorill & was his eldest daughter & quene of Scotlonde / was so annoyed of hym & of his people / that anone she & her lorde spake togyder / wherfore his knyghtes half & his squyres fro h̄ were gone / & no moo lefth with hym but oonly .xxx. And whan this was doue / Leyr began to make moche sorowe for by cause that his state was empeyred. And men had of hym more scoime & despyte than euer they had before. Wherfore he wyll not what to done. And at the last thought that he wolde go in to Cornwayll to Rigan his other daughter. And whan he was come / the erle & his wyf that was Leyr's daughter hym welcomed / & with hym made moche Joye / And there he dwelled with .xxx. knyghtes & squyres. And he had not dwelled scarsly .xij. monethes there / & his daughter of h̄ was wery & his company. And her lorde & she of hym had grete scoime & despyte / so that from .xxx. knyghtes they brought vnto .x. And afterwarde had he but fyue / & so they lefte hym no moo. Thenne made he sorowe ynough. and sayd sore wepyng. Alas that euer I came in to this londe & sayd. Yet had it be better to haue dwelled with my fyrst daughter. And anone he wente thens to his fyrste daughter apen / but anone as she sawe hym come / she swore by god & by his holy name / and by as moche as she myght / that he sholde haue no moo

with hym but one knyght / yf he wolde there abyde. Then began Leyr to wepe. and made moche sorowe / and sayd tho. Alas / now haue I to longe lyued / that this sorowe and myscheyf is to me now fallen. for now I am poore / that some tyme was ryche. But now haue I noo frende ne kynne that to me wyll do ony good. But whan I was ryche / all men me honoured & worshypped / and now eue ry man hath of me scoime and despyte. And now I well wote that Cordeyll my yongest daughter sayd me trowth / whan she sayd. As moche as I had soo moche sholde I be loued. And all the whyle & I had good / so longe was I loued and honoured for my ryches. But my two daughters glosed me tho / & now of me they lette lytell pryce. And loth tolde me Cordeill / but I wolde not byleue it ne vnderstonde. & therfore I lete her go fro me as a thyng that I lette lytell pryce of / & now wote I neuer what for to do / syth my two daughters haue me thus deceyued / that I so moche loued / & now must I nedes seke her that is in an other londe / that lyghtely I lete her go from me without ony rewarde of yestes. And she sayd / that she loued me as moche as she ought to loue her fader by all maner of reason. And tho I sholde haue axed her no more. And thole that me otherwyle behesteth thorough ther fals speche / now haue me deceyued. In this maner Leyr longe tyme began to make his moone / And at the last he shope hym to the see and passed ouer in to fraunce / and axed and alpyed where the quene myght be founde. And men tolde hym where she was. And whan he came to the cyte that she was in pryuely he sent his squyre vnto the quene / for to telle her that her fader was come to her for grete nede. And whan the squyre came to the quene / he tolde her euery deale of her systers from the begynnynge vnto the ende. Cordeill the quene anone tooke golde and spluce

plente / & toke it to the squire in coulell  
 that he sholde go & bere it to her fader /  
 & that he sholde go in to certayne cyte / &  
 hym aray & walthe / & thenne come apen  
 to her. And bynng with hym an honest  
 company of knyghtes. xl. at the lest with  
 ther mycne. And thenne he sholde sende  
 to her lorde the kyng / & feyne that he we  
 re come for to speke with his doughter /  
 & hym for to see & so he dyde. And whan  
 the kyng & the quene herde that they ca  
 me / with moche honour they hym recey  
 ued. And the kyng of fraunce tho lete  
 sende thourgh all his reame / & comaun  
 ded that all men sholde be as entendant  
 to kyng Leyr the quenes fader in all  
 maner of thynges as it were vnto hym  
 self. Whan kyng Leyr had dwelled the  
 re a moneth & more / he tolde to the kyn  
 ge and to the quene his doughter / how  
 his two eldest doughters hadde hym ser  
 ued. Agampe anone lete ordeyne a grete  
 hoste of frenshmen and sente in to By  
 tayne with Leyr the quenes fader for to  
 conquere his londe apen & his kyngdom  
 And Cordeill also came with her fader  
 in to Bytayne / for to haue the reame  
 after her faders dethe . And anone they  
 wente to shyppe & passed the see and ca  
 me in to Bytayne and fought with the  
 felons / and them scomfyted and slewe /  
 And tho had he his londe apen / & after  
 lpyed thre yere & helde his reame in peas  
 and afterwarde deyed. And so Cordeill  
 his doughter thenne lete entre hym with  
 moche honour at Lepyestre.

¶ Anno mūdi .iiij. M. iij. C. xlix. Et ante  
 xpī natiuitatē .viij. C. liij.

**A** Malius sone to Joam regned  
 on the Jewes. xxix. yere / after the  
 whiche h kyngdom of Jewes was with  
 out kyng. xiiij. yere. This man worlhy  
 ped the goddess of Seyt (vt pz. ij. para.  
 xv.) ¶ Jeroboam sone to Joam regned  
 on Israell. xli. yere the whiche was man

ly and victoripous . for he ouercame the  
 kyng of Sirie / and restored Israel and  
 Damask / after the worde of Jono the  
 prophete. But he was not good. Ther  
 fore sayth Austyn. Vt good men regne /  
 they prouffyte many men . And vt ylle  
 men regne / they hurte many men.

¶ Anno mūdi .iiij. M. iij. C. lxxviij. Et  
 ante xpī natiuitatē .viij. C. xi.

**O** Zias or Azarias sone to Amalie  
 regned on the Juy .liij. yere / the  
 whiche lpyed well afore our lorde / of h  
 is none euyl thyng wyrtten. but that he  
 vsurped the dignyte of preesthode vnder  
 Azari / the whiche he forbode hym. for y  
 whiche cause our lorde stroke hym with  
 a leper (vt pz. ij. para) ¶ Dzee byshop  
 & prophete was this tyme h fyrst of the  
 .xij. that is sende apenst the .xij. tribus /  
 ¶ Joel the seconde of the .xij. prophecyed  
 of Juda. Ananias the thyrde prophecyed  
 apenst many people. Abdias the fourth  
 of the .xij. pphecyed apenst Edom. ¶ Za  
 charias sone to Jeroboam regned in Is  
 rael .vi. monethes / the whiche began to  
 regne the .xxxviij. yere of Dzas & was  
 nought in his lpyngge as his predes  
 sours were . And Sellum slewe hym / &  
 regned a moneth. And Manahen slewe  
 hym & toke his kyngdom (vt pz. iij. re  
 gū) This Manahen regned. x. yere / the  
 whiche began to regne the .xxxix. yere of  
 Dzas / & he ruled hym mylcheuouly /  
 And our lorde toke hym in the power of  
 the kyng of Assurion. And he payed to  
 hym a thoulande talentes of syluer (vt  
 pz. iij. regū) ¶ Phaleia sone to Mana  
 hen regned in Israel. ij. yere / & he began  
 to regne the l. yere of Dzas / & he was  
 nought in his lpyngge . ¶ Phale slewe  
 Phaleia / & regned. xx. yere / & he began  
 to regne the .liij. yere of Dzas / & dyde as  
 othe curlyd men dyde (Plura vide. iij.  
 regū) And after this. Israel was with  
 out ony kyng. viij. yere.

How Morgan & Conedag that were newwes to Cordeill warred vpon her/ and put her in pylson.

*Conedag & Morgan frow cordeill.*  
**N**ow as kynge Lepr was deed Cordeill his yongest doughter regned the .x. yere of Drias kynge of Jury. And after her regned Conedag the .xv. yere of Drias/ & Cordeill h was Leprs yongest doughter after the dech of her fader had all the londe .v. yere. And in h meane tyme deyed her loide Agampe h was kynge of fraunce / & after his dech she was wydowe. And there came Morgan & Conedag h were Cordeills systers lones & to her had enuyte/ for as moche as ther aunte holde haue the londe . So h bytwene them they ordeyned a grete power/ and vpon her warred gretely. And neuer they rested tyll they had her taken and put her vnto dech. And tho Morgan & Conedag seled all the londe / & departed it bytwene them. And they helde it .xij. yeres . And whan that thole .xij. yeres were gone/ there beganne bytwene them a grete debate / so that they warred strongely togyders. And eueryche of theym dyde other moche displease . for Morgan wolde haue all the londe from beyonde Humbre that Conedag helde/ But he came agaynst hym with a grete power/ so that Morgan durst not abyde but fledde awaye in to Walys. And Conedag pursued hym/ and toke hym and slewe hym. And tho came Conedag agayne and seled all the londe in to his honde & helde it And regned after .xxiij yere. And thenne he deyed and lyeth at newe Tropy.

*Conedag frow Morgan.*

And by cause the matere conteyneth moost comodpouly togyder of the kynges of Brytayne/ now called Englonde/ for the tyme of them is not certaynly known/ what tyme of the worlde the kynges folowen regned. Therfore they shall be togyder / tyll it be comen vnto

Guentolen kynge of Brytayne / now called Englonde.

How Reynolde that was Conedags lone regned after his fader/ & in his tyme it rayned blood thre dayes in tokes nyng of grete dech.

**A**nd after this Conedag regned Reynolde his lone/ h was a wyse knyght & an hardy & curteys/ h well & nobly gouerned the londe / & wonder well made hym beloned of all maner of folke . And in his tyme rayned blood h lasted thre dayes. As god wolde/ & loone after ther came a grete deche of people/ for hostes withoute nombre of people fought / tyll that almyghy god therof toke mercy & pyte & tho gan it cesse. And this Reynolde regned .xxij. yere & deyed and lyeth at Porke.

How Gorbodian regned in peas that was Reynoldes lone.

**A**fter this Reynold that was Conedags lone/ regned Gorbodian h was this Reynoldes lone .xv. yere/ and thenne he deyed & lyeth at Porke.

How Gorbodian had .ij. lones & how that one slewe h other for to haue h her cage/ & how Pdoyne ther moder slewe h other/ wherfore the londe was destroyed.

**S**o whan this Gorbodian was deed/ his two lones that he hadz became stoute & proude / and euer warred togyder for the londe. And that one was called ferres/ and that other porres. And this ferres wolde haue all the londe / but that other wolde not luffre hym. This ferres had a felonous herte & thought thugh treason to slee his brother. But pryuelly he wente in to fraunce/ and there abode with the kynge Syward. tyll vpon a tyme whan he came

ayen / & fought with his brother ferres /  
 But ful euyl it happed tho / for he was  
 slayne fyrst. Whan Pdoyne ther moder  
 wyll that Pores was deed / she made  
 grete sorowe / for by cause that she loued  
 hym more than þ other. And thoughte  
 hym for to slee pryuely. And pryuely she  
 came to her sone vpon a nyght w two  
 knyues & therwith kyfte his throte / and  
 the body in to smale peces. Who herde  
 euer suche a curlyd moder / that slewe w  
 her owne hondes her owne sone. And  
 longe tyme after lasted the repret & sha  
 me to the moder / that for by cause of þ  
 one sone she murdered the other / and so  
 lost them bothe.

How foure kyniges curtosly helde  
 all Brytayne / and what were ther na  
 mes ye shall here after.

As the two brethern were deed /  
 they lefte not behynde them no  
 ther sone ne doughter / ne none other of  
 the kynrede that myght haue the herpta  
 ge. And for as moche as þ strongest men  
 dioue & scomfyted the feblest & toke all  
 ther londes / so þ in euery countree they  
 had grete warre & stryf vnder them / but  
 amonge all other thyniges / there were a  
 monge them in the couñtree / þ ouercame  
 all þ other / & thugh ther myght & stren  
 gthe they toke all the londes / & euery of  
 them toke a certayne countree / & in his  
 couñtree lete calle hý kyng / & one of them  
 was called Scater / & he was kyng of  
 Scotlonde / & þ other was called Dawa  
 lier / & he was kyng of Loegers / & of all  
 the londe þ was Lotrins / that was Bru  
 tes sone / the thyrde was called Rudac /  
 & he was kyng of Walys / & the fourth  
 was called Cloten / & was called kyng  
 of Cornewayle. But this Cloten sholde  
 haue had all the londe by reason / for by  
 cause that there was no man that wyll  
 none so ryght an heyre as he was. But  
 they that were strongest sette yf tell by

them that were of lesse estate / & therfore  
 this Cloten had no more londe amonge  
 them but Cornewaylle.

Of kyng Donebant that was Clo  
 tens sone wanne the londe.

This Cloten had a sone that was  
 called Donebant / that after the  
 dech of his fader became an hardy man  
 and a fayr & a curteys / so that he passed  
 all the other kyniges of fayrenesse & of  
 worthynesse / & anone as he was knyght  
 he wyll well þ whan his fader lyued / he  
 was moost ryghtful heyre of all the lon  
 de / and sholde haue had by reason. But  
 the other kyniges that were of a moche  
 more strengthe than he was / toke from  
 hym his londe. And afterwarde this  
 Donebant ordened hym a grete power /  
 & conquered fyrst all þ londe of Loegers  
 & after he wolde haue conquered all the  
 londe of Scotlonde & Walys. And Sca  
 ter came with his men & paue hym ba  
 tayll. And Rudac came ayen with his  
 Walysmen for to helpe hym. But loo  
 it befell that Rudac was slayne / & also  
 Scater in playne batayll. And so Do  
 nebant had the vycory / & conquered all  
 the londe / & well mayntened it in peas  
 and in quete / that neuer before it was  
 so well mayntened.

How Donebant was the fyrst kyng  
 that euer bare crowne of golde in Bry  
 tayne.

This Donebant lete make hym a  
 crowne of golde / & wered þ crow  
 ne vpon his heed as neuer kyng dyde be  
 fore / & he ordened a statute / þ & a man  
 had done neuer so moche harme & myzt  
 come in to the Temple / there sholde no  
 man hym mysdo / but go there in sauete  
 & in prais / and after go in to what lon  
 de or couñtree that hym pleased without  
 ony harme / and yf ony man sette ony

honde vpon hym / he thenne sholde lese his lyf. And this Donebant made the towne of Halmesbury / and the towne also of the Hyle. And whan he had reigned well & worthely .xl. yere / thenne he deped & lyeth at newe Troy.

How Brenne and Belin departed by twene them the londc after the deche of Donebant ther fader. And of the warre betwixt them.

And after þ this Donebant was decd / his sones þ he had departed the londc bytwene them / as ther fad had ordeyned / so that Belin his eldest sone had all þ londc of Brytayne / from Humber Southwarde. And his brother Brenne had all the lond from Humber vnto Scotlonde. But for as moche þ Belin had the better parte. Brenne therfore wexed wroth / and wolde haue had more of the londc / & Belin his brother wolde graunte hym no more / wherfore cotake & warre arole amonge them two. But Brenne the yonger brother had no myght ne strength apenst Belin / & therfore Brenne thrygh coucell of his folke wente from thens in to Norweye to the kyng Dilynges / & prayed hym of helpe & locour for to conquere all the londc vpon Belin his brother / vpon þ couenaüt that he wolde haue his doughter to wyf & the kyng Dilynges hym graunted / And Belin anone as his broð was gone to Norweye he lealed in to his honde all the londc of Northumberlonde / & toke all the castelles & lete them be arraped & kepte the costes of the see / that Brenne sholde not arryue in no syde / but that he were taken. The kyng Dilynges lete assemble a grete hoste / and delyuered his doughter to Brenne & all the people that he had assembled. And this damoy sell Samie had longe tyme loued a kyng that was called Gutlagh / & to hym she tolde all her counsell / how þ Brenne

sholde her haue / and her lede with hym for euer more / and so he sholde lese her but that she myght forsake Brenne. And whan Gutlagh had herde this tydynge / he lay for to aspye Brenne with as many shyppes as he myght haue. Soo the two fletes mette togyder / & longe tyme they faught / soo that Brennes men courned apen & were dylcomfyted. And kyng Gutlagh toke Samie & put her in to his shyppe. And Brenne shamefully fledde thens as a man dylcomfyted. And this kyng Gutlagh wolde haue gone in to his owne couñtree / but there came vpon hym suche a grete tempest that fyue dayes lasted / so that though that tempest he was dryuen in to Brytayne with thre shyppes & no moo / and tho that kepte the costes of the see / toke Gutlagh & Samie & all his folke / and them presented to Belin. And Belin put them in pylson.

How Belin droue out of his londc kyng Gutlach of Denmark & Samie.

It was not longe after þ Brenne came agayne with a grete nauy / and sente to his brother Belin / that he sholde yelde apen his londc to his wyfe and his folke / and his castelles also. Or elles he wolde destroye his londc. Belin dradde noo thynge his malyce / and wolde no thynge do after that he hadde sayd. Wherfore Brenne came with his folke and fought with Belin. And then Brenne was dylcomfyted and his folke he clayne / and hymself fledde with .xij. men in to fraunce. And this Belin that was Brennes brother wente thenne to Yorke / and toke counseyll what he sholde do with kyng Gutlagh. for kyng Gutlagh profered to become his man / and for to holde his londc of hym / yeldyng yere .xli. of syluer for euermore / & for surenesse of this couenaüt to be kepte. Gutlagh sholde bynge hys good

hostage / & to hy sholde do homage & his folke / & yet he sholde swere vpon a boke þat it sholde neuer be broke ne fayled. Belin tho by counseyll of his folke graunted hym his ayrnge / & so Gutlagh became his man. And Belin vndertoke of hym his homage by an othe & by wrytynge þat same couenautes. And vpon these couenautes kynge Gutlagh toke Samie & his folke & went thens / & tomed ayen to Denmark. Euer more after were the couenautes holden & the treuage payed / tyll the tyme that Honelus was kynge of Denmark & allo of this londe thorough his wyf Gildeburgh that he had spoused for she was ryghte heyre of this londe.

**T**his Belin dwelled tho in peas / & worthypfully hym helde amonge his barons / & he made foure ryall wayes / one from the east in to the west / & that was called Watlynge strete / & an other from the north vnto the south / & that is called Ikelme strete. And two other wayes he made in bossynge thurgh out the londe that one is called fosse / & þe other fosse dyke. And he mayntened well the good lawes þat Donebant his fader had made. & ordened in his tyme / as before is sayd

**H**ow acordement was made betwene Breune and Belin thorough Cornewen ther moder.

**B**reune that was Belins brother had longe tyme dwelled in fraunce / & there had conquered a grete lordshipp thurgh maryage. For he was duke of Bourgoyne thorough the doughter of the duke fewyn þat he had spoused þat was ryghte heyre of þe londe. And this Breune ordened a grete power of his folke / & also of fraunce / & came in to this londe for to fygh with Belin his brother. And Belin came ayenst hym with a grete power of Brytons / & wolde tho haue yeuened hym batayll. But ther moder Cornewen that tho lyued had herde þat

one brother wolde haue destroyed that other / & went betwene her lonces & them made acorde with moche payne. So that at the last tho two brethern with moche blysse wente togyder in to newe Troy / that now is called London / & there they dwelled a yere. And after they toke ther counseyll for to go & conquere all fraunce. & so they dyde / and biente townes & destroyed the londe bothe in lengthe & in brede. And the kynge of fraunce paue them batayll with his power / but he was ouercome / & paue truage vnto Belin & to his brother. And after þat they wente forth vnto Rome & conquered Rome & all Lombardy & Germany / & toke homage & feaute of erles barons & of all other. And after they came into this londe of Brytayne / & dwelled there w<sup>th</sup> Brytons in Joye & rest. And tho made Breune the towne of Brystowe / & after he wente ouer to his owne lordshipp / & ther dwelled he all his lyf. And Belin dwelled at newe Troy / & there he made a fayre gate that is called Belynges gate after his owne name. And whan this Belin had regned nobly .xi. yere he dyed and lyeth at newe Troy.

**H**ow kynge Combrat<sup>9</sup> slewe the kynge of Denmark / for by cause þat he wolde not paye his truage as he sholde.

**A**nd after this Belin regned his lone Combratus a good man and a worthyp. And the kynge of Denmark wolde not paye to hym his truage that is to saye / a thoulande ponde as he had sworne by othe for to paye it / & also by wrytynge recorde to Belin his fader. Wherfore he was euill apayed & wroche / and assembled a grete hoste of Brytons and wente in to Denmark & slewe the kynge Gutlagh / and brought the londe in subgeccyon all newe. And toke of the folke feaute and homage / and after went ayen in to his owne lon



de. And as he came forth by Orkeney/  
he founde .xxx. shyppes full of men and  
wymmen belyde y coste of the see. And  
the kynge axed what they were. And an  
Erle that was mayster of them all cur-  
teply answered vnto the kynge & sayd.  
That they were exiled out of Spayne/  
and so that they had traueyled half a ye-  
re and moxe in the see / to wyte yf they  
myght fynde any kynge in ony londe y  
of them wolde haue pyte or mercy to gy-  
ue them ony londe in ony couñtree where  
in they myght dwelle and haue rest/and  
become his lyege men/and to hym wol-  
de do homage and feaute whyle that he  
lyued/and to his hepres after hym/and  
of hym and of his hepres holde that lon-  
de. And whan the kynge this herd/he  
had pyte of hym/and gaue them an yle  
all wyldernesse/there that no man was  
dwellynge sauf oonly wylde beest. And  
the Erle thanked moche the kynge and  
became his man and dyde hym homa-  
ge and feaute/and toke all his folke and  
wente in to the same yle. And the Erle  
was called Irlamall/and therfore he le-  
te calle the londe Irlonde after his owne  
name. This kynge Cozmbriatus came  
ayen in to his londe and regned .xxv. ye-  
re/and after he deyed and lyeth at newe  
Troy.

¶ Anno mundi .liij. M. liij. C. xl. Et an-  
te xpi natiuitatē .vij. C. lvi.

**I**othan lone to Olias regned in  
the Jury .xvi. yere/ of this Joathan  
no thynge is wyten of/ but that he toke  
not awaye excelsa as other dyde (vt pz  
.ij. para) ¶ Amarias was byshop. And  
Plapas the noble prophete was in his  
dayes. ¶ Olympias with the Grekes  
began the fyrste yere of Joathan after  
Iosephus. And after Beda Troy was  
destroyed foure hondred yere afore the  
fyrst Olympias began vnder Elalo a  
Iuge of Athens. In whiche Coribus ga

te the chyualry amongs all men. Olym-  
pus is the name of an hylle in Grecia/  
the whiche for his precyousnesse is callid  
the hylle of god. And after Jerom one  
Olympias conteyneth fully foure yere/  
in the whiche foure yere / foure yere-  
ly pynces are made. And these Olympias  
des are places ordeyned to the worshyp  
of Iupater vnder the hylle of Olympo  
And the lawe of this is this. That who  
some euer is best in ony chyualry/ what  
gyfte someuer he desyret he shall haue.

¶ Anno mudi .liij. M. liij. C. lvi. Et an-  
te xpi natiuitatē .vij. C. liij.

**A**cham the lone of Joathan reg-  
ned on the Jewes .xvi. yere / of  
this Acham noo thynge that is good is  
wyten for he forloke our lord. And our  
lorde stroke hym with his owne people  
strongely/and with the kynges of Sirri  
(vt pz .ij. para. xxviij.) ¶ Achitob this  
tyme was byshop. Dzee kynge of Israel  
regned .ix. yere the whiche began to reg-  
ne the .xij. yere of Acham kynge of Jewes  
This Dzee dradde not god / for he ly-  
ued nought. And he was the last kynge  
of Israel. And in the .ix. yere of his reg-  
ne he was taken of Salmanasar. And  
Israel was translated in to Assirias (vt  
habet. liij. regū. xvij.)

¶ Anno mundi .liij. M. liij. C. lxx. Et an-  
te xpi natiuitatē .vij. C. xl.



¶ Rome.

**A**fter Euseby Rome was made  
in y<sup>e</sup> hylle of Palatin the fourth  
yere of Acham kynge of Jewes of two  
brethern Romulus and Remus .xi. hal  
Mañ. the .viij. Olympiades begynnyn  
ge. Josephus and Bede layen the .vi.  
Olympiades/and so they dyfferre a ye  
re. Neuertheles it is redde other men to  
haue regned aboute that place myghely  
in Ptalp. That is to wyte Janus. Picus  
famius. Latinus/the whiche vnto Ene  
as regned about two hondred yere. And  
thenne afterwarde from this Eneas to  
Romulus/it was regned vnder .xv. go  
uernours .iiij. L. xxij. yere. After that  
fro the cyte was made vnto the laste ye  
re of Tarquyne the proude/it was reg  
ned vnder .viij. kynges about two hon  
dred and .xliij. yere. Thenne afterwar  
de vnder Senatours and Counsellers/  
vnto Julius Cezar Emperour/by foure  
hondred .lxiiij. yere. Romulus the fyrst  
of Romayns/of whom they ben called  
in latyn Romans / made the cyte to be  
named Rome after his name.. The whi

che gadred togyder the people on euery  
syde an hondred of the sage men & wy  
lest he chole/through the coulel of whom  
all thynge he dysposed/the whiche he na  
med Senatours for y<sup>e</sup> tyme of ther aege  
And he made ther names to be wyrtyn  
in golden letters/wherfore we wyte no  
ble faders & thynge so yet. Also he cal  
led .M. men of armes the whiche he na  
med Milites ( a numero millenario )  
But these were no noble blood. Therfo  
re as laynt Austyn sayth (De ciuita. dei)  
& also ther was longe warre betwixt the  
Sabyns & them. for Romulus toke ma  
ny wymmen of the noble blood of Sa  
byn/ & maryed them to that vnnoble  
blood. Of this Romulus Drosius wy  
teth moche euyl (vt patet in libro suo)  
¶ About this tyme Herodach the kyn  
ge of Babylon sende grete gyfts to Eze  
chie the kynge of Jewes (vt pz. iiij. res  
gum. xx.) And thenne the kyngdom of  
Babylon begon.

¶ Anno mundi .iiij. M. lxxij. Et ante  
xpi nateuitate .viij. L. xxviij.

**E**zechias the .xiiij. kynge of Jewes  
a good childe of a curlyd fad reg  
ned with a parfytte herte to oure lorde.  
And he restored the hous of god/ & there  
was none lyke hym afore nor after a  
monge the kynge of Jewes/therfore our  
lorde god glorifyed hy. for whan Sen  
nacherib the kynge of Assurion came a  
penst Ezechias w<sup>th</sup> a myghty holte / our  
lorde stroke his people and slewe an .L.  
lxxv. of fyghtynge men/ & Sennaches  
ryb fledde shamfully (vt pz. iiij. regu. ix  
et. ij. para. xxij.) ¶ Sadoch this tyme  
was byghe byshop there.

¶ Anno mudi .iiij. M. v. L. i. Et añ xpi  
nateuitate .vi. L. lxxxviij.

**M**anasses kynge of Jewes reg  
ned .lv. yere/and he was an euyl

childe of a good fader / for he dyde more curledy than ony þ was afore hym. for he slewe the prophetes of god / that the stretes in Jerusalem were all bloody. And he made Plai the prophete to be lawen the peces with a lawe of tree. Wherfore the kynge of Assurion wasted the Jury / & toke Manasses & put hym in pryson. And after Manasses repented his trel / paas & cryed for mercy to our lord / and was herde . Thenne he was restored to his kyngdom / & he amended his lyl (vt pz. iij. regū. xxi. et. ij. para. xxxij) ¶ Sel lumb was byshop / & Echias after hym This tyme the. vij. wyle men had worlshypp in Grece. s. Talc. Solon. Chilon Poireandus. Eldobolus. Bias. Pitacus. This Talus founde fyrst the defawte of the sonne & th moone (Vide plu. aug. viij. de ci. dei) ¶ Numa the seconde kynge this tyme regned in Rome. xliij. yere / the whiche was a grete worlshyper of fals goddes. he fulfilled Rome soo full / þ he myght haue no place for hym self to dwelle in. This man put January & february to the begynnynge of the yere (Vide plura in august. de ciui. dei.) ¶ Aboue all reason it is meruaylle þ su che men so excedyng in wytte in all thyn ges that was ylle receded fro the knowle ge of very god. ¶ Amon kynge of Ier ues regned two yere / the whiche was nought in his lypunge. & he was stryken of his seruauntes / and he deyed without ony repentaunce.

¶ Anno mūdi .iij. M. v. C. lviij. Et an te xpi natiuitate .vi. C. xli.

**I**lias the sone of Amon at .viij. yere of his aege began to regne & regned. xxxi. yere / a good childe of a per uerle fader. in his yonge aege he sought the grace of god. And in that grace lau dably abode vnto his ende. His relygyous lyl & his werkes ye may see (iij. rez gū. xxij. et. ij. para. xxxij) ¶ Azastus the

sone of Elchie was byshop. ¶ Tobias about this tyme deyed. And he was a ve ry holy man. And he prophcyed the de struccyon of Jerusalem. ¶ Tullius Ho stilius was the thyrde kynge in Rome. And saynt Austyn sayth in his boke de ciuitate dei. that from Rome was made vnto August the Emperour / there was so contynuell bataylle / that it was take for a meruaylle / and they were one yere without bataylle / excepte. xliij. in Nume dayes / in the whiche was contynuell pe as. And this Tullius by cause he hadde reste / he dyde curledy to his neyghbours and thenne he was slayne & all his houl holde with a stroke of lpyghtnyng. ¶ Na bugodonosor this tyme was kynge of Babylon / a manly man & a victoripous for he was the scourge of our lord / to punyssh the synnes of many people. This man was kynge of Babylon / & after he conquered the kyngdom of Al surion & made it one monarche. But many wayes scrypture spekech of this man / now good / and now euyl. And for by cause scrypture concludeth that he en ded his lyl in the lounge of god / by the prayer of Danpell / and in the knowle ge of one very god / some doctours saye. he is laued / and some saye it is doute. ¶ Ancus Marcius the fourth kynge of Rome regned. xxxij. yere. This man for grace & truste that he had to Tarquin<sup>us</sup> Pilsus made hym the gouernour of his childern. And Ayres & he ylle rewarded hym. ¶ Danpell yet a childe delyuered saynt Susan / & stode in the conceyte of the kynge with his felowes / & after war de he dysculled the dreames of the kynge and was made a man of grete honeste / (vt pz Danielis pu<sup>us</sup>) ¶ Joathas the se conde sone of Josie regned on the Ier ues thre monethes / & was made kynge by the people / and he was not good. And Pharao toke hym and ladde hym in to Egypte / & made his elder brother kynge (vt pz. iij. regū. xxiij.)

Anno mudi .iiij. M. v. C. lxxvij. Et ante xpi natiuitate .v. C. xi.

**I**Dachim or Jeconyas the lone of Josie was made kynge of Jewes by Pharao & regned .xi. yere. And by cause he lyued nought/ne herde not the prophetes. Nabugodonosor toke hym & made hym his seruaunt thre yere. And he rebelled apenst hym afterwarde / & he toke hym & was about to haue ladde hy vnto Babylon / but his couzell was chaüged / & so Nabugodonosor slewe hym in Jerusalem & cast his body ouer the walles after the prophecy of Jeremy / & toke with hym the vesselles of our lorde Jhesu (vt pz. ij. para. vlt) Samias was byllshop & Drias prophete was slayne of Jecony & Jecony & Jeremi was presente. Joaschim lone to Jeconias regned in the Jury thre monethes & lyued nought / & therfore anone he was meued & he sholde regne no lenger / & was bounden & translated in to Babylon / & many with hym were translated (vt pz. iij. regu. xliij.) Daniell. Ananias. Azarias. Mylael. Ezechiell & Hardocheus / all these with Joachym the kyng were ladde in to Babylon / ponge childern for by cause they were of the noble blood.

Anno mundi .iiij. M. vi. C. Et ante xpi natiuitate .vi. C.

**S**edechias the thyrde lone of Josie regned on the Jewes .xi. yere / this Sedechias was a mylcheuous man in his luyngge. And he wolde not here Jeremy the prophete / therfore he perpyshed wretchedly / and all the Jury with hym. And his eyen were put out / & his childern were slayne (vt pz. iij. regum) Zoldech the lone of Azarie was byllshop / and was translated fro Jerusalem by Nabugodonosor in to Babylon Abacuh propheted apenst Nabuch at Babylon. And there be oppnyons what ty

me this Abacuh was. This Abacuh brought mete to Danyel whan he was put to the lyons after Jerom. And here endeth the fourthe Age / and the hystory of Regum.



**T**his tyme the Temple of Salomon was biente of the Caldees & Jerusalem was destroyed / this Temple stode .cccc. and .xliij. yere / that is to wyte / fro the fyrst makynge / the whiche was made the fourth yere of Salomon And fro & destruceyon / the whiche was made by Tyfus / that is to wyte .xliij. yeres after the passyon of Crysle. Pylcus Torquin<sup>9</sup> the fyfth kyng of Rome regned. And he made Capitoliu (quali caput solū) for in the groude werke was foude an heed without ony body / as for prophecy of thynges to come. For there afterwarde the Senatours late as one heed of all & worlde. This tyme thre childern were caste in to a furnays brennyng / and with a myracle they were delyuered / as it is sayd (in dan. vi) Nabugodonosor the lone of Nabugodonosor the myghty regned in Babylon / this man made an hynngyng garden with myghty coltes for his wyf / and many meruayllous thynges he dyde. So that he wolde be named to excede Hercules in his gretnesse and strengthe. Enilmerodach brother to the later Nabugodonosor / regned in Babylon. This man

toke Joachim out of pylson. and worlht  
ped hym. his fader deed body after the  
counseyll of this man he deuuded to an  
hundred grypes. lest that he sholde ryle  
from dethe to lyue. ¶ Nota. This  
playe of the Chesse was foude of Xerle  
a Philolopher. for the correcton of Enil  
merodach this tyme the kynge of Baby  
a grete tyraunte. the whiche was wonte  
to kyl his owne maysters and wyle mē  
And for he durste not rebuke hym open  
ly/ with luche a wytty game/ he procu  
red hym to be meke.

Anno mūdi. iiii M. vi L. xxxiiij  
Et añ xpi nati. v L. lxxv.

**S** Alathiel of the line of criste was  
sone to Jecony the kynge of Je  
wes. the whiche he gate after the transl  
migracōn of Babylon. as Mark y Buā  
geliste sayth. ¶ Seruius Tullius the six  
te kynge of Rome was of a bonde con  
dycyon on the moders syde. for she was  
a captiue mayde. but she was of the no  
ble blode/ This man had grete louyng  
and nobly he bare hym in euery place/  
Thre hylles to the cyte he put. and dy  
ched y walles rounde aboute. ¶ Regu  
sar Sabulardach & Balthasar were bre  
thern/ the whyche regned one after a no  
ther and were kynges in Babylon. And  
Balthasar was y laste kynge of Baby  
lon/ y whiche was slayne of Darius &  
Circ<sup>o</sup> Plura vide daniel. v.

¶ Incipit monarchia Perlarum

**D**arius vnclē to Ciro. sclowe in y  
kynngdom with Ciro translated  
the kynngdomes of Babylon. Caldecs  
in to the kynngdom of Persar & Medoz  
Cyrus was Emperour .xxx. yere. This  
Cyrus helde the monarche hole at Per  
ses. Of this man prophced Playas/ &  
he destroyed Babylon/ and slewe Bal  
thasar kynge of Babylon/ and he wor

shypped gretly Danyel the Jewes he sent  
de home ayen / that they sholde buylde  
the Temple of god (vt p3 Esdre p11)  
¶ Babylon that stronge castell was des  
troyed & his power was take from hym  
as it was prophced. This was the fyr  
ste cyte & the grettest of all the worlde/ of  
the whiche Incredyble thynges are wy  
ten/ and this that was so stronge in one  
nyght was destroyed / that it myght be  
shewed to the power of god/ to the whi  
che power all other ben but a sperke and  
duste. for it is sayd forsoth/ that it was  
Incredyble to be made w mannes hon  
de or to be destroyed with mānes streng  
the / wherof all the worlde myght take  
an ensample & it wolde or myght be en  
fourmed. ¶ Tarquinius Superbus was  
the .viij. kynge of Rome/ and he regned  
.xxxv. yere. This man concepued fyrste  
all the tormentes whiche are ordeyned  
for malefactours. As exile/ pylson/ wel  
les/ & galowes/ fetres & manacles/ chay  
nes & colours & luche other. And for his  
grete pryde & cruelnes god suffred hē to  
mylchyet / & in what maner of wyle it  
shall be shewed. He had a sone of the sa  
me name/ the whiche defoyled a worthy  
mannes wyf/ they called hym Collatin  
& his wyf was called Lucret. This Tar  
quinius y was this. viij. kynges sone afo  
relayd came vnto the ladys hous ablen  
te her husbonde to supper & to lodgyng  
And whan all were a slepe he rose with  
a swerde in his honde/ & with strengthe  
and fere he rauylshed the woman. And  
whan he was gone the next daye after/  
she sende vnto her fader and to her hul  
bonde/ for she was of grete kynne/ and  
thus she sayd to them. The kynnes so  
ne came hyther and as frende/ of whom  
I had no myltrust/ and thus he hath de  
foyled my chastyete and losse my name  
for euermore. Thenne her frendes sawe  
her wepe and pytously complayne/ and  
they comforted her as well as they cou  
de/ and sayd it was no vylany vnto her/

for it was apent her wyll. She answered & sayd / yet shall ther neuer woman excuse her by Lucrece for though she consented not to this dede / yet shall she not dye wout payne for þe dede. And w þe worde she had a knyfe redy vnder her mans tell / w the whiche she smote herself to þe herte. And for this cruelnes & this pyteous deeth the people of Rome arose & exiled the kyng for euermore & all his progenye. And thus sealyd these kynges of Rome & neuer was none after.

Of the gouernaunce of Rome tyll the Emperours beganne.

After this Tyaüt was deed the Romayns ordened þe ther sholde neuer be kyng more in Rome. But they wolde be gouerned fro þe forth by Consules. So whan tho kynges had reigned .ij. hondred yere & .xl. they made this statute / þe two Consules sholde be cholen / & they sholde gouerne the cyte & þe people. & for this cause these two were cholen / þe yf ony of them wolde make ony excellence / the other sholde gouerne hys. for ther was no thyng obeyed / but yf they consented both. Also they sholde not stonde in ther dygnyte passyng one yere / for this cause. That for dominacion of longe tyme / they sholde not vsurpe vpon them more than was ryght. In all this tyme the Emppre of Rome was not dilated passyng .xij. myle. The fyrst Consules þe were made / they called Lucius & the other Brutus / & these two men dyde grete thynges in ther tyme. But yet the people bare heuy of theyr domynacyon / wherfore they chose an other man / the whiche sholde haue more auctoryte than they / & they called hym Dictator. In this same tyme ther was a grete dyccencyon betwixt the people and the Senate wherfore they chose Trybunas w ther Juges ouer the people / & defended them fro wronge as sayth Plys. For the Dictator

whan he was chose he lasted .v. yere / & the Trybunas were remeued euer yere. But ye must vnderstonde þe shall not haue here after all the Consules named þe gouerned Rome bytwene þe cessyng of the kyngs / & the begynnynge of theemperours. for it were to longe to wyte / specpally whan euer yere were newe / syn þe one man myght be cholen so oftentymes as we rede / & also for the enduryng of ther gouernaunce. for they were gouernours of Rome .v. C. yere lxxij. So the moost famous men of these shall be reherced / after the fourme of Cronycles / & as they stonde in the boke was echeone after other.

Incipit historia libri Eldre.

Anno mundi .iiij. M. vi. C. lix. Et ante xpi natiuitate .v. C. xl.

Zorobabell after the comaundement of god fouded the Temple and made it parfytte / but it was longe after (vt þe Eldre .vi.) After the people of Jerusalem came fro Babylon / these two ruled Jhesus the hyghe preest as gouernour / and Zorobabell as duke. And this maner of gudyng was kepte vnto Herodes tyme / that the hyghe preestes sholde be pryncypall / and the dukes vnder theym. But the dukes were euer of the trybe of Juda / after the prophycye of Jacob. And vnder that good gudyng of preestes it is not redde / the people to haue receded fro þe very true fayth / as they dyde afore in the tyme of Jewes and of kynges. for then many tymes they ranne to ydolatre. Eldrias the preest of the kynrede of Aron this tyme exceded men in holynes / thorough whose grete wysedome all the Jewes state was holpen. Cambyses the sone of Siregnesed on the kyngdome of Persarum / the whiche comaunded myghtely the Temple of Jerusalem sholde not be buylded

ayen. His fader comaunded it sholde be buylded. This Cambyses made a cursyd Juge to be fleyed or hylte a lyue / & made his lone to lytte on his fads skynne / that thugh that drede he sholde drede fallhede & Juge ryghtwylly. This Cabyles had many names in holy scripture in the boke of Eldre. Arthaxerxes or Allurus in historia Judith / & was done vnder hym he called Nabugodonosor / or Dylfernes the prynce of his chualtry subdued many londes to his lorde. And at the last he came vnto Bethulecm / & there was slayne of Judith a woman / (vt pz Judith .ij. et .xiiij.) Enereydes regned in Perles half a yere. Darius regned at the Perlees / the whiche by the mocyon of Zorobabell comaunded the werke of the Temple to be taken ayen. And comaunded his prynces that on no wyle they sholde leite it / but sholde helpe it in all that they coude (vide plura in Eldre. v. de. v. tempore ambigui pp ter diuersitate doctor)

Circa anū mūdi .iiij. M. vij. C. xxxiiij  
Et ante xpī natiuitatē .iiij. C. lxx.

**A**Biuth lone to Zorobabell of the lyne of Cryste was. aboute this tyme. for of hym and of other folowynge vnto Joleph / no thynge is hadde in scrypture / but that Math. theuangelyst nombrech theym in the Genelogy / and therfore the certayn tyme of them duely can not be knowe. Joachim this tyme bysshop after Jolephus was called Joledech / vnder whome Jerusalem was buylded ayen (vt dicit. et hoc idem patet Neemie. xij.) In the .ij. hondred and xliij. yere after that Rome was made / the Romayns ordeyned two Consules in the stede of theyr kynge / the whiche sholde gouerne one yere alone / lest that by taryenge they sholde be proude / and that the one sholde correcte the other yf he exceded or erred. Brutus was the

fyrst Consull / & Lucius the seconde. And thenne was there a man that was called Dictator / the name of an offyce / & whiche the sholde go with the people ayenst their enemyes. Titus Puphis. Marcus consules. Thenne after the Romayns complayned grete on the condycions of the Consules. And then the power was put to .x. men / to an excedynge coste to the comyn people. for euerych one of them wente lyke a kynge / & nede caused them to leue that dygnyte. And they trusted neuer to reste the warre was so stronge agaynst them. Arthaxerxes was kynge of Perlay / vnder whom Eldras came to Jerusalem. And Neemias was butelere to the same kynge. Whom afterwarde he sente to buylde the walles of Jerusalem. Zerles regned after hym two monethes. Segdianus .viij. monethes / and lytell they dyde.

Circa annū mūdi .iiij. M. vij. C. lxx.  
Et ante xpī natiuitatē .iiij. C. xl.

**E**lyac is reherced in the lyne of Cryste in Math. xii. And more of hy is not had in scrypture. Eldras a holy man a conynge / and worshypfully was had amonge the people / this man came from Babylon with other / And he meued with very Charyte wente ayen to Babylon / & he myght wyne moo of Israell / and saue the soules and bynge them home with hym. In this tyme he repeyred the lawe and the holy boke the whiche the Caldees had brente / & an happy wytnesse to all the worlde he lefte in scrypture. He founde newe letters / and lygher in faccyon / the whiche though the holy goost fulfylled he came ayen to Jerusalem with a grete multytude / and with the kynges preuylege / that he sholde teche the people the lawe that he had repeyred. And there he deyed in a good aege. Neemias an he brewe butelere of kynge Arthaxerxes /

at his lordes comaundement went from Babylon in to Jerusalem. Wherof he had .xij. yere the ledyuge of the people. And the .v. yere he began to reapeyre the pates & h walls of Jerusalem the whiche werke he ended in two yere & four monethes / & h with greue Impedymentes. For the half of the people stode armed wout the cyte to wistonde the people of other nacyns. intendynge distroy them / & the other parte laboured in armes holdynge in the one honde stones for walles / & in the notable other honde a swerde / or nyghe by it (vide plura li<sup>o</sup> suo) ¶ Permenides a philosopher / & namely in mortall thynges was about this tyme. ¶ Socrates a phylosopher whiche vnderstode moche of the power of god / & he was Platoes mayster. Democritus Procras / & other / of whome the noble werkes abode were also.

¶ Circa annū mūdi .iiij. M. viij. L. Et ante xpi natiuitatē .iiij. L. lxxx.

**A** For is reherced in h lyne of Tryste in Math. i<sup>o</sup> / but no thyng of his dedes is wryten in h scrypture. ¶ Eslyalyb or Elylaphat succeeded Joachim in the bylshopryche (vt dicit Eusebi<sup>o</sup> et magister histo.) ¶ Camillus was Dictator at Rome / in whoos dayes myscheuous playes were ordeyned / h the pestylence tholde ceste atte Rome. Of these playes laynt Austyn treateth diligently in repleuyng the falthede of h goddes / the whiche desyred to be pleased with in che wretched playes. So shamefully these playes were vled with naked men & wpmen / that honest men & wpmen wolde not be at those playes / ne yet beholde them (vide pl<sup>a</sup> in Aug. de ciuitate dei) ¶ Darius Notus reigned at the perses .xix. yere. ¶ Plato h dyuyne phylosopher & Arystotle his discyppe were this tyme noble & famous clerkes. ¶ Titus Quinctus was Dictator at Rome / & he was a

couetous man / whom Austyn de ci. dei. byngeth in ayent coueytous & prowde crysten men. ¶ Caius was a Senatour vnder whome was a grete bataylle as gaynst the kyng of Turcoy. And .viij. thousande men of theym were taken / ¶ Marcus Valerius was also a noble Senatoure of Rome / the whiche with .ix. thousande Romayns foughte with the frenshmen & had the better & slewe many of them. ¶ Artaxerles kyng of perses called ayen to his empyre Egypte. And he put Nactanabo the kyng in Ethyopia / & many Jewes in to transmygracyon. Also he sende Dagolum a prynce ouer flow Jordan to alke ayen the trybute that was forgette / to Eldra that was the .viij. yere rente (ppter lab<sup>a</sup> terre) ¶ Artanus succeeded hym / & reigned a yere. ¶ Darius the sone of Artanus reigned with the perses .xxiiij. yere. This Darius was a myghty man & a bolde / the whiche asked of the Grekes a trybute / & that was the cause of the destruccyon of the monarche of persay / for it was translated to the Grekes / after the prophece of Danyell. for it is layd / that Darius brought .xv. hondred thousande fyghtynge men / whome all Alexander slewe. ¶ Jodas the sone of Elylaphat was h bylshop in Jerusalem in tyme of Dardachin. Johanes his sone succeeded hym. ¶ Arystotiles the moost subtyll & famous phylosopher lered this tyme. Senocrate h moost chast phylosopher was this tyme / with dyuerse other moo.

¶ By cause the kynges of Byrtayne nexte after lyued in peas moost parte / & lptell of them is wryten / therefore they shall be sette togyder / tyll it be comen to Cassibolon kyng of Byrtayne the whiche was brother to Lud.

**A** Nowhan Combrat was deed / reigned Guentholen / that was



his sone a man of good condicyons and well beloued/and he gouerned the londe well & wplysh. And he regned .xxv. yere/ and after he deyed / and lyeth att newe Troy.

How kynge Seysell regned & well gouerned the londe after Guentholen.

And after Guentholen regned his sone Seysell well & worthely gouerned the londe as his fader had done before hym. And he regned .xv. yere/ and deyed & lyeth at newe Troy.

How Kymor regned after Seysell his fader/ & he begate howan that regned after his fader in peas.

And after Seysell regned his sone Kymor well & nobly. xix. yere in peas/ & thenne after hym regned howan his sone. x. yere/ & thenne he deyed/ and lyeth at Ikaldowne.

How kynge Morwith deyed thorough mylchaunce/ thorough a beest.

After this howan regned Morwith/ and he became so wycked and so sterne/ tyll at the last a grete vengeance came vpon hym. for whan as he went vpon a tyme by the see syde / he mette with a grete beest/ that was black and horryble & hydeous. And he wende that it had be a whale of the see/ & bent an arblast and wolde haue slayne that beest with his quarell/ but he myght not smyte hym . And whan he had shot all his quarelles the beest anone came to hym in a grete hast/ & hym deuoured a lyue/ and soo he deyed for his wyckednesse/ thorough vengeance of god/ after that he had regned .ix. yere.

Of Grandobodiam that was Morwith sone that made Lambrydge.

After that this Morwith was dede/ the Brytons crowned Gran dobodiam his sone / & this Grandobodiam longe tyme regned in goodnes/ & made temples & towne/ this Grandobodiam made y towne of Lambrydge/ & the towne of Grauntham/ & was well beloued of ryche & poore/ for he honoured the ryche/ & helped the poore. This Grandobodiam had .iiij. sones. Arto gail. Helyder. Higanus & Petitur. And whan he had regned .xi. yere/ he deyed/ and lyeth at newe Troy.

Of Artogail þ was Grandobodias sone/ how he was made kynge / & lyeth put downe for his wyckednesse.

After Grandobodiam regned his sone Artogail. v. yere/ & he became so wycked & so sterne þ the Brytons wolde not suffre hym to be kynge / but put hym downe & made Helyder his brother kynge/ & he became so good & mercyable/ þ men hym called kynge of pyte. And whan he had regned. v. yere he had so grete pyte of his brother Artogail þ was kynge before. And anone he forsoke his dygnyte and toke his brother the crowne ayen & made hym kynge ayenst all the Brytons wyll. And after Artogail became so good of condicions/ þ he was well beloued of all the londe/ for he came so debonayr & free/ & dyde ryghte & reason to all maner of men . And he regned .vi. yere & deyed/ and lyeth at Grauntham.

How Helyder was made kynge after the dech of his brother.

After the dech of Artogail / the Brytons crowned an other tyme Helyder/ but his two brethern Higanus & Petitur had of hym grete spyte & scoone/ and ordeyned them helpe for to warre vpon the kynge ther brother/ and

Pirro/the whiche sende to hym for peas  
 & offryng to hys grete yestes. And then  
 this Consul answered & sayd/ther shal  
 no batayll cause me to flee/nor no mo/  
 neye corrupte me. for I had leuer comaun  
 de ryche men to do this & this than be ry  
 che myself. ¶ Tonucius subdued the cy  
 te of Argiuoz / & a legyon of knyghtes  
 of Rome he sende to Rome/and caused  
 them to be bete openly in the myddes of  
 the market/for they had them not leful  
 ly to the courte of Rome. for the lawe  
 was then kepte so streply at Rome/hy  
 they had fayled to do the due obseruaun  
 ce in vertue / they sholde be punysshed.  
 These Romayns & many afore & after  
 were the moost noble men of the worl  
 des honeste hy myght be/& in all maner  
 of vertue circumspect/as holy doctours  
 saye hy they put ther examples to crysten  
 men but not the Intencion/for they lac  
 ken the kepe of fayth.

¶ Incipiunt reges Egypti. qz alr no pt  
 leri cotinuaco.et interent reges Sirie.

**P**tholomeus Philodolphus this  
 tyme was kynge in Egypt/this  
 Philodolphus was the very worlshyper of  
 one god/& full gracypous to the Jewes/  
 of whom.xx.M.&.L.he delpyerd out of  
 captyppte/& hy he dyde hy he myght plea  
 se the god of Israel/of whome he herde  
 the meruayles.And his lawe he delpyred  
 to haue / nor it myght not be translated  
 in to none other langage but of deuoute  
 men/& hy a due reuerence & a solemp  
 nyte. Certayne men atempted to haue  
 wryten it amonge the Gentyle storpes/  
 whome the plage of god stroke tyll they  
 repented.This kynge sende vnto Elea  
 zar the bysshop / to sende to hym lerned  
 men / the whiche he dyde gladly (Vide  
 plura in mgro histo.)

¶ Anno mundi .iiij.M. ix. L.lix. Et an  
 te xpi natiuitate .ij. L.xl.

**E**lyud of the lyne of Cryste / gate  
 Eleazar as it is open in Math.i.  
 & more in scrypture is not had of hym/  
 ¶ Onias bysshop was lone to Symon  
 Symon was bysshop after hym the whi  
 che was a very relygyous man. He re  
 fourmed the Temple of god in to better  
 & encreaced the cyte of Ierusalem with  
 many other good thynghes. ¶ Semprio  
 nius. Appius. Claudius. Gneus. Gaius.  
 Artilius. Regulus. Emelius. Fabius this ty  
 me were Senatours at Rome. This  
 Semprius fought ayenst the countree of  
 Picentes/& almost hy chypualty on both  
 the partyes were slayne/excepte a fewe  
 Romayns were lefte a lyue/& subdued  
 the countree. Appius Claudius subdued Si  
 raculanus & the countre of Penos/& put  
 grete trybute to them. Atilius Regulus  
 a noble senatour ouercame thre kynghes  
 & .lxxij. cytees he subdued / & a dragon  
 of a .L.xv. foot he kylled. Afterwarde  
 whan he was ouer cruell ayenst his ene  
 myes / & denyenge to yeue them peas/  
 but yf they wolde paye a myghty trybu  
 te/they almost beyng in dylpayr and  
 fought ayenst hym/& ouercame hym &  
 his hoste & toke hym/and neuerthelesse  
 yet they wolde fayne haue had peas/but  
 this moost faythfull man had leuer dye  
 in paynes grete/than to yeue rest & peas  
 to curlyd peple. his lounge gretly saynt  
 Austyn exalteth. ¶ Emelius Fabius and  
 Gaius wolde haue delpyered Regulus but  
 they opteyned not. ¶ Ptholomias Euer  
 gites this tyme was kynge of Egypte a  
 victoryous prynce and a myghty. This  
 man subdued Siriam & Licilia / & the  
 moost parte of Alie/& toke ther goodes  
 & broughe them in to his countree. Ptho  
 lomeus Philopater / lone to Euergites  
 regned in Egypte.xvij.yere. This man  
 fought ayenst two brethern. Seneleu &  
 grete Antiochus/& he prostrated many a  
 thoulande/but neuertheles he prycayled  
 not (Vide plura in Johē sup Daniclis)  
 ¶ Chanbyball the moost curlyd kynge of

Denoz & of Affricanoz myghtely hated the Romayns/for he destroyed them almost to the vstermost ende/ & nyghe the cyte of Rome he destroyed. And so many noble men of Rome he slewe at one tyme/ & thre bushels full of golde rynges he drewe of ther fyngres. Also in a certayne water/ of the slayne bodyes of thyle Romayns / he made as it were a brydge/ that his holste myght passe. And at the last Cipio & noble senatour directed his holste to hym & scompted hym. & almost Cipioes holste of Romayns was slayne. ¶ Lucac<sup>o</sup> consull. Simpron<sup>o</sup> Valerius. fulnius lulin<sup>o</sup> gaius & Cipio/ ruled at Rome / this tyme the Romayns had peasone yere alone/ & it was take for a myracle & they had rest so longe. for afore this tyme in .iij. C. and. xl. yere the Romayns had neuer rest. Thele Conlules whan the yere was done gathered all the strengthe of Pscaly/ and they had in theyr holste .viij. M. armed men for drede of the frenshmen/ whom they dradde strongely/ & afterwarde the Romayns subdued them. ¶ Epiphanes the sone to Philopater regned in Egypte .xxiij. yere. Cleopatra doughter to grete Antiochus was his wyf. ¶ Antioch<sup>o</sup> magn<sup>o</sup> this tyme regned in Syrry/ the whiche dyde moche myschepet to the Jewes (vt pz Mach) ¶ Onias this tyme was byshop in Jerusalem. This Onias as for the tyranny of Antiochus fledde with many Jewes in to Egypte/ seynge hym to fulfyll the prophecye of Plaise .xix. & is to wyte. To buylde the Temple. But in that he synned/ for he sayd otherwyle than he thought. The kynge of Egypte gracpouly receyued hym/ & gaf hym the londe of Helipolces/ & there he buylde his Temple. ¶ Symon his sone was byshop at Jerusalem / after that his fader was fledde.

¶ Circa annū mundi .v. M. xxiiij. Et ante xpi natiuitatē .L. lxxv.

¶ Leazar of the lyne of cryst was about this tyme. Of hym no thynge wyften in scrypture/ but & Mach nombreth hym (vt pz pz?) ¶ Onias Pius was to the Jewes byshop this tyme an holy man/ & well beloued w god & man And not alonely w good men but euyll men also. At the last vnyghewylly was slayne of Adronito (vt pz. ij. machabeoz) ¶ Paulus Therencius Scipio Affricanus / these were Senatours at Rome. These two erected an holste ayenst Hanyball / & there almost the Romayns hope deped. for there was slayne .xliij. M. Romayns. And this noble Scipio affricanus brought apen the state of the Romayns people the whiche stode in a dyspayre euer to haue recouered. for he fought w Hanyball manly & discomfyted hym. All Spayne he ouercame. All Affrica he subdued/ grete Antiochus he brought to be his seruaunt. All Alie he made trybutary to the Romayns / this man so noble & so victoroyous by his owne vnkynde coutree was outlawed/ and there he deped. ¶ Philometor the sone of Epiphanes of Cleopatra regned in Egypte. xxxv. yere. This kynge yet a childe/ noble Antiochus gretly opprestyd w many dysceptes/ but the Romayns sent Legates/ the whiche comaunded Antiochus & he sholde cesse of his tyranny ayenst hym. And Marcus Publius made a cercle to Antiochus thus saynge. The Senatours of Rome & & people comaunde the & go not out of this cercle tyll & haue answered to this mater. This Antiochus seynge that he myght not contynue his tyranny sayd. Vt it be thus comaunded me of the Senatours & Romayns people I must nedes tourne apert & so wood angry he was/ that he lost the sege of Alexandre/ & tourned to the poore releues of the Jewes/ vengynge hym vpon them/ by cause he myght not venge hym on a more myghty people (vt pz in li<sup>o</sup> Machabeoz. ij.)

**M**athathias an holy man / and of all lounge moost worthy hated in his herte the conuersacyon of all synners / alonly trustynge in our lorde god of Israell (vt pz primo macha. ij.) And this man had .v. lones of the same loue vnto god. This man was not byllhop in Israel / but his thre lones were. ¶ Judas Machabeus was byllhop. iij. yere / & he was lone to Mathathias. This Machabeus was the moost named man þeuer was in Israel / the whiche had neuer none lyke hym afore ne after. He was in batayll a myghty man / & offred hym to depe a martyre for þe lawes of god. ¶ Jonathas his brother succeeded hym. xix. yere. The whiche grewe in vertue / and gouerned & stode stedfaste in the lawes of god / & after falsely was slayne of Tryphone & two of his lones (Plura vide Juda et frēm eius li. macha) Antiochus Epiphanes lone to Antioch<sup>9</sup> the myghty this tyme was kynge of Syrry. This man from the heed vnto the feet within & without all was curlyd. And therefore he was fygured to Antecryst. Many martyrs cruelly he made / & falsely he dysposed hym to entre in to Egypte as his fader dyde / but he opteyned not / for the Romayns letted hym. His moost vnhappy werke / & how he was in hostage at Rome / and how the prophecy of Danpell was completed in hym / ye may see in þe boke of Machabeoz. ¶ Quintus flaminus. Marchus Lato. Thiberius Gracius were Senatours of Rome. This tyme was so contynuall and so moche batayll / that lerned men of Gentyles and of the true fayth bothe were wery for to wryte the actes / or to haue them in mynde. In the whiche bataylles men meruaylled greely on the stedfastnesse of the Romayns / that no trybulacyon / no drede / no hardynesse myght not fere them / but euer contynued in batayll. And certaynly these Romayns after the wordes honeste / they were the moost wyllest

men that were. And therfore the Machabees despyred ther company.

¶ Circa annū mundi .v. M. lix. Et ante xpi natiuitatē .L. xl.

**M**athon lone to Sadoch of the lyne of cryst gate Jacob (vt pz Machai. i.) ¶ Symon lone to Mathathias was byllhop. viij. yere. This Symon was a very wyle man / & from his youth vntyll his aege was euer of good conuctsacyon / euer more vertuous. And at the last he was slayne of his brother Elay. (vt pz. i. macha) ¶ Johānes Hircanus lone to Symon / was after his fader. xix. yere a noble man as all the kynrede was before hym. This man after his deceulle left his wyf a very wyle woman & his fyue lones to gouerne the Jury / of the eldest was called Aristobolus an vnpacient man & an vnhappy. His owne moder with thre of his yonger brethern he pyloned & slewe them thugh hunger & so alone he lyued kynge & byllhop one yere (vide plura li. Machabeoz) ¶ Publius Lucinius. Lucius Emilius. Lucius Lucinius. Lucius Conforinus were Consules at Rome. In whoos tyme the Cartagynes and the Romayns warred strongly. But the Romayns subdued them / enttendynge to haue destroyed the Cartagynes vterly. But amonge the Romayns ther was a notable wyle mā called Scipio Nauta. And amonge many notable counseylers / two he gaaf specially to be had in mynde. The fyrste that Cartago sholde not be destroyed that thourgh the occasyon of forand bataylles a Inwarde concorde sholde abyde amonge the Romayns / and a perpetuell strength for contynuell excercise of batayll. The seconde. That in no wyle the other sholde be buylded in Rome. for he layd / that was the moost enemye that myght be to the people that vled warre. for that place nouryshed slouch

and prouoked lechery. ¶ And how wyle  
ly this notable man gaaf counseyll/the  
tymes solowynge declareth (vide plura  
in Aug. de ciuitate dei. libro. iij.) ¶ Yet  
for all this counseyll that noble cyte of  
Cartago was destroyed of Cipio & the  
Senatours. And it brente. xvij. dayes co  
tynuelly. Many men there were solde/ &  
many men ranne in to the fyre wylfully  
¶ Corinth<sup>9</sup> this same yere was destroy  
de of the Romayns/ the whiche was the  
rychest countree of the worlde. ¶ Ptholo  
meus this tyme regned in Egypte/ and  
was famlyer with the Romayns. And  
loo longe he & his predecessours regned  
as they kepte fydelyste to the Romayns.  
And knowe euery man / that there was  
none other cause that the power of the  
Romayns encreased so strongly aboue  
other people/ but vertue/ the whiche ha/  
buudantly regned in them/ and namely  
ryghtwylnesse/ whiche aboue all thynge  
they vled. And as longe as they kepte  
mesures & loued ryghtwylnesse/ so longe  
they were neuer ouercome. And as loone  
as they were corrupted/ it is radde/ they  
were ouercomen. ¶ It is had in a cer/  
tainie reuelacōn of god shewed to saynt  
Byggye that our lorde god bereth wyl/  
nesse to these olde Romayns. That no  
ne in this naturell lye lyued more ryght/  
wylly. And what lyghtes of fayth they  
shewed in the tyme of Crysten religyon  
shall be shewed afterwarde.

¶ Regnum Iudeorum restituitur.

**A**Ristobolus was the fyrst kynge  
and prest in the Iury/ this man  
regned one yere alone/ and toke to hym  
the Dyademe of the kyngdome. And he  
helde hym not contente with that þ his  
fader gaf hym in his testament. But he  
put his moder in pylson & his brethern.  
And therfore he peryllhed wretchydly  
with his brother Antigonus/ the whiche  
was of his counseyll and helped hym.

(vide magistrū in historijs) ¶ Antigo  
nus brother vnto the kynge was slayne  
thugh the cnytte of the quene. ¶ Alex/  
ander was byllshop after Aristobolus/ &  
he stode. xvij. yere. And he was all a ty/  
raunt/ all though he appered lobie in the  
begynnynge. But he made it knowen  
what he was in his stomache/ for he sle/  
we his owne brother. And in. xij. yere he  
slewe. i. thousande of the olde sage fa/  
ders of grete vertue/ by cause they tolde  
hym his mylgydynge. Thenne whan  
he sholde deye. he lette two sones behyn  
de hym. Hircanū and Aristobolū. But  
certaynly he sayd his wyl sholde regne/  
for he stode in the grace of the people.  
¶ Seruius flaccus. Lucius. fabi<sup>9</sup>. plu  
bius this tyme were Senatours at Ros  
me. This tyme bataylles amonge them  
self beganne. Of the whiche the fyrste  
cause & the begynnynge/ was Graccus  
a myghty man / well knowen with no  
ble Romayns/ began to seke a cause as  
gaynst them. And by cause þ he myght  
do no thynge alone to them / he meued  
the comyn people to theym sayenge/  
That all the londes & possessyons shol  
de be deuyded equaly / and also the mo  
neye iē. And for that cause there was an  
Insurreccyon / in the whiche Graccus  
was slayne/ and many mylcheues felle  
after (vide Drosium) ¶ In the tyme  
of these men / there was a childe borne  
at Rome/ haupnge foure feet/ foure ar  
mes/ two faces/ and foure eyn. ¶ The  
hulle of Echna spytte out flammynge  
fyre horryble / and destroyed the places  
nyghe about it. ¶ And these men beryn  
ge rule. Cartago was comaunded to be  
restored. And it was fulfyllled of the Ro  
mayns people. And there was myghty  
batayll in the cyte of Rome. ¶ Fabius  
with a lyeell holste ouercame the kynge  
of Armenye. And there were drowned  
an hondred & four score thousande men  
in the water of Reme. ¶ Ptholomeus  
Alexander was kynge in Egypte. In

his tyme was borne Lucerius a Poete / the whiche afterwarde was made for loue of w<sup>o</sup>men & slewe hymself. ¶ Ptholomeus lone to Cleopatre regned after hym / vnder whome Salustius the noble wyter of hystories was borne. ¶ Ptholomeus Dyonisius was after this man And in his tyme Virgyll and Orazius were borne.

¶ Anno mundi .v.M. C. xxiiij. Et ante xpi natiuitate .ix. C. v.

**I**acob naturell fader to Joseph of the lyne of Cryst is reherced in Luke & Mathe / & lytell of hym is had in scrypture. ¶ Alexandria wyf to Alexander was byshop in the Jury .ix. yere / & shewed moche tyrannye / all yf she was made byshop by her seyned holy relygyon. ¶ And Hircanū her lone she prouoked to the byshopryche / & she ordeyned that he sholde regne after. This womā in the lyne of the byshops is put for the countynge of the yeres. Not as she vled the offyce of a byshop / for it was not leyfull to her. ¶ Hircanus lone to Alexandria regned .xxiiij. yere. This Hircanū after the deceste of his moder succeeded in the kyngdom / in the whiche he had lytell prosperyte / for percyualte of the people. for anone he was ouercomen / & afterwarde he was restored thugh the helpe of the Arabees. And thenne he was made trybutary to the Romayns. And so he was in peas a lytell tyme. But not in the name of kyng. At the last he dyed wretchedly / for he was begyled thourgh the fraude of Parthor / the whiche Antigonus hyred apenst hym (vide plene magistrū historie) ¶ The herelye of y Pharisees about this tyme began. And amonge them were thre sectes in y Jury. Pharacey. Saducey. & Elley. All these were dyuyded from the comyn vble of the Jewes / & were enfecte w<sup>o</sup>ch many errours for they sayd that they were holper than

other men. for they lyued streylper than other men dyde (Vide plus alias) ¶ Virgyll the moost excellent of poetes was magnetyed this tyme / & meruaylous thynge he dyde. And amonge ocher whan that Neopolis was vexed w<sup>o</sup> deedly payne of myghty wormes. Virgyll cast a worne of golde in to a ponde or a water / & it laye a certen sealon there. And whan it was take vp in to y towne / all the cyte was made full of wormes. And tyll the worne of golde was put in to the water ayen / they had Intyte wormes. And whan it was in the water all the wormes wente awaye. ¶ Also it is wyten in the cronycles of Rome / that Virgyll by connynge condescended or thynked the ayre / soo that he walled his gardeyne w<sup>o</sup>ch the ayre. And he made a bydye of the ayre / by the whiche he myght passe euery tyme that he lyst. Also he asked Marcellū Neopolitanū / neuwe vnto the Emperour / yf he wolde haue a byrde taught to kille all byrdes or a flye taught to dryue all flies out of the cyte. And this Marcellū tolde this to the Emperour. And he desyred to see che a flye to kille all flies. for the comyn people were sore anoyed with flies And many ocher meruayles he dyde (Vide magistrū Rodulfū Lesterū) ¶ Orazius flaccus / & Salustius Crispus hystoricus were at this tyme. ¶ Quintus Cypio. Caius Lucius this tyme were Conlules at Rome. ¶ Pompeius. Marcus Crassus & Julius Cesar this tyme were Dictatours at Rome. for as it is sayd / afore there were many dygnyttees at Rome / of the whiche some dured one yere / some two yere. And amonge all the dygnyttees the Dictatours exceded / for it dured fyue yere. But whan the comyn people and the lordshyppes of Rome encreasynge were made thre Dictatours. And this tyme was Pompeius. Julius and Marcus Crassus Dictatours. And by cause Pompeius was of grete honoure

and aged he bode at Rome to kepe the comyn people of Rome. ¶ Marc<sup>s</sup> Crassus was sende to subdue & fyght with þe regyon of Perthus. And thugh treason he was taken & slayne. ¶ Julius Cezar was sende to the weste parte of the worlde to subdue them. And he hath w<sup>th</sup> hym vij. legyons of people. And whan þe he had subdued Lombardy & fraunce/his fyue yere were spende/the whiche were assygned to hym & no lenger. There by his owne auctorite he toke other fyue yere vpon hym / in the whiche he subdued Cassybolon kynge of Brytayne / & the frenshmen that rebelled agaynst hym / ¶ This same Julius after he had conquered the countrees/vnto Rome he rode agayne/for to be receyued with certayn worthyp as conquerours were before h<sup>y</sup> but it was denyed hym & also the entree of the cyte/by the Instygacyon of a lord called Pompei. Wherefore this Juliu<sup>s</sup> Cezar was annoyed / and with force of myght entred the cyte / & robbed the comyn treasour & ladde it with hym / & departed it amonge the .vij. legyons that were his seruautes. Thenne went he in to Spayne to fyght agaynst this Pompei. for Pompei had the gouernaunce of Cartago. But after that Journeye in Italie Pompei & he encounterd togyder. In the whiche bataylle Pompei fledde vnto the kynge of Egypte / & that same kynge for speyall loue that he had vnto this Julius Cezar smote of Pompeius heed & sente it to Julius Cezar. Yet for all the enuyte þe was betwixt them two Julius wepte whan that he sawe this Pompeius heed. This Julius was excydyng in wytte afore other men / and he faught in batayll .liij. tymes. This man alone exceded Marcus Crassus / the whiche is sayd to haue foughten .xxxix. tymes. This man toke fyrst the Emppyre of Rome vpon hym / whan Pompei and other noble men of the Romayns were slayne. And at the last the fyfth yere of

his Emppyre / this Julius Cezar the ruler of all this worlde was slayne in the counsell hous thugh treason of his lordes. ¶ Cathon the moost named phylosopher / seepnge Julius Cezar haue the victorpe / whome he fauoured not / at a towne called Uticam dyde slee hymself (iuxta illud Maull cato mart: qua des roget vrbis honorari) But for þe after Austyn he was not excused of synne. ¶ This tyme the Jury was trybutarye to the Romayns for percalpte of two brethern Aristobolus & Ercanus both of them for enuyte of other cast them to the Romayns þe they myght regne. ¶ This tyme thre sonnes appered in heuen towards the east parte of þe worlde / the whiche by lytell & lytell were broughte in to one body. A grete spgne it was that Africa. Asia / & Europa sholde be broughte in to one monarche / & that the lordshyp of Anthonij the Senatoure and Lucius Anthonij sholde tourne in to one lordshyp. ¶ Marcus Cicerio Tullius the moost noble Rethoryccen was Counsell of Rome this tyme.

¶ How that the Brytons graunted vnto Cassybolon whiche thenne tofore þe was Luddes brother the londe. In whoos tyme Julius Cezar came twyes for to conquer the londe of Brytayne.

**A**fter the deeth of kynge Lud regned his brother Cassybolon & became a good man & moche beloued of his Brytons / so that for his goodnes & curteply they graunted hym the reame for euer more to hym and to his heyres. And the kynge of his goodnes lette nouryssh the worthely bothe the sones that were Lud his brother. And after made the eldest sone erle of Cornewayle / and the yongest sone he made erle of London. And whyle this kynge Cassybolon regned / came Julius Cezar that was Emperour of Rome in to the londe with a

power of Romayns / & wolde haue had this londe thugh strength / but Cassybolon ouercame h<sup>y</sup> in batayll thugh helpe of the Brytons / & drioued hym out of this londe. And he wente ayen to Rome & assembled a grete power an other tyme / & came agayne in to this londe for to gyue bataylle to Cassybolon / but he was dyscomfyted thugh strength of the Brytons / & thugh helpe of the Erle of Cornewayle & the Erle of London his brother / & thugh helpe of Gudian kynge of Scotlonde / & Corbonde the kynge of Northwalys / & of Brytayll kyng of Southwalys. And in this bataylle was slayne Nennon h<sup>y</sup> was Cassybolons brother / wherfore he made moche sorowe / And so wente Julius Cezar out of this londe with a fewe of Romayns h<sup>y</sup> were lette a lyue. And then Cassybolon went ayen to London & made a feest to al folke h<sup>y</sup> tho h<sup>y</sup> had helped. And whan that this feest was done / thenne euery man yede in to his owne countree.

**O**f the debate that was betwixt Cassybolon & the Erle of London / & of the truage that was payed to Rome.

**A**nd after it befelle thus vpon a daye / that the gentylmen of the kynges houlhold & the gentylmen of h<sup>y</sup> Erles houlholde of London after meete wente togyder for to playe. And thugh debate that arose amonge them Enelin that was the Erles colyn of London slewe Irenglas that was the kyngs colyn. Wherfore the kyng swore that Enelin sholde be hanged. But the Erle of London that was Enelins lorde wolde not suffre hym / wherfore the kyng was grete ly wroth & vexed towarde the Erle / & thought hym to destroie. And pryuely the Erle sente letters to Julius Cezar / that he sholde come in to this londe for to helpe hym / & hym auenge vpon the kyng / and he wolde helpe hym with all

his myght. And whan theemperour herde this tydynges he was full gladd / & ordeyned a stronge power / and came ayen the thyrde tyme in to this londe / and the Erle of London helped hym with viij. thousande men / and at the thyrde tyme was Cassybolon ouercome & dyscomfyted and made peas to the Emperour for thre thousande pounde of syluer yeldyng by yere for truage for this londe for euermore. And thenne half a yere after passed the Emperour Julius Cezar wente ayen vnto Rome / and the Erle of London with hym. for he durste not abyde in this londe. And after Cassybolon reigned .viij. yere in peas / and tho he deyed the .xviij. yere of his regne and lyeth at Yorke.

*origid by yow p. 107 of 108*

**H**ow that the lordes of the londe after the deth of Cassybolon & for by cause he had none heyre made Andragen kynge.

**A**fter the dethe of Cassybolon / for as moche as he hadde none heyre of his lefull body begoten / the lordes of the londe by the comyns assente crowned Andragen erle of Cornewayle & made hym kynge. And he reigned wel and worthely / & he was a good man / & well gouerned the londe. And whan he had reigned .viij. yere thenne he deyed / and lyeth at London.

*origid by yow p. 107 of 108*

**C**irca annū mundi .v. M. C. lix. Et ante xpi natiuitatē .xl.

**I**oseph of the lyne of Cryste was about this tyme borne / and after was husbonde vnto our lady. Anthigonus was byshoppe this tyme in the Jury. This Anthigonus was lone vnto Aristoboly / and on euery syde he was falle. for he obeyed not to the Romaynes / and a grete plage he brought vnto the londe for to destroie hircan<sup>9</sup> his vncle / that he myght regne kynge / and



so Hircanus was expelled / & flaccus was slayne / & Herode was exiled. But whan Herode came vnto Rome & tolde the Senatours all these thyngs / the Emperour created hym kynge sendyng w<sup>th</sup> hym an hoste / the whiche toke Ierusalem . And Archigonū the bysshop taken / ledde to Anthony the Senatour / the whiche made hym kyber / & so was Herode conferred in to his kyngdom. And he a straunger reigned on the Jewes / & so the kyngdome of the Jewes celled as Jacob had sayd. ¶ Titus Liuius historicus / & Duidius were this tyme.

Incipiunt imperatores augusti. et dictus est augustus quia augebat populum.

**O**ctavian was Emperour of Rome. lxx. yere. vi. monethes and .x. dayes. This Octavian newwe to July whan he was a yonge man toke y<sup>e</sup> Emperyre vpon hym. His flourysshynge youthe he spende in warre. fyue thousande bataylles he dyde. And shortly after many bataylles / he brought all the worlde in to one Monarche / y<sup>e</sup> man had no felowe. And in his dayes peas was in alle the worlde thurgh the proupyson of the very god. That the temporal peas myght glorifye y<sup>e</sup> natyuyte of our sauour Cryste Ihesu. This Octavian was the fayrest man y<sup>e</sup> myght be / & hyghe in wytte / the moost fortunate in all thynges. And he lacked not the vyce of his fleshely luste. This man made all the worlde to be mesured . And in the .liij. yere of his regne was our lorde Ihesu Cryste borne / the Sauour of this worlde / the whiche graunteth eternall peas to his louers. ¶ Hic nota scdm Jeronimū that Anna and Emeria were systers. And of Emeria was borne Elizabeth moder to Iosahan y<sup>e</sup> Baptyst. And she was fyrst wedded to Joachim of whome she toke Mary moder of Cryste. The seconde husbon

de was Cleophe / & he gate on her Maria Cleophe / the whiche was wedded to Alphe of whom proceded James y<sup>e</sup> lesse Symon Cananus. Judas Tadeus / & Ioseph the whiche is called Barlabas / The thyrde tyme Anna was wedded to Salome / of whome she toke Mary Salome / the whiche was wedded to Sebede / & of them came James the more / & Iosahan the Euangelyst. The fyrste Mary wedded Ioseph brother to Cleophe afore sayd. This tyme Sibilla Tiburtina prophced of Cryste / & sayd to thempereour August / that he sholde not trowe y<sup>e</sup> he was not god after the follyshenes of the paynymis. And there she shewed hym a fayre virgyn in heuen holdyng a childe in her armes / & sayd to hym / this childe is gretter than thou / & therfore do hym worship. ¶ The monarche of Rome about this tyme myghely encreased. And whan it was soo that by all the worlde in dyuers prouynces bataylles were repelled sodenly all men meruayllynge / they were selled & put them hosly to the prynte of Rome / that openly it myght be the wed that suche an vnyuersal peas came neuer by labour of bataylle / but of the power of the very god / that in his natyuyte peas sholde regne in all the worlde. ¶ Herode Elcolonita was kynge in the Jury .xxxv. yere. This Herode ydumesus was the fyrst straunge kynge that reigned on the Jewes. The mayster in historys sayth / he was a noble man / & fayth full in the begynnynge / and in all thynges he had hym nobly. He was very gentyll vnto the Romayns & to the people that loued peas . And in his olde aeger / whan he wolde moche please the Romayns herde of the byrthe of Cryste / dyedynge to be expelled of his kyngdome as a straunger / wretchedly he felle & slewe the Innocentes & dyuers of his owne childern . And at the last was hatfull to all people / & felle lyke & deyed wretchedly. ¶ Mary the moder of Cryste was

borne afore the Natpuyte of Cryst .xvi. yere or there aboute.

**O**f Kymbalyn that was Andragens lone regned after his fader.

**A**fter þe dech of Andragen regned Kymbalyn his lone a good man & well gouerned the londe in moche prosperytee & peas all his lyl tyme. And in his tyme Ihesu Cryst was borne of that swete virgyn Mary. This kyngge Kymbalyn had two lones. Gynder & Arma- ger good knyghts & worthy. And whan this Kymbalyn had regned .xxij. yere he deped & lyeth at London.

**C**ristus natus est ex virgine maria anno mundi .v.M.Lxxxiiij.

**I**n the begynnynge of the .xlj. yere of Octauyan theemperour. whiche began to regne in Marche/and in .xxx. yere of Herode .viij.L. and .i. yere after that Rome was buylded/the .vi. moneth from the concepyngge of Johñ Baptyst/the .viij. kal of Apryl/the .vi. fery at Nazareth of Galylee/of the virgynne Mary was concepued Cryste our sau-oure/& the same yere was borne.

**H**ere at Crystis Natpuyte begynneth the sixte aege duryngge to the fynall Jusgement/hauynge yerres as god knoweth

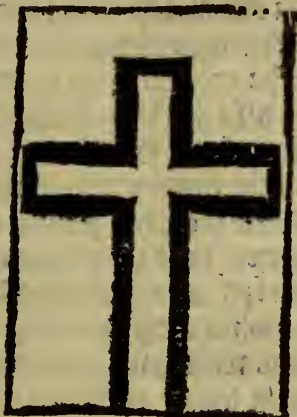


**T**hat daye our lorde Ihesu Cryste was borne/a wellc of oyle beyon de Tybre by Rome sprange & ranne al daye. The golden ymage fell the which Romulus had made/& put it in his palays layenge. This ymage shal not fayle vnto a mayde bere a childe. **W**han Herode disposid hym to slee the childern of Israel/he was comaunded by the letter of theemperour to come to Rome to answer to the accusacyon of his childern Alexiū. & Aristoboli. And ther were thre Herodes greely spoken of for ther yll dedes. The fyrst was called Alcolonita/& vnder this man was borne Cryst/& the childern of Israel were slayne. The seconde was called Antipas lone to þe fyrste Herode/vnder whom John Baptyst heeded/& Cryst suffred dech. And þe thyrde was called Agrippa lone to Aristoboli / lone to the fyrste Herode/the whiche slewe James & pyloned Peter. The fyrste Herode whan he sawe his lones Alexiū & Aristoboli thugh the pretens of his letter by the Emperour sende/stryue for þe successyon of his kyngdom/he dis-posed & made Antipater that was his fyrste begoten lone to be before them / & whan they were talkynge of the dech of ther fad he cast them awaye/& they wente to theemperour to cōplayne of þe wronge of ther fad. And in þe meane tyme the thre kynges of Coleyne came by Herode vnto Jerusalem/& whan they came not apen by hym/he thought þe they were ashamed for to come apen by hym for bycause þe they were discepued/& þe they fōude not the childe as he demed / therfore in the meane season he celled to slee þe childern of Israell / & so wente vnto Rome for the cytacion of theemperour. And he toke his waye by þe cyte of Tarlū/where he biente the shyppes in þe whiche the thre kyngs of Coleyne sholde haue saylled in to ther owne cōtree. Then after a yere & certen dayes/this Herode came from Rome apen/accorded w his lones

And for the confyrmacion of his kyngdome he was made moche boldere / and then he slewe all the childern of Bethleem þ̄ were of two yere of aegge & vnder that had space of one nyght of aegge / & amonge these was there one of his owne childern. And Aristoboli & Alexiū were had in suspeccion / in so moche as they prompled a barbour a grete rewarde þ̄ he sholde take & kylte ther faders throte whan that he dyde hym schaue. And whan this Herode herde this he was greued & there he slewe both his sones. And Herode Agrippa his sone he ordeyned to be kyng. Wherfore Antipater his oldest sone was about to popson his fader / the whiche Herode Agrippa vnderstode / & pyloned there his brother / that whiche the Emperour herde & layd that he had leuer be an hogge of Herodes / than for to be one of his sones / for his hogges he spareth / and his sones he sleeth. ¶ And whan that Herode was .lxx. yere of aegge he was stryken with a grete syknesse in his hondes & in his feet & in his members / that no leche myght come to hym for stanche / & so he deyed. ¶ So Antipater his sone in pylon herde telle of this and Joyed gretely / and there fore that cause he was slayne. Thenne stroue Archelaus & Herodes for the successyon of the fyrst Herode. The Emperour there thugh counseyll of the Senatours / the half of the Jury & Idumea gaaf to Archelaus vnder name of Tetrarche. And the ocher parte he deuyded in two. Galylee he gaaf to Herode Antippa. And Iuduriam and Traconidem he gaaf to Philyppe Herodes brother. ¶ And that same yere Cryste came from Egypte / And Archelaus was accused many tymes of the Jewes / and was exyled in to Hyennam in to fraunce. And in that place were sette foure Tetrarchees / to the repleynge of the vinstabylnesse of the Jewes. ¶ And that same yere Octauyan the Emperour deyed.

¶ Anno Xpisti .x.

¶ I. N. R. I.



¶ Crux Xpisti.

**I**hesus Cryste at .xij. yere of aegge herde the doctours in the Temple. ¶ Our lorde Ihesu Cryste at .xxx. yere of aegge was baptyled. ¶ Ihesu Cryste the lorde of all thynges at .xxx. yere of aegge .& .iij. monethes deyed for his seruautes. ¶ Annin<sup>o</sup> Rufus was byllhop in þ̄ Jury about this tyme. ¶ Valeri<sup>o</sup> Grac<sup>o</sup> was after hym .xi. yere. This man openly solde the byllhopryche / & he that moost yaaft had it. And there was moncy in a lytell whyle. ¶ Doncius Pylatus was Juge & Doctour in the Jury vnder the Emperour. And vnder this man John Baptyst began for to preche. And our lorde suffred deeth / the whiche was dampned to deeth vnyghtwylly for drede of the Emperour. ¶ Tyrus a certen kyng gaate a childe on Pyla a poore mānes dougfter / the whiche man hyght Atus / and this childe of his moders name & his bellyre put togyders was called Pylatus. This Pylatus þ̄ fourth yere of his aegge was sente to his fader. The whiche kyng of his lefull wyf had gotten a childe euen of the aegge wiche Pylate / & by cause this lefull gotten childe as they proceded in aegge exceded this bastarde Pylatus he was full of enuye / & slewe his brother the lefull gotten childe. Wherfore

forthwith his fader sente hym to Rome for pledge for his trybute þ he payed to Rome/entendynge he wolde neuer rede me hym. In the whiche tyme the kynge lone of fraunce was pledge for his trybute/the whiche exceded hym in strengthe & chualry also he slewe hym. Therfor the Romayns sente Pylate as a profytable man for the comyn wele to the yle of Ponto to tame þ curlyd people/the whiche slewe euery Juge that came to them And he þ curlyd man gouerned þ unhappy people / what with thretynge & with promysse/and with lawe/& with pestes þ none of them durste contrary do to his pleasure/wherfore he was called Pylate of Ponto. ¶ Herode Antipa yonge in his conuersacyons/with pestes & messages drewe hym to hym & made hys prynce of the Jury vnder hym. And this tyme Pylate gadred moche moneye/& he rode not knowynge/he wente to Rome that he myght receyue of the Emperour that Herode had gyuen hym. Wherfore Herode & Pylate were enmyes togyder/vnto the passyon of our lorde / whan þ Pylate sende Ihesus vnto Herode clothed in a whyte clothe/thenne they were made frendes. ¶ Quidius Nalo in Ponto about this tyme deyed the fourth yere of his exyle. ¶ Tyberius this tyme was Emperour at Rome / & he regned xxij.yere/& he lyued in the yere that our lorde Ihesu Cryst deyed/& somwhat after. This man was in all his werkes gretely auyled þ there sholde be no thyng sodenly done/wyle in warres/studyous in bokes/sayre of speche/freshe in wytte/laue he wolde of tymes feyne hys self to do thynges þ he wolde neuer do of other. This Emperour vnderstode and trusted in Cryste/& worshypped hym for god. Some men saye at the last he was cruell ayenst people / but it was a grette reason of pyte/that he was euer gracious to his subgettes & poore men. And he had peas all his dayes/& all the peo

ple that layd ayenst crysten folke with oute ony mercy he destroyed/& he exyled Pylate for euer. Thenne he decessed & a worse succeded hym. ¶ After Buleby it is wyrcn / our lorde at .xxx. yere of his aege chose his .xij. apostles / the whiche made our Crede / þ is our byleue. And they made it after the Resurreccyon of Cryst/& after the holy ghost was sende vnto them. Whan they had chose Mathia the apostle.& eche of them made a part as it is shewed hereafter.. And this Mathia was chose bytwene the daye of the Ascencion & Wytsondaye in the place of Judas Scaryot the traytour/of the whiche Judas in a histo:ry is redde thus. ¶ There was a certen man in Jerusale that hyght Ruben/& after saynt Jeron he was of the trybe of Vlachar. And his wyf hyght Cyboira/the whiche on a certen nyght whan he wolde lustely knowe his wyf/the dreamed þ she sholde bere a childe of mylcheyf/& þ childe sholde be a traytour to his kynge & to all the people of þ regyon/& whan þ childe was borne & called Judas/his fader & his mod abhorred as well to see ther childe/as to nouryshe a traytour to the kynge & all his people/therefore they put hym in to a paner/or a lepe in to þ see/& he flowed to the yle of Scaryoch/where þ lady of þ place had no childe by her husbonde/& she feyned her to be with childe / but she sayled. And after in a lytell season the same lady & quene conceyued a childe of her husbonde/& whan þ he was of aege. Judas many tymes angred hym & caused hym to wepe/the whiche the quene sawe/& bete Judas many tymes / & after she knowleged þ Judas was not the kynges lone ne hers / wherfore Judas slewe the kynges lone / & he dradde the payne of the lawe/& fledde w certen exiles to Jerusalem. And whan he came there/he gate hym in to pylates courte that was Juge. And by cause þoo curlyd man draweth to an other / therefore he

Drewe to pylate & stode gretly in his fauour. And vpon a certen daye whan pylate looked out of his palays in to an orcharde of a manes þ was called Ruben þ was very fader to Judas. Pylate desired to haue apples / & Judas went to gather apples / & Ruben ranne to Judas for to lette hþ bycause he toke his apples wout ony leue. And whan they had chyde this Judas smote his fad on the heed w a stone & slewe hþ / & Judas fled away secretly after þ dede / but it was sayd þ Ruben dyed sodenly. Then pylate gaf to Judas all the goodes þ Ruben had & Liborea Rubens wyf / þ was moder to Judas. And he dealed not curtelly with her as a man sholde w his wyf / & for þ she wepte & wayled / for she had put her lone to þ lee / & þ she was maryed apenst her wyll. It was perceyued þ Judas had slayne his owne fader & wedde his owne moder. Therie Liborea his moder & wyf meuyd hþ to leue his synne / & then he folowed Cryst / & he forgaue hym his synne & made hym his proctour & apostle. And how fals he was to Cryst / & ne deeth not to reherce. ¶ And þ same yere Mathewe was cholen / & the holy ghoist was sende in to them as it is sayd afore ¶ The appostles or they were sparpled in to all the worlde / they gadred theym togpyder in to Jerusalem & made þ Cresde here folowynge / that is our byleue.

**Petrus** Credo in deū patrem omnipotentē creatorem celi et terre.

**Andreas** Et in ihesum xpm filium eius vnicum dominum nostrum.

**Johānes** Qui conceptus est de spiritu sancto natus ex maria virgine.

**Jacobus** Passus sub poncio pilato crucifixus mortuus est et sepultus.

**Thomas** Descendit ad inferos na tertia die resurrexit

a mortuis.

**Jacobus** Ascendit ad celos sedet ad dexteram dei patris omnipotentis.

**Philipp⁹** Inde venturus est iudicare viuos et mortuos.

**Bartho.** Credo in spiritum sanctum.

**Matheus** Sanctam ecclesiam catholicam.

**Simon** Sanctorum communionem remissionem peccatorum.

**Judas** Carnis resurrectionem.

**Matthias** Et vitā eternam Amen.

**I**hesu Cryst our sauour tole fro deeth to lyf & sayd to his discyples All the power in heuen & in erthe is gyuen vnto me. And goo ye thus in to all the worlde & preche / & teche vnto euery creature / & I shall be with you vnto the ende of the worlde. ¶ Here he chose hþ lxxij. discyples. And he had .xij. apostles the whiche he sende in to all the worlde to preche. Ne it is not redde / that there were more ordres amonge the discyples of Cryste / of whome the preestes & byshops in the chirche of god yet kepe the fourme. For to the apostles the byshops succede / & to the discyples preestes. To the whiche two ordres / all the chirche is gyuen as a goodly Hierarchie (¶ Et patet in Decreto Damalie p. 20)

Wrote in Asia in Greke langage In principio erat verbum. &c.

Johannes.

Wrote in Italia  
but in greke lan-  
gagage. Innicij  
euangelij Jelu  
cristi. 17.

¶ Marcus.



Wrote in Grecia  
in greke langage  
¶ Huit in diebus  
herodis regis iu-  
de sacerdos. 17.



¶ Lucas.

Wrote in the  
Iury in Hebrew  
langage. Uther  
generacionis Jhe-  
su cristi. 17.



¶ Mathews.



¶ Here begynneth the ordie of Popes of  
Rome / & contynuech as the lyne of Cry-  
ste dyde afore. for in them god lefte his  
power.

¶ Anno domini .xxxiiij.

**P**eter a Jewe the fyrste pope was  
a blessyd man & a glorpyous apo-  
stle of Cryst. ¶ He was heed of the chir-  
che .xxxviij. yere. And he helde his byl-  
shoppyche in the east. v. yere & sayd masse  
he made our lorde / & alone sayd the pa-  
ter noxter. ¶ Thenne after he came to An-  
tiochiam & there he abode .viij. yere tes-  
chynge the way of trouthe. And Symon  
Magus he confounded awaye. That  
season he preched to the people that we-  
re circūcysed / the whiche were in Ponto  
of Galati. Capadocia. Alia. Bithinia.  
¶ Thenne herde he that Symon Magus  
deluded the Romayns / thugh the loue  
of the fayth / he came to Rome in the  
fourth yere of Claudius the Emperour  
And there he preched the worde of god /  
& shewed the fallhede of Symon Mag<sup>s</sup>  
and tourned many a man to the fayth /  
¶ Thenne he sende his precher by dyuerse  
prouynces / by whome crysten relygyon

was myghtely encreased. ¶ He ordeyned  
the feest of Lenton afore Leter / & Ad-  
uent / & the Emerynge dayes to be fasted  
of all crysten people / in to the myrrour  
of the fyrste & seconde comynge of oure  
lorde Jhesu. ¶ Thenne whan he had be  
pope at Rome .xxv. yere .viij. monethes  
and .viij. dayes / he was slayne of Nero  
(¶ Si<sup>s</sup> pla opa vide actibz aplon) ¶ Ga-  
ius this tyme was Emperour at Rome  
& regned .liij. yere & .x. monethes. This  
Gai<sup>s</sup> was fyrst vicpyous in lpyunge / for  
two of his owne systers he myluded / &  
on one of them he gate a doughter / whi-  
che childe he sette betwixt h<sup>e</sup> knees of Ju-  
pyter in the temple / & keyned afterwar-  
de h<sup>e</sup> Jupyter had gotten her. Wherfore  
he dyde crye thugh the cou<sup>n</sup>tree that all  
men sholde worthyp her as a goddesse /  
¶ This man also made an ymage lyke  
hymself & sente it to one Patronie Pie-  
tydent at Jerulalem vnder h<sup>e</sup> Romayns  
cōmaundynge hym h<sup>e</sup> he sholde compell  
the Jewes to do worthyp therfo. And fo-  
re these enormytees & many other / our  
lorde suffred hym to be slayne at Rome  
in his owne Palays.

¶ Of kynge Gynder that was Kymba-  
lyns lone / that wolde not paye the trua-  
ge to Rome for the londe that Cassybo-  
lon had graunted / and how he was slay-  
ne of a Romayne.

**A**nd after h<sup>e</sup> deth of this Kymba-  
lyn regned Gynder his lone a  
good man & a worthy / & was of so hygh  
herte h<sup>e</sup> he wolde not pay to Rome h<sup>e</sup> try-  
bute that kynge Cassybolon had graū-  
ted vnto Julius Cesar. Wherfore them-  
perour h<sup>e</sup> was tho / that was called Clau-  
dius Cesar was sore anoyed. And ordeyn-  
ned a grete power of Romayns / & ca-  
me in to this londe for to conquere the  
trybute thugh strength / & for to haue it  
on the kynge. But this kynge Gynder  
and Armager his broder assembled and

gadered a grete hoste togyd of Brytons /  
 & gaue batayll to the Emperour Clau-  
 dius / & slewe of þ Romayns grete plente.  
 The Emperour had afterwarde one  
 that was called Hamon þ sawe the peo-  
 ple there were fast slayne / & pryuelly cast  
 awaye his owne armes / & toke þ armes  
 of a deed Bryton / and armed hym with  
 his armour / & came in to the bataylle to  
 the kyng & sayd in this maner. Syr be  
 of a good herte for goddes loue / for the  
 Romayns that ben your enemyes anone  
 shall be slayne & dyscomfyted euerycha-  
 ne . And the kyng gaaf no kepe to his  
 wordes / ne to his speche / for by cause of  
 the armes that he had vpon hym / and de-  
 myd that he had ben a Bryton . But the  
 traytour euer helde hym next the kyng  
 And pryuelly vnder the holder of his ar-  
 mes he smote the kyng / wherfore the  
 kyng deyed & felle downe to the erthe /  
 ¶ Whan Armager sawe his brother so  
 deed / he caste awaye his armes and toke  
 to hym his brothers armes / & came in  
 to the batayll amonges the brytons and  
 badde them hertly for to fyght / and fast  
 laye a downe the Romayns . And for the  
 armes they wende it had be kyng Syn-  
 der that afore was slayne / þ they wylt  
 not . Thenne began the Brytons spersly  
 for to fyght / & slewe the Romayns . So  
 at the laste the Emperour forsoke the  
 felde / and fledde as fast as they myght  
 with his folke in to Wynchestre . And  
 the fals traytour Hamon that had slay-  
 ne the kyng / fast anone beganne for to  
 flee with al the hast that he myght . And  
 Armager the kynges brother pursued  
 hym full fyerly with a fyers herte / &  
 droue hym vnto a water & there he to-  
 ke hym . And anone smote of bothe hon-  
 de and feet & heed / and hewed the body  
 all to ppeces / and thenne lete caste hym  
 in to the water . Wherfore þ water was  
 called Hamons hauen . And after there  
 was made a fayre towne that yet ston-  
 dech / that is called Southampton . And

after Armager wente to Wynchestre for  
 to seke Claudius Cezar the Emperour  
 of Rome . And there Armager hym to-  
 ke . And Claudius the Emperour thowgh  
 counseyll of the Romayns that were w  
 hym leste a lyue / made peas with Arma-  
 ger in this maner as ye shal here . That  
 is to saye . How that Claudius the Em-  
 perour holde yeue vnto Armager Gen-  
 nen his fayre doughter for to haue vnto  
 his wyf . Soo that this londe from that  
 tyme forwarde sholde be in the Empe-  
 rours power of Rome / vpon suche coue-  
 nant / that neuer afterwarde no Em-  
 perour of Rome sholde take none other  
 trybute of this londe / but oonly scaute .  
 And they were accorded . And vpon this  
 couenaunt Claudius Cezar sente to Ro-  
 me for his doughter Gennen . And as  
 she was come Claudius Cezar gaf her  
 vnto Armager to wyf . And Armager  
 spowled her at London with moche so-  
 lempnyte and myrthe . And thenne was  
 Armager crowned and made kyng of  
 Brytayne .

¶ Of kyng Armager in whose tyme  
 saynt Peter preched in Antioche with o-  
 ther apostles in dyuers countrees .

¶ This Armager reigned well and  
 worthely / and gouerned the lon-  
 de ryght worthypfully . ¶ And Claudi-  
 us Cezar in remembraunce of this ac-  
 corde / and for reuerence and honoure of  
 his doughter / made in this londe a fay-  
 re towne and a castell / and lete calle the  
 towne after his name Claucestren / the  
 whiche now is called Gloucestre . And  
 thenne whan all this was done the Em-  
 perour toke his leue / and thene wente to  
 Rome ayen . And Armager thenne was  
 kyng / and gouerned the londe wel and  
 worthely all his lyues tyme . And this  
 Armager gate a lone on his wyfe whi-  
 che was callid Westmer . And whyle that  
 this Armager reigned / saynt Peter pre-

ched in Anchioche. And there he made a noble chirche. In the whiche he late fyrste in his chapre. And there he dwelled .vij. yere. And after he wente to Rome / and was made pope / tyll that Nero the Emperour lete martyr hym. And then preched openly all the apostles in dyuerse londes the ryght fayth. And whan Armager hadde regned .xxiij. yere / he deped / and lyeth at the aunycyente cyte of London.

How kynge Westmer gaf to Beryn / get an plonde forlet. And there this Berynge made the towne of Berwyke.

And after this Armager regned / his sone Westmer / that was a good man & a worthy of body / & well gouerned the londe. It befell so þæt tydynge came to hym vpon a dape / that the kynge Roderph of Galcoyne was come in to this londe with an hughe hoste of people / & was dwellynge in Stauys more. And whan kynge Westmer herde chole tydynge / he lete assemble an huge hoste of Brytons / & came to the kynge Roderph & gaue hym batayll. And kynge Westmer slewe kynge Roderph with his owne hondes in playne bataylle. And whan kynge Roderphs men sawe that ther lord was slayne / they yelded them all to kynge Westmer / & became his men for euer more. And he gaf them a coustree that was forleten wherin they myght dwelle. And thither they wente & dwelled there all theyr luyes tyme / & .ix. hondred men there were of theym / & no moo leste at that batayll. Theyr gouernour & prynce was called Berynge. And anone he began a towne that they myght therin dwelle & haue resorte / and lete calle the towne Berwyk vpon Tweede. And there they enhabyted & became ryche. But they had no wyemen amonge them / & the Brytons wolde not yeue theyr doughters to the straungers. Wher

fore they wente ouer see in to Irlonde / & brought with them wyemen / & there they them spowled. But the men coude not vnderstonde theyr langage ne þæt speche of these wyemen / & therfore they spake toggyder as Scottes. And afterwarde thugh chaügyng the langage / in all fraunce they were called thenne Scottes & soo sholde the folkes of that countree be called for euer more.

How kynge Westmer lete arere a stone in the entrynge of Westmerlonde / there that he slewe Roderph / and there he began fyrst houlyng.

And after this batayll that is aboue sayd whan Roderph was deed / kynge Westmer in remembraunce of his victory lete arere there belyde the waye a grete stone on hygh / & yet it ston deth / & euer more shall stonde. And he lete graue in the stone letters þæt thus sayd The kynge Westmer of Brytayne slewe in this place Roderph his enemye / And this Westmer was the fyrst that buylded hous & towne in Westmerlonde / & at that stone begynneth Westmerlonde / that Westmer lete calle after his owne name. And whan Westmer had so done / he dwelled all his luf tyme in that coustree of Westmerlonde / for he loued þæt coustree more than ony other coustree / & whan he had regned .xxv. yere / he deped and lyeth at Karlepyll.

Of kynge Coill that was Westmers sone that helde his londe in peas all his luyes tyme.

After this / his sone kynge Coill regned / a good man and a worthy / and of good condycions / and well gouerned his londe. And of all men he hadde loue and peas. And in his tyme was neuer contake / debate / nor warre in Brytayne. And he regned & was kynge



in peas all his lyues tyme . And whan he had regned .xi. yere he deped & lyeth at Porke.

**C**laudius was Emperour at Rome next after Caius. And he regned .xiiij. yere & .viij. dayes. This man came in to grete Brytayne now called Englonde / for to chalenge the trybute whiche they dyde denye vnto y<sup>e</sup> Romaynes. And after grete bataylles ther was bytweene the Emperour Claudius & Armaget kynge of Brytayne. And after accordement made / y<sup>e</sup> this armager sholde wedde Claudius doughter / & after they two sholde euer lyue in peas. In token wherof / this Claudius named the cyte where they were wedded after hym / and called it Claudicestre / where we now icalle Gloucestre. ¶ This Claudi<sup>9</sup> had thre wyues. And on Petiua the fyrst wyf he gate a doughter that hyght Antonia. The fyrst wyf decessed / and he wedded Messalinam / & gate a sone that hyght Britanicus / and Octavia a doughter. The thyrde he wedded Agrippina / havinge a sone that hyght Nero. Claudius wedded his doughter Octavia to Nero his wyues sone. This Claudius for loue that he had to Agrippina his laste wyf / he slewe Messalina his fyrst wyf / lest she sholde haue holpe Britanicus her sone & his to y<sup>e</sup> Emppre. Yet Agrippina the laste wyf of Claudius dradde / lest her husbonde wolde haue proferred Britanicus / & haue deposed Nero her sone / therfore she poysoned her husbonde Claudius / and Nero was promoted to the Emppre. And this same Nero gaue his moder suche a rewarde ayen. for he poysoned Britanicus and slewe his owne moder & his wyf Octavia. ¶ James the more the apostle this tyme was slayne of Herode Agrippa / & Peter was poysoned (Mt p<sup>3</sup> act. xij.) The body of saynt James was brought by myracle in Galectiam of Spayne. ¶ Nero after

Claudius was Emperour / & he regned xiiij. yere & .viij. monethes. This Nero was a curlyd man / & made grete waste in the Emppre. He wolde not fyssh but with nettes of golde & ropes of sylke. A grete parte of the lordes of Rome he slewe. He was enemye to noo men but to good men. He slewe his broder & his wyf his moder & his mayster. He slewe also Peter & Poule / he wolde neuer were one cloth two tymes. All his hors & his mulles were shod with syluer / & at the laste he dyde sette a grete parte of Rome on fyre / some saye / the Romayns complayned the stretes were to narowe. And as he had brient a grete parte of Rome. Nero sayd there is space to buylde the stretes wyder. Thenne the Senatours with the comyn people came vpon hym to slewe hym / & he fledde by nyght in to the subarbes of the cyte & hyde hy<sup>e</sup> / & he herde karles & beggers sayenge. And they wyft where the Emperour were he sholde neuer scape theym. Nero thought ic sholde be grete derogacion to his name & he were slayne of karles. And on a grete stake he ranne hymself to the herte & deped / & there was buryed. And deuylls kept his body many a daye after / & dyd grete hurte to the people / tyll by a myracle of our lorde the body was foude & taken awaye / & thenne y<sup>e</sup> deuylls voyded. ¶ Seneca was this tyme mayster to Nero. ¶ Juuenalis poeta. ¶ Lucan<sup>9</sup> poeta. ¶ James the lesse the apostle byshop of Jerusalem was slayne of the Jewes the .vi. yere of Nero. Marcus the euangelyst was martred the fyrst yere of hym.

¶ Circa annū xpī .lxxiiij.

**L**inus Ptalicus was pope of Rome .x. yere and .iiij. monethes & .xiiij. dayes. This Linus and his succel<sup>or</sup> s<sup>our</sup> Cletus / thugh theyr holy conu<sup>er</sup> sation were made to mynystre the tresour of the chirche to the people Peter

beyng a lpye. And Peter attended to  
 prayenge & prechynge. ¶ It is redde of  
 this Cletus that he wrote fyrst in his let-  
 ters (Salutem et apostolicā benedictio-  
 nem) ¶ Afore this tyme was many a  
 Dysciple of Peter slayne vnder Nero.  
 ¶ Galba this tyme was Emperour / &  
 he reigned .viij. monethes. This man  
 was made Emperour by the power of  
 Spayne in the same londe Nero lpyng-  
 ge. And after the deth of Nero brought  
 to Rome / & there was slayne of a man  
 that came with whete to Rome. He linc-  
 te of his heed & bare it to hym that was  
 Emperour next / seyng all his men / &  
 none of them helpynge hym. ¶ In this  
 mannes dayes came the grete Bethoris-  
 cpen to Rome fro Spayne / & was the  
 fyrst that euer taught the scyence open-  
 ly / his name was Quintilian. ¶ Dtho  
 reigned after hym / and he reigned but .iij.  
 monethes. for one Vitellus that was  
 Preludent of fraunce chalenged the Em-  
 pyre. And in Ptalpe betwixt these two  
 were thre grete bataylles. And in the  
 fourth batayll Dtho sawe he sholde be  
 ouercome and in grete dyspoyre he slewe  
 hymself. ¶ Vitellus reigned after Dtho  
 & he reigned .viij. monethes / for he was  
 folower of Nero moost specpall in glo-  
 tony / and in lpyngynge of foule longes /  
 and at festes etyng out of mesure / that  
 he myght not kepe it. ¶ Vespasian<sup>s</sup> reg-  
 ned next after hym .ix. yere and .x. mo-  
 nethes and .xij. dayes. ¶ The well go-  
 uerned men of Rome seyng the curlyd  
 succellpon of Nero sente after this Vespasian  
 vnto Palestyn. for there he was  
 & his sone Titus whiche had besyged  
 Jerusalem. ¶ And whan he herde that  
 Nero was deed / by whome he was sente  
 to Jerusalem / and herde of these curlyd  
 men regnyng. At the Instaunce of these  
 men / not wplyngly / toke vpon hym the  
 Emppre. And anone as he was come to  
 Rome / he ouercame the tyraūt Vitellus  
 and lete hym be drawe thourgh Rome /

and after in to Tybrie tyll he was deed /  
 and thenne lete hym layle without ses-  
 pulture / for this y people despyred. This  
 man was cured of waspys in his nose  
 anone as he byleued in our lorde Ihesu /  
 And that was the caule why he wente  
 to Jerusalem / to venge Cristis deth. He  
 fought .xxxij. tymes with his enemyes /  
 And deyed the yere of grace .lxxix.

¶ Anno dñi .lxxxiij.

¶ Cletus a martyr was pope .xi. yere  
 This Cletus was a Romayn / &  
 gretly he loued pylgrymages to sayntes  
 sayenge it was more profyte to y helthe  
 of mannes soule to vlyte the place that  
 saynt Peter was in / than for to fast two  
 yere. He curlyd all tho men lettynge su-  
 che pylgrymages / or counsellers contra-  
 ry therto. At the last he was martyd by  
 Damician the Emperour. ¶ Titus sone  
 to Vespasianus was Emperour this  
 tyme and reigned thre yere. And he abso-  
 de tyll at Jerusalem after the electyon  
 of his fader and destroyed the cyte. And  
 slewe there as the storpe sayth with ba-  
 tayll and hungre .xi. hondred thousande  
 de Jewes. And a hondred thousande he  
 toke and solde .xxx. for a peny. By caus-  
 le they solde Cryste for .xxx. pens / and  
 brought thens all thyng that was pres-  
 cyous / and put them in his hous at Ro-  
 me / whiche was called Templū pacis /  
 But now is that place falle downe for  
 the moost party / and all these grete Jes-  
 welles ben dystributed to certayne chir-  
 ches in Rome. ¶ This Titus was so  
 full of vertue that all men loued hym /  
 soo ferforth / that they called hym the  
 moost delectable of men. He was full ly-  
 berall to all men / in soo moche that he  
 sayd often tymes / that there sholde noo  
 man go from an Emperour with an he-  
 ny herte / but he sholde somewhat haue of  
 his petycyon. He wolde be loy that daye  
 in the whiche he had graunted no mar-

no benefyte. ¶ Whan that he was deed. euery man that was in Rome wept for hym/as that they had losse theyr fader. ¶ Domitian brother to Titus regned after hym .xxiij. yere and .v. monethes fyrst he was ealy/and afterwarde full vnrelonable. for moche of the Senate was destroyed by his malyce / and also moche of his kynrede. He began the seconde persecucion after Nero ayenst crysten men/in the whiche persecucion Johan the Euangelyst was exiled in to Pachtius after the Emperour had put hym in to a tonne of oyle brennyng & hurte hym not. So this man was not the follower of his fader Vespasian/ne his brother Titus but rather lyke Nero & his kynrede. And for these wycked condicions he was slayne in his owne palays at Rome in the .xxvij. yere of his aege. ¶ Clemens a martyr was pope .ix. yere & he succeeded Cletus. This Clemens fyrst of saynt Peter was ordeyned to be successour to hym. And for peryll he wolde Linus and Cletus sholde be popes afore hym/lest that thurgh that ensample prelates sholde ordeyne vnder them who some euer they wolde. This man made the lyfe of martyrs to be wyrtten by regyons. And he made many booke. He ordeyned that a childe sholde be confirmed as soone as it myght/namely after it was crystened. And at the laste he was martred vnder Traian. ¶ Nerua was Emperour after Domitian oo yere & two monethes. And whan he was cholen he meued the Senate to make a lawe/that thynge whiche Domitian commaunded to be kepte sholde be broken/By the whiche meane saynt Johan the Euangelyst was losed out of his exyle/ & suffred to come ayen to Ephale. This man dyde an other thynge ryght comendable that he assygned so wyle a man as Traian was to gouerne the people after hym. ¶ Nota. ¶ Traian<sup>9</sup> Hispanicus was Emperour. xix. yere. This

Traianus many man sayd. He was the best amonge all the Emperours/ but in one thynge alone he was vicyous. In so moche as he for the loue of the fals goddes was abowte to destrope the crysten fayth. Jugynge in hymselfe so moost to please god. Some men saye not by hym self but by other he pursewed the crysten fayth/and in the ende of his lyf he dyde but fewe to deeth. And all his lounge I sette at nought. But at saynt Gregory meued with pyte wepyng / and prayed vnto our lord for hym/that he wolde haue mercy vpon hym/ & by his prayer haue hym out of helle / in to whiche place he was dampned. And now yf that he be laued or not/a grete alteracyon is amonge doctours. And to vs that wyrtte Cronycles / it is no parte of our charge to determyn. But all the east parte of the worlde. Babylon. Selencia / the vtter partes of the Vnde. Germayne the seconde after Alexander he helde vnder. In all these thynge so pyteous and so mekely he gupded hym to euery man as a kyng. He was gentyll/and to no man vngentyll/the whiche is redde of fewe/ All his dayes he lyued / that men sayd he was the moost worthy man in all his Emppre. And thought & sayd euer more/that no man was more vnworthy to be Emperour than he.

¶ Anno dñi .L.iiij.

¶ Macletus a martyr was pope. ix. yere. And he was a Sicke. He monysshed all crysten men/that preestes sholde be worshypped aboue all other men. Sayenge/that preestes doynge sacrifice to god sholde be borne out / and not vaxed/ but be worshypped. And preestes whan they sayd masse the sholde haue wytnesse with them and namely bylshops. Also he decreed that clerkes sholde were no berdes nor longe heere. Also that a byshop sholde be consecrated of

the / & dyuerse other thynge. At the last the .xij. yere of Traian<sup>9</sup> he was martred and burped by the body of saynt Peter / Plinius the seconde Dratour & philosopher wrote moche thynge. This man meued Traian<sup>9</sup> þ he sholde withdrawe the sentence yeuen apenst crysten folke / wysen to hym that they sholde do noo ylle but take hede to the vertue / but that they sholde rplc afore dave & worlhypp ther god secretly in the nyght. ¶ Euarius a Greke & a martyr was pope .x. yere and .vij. monethes after Anacletus. This man ordeyned þ man & woman sholde be wedded openly / and that they sholde be blessyd openly of the prest and fader & moder. And he was martred the thyrde yere of Adrian & burped by saynt Peter. ¶ Alexander a Romayn was pope .viij. yere and .v. monethes. This Alexander the moost parte of the Senatours he conuerted vnto our lorde. And he constytuted and ordeyned / that holy water sholde be sprynkled in to crysten mennes houses . And he ordeyned that the brede that prestes vse to synge with sholde be made of pure and clene brede and that in a lytell quantyte. At the last he was martred vnder Adrian that was the Emperour . And many of them he conuerted to the fayth. ¶ Sixtus a Romayne was pope .x. yere & .iij. monethes. This man ordeyned (Sanctus Sanct<sup>9</sup> Sanctus ꝛc) sholde be layd in the masse And that the holy thynge of the chirche sholde not be touched but of mynystrs of the chirche. Also that þ corporax sholde not be made of sylke / but of pure lynnenn clothe wouen / and not dyed / and that a woman sholde not touche the holy vessell of the awter / ne the palle. Also he ordeyned / that yf ony byllhop were vacant / that no byllhop sholde be receyued in to his benefyce / but with þ popes letters . Also þ no masse sholde be layd but vpon an awter / & at the last he was martred. ¶ Adrianus was Emperoure

.xvi. yere. This Adrian in many thynge is comended to crysten men / other whyle he was gracypous / and certeyn of them that wolde not do sacrificce to the fals goddes he slewe. He was an vnyuersall man all moost in all scyence. Deas he had all his dayes / but with the Jewes and many a lawe he made. And thenne he comaunded that crysten men sholde not be dampned to deeth but w<sup>th</sup> due process. Jerusalem he subdued apen / & forbadd that no Jewe sholde dwelle therein by no wysle. Crysten men he suffred therser to dwelle. Apenst his wyll he came to the Emppre / but he gouerned hym very well. Whan the Senatours prayed hym to calle his sone Emperour after hym / He sayd / it is not ynough to me þ apenst my wyll I haue regned / whiche I haue not deserued. for the Emperour of Rome sholde go by successyon of blood / but to luche men as haue deserued it thugh theyr merytes. Many tymes he regned vnuertuoussly that is a kyng borne / and vertue sholde come before his kyngdom ¶ Eustachius otherwyle called placid<sup>9</sup> and Therospita his wyl / & two of ther sones / of whome meruayllous thynge ben redde / were martred by the comaundement of Adrian. This Placidus was mayster of the Emperours knyghtes. Jerusalem was restored by Adrian and made larger / so þ the place where Cryst deyed was within the walles / the whiche was without before. And this is þ thyrde buyldynge agayne of that cyte / for it was thryes destroyed . Of the Caldees in the tyme of Zedechee / of Antiochus in the tyme of Machabeoz / & of Titus in the tyme of Vespasian.

¶ Anno dñi .L. xliiij.

¶ Thelephorus a Romayne was pope .xi. yere This man ordeyned this aungels ympe to be longe in the masse (Gloria in excellis deo ꝛc) & the

gospell to be redde afore the sacrynge/  
and on Crystmasse dawe thre masses to  
be longe. And he ordeyned there sholde  
no masse be longe before thre of the clo-  
ke. And at the last he was martred & bu-  
ryed at saynt Peters. ¶ Ignius a Grek  
he was pope fourc yere. This man or-  
deyned that a childe sholde haue a god-  
fader & a godmoder at the tyme of bap-  
tysynge/and also one at confyrmacyon.  
Also that no Archebysshop /excepte the  
pope sholde condempne his Suffrygan  
but yf the cause were shewed in the pro-  
uyncpall counsell of bysshops. Thenne  
he was martred & buryed at saynt Pe-  
ters. ¶ Anthonius Pius was Emperour  
xxij. yere with his sones Aurolio & Lucio  
This man was myghely wyle & natus-  
relly fayre of speche/the whiche lyghly  
in oo man is not foude. Nota. ¶ Ex-  
cedynge men in wylsome comynly are  
not fayre speched/nor pealfull namely  
of nature/ne contraryous. ¶ Excedynge  
men in fayre speche comynly are lesse  
than wyle. This man was meued with  
bothe these propytees. Therfore many  
kyngdomes the whiche receded from o-  
ther Emperours/wylfully to this man  
turned ayen. And to crysten men was no  
ne so gentyll. He sayd thugh the ensam-  
ple of Cipio. I had leuer kepe one heere  
of a man / than slee an hondred of myn  
enmyes. And some martyrs were made  
vnder hym / but they were made vnder  
the comaundement of the Emperours  
afore. And the crysten people were so ha-  
tefull vnto the bysshops & to the prestes  
of the Temple of the fals goddes/that  
they prouoked the prynces alway ayenst  
them. for they supposled that the crysten  
fayth sholde destroye them. Therfore it  
was no meyuaylle/all though the pryn-  
ce was vnplesed/for they sayd All ther  
goddes were deuylls / yf lower Juges  
pursued crysten folke & martred them.  
This tyme .x. thousande martyrs were  
crucifyed in Armenia/in an hygh hylle

called Arath. ¶ Pompeius trogus isto  
tempore historias a nino vsqz ad octas-  
uianum deduxit.

¶ Anno dñi .L.iiij.

**D**ius ptalicus was pope .xi. yere &  
.iiij. monethes and .xv. daves /  
This man ordeyned the feest of Ester  
euer more sholde be halowed on the son  
dawe. And also an heretyke compng fro  
the secte of the Jewes sholde be receyued  
and baptyled. Thenne he was martred  
and buryed in saynt Peters. ¶ Anicetus  
was pope after Pi<sup>o</sup> almost .x. yere /this  
man made many decrees of the Canon  
and for bysshopes (It in ca<sup>o</sup> Diolato-  
res. ic.) ¶ Galienus a leche gotten in  
Pergamo was in grete fame at Rome  
The whiche not alonly expowned the  
bokes of Ppocras / but he put many of  
them to his bokes. And of this man is  
sayd/for his dylcrete abstynence the whi-  
che he vled/he lyued an hondred and .xl.  
yeres. He neuer ete nor dranke his fylle  
¶ Nota abstinentiam. ¶ He neuer to-  
ke rawe fruytes. Alwaye he had a swete  
brethe. He deped all oonly thugh aeege &  
no lykenesse. ¶ Marcus Anthonius the  
true/and Lucius Comodus were Empe-  
rours .xix. yere. These toke the Empp<sup>r</sup>  
re after Anthony the meke/and thenne  
began two Emperours to regne/but Lu-  
cius Comodus decessed. And Anthony  
was Emperous alone / the whiche was  
a victorvous man and a noble/but that  
he made the fourth persecucion to kylle  
crysten men. This Marcus was of so  
grete sadnesse and stedfastnesse/that for  
no chaunce he lough neuer/ne chaunged  
no chere/nother for gladnesse ne for so-  
rowe. And whanne he was a childe/he  
was of suche manhode / that on a cer-  
tayne tyme whan he loked his tresour/  
and had not that whiche he myght gy-  
ue his knyghtes and his men/whan he  
wente to fyght ayenst the Germayns/  
f ij

the Sclauons/and Sarmatus/he wolde hurte ne greue no body/but had leuer to selle his wyues golden vessel and her arayment/her beddyng/& all her ryall stuff/than take tax of the Senatours/or of his prouynce vnder hym. But he gate the victorie of his enmyes/and recouered all ayen/& released the prouynces of ther trybutes. And thole that wolde selle hym his wyues tresour ayen/he restored them ther moneye/& thole that wolde not/he neuer greued them. But the tables of ther dettes betwixt hym & them he brente openly in the market place and thanked them/that they helped hym in his necessyte.

**H**ow kynge Lucie regned after his fader/that was a good man/and after he became crysten.

**A**fter this kynge Coill regned Lucie his sone/that was a good man to god & to all the people. He sente to Rome to Eulentre þ then was pope/& sayd. He wolde become a crysten man & receyue bapty m in the name of god & come to the ryght fayth & byleue. Eulentre sente two Legates/þ were called pagan/an othe r Elpbain in to this londe & baptyled the kynge & all his meyne/ And after wente from towne to towne & baptyled the people tyll all the londe was baptyled. And this was in the yere an hondred .lvi. after the Incarnacyon of our lorde Ihesu cryste. And this kynge Lucie made tho in this londe two Arche bysshops/one at Caunterbury/an othe r at Poike / & othe r many bysshops þ yet ben in this londe. And whan these two Legats had baptyled all this londe/they ordeyned prestes for to baptyse childern/ & for to make the sacrament/and after they wente ayen to Rome. And the kynge dwelled in his londe / & regned with moche honour .xij. yere/and after dedye and lyeth at Gloucestre.

**H**ow this londe was longe without a kynge/& how the Brytons chole a kynge.

**T**his kynge Lucie had none heyre of his body begoten/þ was after warde grete harme & sorowe to the londe. For after this kynge Lucies de th/none of the grete lordes of the londe wolde suffre an othe r to be kynge/but lyued in warre & debate amonges themself .l. yere without kynge. But it befell afterwarde þ a grete pry nce came from Rome in to this londe that was called Seuerie/not for to warre/but for to saue þ ryght of Rome. But neuertheles he had not dwelled half a yere in this londe but that þ Brytons slewe hym. And whan they of Rome wy st that Seueri was so slayne/they sente an othe r grete lorde in to this londe that was called Allec that was a stronge man & a myghty of body & dwelled in this londe longe tyme and dyde moche sorowe to the Brytons. So that after for pure malyce/they chole a kynge amonge theym that was called Altelepades. And assembled a grete host of Brytons/& wente to London to seke Allec/and there they foude hym & slewe hym & al his felowes. And one that was called Walon deffended hym spersly/& fought longe with the Brytons/but at the last he was dyscomfyted/& the Brytons toke hym and bonde his hondes & feet and cast hym in to a water. Where fore þ water was called euer more Wal broke. **T**ho regned Altelepades in peas/tyll one of his Erles that was called Coill made a fayr towne ayenst the kynges wyll/& lete calle the towne Colchestre after his owne name. Wherefore the kynge was full wroth & thought to destroy hym. And began to warre vpon hym and brought grete power of men & yaaft the Erle batayll. And the Erle deffended hym spersly with his power and slewe the kynge hymself in that batayll. And tho was Coill crowned and made

kyng of this londe. This Coill regned and gouerned the londe well & nobly for he was a noble man & well beloued amonge þe Brytons. ¶ Whan tho of Rome herde that Astelepades was slayne they were wonder gladde and sente an other grete prynce of the Romayns that was called Constance. And he came to the kyng Coill for to chalenge the tribute that was wonte to be payed to Rome. And the kyng answered well & wysely & sayd þe he wolde paye to Rome all that ryght & reason wolde w good wyl. And so they accorded tho with good wyl and without ony contake. And so bothe they dwelled togpyder in loue. ¶ Kyng Coill yaf to hym his doughter Eleyne for to haue her to his spowle / that was both fayre & wysle and good & well letted. And this Constance spowled her there with moche honour. And it befell soone after that this kyng Coill deyed in the .xiiij. yere of his regne and lyeth at Colchestre entyred.

¶ Of kyng Constance that was a Romayne / that was chosen kyng after the dech of Coill / for as moche that he hadde spowled Eleyne that was kyng Coills doughter.

¶ After this kyng Coill Constance was made kyng & crowned for almoste as he had spowled kyng Coills doughter þe was heyre of þe londe. The whiche Constance regned well & worthely gouerned the londe. And he begate on his wyf Eleyne a sone þe was called Constantyne. And this kyng bare true fayth And truly dyde vnto them of Rome all his lyf. And whan he had regned .xv. yere he deyed & lyeth at Yorke.

¶ How Constantyne that was kyng Constance sone and the sone of Saynt Eleyne gouerned and ruled the londe & was Emperour of Rome.

¶ After kyng Constance dech regned Constantyne his sone & the sone of saynt Eleyne þe founde the holy crosse in the holy londe. And how Constantyne became Emperour of Rome. ¶ It befell soo in þe tyme there was an Emperour at Rome þe was a Sarralyn & a tyraunt that was called Maxence / that put to dech all þe blyued in god / & destroyed holy chirche by all his power & slewe all Crysten men that he myght fynde. And among all other he lete martyr Saynt Katheryne. And many other crysten people that hadde dicde of dech fledde & came in to this londe to kyng Constantyne. & tolde hym of the sorowe that Maxence dyde to the Crystyan pte. Wherfore Constantyne had pyte & made grete sorowe / and assembled a grete hoite & a grete power / and wente ouer vnto Rome and there toke the cyte and slewe all that there was in that were of mysblyue that he myght there fynde. And tho was he made Emperour and was a good man and gouerned hym so well that all londes to hym were attendaunt for to be vnder his gouernaunce. ¶ And this deuyl and tyraunt Maxence that tyme was in the londe of Grece & herde these tydynes and sodeynly became wood and sodeynly he deyed and so he ended his lyf. ¶ Whan Constantyne wente from this londe vnto Rome / he tooke with hym his moder Eleyne / for the moche wysedome that she coude / & the other grete lordes that he moost loued that one was called Hoell / an an other was called Taberne / & the thyrde Morhin. And toke all his londe to kepe vnto the Erle of Cornwyle that was called Octavian. And so anone as this Octavian wyfte that his lorde dwelled at Rome. Incontynent he sealed all the londe in to his honde and therwith dyde all his wyl amonge hygge & lowe & they helde hym for kyng. ¶ Whan these tydynes came to Constantyne the Em

perour/ he was wonder wrothe towarde the erle Octavian. And sente Taberne with .xij. M. men for to destroye the erle for his fallencle. And they arryued at Portelmouth. And whan Octavian wylt that he assembled a grete power of Brytons & dylcomfyted Taberne/ and Taberne fledde thens in to Scotlonde. & ordeyned there a grete power/ and came ayen in to this londe an other tyme to yeue batayll to Octaupan. Whan Octavian herde that / he assembled a grete power & came ayen towarde Taberne as moche as he myght / soo that thole two hostes mette togyders vppon Stanelmore/ and strongly smote togyder/ & tho was Octavian dylcomfyted/ and tledde thens vnto Norwage. And Taberne seassed all þe londe in his honde/ townes & castelles/ and as moche as they ther had. And syn Octavian came ayen from Norway with a grete power & seassed all the londe in his honde & drove out all the Romayns/ & was tho made kynge & regned.

How Maximian that was the Emperours colyn of Rome spowled Octavians doughter/ & was made kynge of this londe.

This Octavian governed the londe well & nobly/ but he had none heyre laue a doughter that was a yonge childe that he loued as moche as his lyf. And for as moche as he wexed lyke and was in poynt of deth/ & myght no longer regne / he wolde haue made one of his newwes to haue be kynge/ the which was a noble knyght & a stronge man that was called Conan Meriedok/ and he sholde haue kepte the kynges doughter & haue maryed her whan tyme had ben. But the lordes of the londe wolde not suffre it/ but yaf her coulepyll to be maryed to some hyghe man of grete honour / & thenne myght she haue all her

lust/ & the coulell of the Emperour Constantyne her lorde. And at this coulepyll they accorded/ & chole tho Lador of Loznewaylle for to go to the Emperour for to do this message. And he toke þe waye & went to Rome/ & tolde the Emperour this tydynges well and wylly. And the Emperour sent in to this londe with hys owne colyn þe was his vncles sone a noble knyght & a stronge/ that was called Maximian. And he spowled Octavians doughter/ & was crowned kynge of this londe.

How Maximian þe was the Emperours colyn/ conquered the londe of Armozycam/ & yaf it to Conan Meriedok.

This kynge Maximian became so ryall that he thought to conquere the londe of Armozycam/ for the grete rychelle þe he herde telle þe was in that londe / so þe he ne lefte man þe was of worthynes/ knyght/ squyre/ ne none other man/ that he ne toke with hym to the grete damage to all the londe. for he lefte at home behynde hym no man to kepe the londe/ but toke them with hys fro this londe. xxx. thousande knyghtes that were doughty mennes bodyes/ and wente ouer to the londe of Armozycam and there slewe the kynge that was called Imball/ and conquered all the londe. And whan he had so done/ he called Conan & sayd. for as moche as kynge Octavian made you kynge of Brytayne/ and thugh me ye were lefte & dystroubled that ye were not kynge. I gyue you this londe of Armozycam/ & you therof make kynge. And for as moche as ye be a Bryton. I wylt that this londe haue the same name / & nomore be called Armozycam / but be called Brytayne. And the londe from whens we be comen shall be called moche Brytayne. And soo shall men knowe that one Brytayne fro that other. Conan Meriedok



thanked hym gretefully / & so was he made kynge of Iytell Brytayne. And whan all this was done. Maximian wente from thens vnto Rome / & tho was made Emperour after Constantyne. And Conan dwelled still in Iytell Brytayne w moche honour / & there lete ordeyne .ij. thousande ploughmen of þ londre for to culture the londre to harowe it / & for to lowe it / & fessed them rycheley after þ they were. And for almoche as kynge Conan & none of his knyghtes. ne none of his other people wolde not take wyues of þ nacion of fraunce / he tho sente in to grete Brytayne to the Erle of Cornewayle þ men called Dionoche / þ he sholde chese thorough out all this londre .xi. M. of maydens. That is to saye .viij. M. for the meane people / and .iiij. M. for the gretest lordes that sholde them spouse. And whan Dionoch vnderstode this / he made a comaundement thoroughout all the londre of Brytayne. And as many as the nombre came to he assembled toggyder of maydens / for there was no man þ durst withstande his comaundement / for as moche that all the londre was take hym to warde & kepe / to doo all thyng that hþ good lyked. And whan these maydens were assembled / he lete them come afore hym at London. And lete ordeyne for them shyppes hastely / and as moche as them neded to that byage. And toke his owne doughter that was called Ursula / that was the fayrest creature that ony man wytt. And he wolde haue sent her to kynge Conan / that sholde haue spoused her and made her quene of the londre. But she had made pryuely to god a vowe of chastyte / that her fader not wytt / ne none other man elles that was lyuyng vpon erthe.

How Ursula and .xi. thousande maydens that were in her company wente towarde Iytell Brytayne / and all they were martred at Coleyne.

This Ursula chose vnto her company .xi. thousande maydens / þ of all other she was lady & maystresse / And all they wente to shyppes at one tyme in the water þ is called Tamyle / & comaunded her kynne & her frendes to almyghty god / & saylled towarde Iytell Brytayne. But whan they were come in to the hyghe see / a stronge tempest arose as it was goddes wyll / & Ursula with her shyppes & her company were dryue to Hundlonde thugh tempest / and arryued in the haven of the cyte of Coleyne. And the kynge of the londre that was called Gowan / was tho in the cyte. And whan he wytt the tydynge / that so many fayre maydens were there arryued. He toke Elga his brocher & other of his houlholde with hym & went to the shyppes to see þ fayre company. And whan he sawe them so fayre / he and his company wolde haue ouerlayne them & take fro them ther maydenhode. But Ursula that good mayde / coulepylled / prayed / warned / & taught theym that were her felowes þ they sholde defende them with all theyr myght / and rather suffre deeth than suffre ther body to be defoyled. So that all tho maydens became so stedfast in god / that they defended them thugh his grace / so that none of them hadde power to do them shame. Wherefore the kynge Gowan was sore anoyed that he for wrathe slewe them euerychone anonc ryght / & so were all tho maydens martred for the loue of god / and lyeth at Coleyne.

How kynge Gowan came for to destroy this londre / and how a man of grete power that was called Graian defended the londre.

As all this was done kynge Gowan that was a Sarralyn called his brocher Elga and sayd to hym / that he sholde goo conquere the londre

that all those fayr maydens were borne in. And he ordered tho a grete power of Dehites of Denmarke of Dikeny / & of Norway And they came in to this londe / & brente townes & slewe folke / & cast a downe churches & houles / and robbed all the londe in length & brede / & put to deeth all tho that wolde not forsake the ryght bylue & crystendome / for as moche as there was no louverayne þ myght them helpe . for the kynge Maximian had take with hym all the worthy men whan he wente to conquere Iptell Brytayne And in the same tyme that ye here now telle was Saynt Albon martyrd thugh the wood tyraūt Dyoclesian / in the same place where is now an abbaye made of saynt Albon whyles þ he was a paynym . But he conuerted h̄ to god thugh the predicacō of a clerke & a wysse man þ was called Ancycle / that was herbourghed a nyght in his hous . And this was after thyncarnacyon of Ihesu Cryst . ii. hondred . xxvi. yere . And men shall vnderstonde þ saynt Albon suffred his martyrdom before þ saynt Edmonde was martyrd / & therfore is saynt Albon called the fyrst martyr of Englonde

¶ This Gowans brother & his folke that were sarralyns wente thugh þ londe & destroyed all thynge that they founde / & no thynge they spared . Whan these tydynges came to Rome . how þ kynge Gowan had begon for to destroye this londe / the Emperour of Rome sente a stronge man & of grete power þ was called Gracian with .xxiiij. M. well fyghtynge men / for to caste out those sarralyns of this londe . And all they arryued at portelmouth . ¶ Maximian myght not come h̄self / for as moche as he was chosen Emperour after the deeth of Constantyne that was saynt Eleyne lone . whan this Gracian was arryued w̄ his hoste / he lete aspye pryuely where kynge Gowan myght be founde . And he sette vpon them sodenly as they laye in theyr

beddes / and dyscomfyted hym & slewe them in ther beddes euerychone / that none of them scaped / lauf Gowan that fledde in to his owne coūtree w̄ moche sorowe & grete payne . ¶ Soone after it befelle that Maximian was slayne at Rome thugh treason . And whan Gracian wylt that tydynges he lete crowne hym kynge of this londe .

¶ How Gracian made h̄ kynge whan Maximian was slayne / & afterwarde þ Brytons slewe h̄ for his wychednesse .

¶ This Gracian whan he began to regne / he became so wyched & so sterne / and so moche sorowe dyde to the Brytons þ they slewe h̄ amonge them

¶ Tho whan kynge Gowan vnderstonde þ Gracian was slayne & done to deeth he assembled a grete power & came apert in to this londe . And yf he had fyrst done harme tho dyde he moche more . for tho destroyed he all this londe / & the crysten people þ were in moche Brytayne / so that no man was so hardy for to name god / & he that so dyde anone he was put to strange deeth . ¶ But the bysshop of London that was tho þ was called Gostelin scaped / & went thens to them of Rome to seke socour / to helpe to destroye the sarralyns þ had destroyed this londe . And þ Romayns sayd / that they had ben so often enoyed for ther lendenge people in to Brytayne / all for to helpe the Brytons / & they wolde nomore so do / and so the bysshop Gostelin went thens without ony secour or helpe . And tho wente he to the kynge of Iptell Brytayne þ was called Aldrope / & this was the thyrde kynge after Gowan Meryedok / as before is layd . ¶ The bysshop prayed this Aldrope of helpe & locoure / & the kynge had pyte in his herte whan he herde how the bysshop fledde / & how that the crysten men were soo slayne in grete Brytayne thugh þ paynyms and

Sarralyns/he graūted hym Constantyn his broder hym for to helpe with power of folke. And then dyde arrape hors/armour & chypes/& all thynges þ needed to þ vpage. And whan all thyng was redy/he called the byshop/& to hym sayd I take you here Constantyne my broder vpon this couenaūt. That yf god gyue hym grace the paynems & the sarralyns to destroye/þ ye then make hym kynge. And the byshop graūted w good wyll. ¶ Constantyne & the byshop toke leue of the kynge Aldrope & betoke hym to god/& toke ther men. xij. thousande and wente to ther chypes/& saylled toward grete Brytayne & arryued att Totness. ¶ Whan the Brytons herde these tydyngs þ to them came locour/they were strongly holpen/& ordeyned them an huge nombre of people & came to them and receyued them with moche honour. ¶ Gowan anone as he wyll of these tydynges/he assembled all the Sarralyns & came aynst them & yaued them batayle. And Constantyne slewe h̄ with his owne hondes. And all those other Sarralyns were dyscomfyted & slayne þ none of them escaped/but thole that were conuerted vnto almyghy god.

¶ How Constantyne þ was the kynges brother of Iptell Brytayne was crowned kynge of grete Brytayne/for his grete vertue & his grete worthynesse.

**A**None after the batayll they wente to London & crowned there Constantyne & made hym kynge of this londe. And the byshop Gostelyn sette þ crowne on his heed & anoynted hym/as it befalleth for a kynge to be. And tho began crystendome ayen in this londe. And anone this kynge Constantyne as he was crowned. anone after he spowlid his wyf thugh coulepyll of the Brytons. And he begate thre sones on her. The fyrste was called Constance / & þ other

Aurilambros/& the thyrde Dter. This Constance the elder brother/whan he came to aege / he made hym a monke att Wyncestre. This Constantyne ther fast thugh treason was slayne. ¶ For it befell on a tyme/that a Pehite came to h̄ vpon a daye in message as it were. And sayd that he wolde speke with the kynge pryuely in coulepyll. The kynge left voyde his chambic of the men þ were there within / & thcre abode noo moo but the kynge & the Pehite. And he made a couenaunce as though he wolde haue spoken with the kynge in his eere. And there he slewe hym with a longe knyf. And after that he went meruapoully out of the chambic in to an other chambic/so at the laste no man wyll where he was become. ¶ Whan the kynges men wyll that theyr lorde was so ded/they made then so moche sorowe that they wyll not what to do. for as moche as his two sones Aurilambros and Dter were so yonge/that they myght not be kynge / and the thyrde was a monke as is layd before. But Dertiger that was Erle of Westlex thought pryuely in his herte thugh queyntaunce for to be kynge hym selfe. And wente to Wynchestre/where that Constance was monke / and sayd vnto hym. Constance sayd he/your fader is ded & your two brethern that ben with Gostelyn the byshopp of London to nouryche be so yonge / that none of them may be kynge. Wherfore I coulell you/that ye forsake your habyte and come with me. And I shall make suche a meane vnto the Brytons/that ye shall be made kynge.

¶ Of Constance that was kynge Constantynes sone/that was a monke att Wynchestre/and how he was made kynge after his faders dethe though counlepyll of Dertiger that was erle of Westlex / for as moche as Aurilambros and Dter his two brethern were but yonge

of aerge. And Hortiger lete llee hym for to be kynge hymself.

**T**his Hortiger couſelled this Conſtance ſo moche / tyll he forloke his abbot & wente with hym. And anone after he was crowned kynge by the ſent of the Brytons. This kynge Conſtance whan he was crowned & made kynge / he wyll ne knewe but lpfell of þ world ne coude nothyng what knyght hode axed . And he made Hortiger his chyef mayſter & couſeyller / & gaaf hym all his power / for to ordeyne & do as moche as to the reame aperteyned. So that hymſelf nothyng entremedled / but oonly bare the name of kynge. Whan Hortiger ſawe that he had all the londe in his warde & gouernall / he thought a prey trealon to llee Conſtance the kynge / that he myght hymſelf be crowned and made kynge & regne. And lete ſende after an hondred knyghtes of Pehites / the worthyeſt of all the londe / & them helde with hym for to dwelle / as to be keepers of his body / as he wolde go thorough the londe to ordeyne thynges that apperteyned to a kynge. And this Hortiger honoured ſo moche the hondred knyghtes & ſo moche paue them of golde & ſyluer / and ſo ryche Jewelles / robes / horſes / & other thynges plentce / wherfore they helde hþ more lorde than they dyd the kynge. And Hortiger tolde them / yf he myght be kyge / ye as it were thugh trealon / he wolde make them rycheſt of the londe. Soo at the laſt thugh grete gyftes þ he had gauen largely / they cryed thugh þ courte that Hortiger were better worthy to be kynge than Conſtance. Wherfore Hortiger made ſemblaunt as he hadde ben wroth. And he departed thens from the court / & ſayd he muſt go elles where for thynges that he hadde to do. And ſo the traytour ſayd for by cauſe that they ſholde llee hym / that is to ſaye Conſtance. ¶ Whad this Hortiger was gone / it be

fell ſoone after / that tho hondred knyghtes of Pehites brake the doores of þ kynges chambze and there they hym llewe / and ſmote of his heed & bare it to Hortiger there that he dwelled. And ſo whan Hortiger ſawe that heed / he wepte full tenderly with his eyen / and neuertheles he was ſomdeale gladdde in his herte of his deſth. ¶ And anone this Hortiger toke thoſe hondred knyghtes of Pehites / & badde his ſcruauntes bynde theyr hondes behynde them / & ladde them to London / and there they were dampned vnto deſth as fals traytours. And anone after all the Brytons of the londe by the comyn aſſente crowned Hortiger & made hym kynge of the londe.

¶ Anno dñi .L. lxxiiij.

**S**other a martyr was pope after Anicetū .ix. yere þ whiche decreed that a Nonne ſholde not touche the palle of þ awter / nor put in ſence therto. And þ ſhe ſholde were a wimple aboute her heed. And many perylls he ſawe about matrimony. Therfore he ordeyned þ no woman ſholde be called a leſul wyf / but yf ſhe were bleſſyd of the preſt. ¶ Elen therus a martyr was pope after Socher xv. yere / the whiche ordeyned þ cryſten men ſholde reſuſe no meeete reſonable þ was mānes mete (Nota) ¶ Allo that no man vnaccuſed in a crime / ſholde be put from his dygnytee or degree tyll he were conuſted / though enſample of Cryſt the whiche kepfe ſtyll Judas Scaryoth not accuſed / & Cryſte knewe hym gylty. And what ſomeuer he dyd amonge the apoſtles for the dygnyte of his ſeruyce abode ferme & ſtable. And he ſente allo Legates vnto Lucie the kynge of Brytayne / the whiche baptyled hym & his people. And ſagus & Domianus legates / the whiche the pope ſente fyrſte / preched in Englonde / and this cryſten dome dured in Brytayne two hondred

pere / vnto the tyme of Diodetian the  
 Emperour whan saynt Albon was mar-  
 t. ed. ¶ Marcus Anthonius / & Lucius Co-  
 modus were Emperours / but Marcus  
 deyed anone / & Lucius Comodus reg-  
 ned. Comodus was called proufftable  
 of lcome / for he was to euery man vn-  
 proufftable. He was peuen vterly to le-  
 chery. Many Senatours & Crysten men  
 he made to be slayne. He dampned his  
 owne wyf to deth for aeg. He deyed a lo-  
 depne deth w struglyngge amonge may-  
 dens. ¶ Helius Pertinax after this man  
 was Emperour. vi. monethes / and was  
 a man of grete discrecyon / whome Juli-  
 an the grete lawer slewe. And he entred  
 the Emppre / & was slayne the .vij. mo-  
 nethe of Senerus. ¶ Victor a martyr  
 was pope after Elentheriū. x. yere. And  
 for the dyscorde of the paschall tyme he  
 called a counsell in Alexander / where he  
 was presente that tyme / & many other /  
 Where he decreed that Ester dape shol-  
 de be kept on the Sondaye / but he must  
 kepe the chaūge of the moone of Apryll  
 and that was to dyfferre fro Jewes / for  
 many byllhops of the east abode that ty-  
 me / the lame dape that the yewes dyde  
 halowe that feest. ¶ Also he ordeyned h  
 i. the tyme of nede / children myght be  
 crystened in euery place / & in cuery wa-  
 ter. ¶ Zepherinus a martyr & a Romay-  
 ne was pope after Victor. ix. yere. This  
 man ordeyned that Crysten people of  
 xij. yere of aeg & aboue / sholde receyue  
 his god on Ester dape ones oo yere. Als  
 so he ordeyned that all the vessels of the  
 awter sholde be glasse or tynne / and not  
 tree / as in olde tyme the consecracion of  
 the glorzous blood was made in tree ves-  
 sell. And this tyme pass / & the worlshyp  
 of the chirche grewe / & glasen vessel-  
 le were forbode (Vt patet de conse. de pri. ca.)  
 ¶ Digenes the noble clerke was this ty-  
 me / & he wrote so moche / that saynt Je-  
 rom sayd I haue redde of Digenes wer-  
 kes. iij. thousande volumes without pyls-

les. He translated the Byble from he-  
 brewen in to Greke / & dyde many other  
 grete thynges. And of this Digenes /  
 Sampson. Salomon / & Traian / is a  
 grete questyon amonge doctours yf that  
 they ben dampned or laued. Therefore  
 thole thynges h without peryll we ben  
 not boude to knowe / nor h chirche is not  
 certifyed of them. And therfor lette them  
 be alonly comytted vnto god. ¶ Calist<sup>9</sup>  
 a martyr & a Romayne was pope after  
 Zepherin<sup>9</sup>. v. yere / & he ordeyned the Li-  
 miteri (in via apia) where many a thou-  
 lande martyr is buryed. ¶ Also he ordey-  
 ned the feest of the Emeryngge dapes to  
 be kept. ¶ Anthon<sup>9</sup> Aurelius was Em-  
 perour. iij. yere. And this man lacked no  
 kynde of lechery / & at the laste he was  
 slayne amonge a greate multytude of  
 peple / for his myscheuous luyngge. An-  
 thoni<sup>9</sup> Marcus regned after hym. viij. ye-  
 re. This man luyed obstynatly / & ther-  
 fore he was slayne as was his predeces-  
 sor. ¶ Alisander was Emperour after  
 Anthon<sup>9</sup> & regned. xij. yere. This man  
 at the Instauce of his moder a crysten  
 womau & the techyngge of Digenes / the  
 whiche came to Rome to conuerte her /  
 was made soo good vnto crysten men h  
 he suffred them to haue ther counsell-  
 es & theyr prayers by themselves / but neuer /  
 theles in this tyme the curlyd offycers of  
 hym made many martyrs.

¶ Anno dñi .CC. xliij.

**U**Rbanus was pope after Calist<sup>9</sup>  
 .viij. yere / and olde & yonge he  
 was verry vertuous. And all the halowed  
 vesselles of the chirche he made of golde  
 or syluer. This man lefte his popehede  
 & wente to Agrippa / and .xi. thousande  
 virgyns with hym. And the clergy sayd  
 he lefte not his dygnyttee for holynesse /  
 but for appetyte of tho virgyns / & wro-  
 te hym not in the booke of popes. And  
 there he a virgyn was martred w those

virgyns. ¶ Pontianus a martyr succeded Urban<sup>o</sup>. And he ordeyned þ̄ psalmes sholde be sayd daye & nyght in the churche of god. And that a prest sholde saye Confiteor afore the masse. ¶ Anteros a martyr was pope after this man/this man ordeyned þ̄ a bysshop myght be remeued from one vnto an other. And he made the lyfe of martyrs to be wyrtten. And he was slayne & buryed in the Limitery of saynt Calixt. ¶ Maximianus was cholen Emperour at Maguncia of the hoste/ & not by the Senatours/ & regned thre yere / and destroyed the churche myghtely/ and was slayne for Origene ¶ Gordian regned after hym .vi. yere & of hym is lytell wyrtten / but he was slayne (H̄is diebz Celus dur Colchestrie in asclepio regnat in britania anis qual. .xxx. vlgz ad aduentu Constancij. La. ti M vacat) ¶ Phylpp was Emperour after hym / & this Phylpp chole to hym Phylpp his sone/ & they regned .xviij. yere/ & were the fyrste Emperours þ̄ were cryttened/ and after slayne of the hoste/ They bequeued all ther tresour in ther deeth / that it sholde be dispoled to poore men. And saynt Lawrence at the assygnacyon of his mayster the pope/ departed this tresour about Rome/ the whiche was grete cause of his martyrdom (Et quide dicunt) ¶ Decius was Emperour thre yere/ & in all thynges a tyraunt. for he entred the myre whan he & the hoste had slayne the two Phylppes his lordes & after þ̄ he was slayne with his sone. ¶ Fabian<sup>o</sup> a martyr & a Romayne was pope after Anteros. xij. yere/ this was a very holy man. for whan Crysten men stode to abyde the eleccon of the pope/ sodenly a whyte doue or a culuour descended on his heed/ sayenge vnto hym/ thou shalt be pope of Rome. This man ordeyned euery yere þ̄ Creme sholde be halowed vpon Sherehurst daye. Also he deuyded regyons to deakens/ the whiche sholde wyrtte the lyf of martyrs. And at

the last Decius slewe hym. ¶ Cornelius a martyr & Romayne was pope after Fabian<sup>o</sup>. ij. yere. This man toke vp the bodes of Peter & Pou! / & with grete honour put them in worlhyppfull places w̄ beata Lucina. ¶ Lucius was pope after Cornelius thre yere / & of hym lytell is wyrtten. ¶ Gallus w̄ his sone Volucianus were Emperours two yere / & they fought with Emilianus/ & were slayne And Emilian<sup>o</sup> the thyrde moneth was slayne. ¶ Valerian was Emperour with his sone Galpene .xv. yere. This man was vertuous & manly in the begynnynge/ but after was gyuen to vyce/ & moche wretchednesse. And so was his sone Galiene. This Valerian wente vnto þ̄ londe of Perle. And therfore the grete blood of martyrs whiche he had shedde was taken of the kyng of Perle. And whan he had take hym/ he put out both his eyen & kepte hym in grete bondage. And to this entente he kepte hym / that whan so euer he sholde ryde/ this Valerian sholde lye downe/ & he sholde sette his feet vpon his backe whan he wolde take his hoile. This herde Galiene his sone þ̄ was lefte at Rome. And that caused hym that he was not so cruell ayenst Crysten men. ¶ And here was the .viij. persecucion of the churche made by the Emperour. And made the Romayns to lele ther kyngdomes/ the whiche were neuer recovered ayen to the Emperoure/ And generall pestylence was thrugh out all the worlde for ther trespasse. ¶ Stephanus a martyr after Lucius was pope. ij. yere/ this man ordeyned þ̄ no man sholde vse none halowed clothes but to the worlhypp of god. ¶ Sixtus a martyr & a Romayne was pope after Stephanus two yere. This man ordeyned that the masse sholde be sayd vpon an awter the whiche afore was not / & thenne he deyed. ¶ Dyonisi<sup>o</sup> a Romayne was pope after hym two yere. This man deuyded parishes & churchyardes/ & assygs

ned to chirches certen preestes. ¶ Felix a martyr was pope after Dyonisius two yere. he ordeyned that for the memoire of martyrs masses sholde be sayd. Also he ordeyned the Dedycacon of the churche euery yere sholde be sayd. ¶ Claudius was Emperour after Valerian / this emperour subdued Gothas nobly / & therie he dysllesed.

¶ Anno dñi .CC. lxxiiij.

¶ Euticianus a martyr was pope after Felix. viij. yere. This man ordeyned þ̄ corne & beenes shold be blessed on the awter. And he buryed .CC. & .liij. martyrs with his owne hondes. ¶ Aurelius was Emperour after Claudius. v. yere / this Aurelius fyrst to crysten men was gentyll / wherfore he had the victory in euery place gloriously. And whan he was delceyued by curlyd men / & pursiwed crysten men myghely / & namely in fraunce / for there he abode / & after that he had neuer good fortune. But was slayne. And this was the nynt persecucion of the churche & crysten fayth. ¶ Tacitus was Emperour after this man / & he regned but thre monethes & was slayne in ponto. ¶ Probus was Emperour after hym .v. yere & .iiij. monethes. This man recouered fraunce a yen / the whiche was occupped with Barbaryk men. And he yaued them & Pannonia lycence to haue vyne yerdes. And whan he had almost all thynges well in peas he sayd. Knyghtes within a lytel tyme shall not be necessary / & anone after he was slayne at Sirmiu. ¶ Carus & his two lones Carinus & Numerian were Emperours after Probus / but loone were they dyed / & theyr fader was drowned / & the two lones were slayne / all these thre regned but .ij. yere. ¶ Dioclesian & Maximian came after these thre Emperours / tho one regned in the East / and the other in the Weste. The

fyrste thyng that Dioclesian dyde / he brente all the crysten mennes boke that myght be founde. The two tyrauntes dyde more harme to Crysten men than euer dyde ony other. For .x. yere lasted the persecucion. And as we rede / within .xxx. dayes .xx. thousande men were slayne for Crystis sake. And in Englonde all fayth was almost destroyed in that tyme of Maximian. ¶ Gaius was pope after Euticianus / this man ordeyned þ̄ no man sholde accuse a bysshop or an other clerke to ony seculer Juge. And that a pagon or an heretyke sholde not accuse a crysten man. Also he ordeyned that he that was worthy sholde ascende grece by grece to his ordie / fyrste Benet / than Colet / subdeacon / deacon / & than preest. And at the laste he was martred vnder Dioclesian. ¶ Arcellin a martyr was pope after Gaius .xi. yere and .iiij. monethes. This man was persecuted sore / for drede of dethe he offred thre cornes of incense to the sacrificre of the ydolles. And afterwarde he openly repented / & suffred the payne of dech for the fayth of the churche of god. His body laye vnburyed thre dayes for drede of the curse of god. And after thorough auylsion of saynt Peter & Marcell / he was buryed at saynt Peters foot. ¶ Marcellus was pope after Marcellinus .v. yere. This man ordeyned that a generall counseyll myght not be ordeyned without the auctorite of the pope (vt pz. xvij. di. c. sino diu) ¶ Also he chose .xv. Cardynalles in the cyte to burye crysten men. At the last whan he had kepte breestes longe tyme in a house closed in with them / by the commaundement of Maximian / he deyed for faute. ¶ Eusebius a martyr was after this man two monethes & certayne dayes. This man of a laye man was made pope / & he ordeyned that no laye man sholde accuse his bysshop / but yf he wente fro his fayth (vt pz. ij. ix. vij. c. lat cos). ¶ Nota. ¶ This tyme saynt

Albon was martyred in Bytayne. This Albon whan he was a pagan / he lodged a certayne man / the whiche conuerted hym to the fayth / and after was Jugged vnto deyth. And moche people he tomed vnto our lord / that were nygh the was- ter / the whiche he made drye thugh his praeyr. And he suffred deyth nygh the cy- te of Verelom (Vide plura in vita sanc- cti Albani) Melchiades a martyr suc- ceded Eusebi<sup>9</sup>. iij. yere. This man for- bode that men sholde faste on Sondaye or on Thurdaye in so moche as paga- nes faste on thole dayes. At the laste he was martyred as alle his predecessours were. ¶ And vnderstonde ye that there were .xxxij. popes of Rome martyred e- che one after other. Peter was the fyrst / and this Melchiades was the last. And thenne it was laudable after Gregory / a man to declere a byshoppyche. ¶ Gas- lerius was Emperour after Dyoctelian two yere / and an other with hym called Constantius. So was the Emppre in thole dayes deuyded. This Constantis us after he had conquered all spayne / he came in to grete Bytayne / and there he wedded a kynges doughter on who- me he gate grete Constantyne. And this same Constantius deyed in Bytayne / and lyeth at Porke / as Martyne sayth in his Cronycles / and left on lyue Con- stantyne that was gotten on Elyne / and was kyng of Bytayne & of fraunce.

¶ Circa annū dñi .CCC. viij.

**S**ilvester was pope after Melchia- des. This was a glorvous Con- fessour / and many wayes he worshyped the chyrche of god / what in wytyng / what in myracles. He receyued the pas- trymony of saynt Peter. That is for to save / the kyngdome of Ytalye with the cyte of Rome / of Constantynople the Emperour / and to the worshyp of the hole vniuersall chyrche of god he tomed

it. He baptyfled Elyne and the Jewes / and thenne he decessyd an holy Confes- lour. ¶ Constantyne the myghty was Emperour this tyme. This Constantyne was a glorvous man and a victor- ous in bataylie. In gouernynge of the comyn people he was very wyle. And in the necessitye of the byleue he was with- out compayre. Deuoute. His pyte and his holynes ben so wyrtyn in the boke of holy doctours / that without doubte / he is to be nombred amonge Sayntes. And the Gyckes saye / that in the ende of his lyf he was made a monke. And more ye may here of hym in the Crony- cles of Englonde. for he was kyng in Englonde. ¶ Helena the quene moder to Constantyne repayred agayne the ho- ly Crosse this tyme. And she made .lxx. Colleges / and she glorified the state of all holy chyrche. ¶ Nicholas byshop of Myrree seete an holy man was this tyme. ¶ Athanasius was this tyme bys- hop in Alexandrie a glorvous doctour / made the (Symbalum Quicunq; vult saluus esse. &c.) ¶ Marcus was pope after Siluestes two yere and .viij. mo- nethes / this man ordeyned þe Crede shol- de be openly longe in the chyrche. And þe byshop of hostiencie sholde consecra- te the pope / & þe he sholde were a palle / ¶ Julius was pope after Marcus .xi. ye- re / this man was exiled .x. yere / & after suffred deyth vnder Constantyne þe secon- de. ¶ Constantin<sup>9</sup> w his two brethern regned .xxiij. yere. And in his laste ende he was peruerted by the herelype of the Ariens by a byshop called Eusebi. And he pursued the chyrche of god strongely. The ende of this man was this. As he sholde goo to Constantynople vnto a grete coulepyll / in the whiche coulepyll he thought to haue condemned the bys- hop and the clerkes of true byleue / he wente before vnto a chambre to auoyde suche thyngs as nature requyred / & ano- ne lodeynly his bowels felle from hym /



and thereby was deed as ye now here. **Liberius** was pope after **Julius** .xix. yere & .viij. monethes. Thenne was the seconde dyscorde of þe churche byrowne **Liberius** & **felix** for the herelye of þe **Ariens** the whiche fauoured **Liberius**. Thenne **Constancius** the Emperour called ayeu **Liberius** from his exile by cause he fauoured this herelye. And the churche deieced **Liberius** & toke **felix** for pope & the oþer was expelled as an heretyke of the churche. But **felix** obeyned not for the Emperour put in **Liberius** & expelled **felix**. **Felix** was pope after the deche of this **Liberius**. And he declared **Constancius** the Emperour an heretyke / & anone after he was martyrd. And heere was the fyrst that euer the churche of Rome had an Infamed pope. for alle the predecessours of this **Liberius** were sayntes & yaued holy enlamples. **Julianus** **Apostata** was after **Constancius** Emperour two yere & .viij. monethes / he was called **Apostata** / for he fledde this **Constancius** / whiche slewe his brother. And for fere of dech was made a crysten man & a monke. But afterwarde by the couleyll of **Nygmancers** / he asked þe deuyll whether he sholde be Emperour or not. The deuyll sayd that he sholde be Emperour vpon a condicyon that he sholde forsake his crysten fayth and be vnter enemye to crysten men. And so he dyde. for he yaued leue to the Jewes that they sholde buylde ayen the Temple in spyte of the crysten men. And he toke al the goodes that crysten man had and destroyed many of them. **Joimianus** was Emperour after hym .viij. monethes. for whan **Julianus** was deed the hoste chole hym Emperour. And he was a crysten man. And he sayd it was not leyffull to a crysten man to be lord ouer so many hethen people. They answered and sayd. Rather than he sholde forsake the Emppre they wolde be crystened. And thus toke he the dygnytter.

But soone he was deed / and in a meruayllous maner. for he was layde in a close hous after his Journeye made all of stone / newly whyted with lyme / in the whiche they made to his comfote as they thought a fyre of charcoole. And of the ayre of these two in the morowe he was founde deed. **Valentinian** with his brother **Valent** was Emperour after **Joimianus** .xi. yere. for he departed the Emppre / & gaue his brother the east / and kepte hymselfe the west parte. This **Valentinian** was a lorde with **Julianus** **Apostata**. And it happed hym on a tyme for to goo in a Temple of false goddes for to do sacrifyce. And mynystrs stode there with water halowed after the gyle with the whiche they strynkled the lordes. This **Valentinian** smote the mynyster that cast the water vpon hym & layd. He was rather defoyled by it than clenched. for this **Julianus** dyde exile hym. But our lorde god for his open confessyon of his name rewarded hym with the Emppre. His brother **Valent** fell in to the oppnyon of the **Ariens** and deyed in that herelye. This same **Valent** lyued foure yere after **Valentinian** w<sup>th</sup> **Gracian** the Emperour. This tyme lyued saynt **Ambrose**.

Anno dñi .CCC. xliiij.

**D**Amacius was pope after **felix** .xviij. yere & two monethes / this was an eloquent man in meter. And he wrote many stoyres of popes & martyrs he ordeyned that **Gloria patri** sholde be sayd in þe endes of the psalmes. And that was at the prayer of saynt **Jerom**. And thugh the mocyon of this pope **Jerome** translated the Byble from Hebrewe in to Latyn / & thenne he dectled a confellour. **Valens** with **Gracian** & **Valentinian** were Emperours foure yere / In this tyme were churches opened ayen and crysten men had leue to renewe the

seruyce of god that was defended afore  
with Emperours infected with heretie  
as was Valens & other/wherfore y<sup>e</sup> chir  
che had no lyberte whan Valens was on  
lyue. ¶ A Synodus of a hondred and .i.  
bysshops were gadred vnder Damasi<sup>9</sup>  
pope at Constantynople ayenst Mace  
donium an heretie/the whiche denyed  
the holy ghost to be very god. And the<sup>e</sup>  
was the Crede made / that is longe on  
holydayes in the chyrche. ¶ Augustinus  
a Cartagineñ of Affrica was this tyme  
he was as noble a Rethoricien as mygh  
te be. And in all phylosophye & poeetrie  
incomparable. And all thyng that ony  
phylosopher foude in his yough/ he vn  
derstode with lytell labour. And aboute  
this tyme he was sente to Mediolanum  
where he was tored anone of saynt Am  
brose & baptyled. This man grewe vn  
to a noble doctour of y<sup>e</sup> chyrche. And not  
longe after that he was byshop of Ppo  
neñ. And there he lyued .liij. yere/ & mo  
che dyuynyte he wrote (vt patet in libris  
suis) ¶ Siriti<sup>9</sup> was pope after Dama  
sius .xv. yere/ he dampned heretiekes/ &  
lytell elles is wyrtten of hym. ¶ Thodo  
sius lone to Giacian with Valentyne  
his vncler were Emperours .xxvij. yere/  
This man was a crysten man & gracy  
ous/ & in gouernaunce lyke to Traian<sup>9</sup>/  
soone wrothe & anone reconlyled. This  
man on a dape whan he wolde haue go  
ne to haue herde masse/ saynt Ambrose  
forbadde hym the entree of the chyrche/  
tyll he had penaunce & made satysfac  
cyon for the sleenge of .xxx. knyghtes the  
whiche he slewe in angre at Constantyn  
ople. Wherfore they made a lawe that  
the sentence of a prynce sholde be defer  
red .xxx. dayes of thole y<sup>e</sup> sholde do execu  
tyon yf they myght falle in the grace of  
the prynce within the .xxx. days. ¶ Abou  
te this tyme was a childe borne in the  
castell of Emans/ from the nauyll and  
aboue deuyded in two bodyes/ haupnge  
two heedes and two wyttes/ so that the

one sleppnge or etyng / the other slepte  
not ne ete not. And whan they were two  
yere of aege/ the one decessyd/ and the o  
ther lyued thre dayes after. ¶ Claudius  
poeta was this tyme. ¶ Arcadius & Ho  
norius regned .xxx. yere. And in theyr tyme  
Rome was nere destroyed by a kyn  
ge called Alaticus. Of y<sup>e</sup> whiche destruc  
cyon rose a grete blasphemye of the Ro  
mayns. for they sayd they eared neuer  
well sythen Cryste came to Rome/ & be  
reued them ther goodes by the prechyng  
of Peter & Poul. And yet this Arcadi<sup>9</sup>  
subdued all his ennynes by the power of  
god/ & shedde no blood. Ayenst this blas  
phemye saynt Austyn made y<sup>e</sup> solempne  
werke/ the whiche they calle (de ciuitate  
dei) ¶ Honorius was Emperour with  
Theodolius his broders lone .xv. yere &  
he was a man of holy lyf. for two wy  
ues he had/ & yet w<sup>th</sup> bothe he deyed may  
den. he loued specyally the chyrche & ha  
ted heretiekes. ¶ Jerom deyed this tyme  
at Bethleem the yere of his aege .lxxi.  
¶ Sanctus Heracides the whiche wrote  
Vitas patrū to lapsū episcopū was this  
tyme. ¶ Johannes Crystostom<sup>9</sup> was ex  
iled of Endochia the wyfe of Arcadius/  
& thugh herte of the lonne he was deed  
¶ Anastalius was pope after Siritius  
thre yere. This man ordeyned that eue  
ry man sholde stande at the redyng of  
the holy gospell. And that he that was  
a maymed man sholde not be preest.  
¶ Innocencius was pope after Anasta  
lius/ this man ordeyned that lyke men  
sholde be anoynted with holy oyle. And  
at masse the kyssle of peas to be peuen/  
And he dampned Pelagyen an heretieke  
and many other thynges dyde (vt patet  
.xxvi. q. i.)

¶ Anno dñi .LCC. xliij.

**Z**ozimus was pope after Inno  
cencius two yere & .viij. monethes  
This man ordeyned that clerkes shol

de be no sauerners ne selle no wyne / & that a bounde man sholde be made noo piceit withoute the lycence of his lord. ¶ Bonifacius a Romayne was pope after Zozimus foure yere. This man ordeyned that a woman sholde not touche the palle of the awter ne sholde not walche the awter. ¶ Celestinus a Romayne was pope after Bonifacius. viij. yere & ix. dayes / the whiche ordeyned the psalme afore masse (Iudica me deus. iij.) And att the begynnynge of the masse sholde be layd a verse of a psalme / and at the Gyale / and that the Offertorye sholde be layd afore the sacrynge. This same man sente saynt Patryke to Irlonde to conuerte that londe / and Palladi<sup>o</sup> deaken of Rome to the Scottes to be conuerted. ¶ And in the fourth yere of this man there was a generall Synody at Ephylina of thre hondred byllhops apenst Nestorium an heretyke. ¶ Theodosius the yonger with Valentinian his newewe regned. xxvij. yere. In his tyme was the feest ordeyned / whiche is called *Aduincula sancti petri*. And in his tyme deyed saynt Austyn / in the yere of his aege .lxxvi. And this tyme was repled the .vij. sleepers / the whiche slept two hondred yeres. This man deyed at Constantinople & there was buryed. ¶ This tyme the Saxons entred Englonde / and anone by lpyll and lytell they grewe by myghtely. And at the laste they opteyned all the londe. ¶ Sixtus a Romayne was pope after Celestinus. viij. yere. This was a holy man and a meke. And lytell of hym is wryten but that he buylded Sancta Maria maior. ¶ Leo Tulcus a Confellour was pope after Sixtus. This man was as holy as ony man. fyue tymes in a dape or more he wolde laye masse. And on a tyme after it befell whan a certayne woman kyssed his honde / he was tempted with her / And for the trelpaas that he hadde done / vnto his penaunce he made his hon

de to be stryken of. And whan the noyse rose vpon hym that he myght not laye masse as he was wonte to do / thenne he was ryght sory. And all oonly befoke hym in prayer to our lady to helpe hym. And our lady restored hym his honde apen and thenne he layd masse as he was wonte for to doo. And soo that myracle was openly shewed to all people. And in the tyme of this pope. Marcian the Emperour beyng there / was congregated at Calcedony the fourthe vnyuersall Synody of .vi. hondred and .xxx. byllhops agaynst Eusticem the abbot of Constantinopoliton and Alexandrum episcopū. qui negauerunt in xpo veram carnem fuisse. et etiam negabant carnis nostre resurrectionem. ¶ And after he had made many notable sermons & epytles he decessed. ¶ Marcianus and Valentinianus were Emperours this tyme. viij. yere. In whole tyme was the grete Synody afore reherced / whan Eusticem & Dyoletus were condempned.

**I**n the tyme that Marcianus was Emperour Dortiger was kyng in Brytayne now called Englonde. In whole tyme the Saxons came in to Brytayne & made many kynges. That is to wyte as is playne by the Cronycles. vij. And by cause it is tedpous to mannes reason to reherce many dyuerse names togyder / as .vij. kynges of Englonde and in one tyme / the Emperours and Popes. Therefore the Cronycles of Englonde shall be sette togyder / tyll that we shall treate of Alured. In whole tyme the Danes came in to Englonde. And the Popes and the Emperours and other kynges in the same tyme shall be sette togyder.

¶ Circa annū dñi .LCC. xlix.

¶ How the wardeyns that had those children to kepe that were Constantynes /

ladde theym to Iytell Brytayne / for the  
treason & the fallenselle of Kortiger.



**A**his tyme came the Saxons that  
were pagans fyrst in to Brytayne  
now called Englonde vnder Kortiger  
the whiche was crowned kynge of  
this londe. ¶ This tyme those that had  
these two childern in kepyng the which  
were Constantynes sones. That is to  
saye Aurilambros & Hter / through ordy-  
nance of Goslelin þ was byllhop of Lon-  
don after the faders dech / that is to saye  
Constantyne / durste not dwelle in this  
londe with those childern / but conueyed  
them vnto the kynge of Iytell Brytayne  
for as moche as he tho wylt the treason  
of Kortiger / that tho was made kynge.  
Thorough whome Constance the elder  
brother was slayne / wherfore the hon-  
dred knyghts of Pehites were put to dech  
& bore all the blame / as þ Kortiger had  
not wylt therof ne consented. And so the  
kepers of those two childern / dradde lest  
Kortiger sholde put them to dech through  
his treason & fallenselle / as he had done  
the brother before. And therfore they we-  
re ladde ouer in to Iytell Brytayne / & the  
kynge them recepued with moche honour  
& lete them to nouryshe. And there they  
dwelled tyll they became sayre knyghts  
and stronge & fyers. And thought to be  
auenged vpon Constance theyr brother  
whan they sawe theyr tyme / & soo they

dyde as ye shall here telle afterwarde.  
¶ It was not longe afterwarde that  
the tydynge came ouer see to the kyn-  
rede of the hondred knyghts of Pehites  
that were dampned & put to dech through  
Kortiger in this londe / therfore they we-  
re wonderly wrothe and swore that they  
wolde be auenged of theyr kynnes mens  
dech. And came in to this londe with a  
grete power / and robbed in many pla-  
ces / and slewe & dyde all the sorowe that  
they myght. Whan Kortiger it wylt / he  
made moche sorowe & was sore anoyed /  
And in an other place also tydynge ca-  
me to hym / that Aurilambros and Hter  
his brother assembled a grete hoste to co-  
me into moche Brytayne / that is to say  
in to this londe / for to be auenged vpon  
Constance theyr brothers dech. Soo in  
that one half and in that other / he was  
brought in to soo moche sorowe that he  
ne wylt whether to go.

¶ How Engilt and an .xi. thousande  
men came in to this londe / to whome  
Kortiger yaaue a place that is called  
Thongcastell.

**A**nd soone after this sorowe / ty-  
dynge came to Kortiger that a  
grete nauy of straungers were arryued  
in þ countree of Kent / he wylt not whens  
they were ne wherfore they were come  
in to this londe. ¶ The kynge sent ano-  
ne a messager thyder / that some of them  
sholde come & speke with hym / for to  
wyte what folke they were & what they  
axed / & in to what countree they wolde /  
¶ There were two brethern maysters &  
prynces of that stronge company / that  
one was called Engilt & þ other Horne.  
Engilt wente to the kynge & tolde hym  
the cause wherfore they were come in to  
this londe & sayd. Syr we ben of a cou-  
tre þ is called Saxonie / that is the londe  
of Germaine / wherin is so moche sor-  
owe / þ of the people ben so many that

the londe may not them susteyne . And the maysters and prynces that haue the londe to gouerne and rule. They made to come before them men and wymin that holdest ben amonge theym for to fyght/and that best may trauapll in to dpuerle londes. And so they sholde them yeue horse & harneys/armour/and all thyng that them nedeth And after they shall saye to them/that they go in to an other countree where that they mowe lyue/as theyr Auncetrees dyde them before . And therfore syr kynge / yf ye haue ought to do with our company / we ben comen in to your londe/and with good wyll you wolde serue and your londe kepe helpe and defende from your enmyes yf that ye nede. ¶ Whan Hortiger herde these tydynges/he sayd gladly he wolde theym withholde/vppon suche couenaunt yf they myght delpue his londe of his enmyes/he wolde yeue theym resonable londes where they sholde dwelle for euer more . ¶ Engist thanked hym goodly / and in this maner he and his company a .xi. thousande sholde dwelle with the kynge Hortiger . And moche they dyde thugh theyr boldenelle / they delpued his londe of his enmyes clene ¶ Tho prayed Engist the kynge of so moche londe that he myght make to hym a cyte and for his meyne. ¶ The kynge answered/it was not to do without the counseyll of Brytons. ¶ Engist prayed hym efflones of as moche place as he myght compace w a thonge of a skynne wherupon he myghte make a Mancer for hym to dwelle on. And the kynge hym graunted freely . ¶ Tho toke Engist a bulles skynne/and kytte it as smale as he myght all in to oo thonge all a rounde. And therwith compaced he as moche londe as he myght thenne make vpon a fayre castell . And so whan this castell was made/he lete calle it Thongcastell for as moche as the place was marked with a thonge.

¶ Of Ronowen that was Engistes doughter/and how the kynge Hortiger spowled her for her beaute.

¶ Whan this castell was made/ & full well arayed. Engist pryue ly dyde sende by letter in to the countree where he came fro/after an hōdred thyppec fylled with men that were stronge & also well fyghtyng in all bataylles/ And that they sholde also byngge with them Ronowen his doughter/that was the fayrest creature that a man myght see . ¶ And whan those people were come that he had sente after/he toke them in to the castell with moche Joye . And hymself vpon a dape wente vnto the kynge/& prayed hym there worthely that he wolde come & see his newe maner that he had made in the place he had compassed with the thonge of the skynne/ ¶ The kynge anone graunted hym freely. And with hym wente thyder/& was well apayed with the castell & with the fayre werke/and togyder they ete & drank he with moche Joye . And whan nyght came that the kynge Hortiger sholde go in to his chambre to take there his nyghtes reste . Ronowen that was Engistes doughter came with a cuppe of golde in her hande/and kneled before the kynge and layd to hym (Wassaylle) And the kynge knewe not what it was for to meane ne what he sholde answer there vpon/for as moche as hymself/ne none of all his Brytons coude noo englyshe speke ne vnderstonde it/but he spake in the same langage that Brytons done yet. Neuertheles a latiner tolde it to the kynge the full vnderstandyng therof/ (Wasshayll) and that other sholde drynke (hayll) And that was the fyrst tyme that (wasshayll) and (drynkhayll) came vp in this londe . And from the tyme vnto this tyme / it is well bled in this londe. ¶ The kynge Hortiger sawe the fayrnesse of Ronowen/& his armes lay

de about her necke / & thyes swetely kyl-  
led her / & anone ryght he was enamou-  
red vpon her þ he delyred to haue her to  
wyf / & asked of Engist her fader. And  
Engist graunted hym vpon this coue-  
naut / þ the kyng sholde yeue hym all  
the countree of Kent / that he there myght  
dwelle in & his people. The kyng hym  
graunted pryuely with a good wyll. And  
anone he spowled the damoyzell / & that  
was moche consulpon to hymself. And  
therfore all the Brytons became so wro-  
the / for by cause he spowled a woman  
of myshyleue. Wherfore they wente all  
from hym / and no thynge to hym toke /  
ne halpe hym in thynge that he had to  
done.

**C**how Mortimer that was Mortigers so-  
ne was made kyng / & Engist dryuen  
out. And how Mortimer was slayne.

**T**his Engist wente in to Kente &  
sealed all þ londre in to his hon-  
de for hym & for his men / & became with  
in a lytill whyle of so grete power / & so  
moche people had / þ men wylt not in ly-  
tell tyme whiche were the kyngs men &  
whiche were Engistles men. Wherfore  
all the Brytons had of hym drede / and  
sayd amonges theym. But yf þ they ne  
toke ocher coulepyll bytwene them / all þ  
londre sholde be bytrayed through Engist  
& his people. Mortiger the kyng had  
begoten on his fyrst wyf thre lones. The  
fyrst was called Mortimer. The seconde  
Latagien / & the thyrde Passent. The  
Brytons euerychone by one assent cho-  
se Mortimer to be theyr lord & soueray-  
ne / & coulepyler in euery batayll / & crow-  
ned hym & made hym kyng / & wolde  
not suffre Mortiger no lenger to regne /  
for cause of the alpauce betwixt Engist  
and hym. The Brytons ordeyned a  
grete hoste to dryue out Engist and his  
company of the londre / & paue hym thre  
bataylles. The fyrst was in Kente there

he was lord / the seconde was at Tetfor-  
de / and the thyrde in a shyre a this half  
Colchestre in a more. And in this batay-  
le theym mette Latagien & Horne En-  
gites brother / so that eche of theym sle-  
we ocher. But for as moche as the cou-  
ntrec was yeuen longe before to Horne  
through Mortiger / tho he spowled his co-  
syn / there he made a fayre castell that  
is called Horncastell after his owne na-  
me. And Mortimer was soo anoyed for  
his brothers deth / that anone he lete fell  
downe the castell to the groude. And af-  
ter he ne lefte nyght ne daye tyll he had  
dryuen out Engist and his people of the  
londre. And thenne Ronowen his dought-  
ter made sorowe ynough. And quentely  
spake to them that were next the kyng  
Mortimer and pryueest with hym. And  
so moche she gaue hym of gyftes / that  
he was enpoylened / and deyed at Lon-  
don the fourth yere of his regne / & there  
he lyeth.

**C**how the Brytons chole an ocher ty-  
me Mortiger to be theyr kyng / and En-  
gist came in to this londre / and how they  
fought togyders.

**A**fter Mortimers deth / the Bry-  
tonr by theyr comyn assente est-  
loones made Mortiger theyr kyng vpon  
this couenaunt / þ he sholde neuer after  
suffre Engist ne none of his est lones to  
come in to this londre. And whan all this  
was done. Ronowen the quene pryuely  
sente by letter to Engist þ she had enpoy-  
lened Mortimer / & þ Mortiger her lord  
bare ayen þ crowne & regned. And that  
he sholde come ayen into this londre wel-  
arayed with moche people for to auens-  
ge hym vpon the Brytons / and for to  
wyne this londre ayen. And whan En-  
gist herde these tydynges / he made gre-  
te Joye. And appareyld hym hastely  
with .xv. thousande men / þ were dughty  
in euery batayll / & came in to this lon-  
d

de. ¶ And whan Mortiger herde tell that Engist was come ayen with a grete power in to this londe / he assembled his Brytons / & tho wente ayenst Engist for to reue h̄ batayll & his folke. But Engist dradde hym sore of the Brytons / for they had dryuen hym before & discomfyted hym w̄ strength. Wherfore this Engist prayed h̄ of a loue daye / & layd. he was not comen in to this londe for to fyght / but for to haue his londe ayen yf he myght accomde with the Brytons / & of them to haue loue & grace. The kynge Mortiger thugh coulepyll of his Brytons graūted hym a loue day. And thus it was ordeyned thugh the Brytons / þ̄ the same daye sholde be holden fast belyde Salisbury vpon a hylle. And Engist sholde come thyder with foure hondred knyghtes without moo. And the kynge with as many of the wylest men of his londe. And at that daye the kynge came with his counsepyll as it was ordeyned / But Engist had warned his knyghtes pryuely / & them romaunded that every one of them sholde put a longe knyft in his hole. And whan he layd fayre spres now is tyme to speke of loue & peas eue ryman. Anone sholde drawe out his knyue & slea a Bryton. And so they slewe a .M. lxi. knyghtes / & with moche sorowe many of them escaped. And the kynge Mortiger there hymself tho was taken / & ladde to Thongcastell & put in pryson. And some of Engistes men wolde that the kynge had be brente all quycke. And Mortiger tho for to haue his lyfe / graūted them as moche as they wolde axe / & paue by all the londe / townes / castelles / cytees / & boroughs to Engist and to his folke. And all the Brytons fledde thens in to Walys / and there they helde them styll. And Engist wente thogh the londe and sealed all the londe / with fraunchyses. And in euery place lete cast a downe chyrches & houles of Religyon. And waked and destroyed crystendome

thughout all this londe. And lete chaūge the name of this londe called Brytayne / that noo man of his were so hardy after that tyme to calle this londe Brytayne / but calle it Engist londe. And thenne he departed all the londe to his men / and there made .viij. kynges for to strength þ̄ londe that the Brytons holdde neuer after come therin. ¶ The fyrste kynngdome was Kent / there that Engist hymself regned / and was lorde and mayster ouer all the other. ¶ The other kynge had Southsex that now is called Chichestre. ¶ The thyrde kynge hadde Westsex. ¶ The fourth hadde Estsex. ¶ The fyfth had Estangill / that now is calld Northfolke. Southfolke. Merchemerik / that is to saye / the lrdome of Northoll. ¶ The sixth had Leycheter shyre. Northampton shyre. Herforde / & Huntington. ¶ The seuenth had Drentwode. Gloucestre. Wynchestre. Weirwyke. and Derby shyre.

¶ How that Mortiger went in to Walys and beganne there a castell that wolde not stande without mortar tempred with blood.

¶ **A**S Engist had departed all the lond in this maner byt wene his men / & delpyered Mortiger out of pryson & suffred hym freely to go whycher that he wolde. And he toke his waye & went in to Walys there þ̄ his Brytons dwelled / for as moche as þ̄ londe was stronge & wycked to wyne. And Engist neuer came there ne neuer knewe it before that londe. ¶ Mortiger helde hym there with his Brytons / and axed counsepyll what hym was best to do. And they paue hym counsepyll to make a stronge castell that he myght hymself there in kepe and defende yf nede where. Malons in hast tho were sette / & began to werke vpon the hylle of Brygh / but certes thus it befell that all the werke þ̄ the malons made

a dape/downe it felle the nyght / & they wylt not what it myght be. Therof the kyng was sore anoyed of that chaunce & wylt not what to do . Wherfore he lete sende after the wyltest clerkes & also lerned men than were thorough out Walys that myght be founde / for they sholde telle wherfore the foundament so fapled vnder the werke / & that they sholde hym tell what was best for to do. And whan these wyle men longe tyme had studyed they sayd to the kyng / that he sholde do seke a childe borne of a woman that neuer had with man to do. And that childe sholde be slayne / and tempred with his blood the mortar of the werke . And soo sholde the werke euer endure withouten ende.

How the kyng lete seke Merlyn thorough out all Walys / for to speke wth hym

**A**S the kyng herde this / he commaunded his messagers anone to go thorough out Walys to seke þe childe yf they myght hym fynde / & that they sholde hym brynge forth with them vnto hym. And in recorde & in wytnesse of this kyng he had take them his letters that they ne were distroubled of no man ne lette . And tho the messengers wente thens / & spedde so fast þe they came in to a towne that was called Carmardyne / And as they passed forth ther waye they founde two childern of .xiiij. yere of aegge chidynge togyder wth halsty wordes. And one of them layd to that other. Donebat layd he ye do all wronge to chyde or stryue wth me. for ye haue no wytte ne no reason as I haue . Certes Merlyn layd he / of your wytte ne your reason I make no force. for men telle compnyly that ye haue nothyng of god almyghty lyth ye had neuer fader / but euerly man knoweth who was your moder. ¶ The messengers of þe kyng Uortiger whan they herde the stryue betwixt the two gromes

they axed of them that stode belyde them whens that Merlyn was borne / & also whome hym nourysshed. And the folke them tolde / that a grete gentyll woman hym bare in Carmardyne that was called Adhan . But neuer myght no man wyte who was his fader . ¶ Whan the kynges messengers herde these tydynge they went anone to hym þe was Wardeyne of þe towne & tolde hym the kyngs wyll & shewed hym his letter wherfore they were come thyder. ¶ Merlyn & his moder were fet / hed before þe Wardeyne of the towne. And he commaunded them þe they sholde go to the kyng as it was orderyned by his messengers. ¶ Merlyn & his moder wente thens & came vnto þe kyng & there they were receyued wth moche honour . And the kyng axed of þe lady yf that childe were her lone & whome hym begate. The lady answered full tenderly weppynge & sayd. She neuer had company of worldly man. But syr sayd she As I was a yonge mayden in my faders chambie / & other of grete lpygnage were in my company / that ostentynies went to playe & solace. I be leftte alone in my chambie / & wolde not go forth for brennyng of the sonne. And on a tyme there came a fayre bacheler & entred in my chambie there þe I was alone. But how he came in to me / & where. I wylt it neuer / ne yet knowe I not. for þe doores were fast barred & wth me he dyde game of loue . for I ne had myght ne power / hym to defende from me. And often he came vnto me in the forsayd maner / so that he begate this childe . But neuer myght I wyte what he was.

Of the answeere of Merlyn wherfore the kyng axed why his castel myght not stonde that he had begonne ne proue.

**S**o whan Merlyn had herde all that his moder had sayd. He spake to the kyng in this maner . ¶ Syr



how I was begoten/are ye no more. for it falleth not to you/ne to none other to wyse. But telle me the cause wherfore I am to you brought and wherfore ye haue sente after me. ¶ Truly sayd þe kynge/my wyse counseillers haue done me to vnderstonde/that the mortar of a werke that I haue begonne/behoueth to be tempred with your blood/or the fundamēt shall fayle for euer more. ¶ Syr sayd Merlyn. Wyll ye see me for my blood to tempred with your mortere. Ye sayd the kynge/or elles my castell shall neuer stande as my counseillers doo me to vnderstonde. Tho answered Merlyn to the kynge. Syr he sayd/lete them come before me those wyse counseillers/ & I woll proue that they sayen not well w<sup>ch</sup> truly. And whan the wyse men were comen. Merlyn axed yf his blood were the cause to make this werke to stonde and endure. All tho wyse men were abashed & coude not answer. Merlyn tho sayd to the kynge. Syr I shall tell you the cause wherfore your werke thus fayleth and may not stande. There is vnder the mountayne there that ye haue buyldeed your toure a grete ponde of water/and in the botome of the ponde vnder the water there ben two dragons/ & that one is whyte/and that other reede/that fyght togyder ayenst your werke/ Do ye myne depe tyll your men come to the ponde/and cause your men to take awaye the water all out/and thenne ye shall see the dragons as I haue you tolde/that togyder fyght ayenst your werke/ and this is the cause wherfore your fundament fayleth. The kynge anone lete drygge vnder tyll that men came to the ponde/and lete do awaye the water/and there they founde two dragons as Merlyn had tolde them þe egerly fought togyder. The whyte dragon egerly assailed the reede/ and layde on hym soo strongely that he myght not endure/but withdrewe hym and rested in the same

cane. And whan he had a whyle rested hym / he wente before and assayled the reede dragon angrelly/and helde hym so sore that he myght not ayenst hym endure/but withdrewe hym and rested. And after came ayen the whyte dragon and strongely fought w<sup>ch</sup> the reede dragon. and bote hym euyl and hym ouercame. that he fledde from thens and nomore came agayne.

¶ Of the signyficacyon of those two dragons that were in the botome of the ponde that fought togyder.

**T**his kynge Wortiger and his men that sawe this batayll had grete meruayle/and prayed Merlyn to tell hym what it myght betoken. Syr quod Merlyn I shall telle you. The reede dragon betokeneth yourself/and the whyte betokeneth the folke of Saxon that fyrste ye toke and helde in your londe that fyght ayenst you / and you haue dryuent and enchaced. ¶ But Brytons of your lychynage ouercame them & droue them awaye And sythen at the comynge ayen of the Saxons they recouered this londe and helde it for euer more. And droue out the Brytons and dyde w<sup>ch</sup> this londe all theyr wyll/and destroyed crystendome thugh out this londe. Ye had fyrste grete Joye w<sup>ch</sup> theyr comynge / but now it is turned to you grete damage & sorowe. for tho two brethern of Constance that was kynge the whiche ye leste see shall come before a quinzeme passed w<sup>ch</sup> a grete power from lychynage/ & shall auenge the deth of theyr brocher. And they shall brenne you fyrst w<sup>ch</sup> sorowe/and after they shall see a grete parte of Saxons/and shall dryue out all the remenaunt of the londe. And therfore abyde ye here no lenger to make castell nor other werke. But anone go elles where your lychynage all for to saue. To god I you betake / trouthe I haue

sayd to you of thynges that shall befall  
**A**nd vnderstande ye well that Aurilambros shall be kynge. But he shall be enpoysoned / & lytell tyme shall he regne

**O**f kynge Aurilambros how that he pursued Dortiger & Engist / and how they deyed.

**M**Erlyn and his moder departed from the kynge / and toined a gayne to Carmardyn. And loone after tydynges came to the Brytons that Aurilambros and Dter his brother were aryued at Totuelle with a greate hoste / And anone þ Brytons assembled them and wente to receyue Aurilambros and Dter with grete nobleste. And had them vnto London / and crowned Aurilambros and made hym kynge / and dyde vnto hym homage. And anone he axed where Dortiger that was kynge myght be founde / for he wolde be auenged on his brothers deche / and after he wolde warre vppon paynems. And they tolde hym that Dortiger was in Walys / and so they ladde hym thitherwarde. **D**ortiger wylt well that tho brethern came hym to conuere / and fledde thens in to a castell that was called Gerneth that stode vppon an hyghe mountayne / and there hym helde. Aurilambros and Dter his brother and theyr folke had belyged the castell full longe tyme / for the castell was stronge and well arrayed. **S**o at the laste they casted wylde fyre and brent houses and men and all theyr arape / and as moche as was within the castell. So that Dortiger was brente amonge all other / and soo he deyed with moche sorowe. **T**ho was Engist in Kente and regned there / and herde this tydynges / and anone fledde and wolde haue gone in to Scotlonde for to haue had socoure. But Aurilambros and his men mette with hym in the north countree and paue hym batayll. And Engist

and his men defended whyles that they myght. But he and his folke were dyscomfyted and slayne. And Dcta his sone fledde vnto Yorke. And Aurilambros hym folowed egrely. And Dcta a lytell whyle withstode hym. But afterwarde he put hym to his mercy. And Aurilambros receyued hym / and to hym and to his men gaaf the countree of Galeway in Scotlonde / and there they dwelled. **T**he kynge Aurilambros wente thourough the londe / and put awaye the name of Engistlonde / that Engist after his name had called it before. **T**ho lete he it calle agayne grete Brytayne / and lete make apen churches / houses of relyggon / castelles / cytees / and borughs. and townes that the Saxons hadde destroyed. And came to London / and lete make the walles of the cyte / whiche Engist and his folke hadde caste downe. **T**he Brytons ladde hym vnto the mount of Ambrian that somtyme was an hous of relyggon / that tho was destroyed thurgh the paynems. **W**herof a knyght that was called Ambri some tyme was founder of that house. And therfore the same hylle was called the mounte of Ambrian. And after it was called Ambresbury. And shall be so for euer more.

**H**ow Aurilambros dyde redresse the londe of grete Brytayne / that whiche was destroyed thourgh the Saxons before sayd.

**N**ow the kynge Aurilambros lete amende and redresse the house of Ambresbury / and there in put monkes. But now there ben Nonnes a lytell fro the place that was called Salybury / are that the Saxons slewe the Brytons / where Engist and they holde haue made a loue dape. In the whiche tyme were slayne a thoulande knyghtes .lxi. thurgh treason of Engist. The

kyng therof had grete pyte & thought to make in mynde of them a monumēt of stone þ̄ myght endure to the worldes ende. And of this thyng they toke ther cōseyll what therof was best for to do. ¶ Tho spake to the kyng the byllhop of London þ̄ was called Ternekyn þ̄ he sholde requyre after Merlyn. for he coude best tell how this thyng myght best be made. And Merlyn after was sought and foude & came to þ̄ kyng. And the kyng tolde hym his wyll of the monumēt þ̄ he wolde haue made. Merlyn answered to the kyng & sayd. There ben grete stones in Irlonde / & longe vpon the hylle of Kyan þ̄ men called Gyauntes karoll. And yf they were in this place as they ben there / they wolde endure for euer more in remēbraūce of those knyghtes that here be entyred. ¶ Per may for sayd the kyng As harde stone ben in mylonde as in Irlonde. ¶ Soch sayd Merlyn. but in all your londe ben none suche for gyauntes sette them for grete good of themself. for at euery tyme that they were woude or in ony maner hurte / they wyll the stones with hote water / and thenne they wyll the them therwith & anon they were hool.

¶ How the Brytons wente for to seke the grete stones in Irlonde.

¶ Asloone as the Brytons had herde of this thyng / they yede and iwoie amonge them they wolde go seke those stones. And toke w̄ them Hier the kynges brod to be chyef capitayne & .v. thousande men / & Merlyn coulleded thē for to go vnto Irlonde & so they dyde. And whan the kyng of Irlonde þ̄ was called Guillomer herde telle that straungers were arryued in his londe / he assembled a grete power & fought ayenst them. But he & his folke were dyscomfyted. ¶ The Brytons wente before tyll they came to the mount of Kyan / & clymed

vp vnto the mount. But whan they sawe the stones & the maner how they stode / they had grete meruaylle & sayd bytwene themselfe / that noo man sholde them remeue for no strength ne engyne so grete they were & so longe. But Merlyn thugh his crafte he remeued them & brought them in to theyr shyppes and came ayen in to this londe. And Merlyn sette the stones there that the kyng wolde haue them. And sette them in the same maner that they stode in Irlonde. And whan the kyng sawe that it was made he thanked Merlyn / and rycheley hym rewarded at his owne wyll. And that place lete calle it Stonhenge for euer more.

¶ How Passent that was Dortigers sonne and the kyng Guillomer came in to this londe / and how a trayfour that was called Lappa enpolseneu the kyng Aurilambros.

¶ And men shall vnderstande that Passent that was Dortigers sonne lyued the same tyme / and came in to this londe w̄ a grete power / & arryued in the north countree & wolde be auenged of his faders deth Dortiger / & strongly trusted vpon the company that he had brought w̄ hym out of þ̄ londe of Germayne / & had conquered all the North countree vnto Porke. ¶ And whan kyng Aurilambros herde this / he assembled a grete power of Brytons & wente for to fyght with Passent / & he dyscomfyted Passent & all his people. But Passent escaped thens with some of his men / & fledde thens in to Irlonde and came to kyng Guillomer & prayed hym of helpe & locour. The kyng graunted hym with good wyll & sayd / that he wolde helpe hym / vpon that couenaūte that I my selfe muste go with you with all my power in to Brytayne. And I wolde me aduenge vpon the Brytons the rather /

for they came in to my londe & toke the stones with strength þ is called Spau's kes karoll. ¶ The kynge Guillomer lete ordeyne his chypes & wente to the see with .xv. thousande men / & arryued in Walys & began to robbe / & moche loze we he dyde. ¶ It befell so that kynge Aurilambros laye syke at Wynchestre / & myght not helpe hymself. So that he sente in his name Dter his brother with a power to helpe Walys. And thitherwarde he wente as moche as he myght. ¶ The kynge of Irlonde and Passent herde telle that Aurilambros was syke / & to hym there came a Sarvalyn that was called Lappa & sayd. Syre dwelle ye here all in peas with your hoste / & I behyght you thorough my quaryntelye þ I shall see the kynge Aurilambros that is syke. Thenne sayd Passent / yf ye do so I shall you rycheley auauce. The traytour Lappa put vpon hym an habyte of religyon / & lete shawe hym a brode crowne & came vnto the kynges courte / and sayd that he wolde helpe the kynge of his malady. Tho sayd þ traytour Lappa vnto the kynge. Syr be of good conforte. for I shall yeue you suche a medycyne that ye shall swete anone ryght & lyte to slepe & haue good reste. And the traytour yaf hym suche popson to lesse anone ryght / and deyed in his slepyng. And the traytour sayd that he wolde go out in to the felde tyll he were awaked / & so escaped he awaye. for no man had to hym suspeccon / for by cause of his habyte that he was clothed in / and also for his brode shauen crowne. But whan the kynges men wylt that he was deed / they became wonder loze / and fast soughte the traytour / but they myghte not fynde hym. for that Lappa turned apen vnto the hoste from whens that he came.

¶ Whan Aurilambros deyed a sterre in the moorne was seen with a clere lyght / &

at the bought of the beeme was seen the heed of an horryble dragon.

¶ Whan the kynge Aurilambros was deed & enpoysoned at Wynchestre. On the moorne after he was deed about the tyme of Pryme there was seen a sterre grete & clere / & the beeme of that sterre was bryghter than the sonne. And at the bought of the beeme apperid a dragons heed / & out of his mouth came two huge lyghtes / þ were as bryght as ony fyre brennyng / & that one beeme towarde fraunce and streyght ouer the see thitherwarde. And out of that beeme came .viij. beemes full clere & longe as it were the lyght fyre. ¶ This sterre was seen of many a man / but none of them wylt what it betokened. ¶ Dter that was the kynges brother that was in Walys with his hoste of Brytons / sawe that sterre & the grete lyght that it yaued / they wondred therof gretly what it myght betoken. And lete calle Dterlyn and prayed hym for to telle what that it myght betoken.

¶ Of the betokenyng of the sterre.

¶ Dterlyn sawe that sterre / & beheld de it longe tyme. And lythen he quoke & wept tenderly. And sayd. Alas alas þ so noble a kynge & worthy is deed. And I do you to vnderstande that Aurilambros your brother is popsoned / & þ I see well in this sterre. And yourself is betokened the heed of the dragon þ is seen at the bought of the beeme / that is yourself þ shall be kynge & regne. And by the beeme that stondech towarde the West is vnderstonde þ ye shall gete a sone that shall conquere all fraunce / & all the londes þ belongech to the crowne of fraunce / that shall be a worthyer kynge & of more honour than euer were ony of his auncetours. ¶ And by the beeme þ stretched towarde Irlonde is betokened that

ye shall gete a daughter that shall be queene of Irlonde. ¶ And the. viij. beemes be token that ye shall haue. viij. sonnes. And euery one of them shall be kynge / & regne with moche honour. And abyde ye no lenger here / but go & yeue batayll to your ennys / and fyght with them boldly for ye shall ouercome them & haue the victory. ¶ Uter thanked hertely Merlin / and toke his men & wente toward his ennys / & they fought togpyder mortally / & so he dylcomfyted his ennys & them destroyed. And hymself slewe Palent that was Dorigers lone. And his Wytons slewe Guillomer þ was kynge of Irlonde & all his men. ¶ And Uter anone after that batayll toke his waye toward Wynchestre / for to do entyere Aurilambros kynge that was his brother. But tho was the body borne vnto Stonhenge with moche honour / that he had done make in remembraunce of the Wytons that there were slayne thugh treason of Engist / that same daie that they holde haue ben accorded. And in the same place they entyered Aurilambros the seconde yere of his regne with all the worshyp that myght belonge to suche a kynge. On whoos soule god haue mercy. Amen.

¶ Of Uter Pendragon / and wherfore he was called so ye shall here. And how he was ouertake with the loue of Igreyne that was the Erle of Cornewaylles wyf.

**A**fter the dethe of Aurilambros and regned well & worthely. And in remembraunce of the dragon that he was lykned to / he lete make two dragons thugh counseyll of his Wytons. And made that one for to be borne before hym whan he wente in to batayll / and that other for to abyde at Wynchestre in the byshopps chyrche. And for that cause he

was called euer after Uter Pendragon / ¶ And Octa that was Engistes lone comended Uter but lytell that was made newe kynge. And ayenst hym began to meue warte. And ordeyned a grette power of his frendes & of his kynne / and of Olla his brother / and had taken all the londe from Humber vnto Porke / But those of Porke helde strongly agaynst them / and wolde not suffre them to come in to the cyte / neyther to yelde the cyte to them. And he besyged þ towne anone ryght / & gaue therto a stronge assawte. But they of the cyte them kepte well & strongly. ¶ And whan Uter herde therof / he came thither with a grette stronge power for to helpe & rescowe the towne & put awaye the syege / and gaue a stronge batayll. And Octa and his company them defended as well as they myght. But at the laste they were dylcomfyted and the moost partye of them slayne. And Octa and Olla were taken & put in pylon at London. ¶ And Uter hymself dwelled a whyle at Porke / and after he wente to London. And att the Ester after he wolde bere crowne and holde a solempne feest. And lete somone all his Erles & Barons / that they shoulde come to that feest. And all those that had wyues shoulde brynge them also to that feest. And all the seynoury came at the kynges commaundement as they were comaunded. ¶ The feest was ryshely arayed & holden. And all worthely lette to meete after þ they were of estate soo that the Erle Gorloys of Cornes waylle and Igreyne his wyf late next vnto the kynge. And whan the kynge saue the faynelle of that lady & the beaute that she had. He was anone rauysshed for her beaute / and often he made to her nyte countenaunce in lokynge and laughynge. So at the laste the Erle perceyued the pryuy lokynge & laughynge and the loue bytwene them. And rose vp fro the table in wrathe / & toke his wyf / and

called to hym his knyghtes and wente thens in wraith / without talynge leue of the kynge. ¶ The kynge anone sent after hym that he sholde come agayne & go not thens in dyspyte of hym. And the erle wolde not come agayne in no maner of wyle. ¶ Wherfore the kynge was wroth / and in wraith hym despyed as his deedly enmye. And the erle wente thens in to Cornewaylle with his wyf in the castall of Tynntagyll. ¶ And the kynge lete ordeyne a grete hoste and came in to Cornewaylle / for to destroye the erle yf that he myght. But he had put hym in suche a castell that was stronge & well arayed called Tynntagyll / & wolde not yelde hym to the kynge. ¶ And the kynge anone besyged the castell / and there dwelled .xv. dayes that neuer myght spede / & cuer he thought vppon Jgreyne / & vpon her layde so moche loue / that he wylt not what to do. ¶ So at the laste he called to hym a knyght that was called Wlfin that was preuy with hym and tolde hym all his counseyll / & axed of hy what was best for to done. ¶ Syr sayd he / sende after Wllyn anone / for he can telle you the best counseyll of ony man lypynge. Wllyn anone was sente after & came to the kynge. And the kynge tolde hym all his counseyll & his wyll. Syr sayd Wllyn. I shal do so moche thurgh craft that I can / that I shall make you come to nyght in the castell of Tynntagyll / & shall haue all your wyll of that lady.

¶ How Wter begate on Jgreyne / that was the Erles wyf of Cornewaylle Arthur kynge.

**M**erlyn thurgh craft that he coude chaunged the kynges fygyure in to the lphenes of the erle / and Wlfin Garlois his Chambrelayne in to the fygyure of Jordan that was the erles chambrelayne / so that eche of them was tran-

fygyured in to others lphenes And whan Wllyn had so done / he sayd to the kynge. Syr sayd he / now ye may go sodeynly to the castell of Tynntagyll & are enctree there & haue your wyll. The kynge toke pryuely all the hoste to gouerne and lede to a knyght that he moche loued / & toke his waye towarde the castell / and with hym toke Wlfin his chambrelayne and Wllyn / & whan they came thyder the porter demid it had ben his owne lorde. And whan tyme came for to goo to bedde / the kynge wente to bedde with Jgreyne the erles wyf & dyde with her all his wyll. And begate vpon her a sone that was called Arthur. And vppon the morowe the kynge toke his leue of the lady & wente ayen to his hoste. And the same nyght that the kynge laye by Jgreyne in bedde that was the erles wyf the kynges men gaaf a grete assawte vnto the castell. And the erle & his men manly them defended. But at the laste it befell so / that in the same assawte the erle hymself was slayne & the castell taken. ¶ And the kynge anone toined agayne to Tynntagyll & spowled Jgreyne with moche honour & made her queene. ¶ And loone after tyme came that she sholde be deliuered & bare a childe a sone that was called Arthur. And after gate on her a doughter that was called Amya. And whan she came to aerge / a noble Baron that was lorde of Lyons wedded her. ¶ Whan Wter longe tyme had regned / there came vpon hym a grete lphenesse as it were a sorowe. ¶ And in the meane tyme those that had to helpe Wcta that was Engistes sone and Wlla his brother / that then were in pryson / they lete them go for grete yestes & they them paue & went with them. And whan tho two brethern were escaped & were in to theyr owne countree agayne / Thenne they ordeyned them a grete power of folke / and began for to warre apon vpon the kynge.

How kynge Uter chose Aloth to kepe the londe of Brytayne / whyle that he was lyke / for as moche as he myght not for his lyknesse.

**A**nd for as moche as kynge Uter was lyke & myght not helpe hym self / he ordeyned Aloth sone of Eleyne that tho was cholen for to be wardeyne & chyefcayne of all his folke. And so he anone & all his Brytons assembled a grete hoste & yaued batayll to Octa & to his folke / but Octa at the last was dyscomfyted. ¶ It befell thus afterwarde / that these Brytons had dedignacion of Aloth & wolde not be to hym attendaunt. Wherfore the kynge was anoyed wonder sore & lette put hym in a lycere in the hoste amonges his folke. And they ladde hym to Hereloyne that tho was a fayre cyte / there h̄ saynt Albon was martred. And after was the cyte destroyed with paynens thugh warre. And thither they had sente Octa and Dssa & ther people And entered in to the towne / & lete make lure h̄ yates / & there they helde them And the kynge came & them besyged / & made a stronge assawte / but they that were within manly theym deffended. ¶ The kynge lete ordeyne his gunnes & his engynes for to breke the walles / & the walles were so stronge that no man myght them mysdo. ¶ Octa & his people had grete despyte / that a kynge lpenge in a lycere had theym besyged. And they toke counseyll amonge them for to stande vp in the morowe early and come out and yeu batayll to the kynge / and so they dyde. And in that batayll were bothe Octa and Dssa slayne / & all the other h̄ escaped a lyue fledde in to Scotlonde / & made Colegrin theyr chyefcayne. And the Saxons h̄ were a lyue & escaped fro the batayll / brought ayen a grete strength / & amonge them they sayd / that yf kynge Uter were deed they sholde well conquere the londe / & thought to

enpoylen the kynge / & ordeyned men for to do this dede / & yaued them of yest grete plente this thynge to do. And they ordeyned them thyderwarde there h̄ h̄ kynge was dwellynge / and clothed them in poore wede h̄ better all for to spece theyr fals purpose. But netheles all theyr falsenes & subtyltye they myght neuer come to nygh the kynge. But so at h̄ last they aspyed h̄ the kynge dranke no other lycour but oonly water of a clere well that was nyghe helyde / & the fals traytours vpon a daye pryuely wente to h̄ welle & put therin poyson / so h̄ all h̄ water was enpoylened. And anone after as the kynge had dronke of that water / he began to swelle / & loone after he deyed / & as many as dranke of h̄ water deyed also. And anone as this was aspyed folke of the towne lete stoppe the welle for euermore. ¶ Whan the kynge was deed his folke bare hym to Stonhenge with grete solemnyte of byshop & barons that were there hym to burye helyde Aurilambios his brother. And after torned ayen tho eucrychone & sente after his sone / & they made hym kynge of the londe with moche reuerence after his faders dethe / the .xviij. yere of his regne.

How kyng Arthur h̄ was the sone of Uter was crowned after his faders dech / & how he draue Colegrin & the Saxons & Cheldrik of Almayne out of this londe.

**A**s Arthur was made kynge of the londe / he was but yonge of aege of .xv. yere / but he was fayre and bolde & doughty of body. And to meke folke he was good & curteys / and large of spendynge / & made hym well beloued amonge all them there h̄ it was nede / & whan he began to regne he swore cruely that the Saxons neuer sholde haue rest ne peas tyll that he hadde dryuen them out of the londe. And assembled a grete hoste and fought with Colegrin / the

whiche after the tyme that Octa was deede the Saxons mayntened. And this Colegrin was dyscomfyted & fledde vnto Porke & toke the towne / & there hym helde. And the kynge belyged hym there but he myght no thyng speede for the cite was so stronge. And they within the towne kept hym well & ordeply. ¶ And in the mene tyme Colegrin lete the towne to Bladulf & fledde hymself to Cheldrik þ was kynge of Almayne / for to haue of hym locour. And the kynge assembled a grete power & came & arryued in Scotlonde with .xv. hondred chyppes. And whan Arthur wyll of these tydyngeges þ he had not power & strength ynough to fyght ayenst Cheldrik / he lete be the syege & wente to London / and sente anon his letters to the kynge of Iytell Brytayne þ was called Howell his newwe his systers son / that he sholde come to hym w all the power þ he myght. And he assembled a grete hoste & arryued at Southampton. And whan kynge Arthur it wyll he was gladd ynough & wente ayenst them / & them receyued w moche honour. So that those two hostes mette & assembled them / and toke theyr waye euen vnto Nicholl that Cheldrik had belyged / but it was not taken. And they came vpon cheldrik & his people or they wyll where that they were / & them egrely assaylled. ¶ The kynge Cheldrik and his men defended hym manly by theyr power. But kynge Arthur & his men slewe so many Saxons / that neuer was seene suche slaughter / and Cheldrik and his men that were left alpyue fledde awaye. And kynge Arthur them pursued & dioued them out in to a wood that that they myght no ferder passe. ¶ Cheldrik & his men sawe well that they were brought in to moche dysleale / & them yelded to kynge Arthur in this maner wyse. That he sholde take theyr hoises & theyr armour / and all that they had / and they muste oonly goo on foot in to

theyr chyppes. And so they wolde go home in to theyr owne londe / & neuer come ayen in to this londe. ¶ And vpon assuraunce of this thyng they paue hym good hostages. ¶ And Arthur by counseyll of his men graunted this thyng / & receyued the hostages / & therupon the oother wente to theyr chyppes. And whan they were in the bygh see þ wynde chaunged as the deupll it wolde / & they tomed theyr nauy & came ayen in to this londe & arryued at Totnesse / and wente out of the chyppes & toke the londe / and desne robbed it / and moche people slewe / & tooke all the arniour that they myght fynde. And so they wente forth tyll they came vnto Bathe. But the men of the towne shyfte faste theyr pates / and wolde not suffre theym to come within the towne. And they defended them well & ordeply ayenst them.

¶ How Arthur paue bataylle vnto the Saxons whan they came agayne in to this londe / & had belyged the towne of Bathe and them ouercame.

¶ None as Arthur herde this tydyngeges he lete hange the hostages / & lete Howell of Brytayne his newwe / for to kepe the marche towarde Scotlonde with half his people / & hymself wente to helpe & rescowe the towne of Bathe. Whan he came thither he paue a stronge batayll to Cheldrik & slewe almost all the people þ he had. for no man myght hym withstonde ne endure vnder þ stroke of his swerde. And there bothe were slayne Colegrin & Bladulf his brother / & Cheldrik fledde thens & wolde haue gone to his chyppes. ¶ But whan Arthur it wyll / he toke .x. thousande knyghtes to Lador þ was erle of Cornewaylle for to lete & stoppe his comyng. And Arthur hymself wente towards þ marche of Scotlonde. for messengers tolde hym that the Scottes had



bespged Howell of Brytayne there that he layc lyke / & therfore he halted hym thytherwarde. ¶ And Lador purslewed after Cheldrik / & toke hym er he myght come to his shyppes & slewe Cheldrik & his people. And whan Lador had done this vyage / he halted hym ayen towarde Arthur as fast as he myght / & founde hym in Scotlonde there that he had rescowed Howell of Brytayne / but the Scottes were ferre within Nounref / & there they helde them a whyle. But Arthur them purslewed. & they fledde thens in to Limoigne / that were in that countree. lx. fles / & grete plente of byrdes / & grete plente of Egles that were wonte to crye & fyght togyders / and make grete noise whan folke came to robbe that londe / & warne as moche as they myght / & so they dyde. for the Scottes were to grete rauenours / that they tooke all that they myght fynde in the londe of Limoigne without ony sparvng / & there with charged ayen the folke in to Scotlonde for to wende.

¶ How kynge Arthur axed of Merlyn the aduentures of. vi. of the laste kynges that were to regne in Englonde / & how the londe sholde ende.

¶ Sr sayd Merlyn. In the yere of the Incarnacyon of Ihesu Cryst. M. C. xv. shall come a lambe out of Wynchestre / shall haue a whyte tonge & true lyppes / & he shall haue wyten in his herte holynes. This lambe shall make many goddes houses / & he shall haue peas the moost parte of his lyf. And he shall make one of þe fayrest places of the worlde / þe in his tyme shall not fully be made an ende of. ¶ And in the ende of his lyf a wulf of a straunge londe shall do hym moche harme & sorowe thyngh warre. But at the ende the lambe shall be mayster thyngh helpe of a reed foxe / that shall come out of the Northwest / &

hym shall ouercome / & the wulf shall deye in water. And after that tyme the lambe shall lyue no whyle / but he shall deye. ¶ His seed shall be in a straunge londe. And the londe shall be without a gouernour a lytell tyme.

¶ And after this shall come a dragon medled wth mercy & also with woodnesse. And þe shall haue a berde as a gote / þe shall gyue in Englonde a shadowe / & shall kepe the londe fro colde & hete / and his owne foot shall be sette in Wyke & þe other in London. And he shall enbrace Inhabitaunces. And he shall open his mouth towarde Walys. And þe tremblyng of the hydour of his mouth / his eeres shall stretch towarde many habytacions & countrees. And his brych shall be ful swete in straunge londe. And in his tyme shall the ryuers renne blood & wbrayne. And he shall make in places of his londe walles þe shall do moche harme vnto his seed after his tyme. ¶ And thenne shall there come a people out of the Northwest durynge his regne þe shall be ladde thynghout a wyched hare / that the dragon shall do crowne kynge / that afterwarde shall flee ouer the see with out compynge ayen for drede of the dragon. ¶ And in þe tyme the sonne shall be as reed as a blood / þe men shall see thos rough out all the worlde / that shall betoken grete pestylence & deth of folke / thos rough dynce of swerde. And that people shall be faderles / tyll the tyme that the dragon deye thyngh an hare / that shall meue ayenst hym warre vnto the ende of his lyf / that shall not fully be ended in his tyme. ¶ This dragon shall be holde in his tyme the best body of the worlde. And he shall deye besyde the marches of a straunge londe / & þe londe shall dwel faderles without a good gouernour / & men shall wepe for his deth / from the ple of Shepey to the hauen of Marcyll. ¶ Wherfore Alas alas shall be theyr

longe of faderles folke/that shall ouer  
lyue in his londe destroyed.

**A**nd after this dragon shall come  
a gote oute of Kar þ shall haue  
horns & a berde of syluer/ & there shall  
come out of his nolethyll a dompe that  
shall betoken hungre & sorowe & grete  
deth of þ people. And moche of his londe  
in the begynnynge of his regne shall be  
wasted. ¶ This gote shall go ouer vnto  
fraunce/ & shall open þ flour of his lpf  
& deth. ¶ In his tyme there shall aryle  
an egle in Cornewayle þ shall haue fe-  
thers of golde/ þ of pryde shall be with-  
out pere of the londe. And he shall despy-  
se lordes of blood. And after he shall flee  
shamefully by a beer at Gauerlech / &  
after shall be made bydges of men vp  
on the coltes of the see/ and stoncs shall  
fall from castelles/ & many other tow-  
nes shall be made playne. ¶ In his ty-  
me shall seme þ the beer shall brenne/ &  
a batayll shall be done vpon the armes  
of the see in a felde ordeyned as a helde  
And at þ batayll shall depe many why-  
te heedes/ wherfore this batayll shall be  
called the whyte batayll. And þ forsayd  
beer shall do this gote moche harme / &  
it shall come out of the Southwest & of  
his blood. Thenne shall þ gote lese mo-  
che/ & of his londe / tyll that the tyme þ  
shenthyp shall hym ouercome. And then  
shall he close hym in a Lyons skynne/  
And thenne shall he wyne that he had  
before lout & more therto . for a people  
shall come out of the Northwest þ shall  
make the gote so sore aferde that he shall  
be in grete perplexite . And he shall ad-  
uenge hym on his enmyes/ though coun-  
seyll of two owles that fyrst shall be in  
peryll for to be vndone. But þ olde owle  
shall wende a waye a certayne tyme / &  
after he shall come apen in to this lon-  
de. These two owles shall do grete har-  
me to many one/ & so they shall counseyll  
the gote to arere warre apenst the for-

sayd beer. And at the laste the gote and  
the owles shall come at Burton vpon  
Trent/ & shall go ouer / & for drede the  
beer shall flee & a swanne with hym fro  
his company to Burton warde þ north  
& there they shall be w an harde shoure  
And thenne shall the swanne be take &  
slayne with sorowe / and the beer taken  
headed alther next his neck / that shall  
stande vpon broken bydge / on whome  
the sonne shall cast his beemes. And ma-  
ny shall hym seke for vertue that from  
hym shall come . ¶ In the same shall  
depe for sorowe & care a peple of his lon-  
de/ so that londcs shall be vpon hym the  
more bolder afterwarde. And those two  
owles shall do moche sorowe to the for-  
sayd flour of lpf/ & her shall lede in to  
dystrestre/ so that she shall passe ouer þ  
see in to fraunce / for to make peas by-  
twene the gote & the flouredelyse/ & the-  
re she shall dwelle tyll a tyme that her  
sede shall come & seche her/ & they shall  
be styll tyll a tyme/ that they shall them  
clothe with grace . And they shall seche  
the owles & shall put them to dyspytous  
deth. And after shall this gote be brough-  
te to dyspleas & grete Anguysshe/ and in  
sorowe he shall lyue all his lpf.

**A**fter this gote shall come out of  
Wyndelore a boore / that shall  
haue an heed of a whyte Lyons herte / &  
pyteous lokynge. ¶ His bylage shall be  
reste to lyke men. His breste shall be stau-  
chynge of thyrste to tho that be thyrsty/  
his worde shall be gospell. His herynge  
shall be meke as a lambe. In the fyrste  
yere of his regne he shall haue grete pay-  
ne to Justefye them þ ben vntrue. ¶ And  
in his tyme shall his londe be multiply-  
ed with alpauntes. And this boore thos-  
rough spersnesse of his herte that he shall  
haue/ shall make wulues to become lam-  
bes. And he shall be called thorough out  
of the worlde Boore of holynesse/ spers-  
nesse of noblynesse & of mekenesse. And

he shall meſurably all that he ſhall do vnto the borough of Jeruſalem. And he ſhall whette his teeth vpon the yates of Darys / & vpon foure londes. Spayne ſhall tremble for drede. Gaſcoyne ſhall ſwete. In fraunce he ſhall put his wynges. His grete taylor ſhall reſte in Englonde ſoftly. Almayne ſhall quake for drede of hy. ¶ This boore ſhall yee mannettes to two townes of Englonde / and ſhall make the Rpuer renne with blood & brayne. And he ſhall make many meadowes reede / & he ſhall gete as moche as his auncetours dyde. And er that he dyed / he ſhall bere thre crownes / and he ſhall put a londe in grete ſubiectyon / & after it ſhall be releued / but not in his tyme. This boore after he is deed for his doughtynesse ſhall be entyred at Coleyne. And his londe ſhall be fulfilled of all good.

**A**fter this boore ſhall come a lambe / that ſhall haue feet of leed / & an heed of braſſe / & an herte of loppe a ſwynes ſhynne & an harde. And in his tyme his londe ſhall be in peas / the fyrſt yere of his regne he ſhall do make a cyte that all the worlde ſhall ſpeke there of. ¶ This lambe ſhall leſe in his tyme a grete parte of his londe through an hydeous wulfe / but he ſhall recouer it / and yee a lordſhype to an Eggle of his londe and this eggle ſhall well gouerne it tyll the tyme that pryde ſhall hym ouercome. Alas the ſorowe / for he ſhall deye of his brothers ſwerde. And after ſhall the londe falle to the forſayd lambe / that ſhall gouerne the londe in peas all his lyues tyme. And after he ſhall deye / & the londe be fulfilled of all maner of good.

**A**fter this lambe ſhall come a moldwarpe / curſyd of goddes mouth / a captyf / a coward / an haare / he ſhall haue an elderly ſhynne as a gote / & dengeaunce ſhall falle vpon hym

for lynne. ¶ In the fyrſt yere of his regne he ſhall haue of all good grete plenty in his londe and towarde hym alſo / And in his londe he ſhall haue grete prayſynge / tyll the tyme that he ſhall ſuffre his people lyue in to moche pryde without chaſtyſynge / wherfore god wyl be wrothe. ¶ Thenne ſhall arylle vp a dragon of the North / that ſhall be full ſperle / and ſhall meue warre ayenſt the forſayd moldwarpe / and ſhall yee hy batayle vpon a ſtone. This dragon ſhall gadre ayen in to his company a wulfe / that ſhall come out of the Weſt to meue warre ayenſt the forſayd moldwarpe in his tyde / and ſo ſhall the dragon / and bynde theyr taylor togyder. ¶ Thenne ſhall come a lyon out of Irelande / that ſhall falle in company with them. And thenne ſhall tremble the londe that ſhall be called Englonde as an alpyr leyf / And in that tyme ſhall caſtelles be felled downe vpon Tample. And it ſhall ſeme that Seuerne ſhall be drye / for the bodes that ſhall falle deed there in / The foure chyef floodes in Englonde ſhall renne in blood. And grete drede ſhall be / and anguyſthe that ſhall arylle ¶ After the moldwarpe ſhall flee & the dragon. The lyon and the wulfe ſhall them dryue away / and the londe ſhall be without them. And the moldwarpe ſhall haue no maner power / ſauf oonly a ſhynne wherto he may wende. ¶ And after that he ſhall go to londe where the ſee is withdraue. And after that he ſhall yee the thyrde parte of his londe / for to haue the fourth parte in peas and in reſt. And after he ſhall lyue in ſorowe all his lyf tyme. ¶ And in his tyme the hote bathes ſhall become colde. And after ſhall the moldwarpe deye auenturouſly & ſodeynly. Alas for ſorowe / for he ſhall be drowned in a flood of the ſee. His leed ſhall become faderles in ſtraunge londe for euer more. And then ſhall the londe be departed in to thre partes / that

is to say / to the wulf / to the dragon / & to the lyon. And so shall it be for ever more And thenne shall this londe be called the londe of Conquest. And so shall the ryght heyres of Englonde ende.

**H**ow Arthur ouercame Guillomer that was kynge of Irlonde. And how the Scottes became his men.

**W**henne whan Guillomer that was kynge of Irlonde herde tydynges þat kynge Arthur was entred at Glastenbury / he ordeyned a grete power of Irysshmen & came to the see with his Iryshe people / & so came in to Scotlonde ouer the see & arryued fast there by þat kynge Arthur was with his hoste / And anone as he wyst therof / he wente towarde hym & gaue hym bataylle & ouercame hym anone ryght. And Guillomer fledde with his men agayne in to Irlonde. And whan this was done & dylcomfyted hym Arthur torted hym ayen there that he was / in to the place there that he had lette the Scottes and wolde haue them all slayne. But the bysshopes / abbottes / & other folke of the countrie & ladyes open heeded came before kynge Arthur & cryed hym mercy & sayde. Syre gentyll kynge & myghty / haue mercy & pyte vpon vs. And as yourself be of the ryght lawe to holde & mayntene Crystenidome. for full greate dylhonour it sholde be to slee hym þat byleueth in almyghty god as ye do. And for gods loue haue mercy & pyte on vs & suffre vs. for we haue had moche sorowe & payne. for þat Saxons haue many tymes passed thorough our londe. But þat is not ynough to you / for oftentimes they haue done vs sorowe & dyleale. for our castelles they haue taken / & our beestes slayne & eten / and moche harme they haue vs done. And yf ye wolde vs now slee / it were none honour to a kynge to slee them that crye hym mercy. for ynough ye haue

done to vs & haue vs ouercome. And for the loue of god þat ye wyl suffre vs for to lyue / & haue mercy on crysten people that byleue in Cryste as ye do. ¶ Whan kynge Arthur herde this sorowe / he had pyte of them & gaue them lye & lymme without ony more harme. And they fell downe to his feet & thanked hym / & became his lyege men / & he tooke of them homage. ¶ And after that kynge Arthur torted ayen with his hoste & came vnto Yorke / and made there his bydyngedurynge that bypage. And tho gaue he all Logrys to Aloth þat had spowled his wyfster & other gyftes grete plente. And tho was Gawyn his colyn but of yonge age. And to all his other men that hym had serued in his warre / he gaue ryche gyftes / & he thanked them moche of all theyr good seruyce.

**H**ow kynge Arthur spowled Gūnor that was Gūnors colyn Erle of Come wayle / and after he conquered of Guillomer all Irlonde.

**A**nd whan Arthur had brought his londe in peas & reste and in good state / & all was well in euery countree. Tho toke he & wedded a wyf þat was called Gūnor & made her quene / a fayr lady & a gentyll þat Lador the erle of Cornewayle had nourysshed in his chambur that was his colyn. But neuer they had children togyder. And neuertheless kynge Arthur loued her wonder well & deyrly. And anone as Wynter was passed / he lete assemble a grete hoste / & all his Barons & sayd þat he wolde go in to Irlonde for to conquere the londe. And he tarped not longe þat he ne passed ouer into Irlonde. ¶ And Guillomer the kynge lete assemble a grete hoste & gaue bataylle to kynge Arthur / but Guillomer was dylcomfyted & yelded hym to the kynge & became his man / & to hym dyde feyde / and homage / & of hym helde all þat londe

fro that tyme forward. And after passed kynge Arthur farthermore & conquered Guylonde & Illonde / & toke homaige of the folke & of the londe / and there dwelled .xij. yere in peas & reigned with Joye and myrthe. And there warred no man ne woman vpon hym. And he became so curteys & large & honorable / that the Emperours courte of Rome / ne no / ne other thugh out all the world was not accounted to kynge Arthurs / that ony man wylt of / ne none so well praysed. And therfore the best knyghts of all maner londes came vnto hym there for to dwelle. And he theym receyued with good wyl and reuerence. ¶ And all the knyghtes were so good that no man knewe the werste. And therfore kynge Arthur made a rounde table that whan they sholde sytte on ther meete / all sholde be lykelye hygge & euently serued at the table / that none of them sholde make auant that one of them were hygger thanne an other. And kynge Arthur had at that table Brytons & frenshmen. Normans and Flemynghes. Burgoyns Maulers & Loherins / & of al the londes a this half the mount Goie / & of his londe of Brytayne / and of the grete Cornewaylle / of Walys & of Irlande / and of Scotlonde. And shortly to tell / of all the londes þe wolde worshyp chyualry / such came to kynge Arthurs courte.

¶ How kynge Arthur yede in to fraunce & conquered þe londe of froll þe was a Romayne / & how he slewe hym.

¶ Whan it befell that thugh counsell of his barons & lordes / kynge Arthur wolde go conquere all fraunce that tho was called Galle thugh Romaynes that tho helde that londe in theyr power & in theyr gouernaunce. And the Romayns had taken that londe to a noble knyght & a worthy of body that was called froll. And whan he wylt that Ar-

thur came / he ordeyned an hoste of a grete power & fought with the kynge. And he & his folke were dyscomfyted & fled vnto Darys & entred þe cyte / & closed the pates / & there helde them. ¶ Whan Arthur wylt that froll was gone to Darys he pursued after & came thyder / & hym besyged. But the cyte was so stronge & well arayed / & tho þe were therein deffended theym well & manly. ¶ Kynge Arthur dwelled there more than a moneth. & there was so moche people in the cyte that they dyspended all theyr vyfayle þe they had within. And so grete hungre became amonge them / þe they deyed wonderly thicke within the cyte for hungre. And came vnto froll & prayed hym / to be accorded with kynge Arthur for to haue peas / & they wolde yelde theym vnto hym & the cyte also. ¶ Froll sawe that he myght no lenger holde the towne / ayenst theyr wyl / & trusted greatly vpon his owne strengch / & sente to kynge Arthur that he sholde come fyght with hym body for body / & so sholde they departe fraunce bytwene them two. ¶ Kynge Arthur anone graunted it. And wolde not þe none of his people vnderooke the bafayle for hym. ¶ And vpon the morne both came well arayed without Darys there that they sholde fyght. And anone they smote togyders so spersly & so well they fought on bothe sydes þe no man demed the better of them / & so it befell þe froll yaued Arthur such a stroke that he kned to the grounde wolde he nolde he / And as froll wounded kynge Arthur in the forhede þe the blood fell downe by his eyen & his face. Arthur anone sterte vperely whan he felte hym hurte as a man that lemed almost wood. And he toke taburne his good swerde / & drew it vpon hygge and yaf froll such a stroke that therwith he claued his heed downe to the sholders so that his helme myght not be his warraunt / & so he fell downe deed in the place. And thenne tho of the

cyte made greate sorowe for froll. And euerychone yelded them to kynge Arthur and the towne also & became his men/ & dyde to hym homage & feaute. And he receyued them & toke of them goodly hostages. And kynge Arthur after that wente forth with his hoste & conquered Augien & Angiers. Galcoyne. Pehito. Nauerne and Bourgoyne. Berry. Loherne Turin and Peithers / and all the other londes of fraunce he conquered all holly. Whan he had conquered & taken by homages and feautees / he tored apen to Paris and there he dwelled longe tyme / & ordeyned peas longe tyme ouer all the countree / and thorough all fraunce /

**A**nd whan peas was made ouer all / thorough his noble knyghthode that he hadde / and also for his owne worthynes And no man were he neuer soo greate a lorde durste not meue warre apenst hym nother to aryle for to make the londe of fraunce inquyete. And in peas he dwelled there .ix. yere / and dyde many greate wondres / & repleued many proude men & euill tyrauntes theym chastyled after theyr demerites.

**H**ow kynge Arthur auauuced all his men that had traauylled in his seruyce.

**A**nd afterwarde it befell thus at Ester there that he helde a fest at Paris / & rycheley he gan auauuce his knyghtes for the seruyce that they hadg hym holpen in his conquest. He paue to his stewarde that was called Kay Augien & Angiers. And he paue to Bedwer his butler Normandye / that tho was called Neustrie. And to Holdin his chambrelaync he paue Flaundres and Hance And to Dorell his colyn he paue Boleynne. And to Rycharde his neuewe he paue pountyf / & to all other he paue large londes & fees after they were of estate / And whan Arthur had thus his knyghytes feoffed / at Aucryll next after supynge

he came apen in to Brytayne his owne londe. And after at Wylfontyde seruyng by counseyll of his barons / he wolde be crowned kynge of Glomergon / & helde a solempne feest. And lete somone barons erles & knyghtes / that they sholde come thyder euerychone. And there was Scater kynge of Scotlonde. Cadwere kynge of Southwalys. Guillomer kynge of Northwalys. Maded kynge of Irlonde. Malmagus kynge of Guelonde. Achilles kynge of Illonde. Aloch kynge of Denmarke. Gonewas kynge of Norwaye / and hell his colyn kynge of Doikeny. Lador kynge of Iytell Brytayne. Morwith Erle of Cornewaylle. Mauraun erle of Gloucestre. Guerdon erle of Wynchestre. Boell erle of Hartford. Hitegi erle of Oxforde. Luisall erle of Bath. Jonas erle of Chestre. Ene rall erle of Dorchestre. Kymare erle of Salpsbury. Waloth erle of Caunterbury. Jugerne erle of Chichestre. Arall erle of Keyestre / & the erle of Werryke / and many other moo ryche lordes. Brytons there came mo / that is to saye. Dippon. Donaude. Gennes / & many other that be not named here were at the feest. And many a fayre feest kynge Arthur hadg holde before / but neuer none suche / ne so solempne / & that lasted .xv. dayes with moche honour and myrthe.

**O**f the letter that was sente fro Rome for pryde to kynge Arthur.

**T**he thyrde dawe as kynge Arthur latte att his meete amonge his kynges and amonge them that late att the feest / before them came in .xij. men of aege rycheley arayed / and curtosly they salewed the kynge / and sayd they came fro Rome sente as messengers fro the Emperour. And toke hy a letter that thus moche was to vnderstande. **G**retely vs meruaylleth Arthur / that thou art ones so hardy with thyn eyen in thy

heed to make open warre or contake a /  
penst vs of Rome / that owne all þ̄ worl  
de to deme / for þ̄ hast neuer yet before  
this tyme proued ne allayed thy strength  
of the Romayns / & therfor þ̄ it shall in  
a lytell tyme. for Julius Cezar conque  
red all the londe of Brytayne / and toke  
therof truage / & our folke haue it longe  
y had / & now thourgh thy pryde þ̄ with  
holdest it. Wherfore we of Rome cōmaū  
de the that þ̄ it yelde ayen / & yet hast þ̄  
more foly done that þ̄ hast slayne froll  
that was our baron of fraūce w̄ wron  
ge. And therfore all the comyns of Ro  
me warneth the & cōmaunde þ̄ vpon lye  
& lymme that þ̄ in haste be at Rome a  
mendes for to make of thy myldeedes  
that þ̄ hast done. And it so be that þ̄ co  
me not we shall passe the hylle of Joye  
with strength / & we shall the seke where  
euer þ̄ may be founde / and þ̄ shalt not  
haue a foot of londe of thyn owne / that  
we ne shall destroye it / & afterwarde w̄  
thy body we shall do all our wyll. Whan  
this letter was redde & all men it herde  
they were anoyed all that were at that  
solempne feest. And the Brytons wolde  
haue slayne the messengers / but the kyn  
ge wolde not suffre them & sayd / that þ̄  
messengers sholde haue no harme / and  
may by reason none deserue. But com  
maūded them to be worshypfully serued  
And after meete he toke coulepyll of kyn  
ges / erles and barons / what answere he  
myght yeue ayen to þ̄ messengers. And  
they coulepylled hym atones / that he shol  
de assemble a grete power of all the lon  
des of whiche he had lordshyp / & man  
ly auenge hym vpon the Emperour of  
the despyte that he had sende hym suche  
a letter. And they swore by god and by  
all holy his name that they sholde hym  
pursewe and brenne as moche as they  
myght. And sayd that they wolde neuer  
faylle kynge Arthur / and rather to be  
deed. And they lete wyte a letter to sen  
de to the Emperour by the same mes

sengers in this manere of wyse.

¶ Of the bolde answere that kynge Ar  
thur sente to the Emperour of Rome &  
to the Romayns.

**A**nderstondeth amonge you of  
Rome that I am kynge Arthur  
of Brytayne / and freely it holde & shall  
holde. And at Rome hastely I wyll be  
not to yeue you truage / but for to axe  
truage. for Constantyne that was E  
leyns sone that was Emperour of Ro  
me and of all the honour that therto bes  
longeth. And Maximian kynge conques  
red all fraūce & Almanye / and moun  
t Joye passed / & conquered all Lombardy  
And these two were myn auncetours / &  
that they helde & had. I shall haue thos  
rough goddes wyll.

¶ Of the reuerence that kynge Arthur  
dyde to the Emperours messengers.

**A**nd whan this letter was made  
and enlealed / kynge Arthur to  
these messengers paue grete pestes / & af  
ter that the messengers toke theyr leue  
and wente thens / and came to the cour  
te of Rome agayne. And tolde the Em  
perour how worthely they were receyued  
And also of suche a ryall company that  
he hadde hym for to serue / and how he  
was more ryally serued than the Empe  
rour of Rome / or ony other kynge lyuyn  
ge in all the worlde. ¶ And whan the  
Emperour had ouerseen the letter / and  
hadde herde what was therein / and sa  
we that Arthur wolde not be ruled af  
ter hym. He lete assemble and ordeyne a  
grete hoste for to destroye kynge Arthur  
yf that he myght. ¶ And kynge Arthur  
as touchynge his power and partye / or  
deyned his power of knyghtes of the ta  
ble rounde.

¶ Of the kynges and lordes that came

for to helpe kynge Arthur agaynst the Emperour.

**T**he kynge of Scotlonde & of Irlande / & of Gytlonde / of Denmarke and of Almayne / every of them had .x. thousande men. The duke of Normandy. Galcoyne. Flaunders. Pehito. & of Boloyne / eche had .iiij. thousande. Gerin of Charthies had .x. thousande / Howell of Brytayne had .xij. thousande And hymself of his owne londre .xij. thousande. And of Arbalastres & of Archers and of other folke on foot that no man cowde theym nombre. And whan all were redy to go. Kynge Arthur / his londre and Gynor his wyf / toke to kepe to one of his newwes / that was a wyle knyght & an hardy / that was called Mordred / But he was not all true / as ye shall here afterwarde. Kynge Arthur tooke all his reame to this Mordred / lauf oonly the crowne. And after that kynge Arthur toke his hoste and wente to South Hampton / there that the shyppes were brought & the folke assembled. And they dyde go vnto the see / and had wynde & weder at wyll. And as loone as euer they myght they arryued at Hareflete. And alsone as they myght they went to londe out of theyr shyppes and spradde all ouer the countree.

**H**ow kynge Arthur faught with a gyant in Spayne that was called Dinabus / that slewe Eleyne that was kynge Howels colyn of Iytell Brytayne.

**K**ynge Arthur had not dwelled in the countree but a Iytell tyme / that men hym tolde that there was come a grete gyaunt in to Spayne / & had rauylshed layre Eleyne that was colyn vnto Howell of Iytell Brytayne. And hadde brought her vpon an hylle that is called the mouit of laynt Bernarde. And there was no man in that countree so holde ne

so hardy that durst fyght with hym / ne come nye the place there that the gyaunt dwelled that was called Dinabus. And moche sorowe he dyde in the countree / Whan kynge Arthur herde this tydynge / he called to hym Kay and Bedwere & commaunded them to go pryuely & espye where the gyaunt myght be founde And they came to the ryuage there that men holde go to the mouit / that was enclosed about with water & yet is / and euer shall be. And they sawe a biennynge fyre vpon the hylle. And there was also an other hylle nye that / & there was vpon that an other fyre biennynge. Kay and Bedwere came to the next hylle / & founde a wydowe open heeded Iyctynge belydes a tombe sore wepyng / & grete sorowe made. And oft she sayd Eleyne eleyne. And Kay & Bedwere axed what she was / & wherfore she made so moche sorowe / and who laye in that tombe / She sayd she what sorowe & myslauenture fayre lordes leke ye here. For yf the Gyaunt may you here fynde he wyll you slee anone. Be styll good wyf sayd they therof dysmaye you not / but tell vs the south why that thou makest so moche sorowe & wepyng. Syrs sayd she for a damoyzell that I nouryshed with my brest that was called Eleyne / that was nere to Howell of Brytayne. And here lyeth the body in this tombe that to me was taken to nouryssh. And so there came a deuyll a Gyaunt & rauylshed her & me also / and ladde vs bothe with hym awaye. And he wolde haue forlayne that mayde that was so yonge & tender of aegge / but she myght it not suffre so grete & so huge as the Gyaunt was. And for certayne yf he come now as he is wont to do / he wyll you both now slee & therefore go ye hens. Thenne bespake these two messengers & sayd to her / wherfore go ye not from hens. Certes sayd she whan that Eleyne was deed the Gyaunt made me to abyde and haunt his



wyll / & I must nedes it suffre. And god it wote I do it not with my wyll / for I had leuer to be deed than with hym to deale / so moche payne & sorowe I haue whan he me forlypeth. ¶ Whan Kay and Bedwere had herde all þ̄ this woman them tolde / they torned apen & came to kynge Arthur & tolde hym all that they had seen and herde. ¶ Arthur anone toke them bothe with hym & wente pryuelly by nyght that none of his hoste wyllt & came on the morowe early to the Gyf aunt & faught with hym strongely / and at the last hym slewe. And Arthur badde Bedwere smyte of his heed / & bynnyge it to the hoste to shewe it for a wonder / for it was so grete & huge. ¶ Whan they came apen to the hoste / they tolde wherfore they had ben out / & shewed to them the heed / & euery man was gladd & Joyefull of the worthy dede that kynge Arthur had done that was theyr lord. And howell was full sorowfull for his nece that was so lost. And afterwarde whan he had space / he lete make a fayre chappell of our lady ouer Bleyns tombe.

¶ How kynge Arthur gaue bataylle to the Emperour / in þ̄ whiche batayll the Emperour hymself was slayne.

**A**Rthur & his people herde tydynnes þ̄ the Emperour had assembled a grete power / as well of sarralyns as of paynems & crysten men. Wherof þ̄ nombre was .lxxx. thousande hois men w̄ foot men. ¶ Arthur & his people ordeined fast forþ in theyr waye toward the Emperour & passed Normandy & fraunce vnto Burgoyne / & wolde haue gone vnto the hoste. for men tolde hym that the Emperours hoste wolde come to Lucie. ¶ The Emperour & his hoste in the begynnynge of August remeued from Rome / & came forth ryght the waye toward þ̄ hoste. ¶ Tho came kynge Arthurs

lpyes & sayd / yf that Arthur wolde he holde fynde the Emperour there false by / but they sayd / that the Emperour had so grete power with hym of kynge of the londe of Paynems / & also crysten people that it were but foly to kynge Arthur to mete with them for the lpyes tolde / that the Emperour had fyue or sixe men ayenst one of his. ¶ Kynge Arthur was bolde & hardy / and for no thynge hym nylmayed & sayd. Goo we boldely in goddes name ayenst the Romayns / that with them lede Sarralyns & Paynems / that no maner trust they haue in god / but oonly vpon theyr strength. Goo we now & seke them sharpely in the name of almyghty god / & flee we the Paynems and Crysten men that ben ayenst vs w̄ them / for to destroye Crysten men And god shall vs helpe them to ouercome. for we haue the ryght oppnyon / & therfore haue we truste in god. And do we so that the ennynes that be to crystendome & to god may be destroyed & ouercome / & that men may recorde the worthynesse of knyghthode. ¶ Whan kynge Arthur hadde thus sayd / they cryed all with an hygh voyce. ¶ God that is fad almyghty worshypped be thy name w̄ out ende. Amen. And graunt vs grace well for to do / & to destroye our ennynes that ben ayenst crystendome. In the name of the fader / the sone / and the holy ghost. Amen. And god yeue hym neuer grace ne worshypp in the worlde / ne mercy of hym to haue / that this daye shall faynte well for to smyte & egrely. And so they rode softly / & ordeyned his wynges well & wysely. ¶ The Emperour herde tell that kynge Arthur & his folke were redy appareylled for to fyght with hym & how they were comynge. he lete ordeyne his wynges in the best wyse that he cowde. And more trusted vpon his strength than in god almyghty / & that was leen afterwarde. for whan the two hostes mette / the Emperour lost foure

of his folke ayenst one of Arthur. And so many were slayne / what on that one party & on that other / that it was grete pyte to wyte & to beholde. ¶ In this batayll were slayne thugh kyng Arthurs fyue kynges of the Paynems & of other wonder moche people / & kyng Arthurs men fought so well / that the Romayns and paynems had no more strengthe to withstonde them / than .xx. shepe ayenst fyue wulues. ¶ And so it befelle that in this batayll in the shoure / that was wonder harde & longe durynge in that one syde & in that other / the Emperour amonge them there was slayne / but ther was noo man that wyte for very lothe who hym slewe.

¶ How kyng Arthur lete entyere his knyghtes þ he had lost there in batayll / & how he sente the Emperours body to Rome that there was slayne in batayll.

**S**o whan þ Romayns wytt that the Emperour was deed / they forloke the felde & þ paynems also. And kyng Arthur after them chaced tyll it was nyght / & so many of them slewe þ it was wonder to telle. And tho torned kyng Arthur ayen whan it was nyght & thanked god of his victoize. And on the morowe he lete loke & serche all the felde for his knyghtes that he there lost. That is to saye. Borell erle of Maunt. Bedwere / & Kay / and Lyegeiers erle of Holeyne. Houtiger erle of Baac. Aloth erle of Wynchestre. Luilall erle of Chesstre / and after Holden erle of flaundres. These were the grete lordes that kyng Arthur lost in that batayll / with other worthy knyghtes them amonge. And some he lete entere in abbayes by the countree / some he lete to be borne in to theyr owne countre. ¶ And the Emperours body he lete take & put vpon a beyr & sent it to Rome. And sayd to the Romayns / that for Bytayne & fraunce whiche

helde / other truage wolde he none paye. ¶ And yf they axed hym ony other truaiges / ryght luche truage he wolde theym paye. ¶ The kyng lete bere Kay to Kenen his owne castell / & there hym entere. And Lyegeier was borne to Holeyne therc he was lorde. And Holden was borne to flaundres / there he was entere / And all the other he lete entere with moche honour in abbayes & in houses of relygion in the countre that they were slayne. ¶ And Arthur hymself sojourned þ same yere in Bourgoyne with his holte & thought the same yere folowynge to passe the mount Joye / and haue gone to Rome also to haue taken the cyte & haue put the Romayns in subgeccyon / but the wyched tyraunt Mordred hym lette / as after ye shall here.

¶ How the traytour Mordred / to whom kyng Arthur toke his londe to kepe & his castelles / helde them ayenst hym.

**A**s Arthur had takē to Mordred his reame to kepe / & gone ayenst the Emperour of Rome / & was passed the see. Mordred anone toke homages & feautees of all theym that were in this londe / & wolde haue had this londe to his owne vse / & toke castelles about / and lete them be arayed. And after this falsenelle he dyde an other grete wronge / for ayenst the lawe of crystente he tooke his owne emys wyf as a traytour holde / & ordeyned hym a grete holte ayenst Arthurs comynge / to holde the londe ayenst hym with strength for euer more / & to slee kyng Arthur yf he myght / & sente by the see & by londe / & lete assemble paynems & crysten people. And he sente to Saxons & to Danys for to helpe hym. And also Mordred sent to Cheldrik to sende men to hym out of Saxon that was a worthy duke / & prompled hym yf that he broght with hym moche people he wolde graunte hym Inherytaunce for

euere/all the londe fro Humber to Scotlonde/ & all the londe that Engist had of Hordigers yeste/whan that he spow: scd his doughter. ¶ And Chelrik came with a grete strength and power of people/and Mordred hadde assembled also on his half/that they had .xl. thousande of stronge knyghtes whan that they had nede.

¶ How Arthur enchaced Mordred the traytour & how he was slayne / & also kynge Arthur wounded to the deeth.

**A**s this tydynge came to kynge Arthur there þ he was in Bourgoyne/ he was full sore anoyed / & toke all fraunce to howell for to kepe with half deale of his men. And prayed hym that he wolde it kepe tyll he came apen. for hymself wolde passe in to Brytayne/ & auenge hym vpon mordred þ was his traytour. And forth with Arthur wente his waye & came to Wyflande/ and made his men to go in to shyppe & wolde haue arryued at Sandwyche/ and brought with hym a grete hoste of frenchemen also with his owne londe men/ But or that he myght come to londe w his people that were come out of his shypes. Mordred was come with all his power/ & gaue a stronge batayll / soo that kynge Arthur losse many a man are that he myght come to londe. for there was Gawayne his neuerwe slayne/ and Anguyllhell that helde Scotlonde/ and many ocher wherof kynge Arthur was full lory. But after they were come to londe Mordred myght not apenst them endure. But anone was dyscomfytet & fledde thens the same nyght with his men/ and vpon the morne came to London. But tho of the cyte wolde not suffer hym to come in. And from thens he fledde to Wynchestre/ and there he hym helde with his people that came with hý ¶ Kynge Arthur lete take the body of

Gawayne his colyn/ & the body of Anguyllhell / & lete that one be borne in to Scotlonde/ and the ocher to Douer and buryed. Anone after kynge Arthur toke his waye for to destroye Mordred / & he fledde thens in to Cornewayle. ¶ And the queene Gunnor that was kynge Arthurs wyf that tho loioured at Porke/ herde that Mordred was fledde thens/ & that he myght not endure apenst kynge Arthur/ she was sore aferde & had grete doubte/ and wyste not what was best of all for to done. for she vnderstode well that her lorde kynge Arthur wolde neuer of her/ for to haue mercy for the grete shame that she had done vnto hym/ And toke her waye pryuely with foure men without mod/ and came to Karlyson/ and there she dwelled all ther lyue/ and neuer after was seen amonges the folke her lyf durynge. ¶ Kynge Arthur wylt that Mordred was fledde in to Cornewayle / and lete sende after his men in to Scotlonde and Northumberlonde vnto Humber / and lete assemble folke without nombre/ & came fro thens in to Cornewayle to seke and pursewe after Mordred. ¶ And Mordred had assembled to hym all the folke of Cornewayle & had people without nombre/ and wylt that Arthur was compynge/ and had leuer to deye & take his chaunce/ than longer flee and abode / and gaue an harde batayll to kynge Arthur & to his people so that moche people was slayne/ what of one syde & what of that ocher/ that no man wylt who had þ better party. But so it befell at the last that Mordred was slayne & all his folke/ and the good chyualry that kynge Arthur had gadred & nourysshed of dyuerse londes / and also the noble knyghtes of the rounde table/ that so moche were prayled though out all the worlde were there slayne/ & kynge Arthur hymself was wounded vnto deeth. But he lete hý to be borne to Quizon to be heeled of his woundes. And

yet the Brytons supposen that he lyued in an other londe / & that he shall come yet & conquere all Brytayne. ¶ But certes this is the prophece of Merlin. He sayd that his deth shall be doubtful / & sayd soth. for therof yet men haue doute / and shall haue for euer more as men laye. for men wote not whyther that he is on lyue or deed. ¶ Arthur was borne at Auoun the .xxij. yere of his regne / after the Incarnacion of our lorde Ihesu Cryste .v. C. lvi. yere.

**H**ow kynge Arthur delyuered the reame vnto Constantyne the sone of Cadour his neuewe.

**A**s kynge Arthur wylte that he myght no longer regne / he lete come before hym Constantyne that was Cadours sone erle of Cornewayle his cōlyn & to hys betoke all his reame / & to hys sayd / & hadde hys therof to be kyng tyll he came apen / for as moche as he had none heyre of his body begoten. And grete damage was it / that so noble a kyng & so doughty as he was / had no childe of his body begoten. But all thyng that god woll haue done must be done / whose name be blessyd without ende.

**H**ow kynge Constantyne was vexed of Mordred two sones.

**T**his Constantyne was a noble knyght & a worthy of body. And tho two sones that Mordred had begoten had grete enuy of Constantyne that tho was crowned kyng. And so it befell that they meued warre ayenst hys. And assembled a grete hoste of them that were before with Mordred / & had ben dryuen awaye / & that dyde moche sorowe & angurthe throughtout all that londe. That one brother ordeyned / & purposed hym towarde the auncient cyte of London / for to take the cyte. And that other wen

te to Wynchestre. But Constantyne came to London and slewe hym that was there. And after he went to Wynchestre and slewe hym that was there also. So that bothe his enmyes were deed. ¶ And whan Constantyne had reigned well & worthely foure yere / he deyed and lyeth at London.

**O**f the kynges Adelbriht and of Edell.

**A**fter kynge Constantynes dech there were two kynges in Brytayne / that one was called Adelbriht that was a danoy. And he helde the countree of Northfolke & Southfolke. That other hyght Edell & was a Bryton / & he helde Nicholl. Lindeser / & all the londe vnto Humber. These two kynges faste warred togyder / but after accorded they were & loued togyder / as they had ben borne of oo body. ¶ The kynge Edell had a syster that was called Driewenne. And he gaf her thugh grete frendshyp to kynge Adelbriht to wyf. And he begate vpon her a doughter that was called Argentyll. And in the thyrde yere after came vpon hym a strange syknesse that nedes he must deye. And he sente to kynge Edell his broder in lawe that he sholde come & speke with hym / & he came to hym with a good wyll. ¶ Tho prayed he the kynge and coniuered hym also in the name of god / that after whan he were deed / he sholde take his doughter Argentyll & the londe / & that he kepte her well / and nouryshe her in his chambre. And whan she were of aeger / she sholde be maryed to the strögest & worthyest man that he myght fynde / & thenne he sholde yelde vpon her londe apen. ¶ Edell it graunted & by othe confermed his prayer. And whan Adelbriht was deed & enteryd / Edell toke the damoyzell Argentyll / & nouryshe her in his chambre / & she became as fayre as ony myght be.

How kynge Edell maryed that day  
 moyfell to a knaue of his kechpne.

**T**his kynge Edell that was vncle  
 to Argentyll / bethought how he  
 he myght fallely haue the londe fro his  
 nece for euer more / & fallely apenst his  
 othe thought to dyscepeue he damoyfell / &  
 to marpe her to a knaue of his kechyn he  
 was called Curan / & he became the wor-  
 thiest & strongest man of body he ony mā  
 wyll in ony londe he tho lyued / & to hym  
 he thought her shamfully haue maryed  
 for to haue had her londe afterwarde /  
 but he was clene dyscepeued. for this Cu-  
 ran was Hauelockis sone he was kynge of  
 Kyrbelane in Denmark / & this Curan  
 conquered his wyues londe afterwarde  
 & slewe kynge Edell he was his wyues vn-  
 cle & had al her londe / as in an other pla-  
 ce it telleth more openly / & he regned but  
 thre yere for Saxons & Danes he slewe  
 & that was grete harme to all Brytayne  
 & Brytons bare hym to Stonehenge  
 and cnyred hym honourably.

Of kynge Conan he was Curans colyn.

**A**fter this Curan regned his colyn  
 Conan that was a wonder  
 proude knyght. And regned & coude ha-  
 ue noo maner of loue / but euer he was  
 medlynge with his people. And toke his  
 vncle with warre / & slewe his two chil-  
 dern. The Saxons warred apenst he  
 oftentymes / but he them ouercame / & so  
 he was in peas all his lyf tyme. And he  
 regned .xiiij. yere / and after he deped &  
 lyeth at London.

Of kynge Cortyf and of Gurmonde  
 that came thorough the paynems in to  
 Brytayne.

**A**fter this Conan regned his colyn  
 Cortyf he was behated of al  
 his peple & no thynge beloued. And this

Cortyf lost all Brytayne thugh warre  
 And in his tyme tell he grete mylcheyf in  
 Brytayne he crystendom was destroyed /  
 & all the Brytons were dryuen out of he  
 londe & the londe lost without ony reco-  
 uer. But afterwarde lette the londe to  
 the Saxons as ye afterwarde shall he-  
 re. for in that tyme there was a paynem  
 that was called Gurmonde / that was  
 the kynges sone Daufrices of the pay-  
 nems folke / that hadde the reame after  
 his fader / & was kynge / lauf he bequas-  
 ue & yaued it to his broder. And sayd that  
 he nolde neuer be kynge / but yf that he  
 myght gete and conquere a reame in a  
 straunge countree. for he was bolde and  
 stronge of body. And of he prophycyed  
 Merlyn & sayd / that he sholde be a wulf  
 of the see. And he lette assemble paynems  
 withouth nombre / & lette appareylle they  
 shippes / and wente by many londes / & toke  
 homages and feauters of many. And  
 so he wente by the see & conquered ma-  
 ny dyuerse londes. Soo that he came in  
 to Irlonde / & conquered that londe / that  
 oftentymes warred vpon Brytons / and  
 Brytons vpon them / & oft wonne & oft  
 lost & yaued hostages to Brytons. And so  
 they sente to Gurmonde there that he  
 was in Irlonde / that he sholde come in  
 to Brytayne and helpe them apenst the  
 Brytons / to helpe them to delyuer that  
 londe of them / & they wolde hym holde  
 gladly for theyr lord. for he was a pay-  
 nem / & they were paynems / & the Bry-  
 tons were crystened. Wellought he them  
 for to helpe / so as they were all of one la-  
 we. Whan Gurmonde herde this pray-  
 er he halted hym as moche as he myght  
 and arryued in Scotlonde / and came in  
 to Northumberlonde there that the Sax-  
 ons were dwellynge / & they confermed  
 the couenauntes bytwene them that we-  
 re made by othes & by hostages / for to  
 bere hym true fay / & holde hym for lord  
 & paye to hym truage by the yere /  
 Tho began the Saxons and the Als

fricans to destroye robbe & brenne townes / & destroye all thyng in almoche as they myght / & spared neyther man woꝝ man ne childe / lerned ne lewde / but all they slewe / & cast downe townes castels & churches / & so put they all the londe in grete destruccyon. And as soone as they myght flee / they fled / thens as wel pooze as ryche / byshopps / abbottes / chanons / & all other grete & small / some in to Iptell Brytayne / & some in to Cornewayle / al tho that they myght haue.

**H**ow the kynge Gurmonde dioue kynge Cortyt to Chechestre / & slewe the Brytons / and thugh craffe & engyne gate the same towne.

**A** Dyt the kynge fledde thens in to Chechestre h̄ tho was stronge / & there helde h̄ .xx. dayes / & this Gurmonde came & it besyged. But the cyte was so stronge h̄ he myght not gete it by no manere of wyle w̄ engyne that they myght do. Tho bethought they vpon a subtilte for to brenne the towne. They made engynes w̄ glewe of nestes / & toke pecys of thonder & of fyre & bonde it to sparowes feet / & than lete them flice / & they anone flewe & lodged them in h̄ towne there h̄ theyr nestis were / & in stacks & euelynges of houles / & h̄ fyre began to kyndle & brence all the towne / And whan h̄ Brytons sawe that in euery syde they hyed them out & fought / but anone they were slane & dylcomfyt / And whyle the batayll dured the kynge pryuelly hydde hym & stalle awaye in to Walys / & men wylt neuer were he became / & so was h̄ towne of Chechestre taken & destroyed. And after Gurmonde wente & destroyed townes & cytees that neuer were after made ayen / as it is seen yet in many places of this londe.

**H**ow this londe was called Englonde for the name of Engist / & how many

kynge were made after in this londe.

**S**o whan Gurmonde had destoyde all the londe thugh out / he gaue the londe to h̄ Saxons / & anone they toke it w̄ good wyl / for the Saxons longe tyme had delyred it. for almoche as they were of Engyssh kynrede that fyrst had all h̄ londe of Brytayne & lete them be called Englysshmen / for by cause of Engistes name / & h̄ londe they lete call Englonde in theyr langage / & the folke ben called Englysshmen / for almoche as in his tyme it was called Engist's londe whan he had conquered it of Dortiger / that spoused his doughter. But fro h̄ tyme that Brute came fyrst in to Englonde / this londe was called Brytayne / & h̄ folke Brytons. But syth the tyme h̄ this Gurmonde conquered it of stones / & gaue it vnto the Saxons / they anone ryght chaūged h̄ name as before is layd. And whan this was done. Gurmonde passed ouer in to fraūce / & there conquered many londes / & destroyed all crysten people there that he came. And the Saxons dwelled in this londe & began fast to enhabyte it at her owne wyl. And they wolde haue made newe kynge & lordes / but they myght neuer assent to haue only oo kynge for to be to them attendaunt / & therfore they made many kynge in diuerse shyres / as it was in Engistes tyme. The fyrst kyngdome was Kente / & that other Southsexe / and the thyrde Westsexe / the fourth Essex / & the fyfth Northumberlonde / & the sixth Estangle that is to saye Northfolke & Southfolke and the seuenth Mercherpche / & that is the Erlome of Nicholl. Huntynghdon. Herforde. Gloucestre. Wynchestre. Weryke & Derby / and so departed all Englonde in to .vij. partyes. And after that it befell that tho kynge warred of tymes togyder. And euer he h̄ was strongest toke hym that was feblest / and so it was longe tyme that they had no kyng

crowned amonge theym / ne no crysten man was tho amonge them / ne crysten dome nother. But were paynems tyll þe saynt Gregoꝝ was pope of Rome / that had seen childern of the nacyon of Englonde in the cyte of Rome / that were wonder fayre creatures / & had grete wyl & desyre theym to beholde. And axed of the marchauntes whens they were / & of what nacyon. And men tolde hym that they were of Englonde / and Englyshe they were called / but they & all the peple of Englonde were paynems / & byleued not vpon god. ¶ Alas sayd saynt Gregoꝝ / well mowe they be called Englyshe / for they haue the vylages of angels & therfore well ought they to be crystened. And for this cause saynt Gregoꝝ sente there saynt Austyn in to Englonde and .xl. good men with hym that were of good lyf & holy men to preche & teche & to conuerte the Englyshe peple and them to torne to god / & that was in the .vi. yere that saynt Gregoꝝ had be pope of Rome / that is to saye / after thyn carnacōn of our lorde Ihesu Cryst. v. C. lxxv. yeres as the Cronycle telleth.

¶ How saynt Austyn baptysed & conuerted kynge Adelbryght & the bysshoppes that he made his felowes.

**A**S saynt Austyn came fyrste in to Englonde / he arryuen in the yle of Tenet / & so passed forth & came vnto Caunterbury and there sojourned. And kynge Adelbryght of Kente þe was of the lygnage of Engist goodly receyued saynt Austyn & his felowes w moche honour / & them soude all that them neded. And more ouer he yaued them a fayre place / that now is called the abbay of saynt Austyn / in whiche place he lyeth hymself shyned. ¶ This kynge Adelbryght was a good man and with good wyll herde saynt Austyns predycacions / & yaued hym leue to preche thugh

out all his londe before sayd of Kent / to come and conuerte to hym all the peopple that he myght. ¶ It befelle so after thourgh goddes grace / that in lytell tyme the kynge hymself was conuerted to god / & all his peopple of his londe were baptysed. And in the meane whyle the peopple turned them to god. ¶ Saynt Austyn came to Rochestre / and there he preched the worde of god. And þe paynems therfore hym scorned / & caste vpon hym reygh taylles / soo that all his mantell was hanged full of these reygh taylles / And for more despyte / they caste vpon hym the guttes of reyghes and other fylshe. Wherfore the good man saynt Austyn was sore anoyed and greued. And prayed to god that all tho childern of that cyte that sholde be borne afterwarde / that is for to saye / in the cyte of Rochestre / myght haue taylles / and so they hadde. And whan the kynge herde of this vengeaunce that was falle thugh saynt Austyns prayer. He lete make an house in the honour of almyghty god / wherin wymmen sholde be delpued of theyr childern att the bydges ende / In the whiche hous yet wymmen of the cyte ben delpued of childe. ¶ Whan that saynt Gregoꝝ hadde herde telle how the Englyshe peopple were turned to god & conuerted / he sente vnto saynt Austyn his pallyon by a bysshop / that was called paulin and made hym Prymate and Archebysshop of Englonde / And sente worde that he sholde ordeyne & make bysshops in the londe. And anone Austyn had the pallyon of the dygnyte of the Archebysshop. He wade two bysshops of his felowes that came with hym fro Rome / & one was called Mellite & he dwelled at London / & that other was called Justin that helde the dygnyte at Rochestre. And this bysshop Mellite tho wente to preche in to Essex & crystened the kynge of the countree that was called Sicwiche / that was kynge Adels

bryghtes colyn his systers lone. This Justin wente to preche in Southlex and tored moche of the people to god. And saynt Austyn hymselfe preched thorough out Englonde.

How saynt Austyn wente in to Wales there the Brytons were / & how they wolde not be obedyent to the Archebysshop of Caunterbury.

**S**o whan all Englonde was crystened & tored to god / saynt Austyn went in to that londe there that the Brytons were for to kepe them fro Englyshmen / that is to saye in to Walys. And there he fonde monkes & abbayes & viij. bysshops. for the Brytons alwaye destroyed the crysten people & saynt Austyn had conuerted. And he layd to the bysshops & he was a Legate of Rome & Prymate of all Englonde / & that they sholde by all reason to hym be obedyent & they sayd they nolde / but to the Archebysshop of Carlyon they wolde. They wolde neuer for no maner thyng be obedyent to the Englyshmen. for & Englyshmen they sayd ben our aduersaries & our enemyes / & haue dryuen vs out of our countree / & we ben crysten men & euer haue be. And the Englyshmen haue euer be paynems / but now of late & they ben conuerted. Saynt Austyn of them myght haue none answer other wyle / but sayd pertly that they wolde neuer them meke to hym / ne to the pope of Rome. And saynt Austyn tored apen cho to kynge Adelbryght that was kynge of Kente / & tolde hym that his folke wolde not be to no man obedyent / but to & Archebysshop of Carlyon. And whan the kynge herde this / he was sore anoyd & sayd that he wolde them destroye / and sente to Elfride kynge of Northumberlonde that was his frende / that he sholde come to hym with all the power that he myght & & he wolde mete hym at Lepy-

ceire / and fro thens they wolde go in to Walys / & there destroye the Archebysshop of Carlyon / and all tho that had refused saynt Austyn.

How kynge Adelbryght & the kynge Elfride slewe Brecinall & was a kynge of Brytons & helde & countree of Lepyceire

**I**t befelle so & there was a kynge of Brytons & helde the countree of Lepyceire & all the countree about / his name was Brecinall. And this Bryton herde telle & tho two Englysh kynngs wolde mete there at Lepyceire for to go in to Walys. He lette ordeyne all the power & he had for to go fyght w thele two kynnges / but lytell it auayled hym / for his folke he & he had were slayne & hymself fledde / & losse his londes for euer more. And thele two kynnges Adelbryght & Elfride dwelled a whyle at Lepyceire / & departed the londe amonge them / & toke homagge & feautres of the folke of the countree. And after they wente towarde Walys / & tho of Walys herde telle of the scomfytture & Brecinall had at Lepyceire / & were wonder sore adrad of tho two kynngs. & toke & thole amonges them good men and holy of heremytes / monkes & priestes / & of other people grete plente that wente bare foot & wilwarde for to haue mercy of thele two kynnges. But tho kynngs were so sterne & so wycked & they wolde neuer speke to them but them slewe euerychone. Alas for sorowe / for they ne spared them no more than the wylf doth & shepe / but smote of theyr heedes euerychone / & so they were all martred & tho them came / that is to vnderstande .v. l. & .xl. After they went fro thens to Bangor for to slee al thole & they myght there fynde of & Brytons. And whan & Brytons herde that / they assembled & ordeyned all ther power for to fyght with them. Tho was there a baron in Walys that was called Bledrik of Cornewale



that somtyme was lorde of Deuonshyre but the kynge Adelbricht had dyspuct hym out in to Walys / & after there he yaued them batayll. And at that batayll was kynge Adelbricht slayne / & Elfrýde sore wounded & forloke the felde / & the moost partye of his people slayne. And Elfrýde fledde in to Northumberlonde that was his owne londe. ¶ And after the people of Lyncetre shyre made with strength Cade wan that was Breccinal's lone kynge of Lyncetre / & he after reigned nobly & with grete honour.

¶ How Cade wan kynge of Lyncetre & Elfrýde kynge of Northumberlonde were frendes / & of the debate þ after was bytwene Edwyn & Cadwalyn that were bothe theyr sones.

**A**nd after that this batayll was done þ Brytons assembled them & wente thens & came to Lyncetre / & made there Cade wan þ was Breccinal's lone kynge of Lyncetre & of all the countree. And he toke homages & feautees of all the folke of the countree. And after that he assembled a grete hoste / & sayd he wolde go in to Northumberlonde to destroy kynge Elfrýde & slee hym yf he myght. And whan he was come thither / frendes wente so bytwene them that they accorded them in this manere / that Elfrýde sholde holde all the londe fro Northumberlonde to Scotlonde. & Cade wan sholde haue all þ londe a this syde Humber to þ South / & after they were good frendes all theyr lyf / & loued as they had ben brethern. ¶ And this Elfrýde had a sone called Edwyn þ helde all the londe of Northumberlonde after his faders deth as his fader had holde all his lyf tyme. ¶ And Cade wan had an other sone called Cadwalyn þ helde his faders londe as he it helde whyle he was a lyue / and these loued as brethern. And the loue lasted betwixt them but oonly two yere / &

after began debate betwixt them thurgh a synple enuyous colyn of Cadwalyns. called Bryens / so þ they assembled a grete hoste in bothe partyes. And at the last it befell that Cadwalyn was dyscomfyted / & Edwyn hym pursued & dioued hym fro place to place / so at the last he fledde in to Irlond. And the other destroyed & pylled his londe / & cast downe castels & brente his maners / & departed all Cadwalyns londe amonge his frendes. And longe tyme after came Cadwalyn ayen fro Irlonde with a stronge power / & in playne batayll slewe Edwyn & all his frendes / & namely tho that withhelde his londcs by Edwyns yeste.

¶ How kynge Of walde was slayne thourgh kynge Cadwalyn & Peanda / & how Of wy that was saynt Of waldes broð regned after hym & slewe Peanda.

**A**s Edwyn was slayne. Of fris his sone vnder toke the warre ayenst Cadwalyn his eame / so þ this Of fris deyed durynge þ warre. And after þ deth of this Of fris tho regned a gentyl crysten man þ moche loued god almyghty þ had all the londe of Northumberlon by herytage / that was called Of walde / & he was kynge of all þ londe. But for as moche as he was frende to Edwyn / & helde a grete parte of þ londe of Cadwalyn. This same Cadwalyn warred vpon hym & dioued hym to warde Scots londe. And whan Cadwalyn sawe þ he wolde not abyde. Cadwalyn wolde noo lenger hym pursue / but toke some of his folke to Peanda his broð in lawe & prayed hym to pursue after Of walde / tyll þ he were taken & slayne / & Cadwalyn tor ned home ayen. ¶ Whan Of walde herde these tydyngs þ Cadwalyn tor ned home ayen / he wolde no lenger flee / but as bode Peanda & yaued hym batayll / and Peanda was dyscomfyted & fledde / & came ayen to Cadwalyn & sayd / þ he wolde

and called them as they now ben called  
 And they helde the Countees, Barona-  
 ges & lordshypps in manere as the Bry-  
 tons before tyme had compassed them/  
 And amonge other greafe companyes  
 that came from Germayne in to this  
 londe/came y noble quene that was cal-  
 led Serburga with men & wymen with  
 out nombre. And arryued in the couētre  
 of Northumberlonde / & toke the londe  
 from Albion unto Cornewaylle for her  
 & for her folke, for there was none that  
 myght them lette, for all was desolate &  
 voyde of people / but it were a fewe poore  
 Brytons that were lefte on mountayns  
 & woodes butyll that tyme . ¶ And fro  
 that tyme forth loste the Brytons this  
 reame for all theyr dayes. And the Eng-  
 lysh people began to regne / & depars-  
 ted the londe byrwene them . And they  
 made many kynges aboute by dyuerse  
 partyes of the londe as here ben diuyded  
 The fyrst of Westsax / the seconde Mer-  
 cheuriche / the thyrde Estangle / the four-  
 the Kente / the fyfth Southsax. All these  
 regned in this londe after y Cadwaldr  
 was passed out of this londe / & dwelled  
 in lytell Brytayne with kynge Alayne  
 his colyn & true frende . And whan he  
 had longe dwelled there / and had kno-  
 wyng that the mortalyte & pestylence  
 was ouerpalled / and that the londe was  
 vnclemyshed apen w people / he thought  
 to come apen in to his londe. And prayed  
 kynge Alayne his colyn of locour & hel-  
 pe that he myght be restored apen to his  
 owne propre reame and fyrst dygnyte /  
 And kynge Alayne graunted hym his  
 askynge . ¶ Thenne dyde he apparelle  
 hym to take his waye and vyage in to  
 this londe. And prayed god almyghty de-  
 uoutely that he wolde make to hym de-  
 monstracyon yf his prayer to this londe  
 were to hym pleasaunt or none / for apenst  
 the wyll of god almyghty he wolde noo  
 chyng do . ¶ Whan he had thus deuou-  
 tely made his prayer / a voyce fro heuen

to hym sayd. And hadde hym leue that  
 Journey awaye in to Englonde / & that  
 he sholde go to the pope of Rome / for it  
 was not the wyll of almyghty god that  
 the Brytons sholde regne more in Bry-  
 tayne / ne neuer recouer it vnto the tyme  
 of the prophecy that Merlyn sayd befo-  
 re be fulfilled . And that sholde neuer  
 be vnto the tyme were come / that the re-  
 lyques of his body shall be brought fro  
 Rome and translated in to Brytayne /  
 And whan the relykes of other sayntes  
 that haue ben hydde for the persecucion  
 of the paynem folke shall be founde and  
 and opely shewed / thenne shal they reco-  
 uer theyr londe apen / the whiche they ha-  
 ue so longe tyme lost thugh theyr deser-  
 tes . ¶ Whan Cadwaldr had herde this  
 answer / he meruaylled greely and tol-  
 de it to kynge Alayne . ¶ Thenne kynge  
 Alayne dyde lende for the clergye of his  
 londe / and made them to bringe the sto-  
 ryas & prophecyes that Merlyn and Sy-  
 byll had sayd in theyr prophecyes. And  
 whan he knewe that the prophecy that  
 festom had prophecied of the Eggle / and  
 other prophecyes accorded to the dyuine  
 answer that Cadwaldr had herde. he  
 counseylled hym / and ryght faythfully  
 desyred hym to leue his people & his na-  
 uy / and submytte hym to the dyspolicy-  
 on of god / and do all that the aungell  
 had comaunded hym . ¶ Thenne Cad-  
 waldr called Vnor his sone / and Vnor  
 his colyn that was his systers sone / and  
 sayd to them. Takech sayd he my folke  
 & my nauy that is here all redy / and pas-  
 se in to Walys & be ye lordes of Brytons  
 that no dyshonour come to them by in-  
 terrupcyon of the paynem folke for de-  
 faute of lordes . ¶ And then he hymself  
 lefte his reame of Brytayne and his fol-  
 ke for euer more / and toke his waye vnto  
 the pope of Rome Sergius / the whi-  
 che worshypped hym moche / and soo he  
 was confestyd / and toke penaunce for  
 his synnes. And he had not longe dwel-

led there that he ne deyed / the .xij. Kar  
lendis in May / the yere of grace .v.L.  
lxxix.

How kyng Offa was souerayne abo  
ue all the kynges of Englonde / & how  
euery kyng warred vpon other.

**I**T befell so that all the kynges in  
that tyme that were in the londe.  
as they of Westlex. Marchenrych. Estan  
gle. of Kent / & of Southlex / & of other  
costes / eche warred vpon other . And he  
that was moost myghty toke the londe  
of hym that was moost feblest . But  
there was a kyng amonge them that  
was called Offa / & was saynt Oswal  
des brocher . This Offa conquered all  
the kynges of the londe / & reigned aboue  
them all . And so grete was the warre  
in euery countree bytwene kynges / that  
no man myght wyse how the londe wen  
te . But abbotes / pypours / and men of  
Kelygpon wrote the lyues and dedes of  
kynges / and how longe euery of them  
reigned & in what countree / and in what  
manere euery kyng deyed / and of bys  
shops also . And therof made grete bok  
s and lete calle them Cronycles . And the  
good kyng Alured had that boke in his  
warde . And lete brynge it vnto Wynche  
stre / and lete it be fast tacked to a pylar  
that men sholde it not remeue / ne bere  
it thens / so that euery man sholde it see  
and therupon loke . for therein ben the  
lyues of all the kynges that euer were in  
Englonde .

How the kyng of Northumberlonde  
Osbryght forlaye the wyf of Buerne  
Bocarde thugh strength / & after this  
Buerne conquered the kyng with po  
wer and strength .

**A**nd thus it befell in the same ty  
me / that there was a kyng in  
Northumberlonde that was called Os

bryght / and soiourned at Porke . And  
this kyng wente hym vpon a daye in  
to a wood hym for to dysporte . And as  
he came ayen / he wente pryuely in to a  
good mannes house / that was called  
Buerne / and the good man of that pla  
ce was gone that tyme to the see . For  
oftentymes there he was wonte to spy  
theues and robbers / that oftentymes we  
re wonte to come in to the londe / to rob  
be / brenne / and see . The lady that was  
Buernes wyf was a wonder fayre wo  
man . And the kyng came vnto her  
whan that her husbonde was absente /  
And she trusted none harme vnto the  
kyng / and welcomed hym with moche  
honour / and worthely hym serued in all  
thyng . Whan the kyng had eten /  
he toke the lady by the honde and ladde  
her in to a chambie and sayd . he wolde  
speke with her a counseyll . And all the  
folke he made voyde fro the chambie /  
saue oonly the lady and he . But the las  
dy wyll not wherfore he it dyde / tyll that  
he had done all his wyll . And whan he  
had done this dede / he toined agayne to  
Porke . And the lady he lefte there sore  
wepyng for the dede that the kyng to  
her hadde done . And whan her lord  
was come home and sawe her wepe and  
suche sorowe and mornyng make / he  
axed of her what she hadde done / and  
why she made such sorowe . Syre she  
sayd / subtlylly and falsely the kyng Os  
bryght hath do me shame and bylanye  
ayenst my wyll . And tolde hym all the  
truche how the kyng had forlayne her  
with strength / wherfore she sayd she had  
leuer to be deed than to lyue . Fayre lo  
ue be styll sayd he / for ayenst strengthe  
febletelle is lytell worthe / and therefore  
of me shalt thou neuer the lesse be loued  
and namely for thou haste tolde me the  
truche . And yf almyghty god graunt to  
me my lyf I shall the auenge . This  
Buerne was a grete man and a myghty  
lorde / and was well beloued & grete fren

des had . And lete sende for the grettest lordes of the londe / & to them made his complaynt of the despyte that the kynge to hym had done and sayd / he wolde be auenged how so euer it were. And all his frendes couÛeylled hym that he sholde goo vnto Yorke there that the kynge was hym to despye . And Buerne tooke his mayne & came to the kynge. Whan the kynge hym sawe / he called hym curfously Buerne by name . And Buerne hym answered & to hy sayd. Syr I you despye / and yelde vp feautees homages & londes / & as moche as I haue holden of you / and fro this tyme forwarde I wyll neuer of the no thynge holde. And so he departed fro the kynge without more speche or ony abydyng / and toke leue of his frendes & wente in to Denmarke / and playned to the kynge Godern / and tolde hym of the despyte of þ the kynge Osbryght to hym had done of his wyf. and prayed hym of locour & helpe hym for to auenge ¶ Whan kyng Godern of Denmark and the danys had herde the complaynt of this Buerne / & the prayer that he hadde / they were ryght wonder gladde in theyr hertes / for as moche as they myght fynde a cause for to go in to Englonde for to warre vpon Englethe men / and for to auenge Buerne of the despyte that the kynge Osbryght hadde done vnto his wyf. And for as moche as Buerne was spbhe vnto the kynge of Denmark / anone they lete ordeyne a grette hoste of men & lete ordeyne theym shypes / and as moche as theym neded for to haue to that vyage. And whan all the hoste was redy / the kynge made his two brethern chyef capytayns / that were noble knyghtes of body and also bolde. That one was called Hunga / & that other Hubba.

¶ How the Danys toke Yorke / and slew the kynge Osbryght / and loone after slew kynge Elle.

¶ AS all was redy the two bredern toke leue of the kynge Godern. & wente towarde the see for to passe ouer in to Englonde as faste as they myght spede. Now is Buerne so wel comforted & fast hyed hy w the Danys þ they ben arryued in the North couÛtree / & comen thrygh out Holdernes / & destroped all þ couÛtree / & brenned townes / & robbed folke / & slewe all that they myght take tyll that they came vnto Yorke. And whan kynge Osbryght sawe them come / he toke all his people that he had with hym and came out of the cyte & faught with them / but noo foylon he ne had ayenst them / & moche of the people that there was were slayne on bothe partys. And kyng Osbryght hymself there was slayne / & the cyte anone was take & the Danys went in. ¶ And there was also another kynge in Northumberlonde / that Buernes frendes had chose & heldc hym for kynge / a man that was called Elle / for as moche as they wolde not to kyng Osbryght be attendaüt / for the despyte that he had done vnto Buerne theyr cōlyn. ¶ It befell thus that the kyng Elle was gone in to the wood hym for to dysporte / & of venyson some he had taken. And as he late in the wood at meete / to a knyght he sayd. We haue well spedde & moche venyson taken. ¶ And w that worde came in a man & to hym sayd / ye ye so moche of venyson haue wonne / an hondred tymes somoch more ther ayenst we haue ye lost. for all this couÛtree the Danys haue goten / & taken the cyte of Yorke / & ayenst you shall it holde / that neuer ye shall come therin / & for so moche they haue slayne kynge Osbryght / ¶ Whan kynge Elle herde these wordes / he lete assemble all the folke of the couÛtree / & ordeyned all the power that he myght haue . And wolde haue goten the towne of Yorke with strengch . But the Danys came out anone & yaued hym a stronge batayll. And slew the kynge

Elle and the moost parte of the people that he had brought with hym. ¶ And the same place there they were slayne/ shall euer more be called Elle crofte / & that place is a lytell from Yorke. ¶ And tho rested the Danys neuer tyll þ they hadde conquered all Northumberlande. And in that couñtree they made Wardeynes/ and wente further in to the londe/ and toke Notyngham. And there they abode all the wynter & dyde all the sorowe that they myght. ¶ And after whan Somer tyme came they remeued from Notyngham and came in to Nicholl & Lyndeley/ and to Holonde. For no man myght them withstande/ soo moche power & strength they had.

¶ How saynt Edmonde the kynge was martyred.

**A**nd soo ferre hadde the Danys passed from countree to couñtree. and euer more biennynge and robbynge and destroyenge all that they myght tyll they came vnto Tethforde. ¶ And in that countree they founde a Crysten kynge / that moche loued god and his werkes that was called Edmonde. And he was a kynge of Northfolke & Southfolke. ¶ This saynt Edmonde kynge ordeyned as moche folke as he myght / & fought with the Danys/ but he and his folke were dylcomfyted/ and the kynge hymself dryuen vnto the castell of Framelynham. And the Danys hym pursued / and came vnto the same castell/ And whan kynge Edmonde sawe that the castell myght not them withstande/ he came ayenst theym/ with whome the Danys fyrst dyd speke. And anone they ared of hys where kynge Edmonde was ¶ Now forsooth sayd he whan I was in the castell/ there was the kynge/ & whan I wente out of the castell he wente out also/ & whether he shall escape or depe/ at goddes wyll muste it all be. ¶ Whan

saynt Edmonde hadde named god / by that worde wylte they well all þ it was hymself. And anone Hubba & Hungar toke hym & sayd/ that he sholde god forsake & all crysten lawes/ as many other had done hym before. ¶ And saynt Edmonde sayd that he wolde neuer/ but rather he wolde suffre deeth for goddes loue & his lawes to. ¶ Tho toke they kynge Edmonge & bonde hym vnto a tree/ & made theyr archers to shote at hym wth arrowes/ tyll that his body stycked as full of arrowes as an orchen is full of pipeskes. But for all the payne that they hys dyde he wolde neuer god forsake. And in the same payne & torment he deped/ & betoke his soule vnto almyghty god/ ¶ And whan they sawe that he was dede/ they smote of his heed. And of this maner as ye haue herde was saynt Edmonde martyred.

¶ How Hubba & Hungar toke the towne of Redynge.

**S**whan Saynt Edmonde was martyred. Hungar & Hubba yede thens with all the Danys vnto Redynge. And as they wente thitherwarde they brente townes & cytees/ & slewe all crysten peple that wolde not forsake god/ & cast downe churches & came to Redynge & toke the towne & there helde them tyll that the kynge Edelf of Westsex came thither with all his power for to take þ townes. Tho came out the Danys for to geue batayll to Edelf/ & at that batayll was slayne an erle of the Danys that was called Sidrak. Upon the morowe came kynge Eldred and his brother Alured with a stronge power and a grete hoste. And the kynge Edelf came agayne that had foughten the daye before to that bataylle. And the Danys tho came out for to fyght with theym/ And the bataylle was wonder stronge/ for many a man was there slayne/ and

the Danys that daye had the vyctorye / And the kynge Eldred & his broder Alured þ daye were dylcomfyted. ¶ But the fourth daye afterwarde / the Danys & þ Englyſhe fought togyder an other tyme vpon Elkedene / & there was ſlayne a kynge of Denmarke þ was called Rafin / & foure erles of grete power. And þ daye had the Danys ſhame / for they were redyue vnto Engilfelde. ¶ And the .xv. daye after the Danys & the Englyſhe men fought an other tyme at Rafynge & there were the Englyſhmen dylcomfyted / & from thens a dane that was called Roynt wente to redynge w his hoſte & deſtroyed all that he myght take. And kynge Eldred faught with hym / but he was wounded ſore wherfore he deyed / And he reigned but .v. yere / and lyeth at Womborn.

¶ Circa annū dñi .iiij. C. xlix.

**L**eo the fyrſt was Emperour after Marcianus .xviij. yere. In his tyme were the Rogacyon dayes ordeyned afore the Aſcenſyon / of ſaynt Marmet byſhop of Dyenne. ¶ The pope of Rome at that tyme byght Leo a noble clerke / and with hym had many clerkes. ¶ Hellari<sup>9</sup> was pope after Leo .viij. yere. This man ordeyned þ no byſhop ſholde ordeyne his ſucceſſary vt pz. viij. ix. i. ¶ Simplicius was pope after hym / whiche ordeyned that no clerke ſholde take no garment to be clothed in after the ſeculer maner of a laye man / by the reaſon of his offyce or of his benefyce. ¶ Zenos was Emperour after Leo .xv. yere / & this man was an heretyke and cruell as penyſt cryſten men. And in this mannes dayes the bodyes of ſaynt Mathewe the Euangelyſt & ſaynt Barnaby were founde / & with them the goſpell that ſaynt Mathewe wrote. ¶ About this tyme there was a certayne comyn woman bare vij. children at oo byrth / of the whiche

one was made after kynge of Lombardy. ¶ Felix the thyrde was pope after Simplicius thre yere & .viij. monethes. This man ordeyned that reſpyte ſholde be yeuen to a man that was accuſed that he myght auyle hym how he ſholde anſwere. And that the Judges & the accuſers ſholde be luche / & þ they ſholde take all ſuſpeccyon & ſpote. ¶ Gelatius a Romayne was pope after felix .v. yere. This man ordeyned the Canon of the maſſe. with the Preface / ymynes / tractes / oryſons / as ſaynt Ambroſe made them / & that ordres ſholde be yeuen foure tymes in the yere. ¶ Anaſtaſi<sup>9</sup> was Emperour after Zeno .xxviij. yere / & he was a curlyd man & an heretyke / and hatefull to god & man. And he was ſlayne with lyghtnyng. And in his tyme deyed ſaynt Patryk the fyrſt byſhop of Irlonde / in the L. xxiij. yere of his aeye. And his ſelowe was þ abbot of Columba & ſaynt Birygyda whom ſaynt Patryk made a Nonne. And they were burped in one tombe / & at dyuers tymes / & this is the Epitaphi (H) tres in gelido : tumulo cumulantur in vno. Brigida patricius : atqz columba pius) ¶ Anaſtaſi<sup>9</sup> a Romayne was pope after Gelatius two yere and thre monethes. The whiche ordeyned þ no preeſt for wrath ne hate ſholde leue of to ſaye his dyuyne ſeruyce in the churche / excepte the maſſe. And he curlyd them / perour Anaſtaſius / for he was an heretyke / & it is wyten of hym / that afterwarde he tornd for drede to þ oppnyon of the Emperour. And he is called the ſeconde euyll famed pope that is in (Catholico pontificū) And afore hym was Liberius famed in herelye.

¶ Anno dñi .iiij. C. lxxiiij.

**S**machus was pope after hym .xv. yere / & with hym was ordeyned an other pope that was called Lawrencius / and betwixt them was a grete

discernyon. And they bothe put them to the Jugement of Theodoria the kynge & he Jugged that he þ was fyrst ordered & that moost men of the chirche helde w̄ sholde be pope. And Symachus preualid the whiche loued the clergy & poore men & for paschalus the deaken Cardynall helde apenst Symachus with the parte of Laurence to his dethe. Therefore he was put to the paynes of purgatory to kepe the batthes after his deth/as Gregoz sayth in his booke of Dyalogis. This man ordeyned that (Gloria in excelsis) sholde be sayd euery sondaye and feestes of martyrs.

**Nota** That Englonde was longe tyme Crystened afore fraunce.

**C**lodianus the fyrst crysten kynge of fraunce/was this same tyme baptyled of saynt Remigio/& he had a crysten woman to his wyf/& she miued h̄ many tymes to the fapth & sayd. He sholde be fortunable & victorious yf he wolde corne/& so he was & neuer afore. **C**hornulda was pope after Symachus ix. yere. This man was of grete mercy & almelle to poore men/& ornamenti he gaue many to chirches. And he reconlyd the Sikes/the whiche were curlyd for theyr herelye. **C**Justinus was Emperour after Anastatus. And he regned ix. yere & was a very crysten man/& all þeuer theemperour Anastat<sup>us</sup> had done apenst the chirche/he reuoked/& obeyed the pope hornulda/& called apen þ bylshops þ were exyled by his predecessours. **C**Priscianus gramaticus was this tyme. And this yere the whiche is the lxxi. fro the comynge of the Saxons/began the kyngdom of west Saxon/& Cerdico was kynge. **C**Johanes was pope after hornulda thre yere & ix. monethes. And Theodor<sup>us</sup> the kynge of Ytaly an heretyke toke þ pope w̄ other Senatours and sente them to the Emperour Justin

nus/determinynge that & he wolde not lete þ heretykes be in peas he sholde slee all the crysten folke in Ytaly. And after he toke pope John & Simachū patriciū & Boyciū the Senatours & slewe them in pylson. But Boys defended hym by the reason of thauctoryte of the Senatours/& he sente hym to the cyte of Pasp for perpetuell exyle / where he made the boke De solatiōe philosophie. And at the last the coūtree of Mediolanen he caused Boys throte to be cutte / & so he deyed. **C**Felix pope succeeded John four yere. This man comaunded that syke men sholde be aneled for the dethe / but Cryste ordeyned it fyrst. **C**Justinianus was Emperour. xxxviij. yere / this man drewe the lawe of the Romayns out of almooft. ij. M. bokes &. iij. L. verses ouer longe & acco:dyng in to oo volumen of xij. bokes & called it Justinian. He made also the Digestes & deuyded them in to thre bohis. **C**Bonifac<sup>us</sup> the seconde was pope after felix two yere/and lystell of hym is wyrtten. **C**Johanes the seconde was pope after Bonifac<sup>us</sup> / & this man had a grete stryf wich Justinian<sup>us</sup> theemperour / wheder that Cryste was of two natures or one. The pope sayd / he had two natures. One of god/& an other of man. The Emperour sayd/other consente to vs. or thou shalt go in to perpetuell exyle. The pope answered. I desyre to come to Justinianus the moost crysten Emperour/but as me semeth I haue foude Dyoclesyan the persecutour of crysten man. But certaynly I drede not thy malyce/ne I feere not thy thretynge. Thenne the Emperour meked hymself & fell downe to the groude/& asked mercy and absolucyon.

**C**Anno dñi. v. C. xxxiiij.

**A**gastus a confessor was pope after John two yere. this Agastus tomed Justinianus fro the troure

fully of the heretikes. This man ordey-  
ned that processions sholde be done the  
Sondayes/and thenne he dyed at Con-  
stantynople. ¶ Siluerius a martyr was  
pope after this man thre yere. He was  
exyled fro crysten fayth / and slayne by  
the proctour of Theodory. for he wolde  
not restore the bysshop of Athenes an he  
retyke to his benefyce ayen. ¶ Virgili-  
us was pope after hym .xviij. yere. And  
he entred euill in to his benefyce / but he  
gouerned hym well. And he suffred his  
persecucion paciently. And he was exy-  
led fro Rome. And at the last after gre-  
te passyons of Theodory in Constanty-  
nople deyed.

¶ Synodus quarta constantinopolita-  
na contra theodorū & om̄s hereticos alios  
fuit isto tempore. Ista synodus dampna-  
uit heresim theodori. q̄ dixit aliū esse deū  
verū. et aliū xpm̄. Et qd̄ beata virgo nō  
sit dei genitrix. sed hominis tantū.

¶ Pelagius was pope after Virgilius  
foure yere and .x. monethes. This man  
ordeyned that heretikes Scilmatykes &  
Renegates / sholde be punysshed by the  
seculer power. ¶ Johannes the thyrde  
was pope after this man .xiiij. yere. Of  
this man lytell is wyrten / but that he re-  
stored the chircheyerde of the appostles  
Philyp and Jacob. ¶ Justinus the les-  
conde after Justinian was Emperour  
.xi. yere. This man despyled poore men.  
He robbed the Senatours. He was ye-  
uen to all coueytousnesse / so that he ma-  
de chestes of yron / for to kepe his mo-  
nepe in. Thenne anone he felle in here-  
sye / and wered out of his mynde. ¶ And  
thenne was chole Tyberius a good man  
for to gouerne the comyn people. ¶ Ty-  
berius the seconde was Emperour after  
Justinus. viij. yere. This man was a ver-  
tuous man. He gaue Innumerable good  
to poore men. In so moche many tymes  
that his wyf chydde with hym and sayd  
that he cast awaye the goodes of the Em-  
pyre as stoncs. And he answered ayen

and sayd. I trust in god that our chestes  
shall neuer lacke of moncy / and we put  
treasure in to heuen. ¶ And vpon a cer-  
tayne daye whan he wente by his pa-  
lays at Constantynople / he sawe in the  
marbyll pavement a crosse grauen / and  
thought it sholde not be troden vppon /  
and comaunded that stone to be lyfte vp  
for the crosse ought to be put in the her-  
tes of faythfull men / and there he foun-  
de Inestymable treasure of golde. This  
man subdued herles / & deyed blessydly  
¶ Benedictus was pope after Johānes  
foure yere. This man suffred grete per-  
secucion of hungre pestylence & ennyes  
This man brought many a thousande  
quarter whete from Egypte / whan Ro-  
me was besyged by hyngre Albanack /  
and almost lost for vitayll. Wherfore  
they wrote on his graue this Epitaphi.  
¶ Magna tuis monumenta pater bene-  
dicte reliquis: virtutū titul⁹ & decus atqz  
dolor. ¶ Pelagius was Emperour after  
Benedictus. v. yere. In his tyme Rome  
was besyged by the Lombardes / and  
lytell he dyde in his dayes. ¶ Maurici-  
us was Emperour after Tyberius. xxi.  
yere. This man was a very crysten man  
and subdued Perlas and Armenias / &  
in the later ende of his dayes / he dyscor-  
ded with saynt Gregory / and entended  
to haue slayne hym. And thenne appe-  
red a man in Rome clothed in a relygy-  
ous habyte / holdynge a naked swerde  
in his honde / and cryed about the Cyte  
in this wyle. The Emperour shall be  
destroyed. The whiche the Emperour  
herde / and he corrected hymself of his  
trespaas / and prayed to god to withdra-  
we his sentence. To whome our lord  
apperyd in his slepe & sayd. Wyll þ̄ that  
I spare the now or in tyme to come. And  
he was a louer of wretches / and sayd /  
yeue me here my rewarde. Thenne was  
he Emperour after many a daye. And  
whan he sholde haue corrected his kny-  
tes for the extorcyon that they dyde / they



asked hym why that he wolde not paye them theyr wages. And so they fell at vraynunce / & chole foka for to be Empe-  
rour & slewe hys & his thre sones. ¶ This tyme saynt Austyn came in to Englonde & ordeyned two Archebysshops, that is to saye / of London / & of Poike by the comaūdemēt of saynt Gregory. ¶ And remembre hys many tymes is made mencyon of dyuers regyons & couñtreys / that oftyme they haue be toined to the fayth for alway the fayth abode not in them for dyuers causes. So it is of Englonde, fraunce, Persia, Jewery. And in this thyng Rome was pryueleged / for the fayth of Peter neuer fayled. ¶ Focas was Emperour after Maurici his mayster / whom he & other slewe. And by cause he began euill he ended nought. For in his dayes the Romayns faught strongly a peny the perses / & the Romayns were dyscomfyted & lost many a prouynce. And at the last he was ouercome and slayne of Heraclius. for as he dyde vnto other men / so he was done vnto.

¶ Anno dñi .v. C. lxxliij.

**G**regory the fyrst a Romayne & a monke was pope after Pelagus xij. yere. This man was called Gregory magn<sup>9</sup> for many thyngs hys he excelled in. He passed other men in power / in ryches / in vertue / in noblynesse / in wysedome / in holynesse / in fame / & in experyence. And vnder this man the euyl thyngs of curlydnesse passed were lesyd. And many a noble booke he wrote to the Incomparable profyte of all holy chirche. He was one of the pryncypall doctours of all the foure doctours of the chirche. This man forsooth alone w<sup>th</sup> saynt Fabian after saynt Peter / was chosen of god in all the ordres of the popes of Rome. Many thynges he ordeyned in the chirche / as is shewed in his regystre (Deus in adiutoriū) for to be afore the begyn-

nyng of the houres he comaūded to be layd. He renewed & made all the offyces of the chirche in a fayre & a more compendyous manere / the whiche abydeth yet vnto this daye / & is called Gregorianū. And shortly for to conclude on this holy man / mānes tonge can not expresse lyghly the louynges of this man / what in wytynges / & also in example of vertuous dedes. ¶ Saninianus was pope after Gregory one yere & .v. monethes. this man ordeyned hys ryngyng of belles at the houres of the daye / but this man bachtyed saynt Gregory for his lyberalite hys he had to poore men / & thought he see saynt Gregory rebuked hys thyes for it. And the fourth tyme he laye in his bedde / and thought saynt Gregory smote hym on the heed / & he waked & deyed anone. This was the thyrde pope amonge all the popes / the whiche is noted to deye a dredefull dech. ¶ Bonifacius the thyrde was pope after Saninianus. viij. monethes. He ordeyned that none but whyte clothes sholde be put vpon the awter. ¶ Bonifaci<sup>9</sup> the fourth was pope foure yere & .viij. monethes / this man purchaced of hys Emperour Focas hys chirche of saynt Peter of Rome / sholde be hys heed of all the chirche in the worlde. for afore Constantynople was the heed chirche. Also he gate lycence that the chirche called Panton the whiche was dedycate to the honour of Neptunus and other fals goddes / where crysten men many tymes were slayne of deuylls / myght be dedycate to the worshyp of all sayntes in heuen. ¶ This man ordeyned that monkes myght vse the offyce of prechyng / crystenyng / and confellyng. ¶ Heraclius was Emperour after Focas .xij. yere. And in the thyrde yere of his regne. Colozas the kynge of perse brente Jerusalem and other worshypfull places. Zachary the patryarke with other moche people he toke in captuyte. The parte of the holy crosse / the whiche

Elyne leste there he toke with hym in to his coultre. But the .xij. yere of Heraclius. Soldras was slayne of Heraclius & the crosse was brought apen / the people were delpyered. And whan Heraclius wolde haue entred the cyte proudly / the yates of the cyte by power of god thytte therself / & hys Emperour meked hym to god aboute & hys yates opened. And thenne was the feest of the exaltacōn of hys crosse made. ¶ Deus dedit was pope after Bonifaci⁹ thre yere / this was an holy man for on a certayne daye whan he kyssed a lepre / anone hys lepre was hole. ¶ This tyme a Lyteyzin of London thugh the mocyon of Echelbyrght buyded a chirche of saynt Peter in the West parte of London in a place hys was called Thorneye.

¶ Circa annū dñi .vi. C. lliij.

**B**onifacius the fyfthe was pope. After Deus dedit spue yere. The whiche ordeyned that no man sholde be taken out of the chircheyerde. And yf tell elles of hym is wyten.

¶ Nota Machomitum.

**M**achomite the duke of Sarralyns & Turkes was this tyme. And he was hys dysceyuer of all the worlde / a false prophete / the messenger of the deuyl. The forgoer of Antecrist / the fulfyller of heresy / & of all fals men the meruayllest. Of whon the dominacion thus began / ¶ There was a certayne famous clerke at Rome / & coude not spede in his matters that he despyred to haue spede in. Thenne he receded from Rome ouer hys see / & procured many a man to haue gone with hym. Amonge whome was this Machomyte a grete man of wytte. And this clerke promysed hym to make hym duke of the countree yf he wolde be gyded after hym. ¶ There he nourysshed a douue / & put all the corne hys the douue ete in Machomyt⁹ eere / & so this douue

had neuer no meete but in his eere. The forslayd clerke on a daye called the people & meued them to chese suche a pryuce as hys holy ghost wolde shewe to them in lykenesse of douue. And anone this clerke secretly lete flee this douue / hys whiche after his olde custome that he was wonte to / sell anone to hys holder of Machomyte & put his bylle in his eere. And the people sawe this / anone he was chosen duke of that people of Corosame / he sayd that he was the very prophete of god. Thenne he made a boke of his lawe that was called Alkaron. But he dyde it by Informacōn of thre of his maysters. To whome the deuyl mynystred the auctoryte and the connyng. ¶ The fyrst mayster was a Jewe a grete Astro nomyer & a Mygromancer. The seconde was Johā de Anthiochia. The thyrde was Scirgius an heretyke. And these thre made an vnglacypous lawe and an vnhappy. ¶ And what some euer was harde of byleue and noyous to do / they leste that out of the lawe / and they put that thynge in the lawe / the whiche the worldly men were prone and redy to do. That is to saye. Glotony / lechery / rappinge / & suche other. And also this Machomyte ordeyned that a man sholde haue as many wyues as he myght occuppe & fynde / and refuse them twyes or thryes / or foure tymes / and take them agayne / And many meruayllous & fals thynge he made in his lawe / the whiche were to longe to reherce here. But they be playne in his boke of Alkaron. And euer he wrote in his boke / that our lord spake to Machomyte his prophete / sayenge on this wyle / or on this. ¶ Thus by his false meanes he dysceyued the people. And whan his maysters & he had made this that was so delectable. He wrote it in a boke with letters of golde. And also he nourysshed a myghty camell secretly in a pryuce place / and aloonly with the hondes of Machomyte was alwaye fedde /

And there pryuely he tyed this boke of the lawe that he had made about the camels necke/and put this camel forth on a tyme in to the felde afore dape. And this camell Joyed in his lybertee/for he was neuer lose afore.And he wolde suf-  
 fre no man to come & touche hym.And so there was a grete fame of luche a camell/and all the people ranne to see h<sup>y</sup> Amonge whom was this Machomyte. But whan the camell sawe hym h<sup>y</sup> had fedde hym alwaye. Anone he ranne vnto hym.And he had taught this camell afore tyme to falle downe on his knees and lycke his hondes.And so he dyde afore all that people. The people thenne cryed and sayd that there was a very en-  
 sample that he was the true prophete of god. ¶ Thenne they prayed Machomyte to open that holy boke with his holy hondes/the whiche was sente from he-  
 uen euermore to be keppe. In the whiche boke is shewed how the people shal wor-  
 shyp god. ¶ And Machomyte sayd this boke was wyrtten with aungels honde/  
 So by these fals meanes / he turned to his lawe all the londe of Perse / and all the Best Imperyall agaynst Heradium the Emperour. And he occupped vnto the ende of Alexandrie and Egypte. Li-  
 bia. Arabia and Siria. Thenne after he enfected all Affrycam. And but the grace of god withstode hym/he had en-  
 fectet all Spayne and fraunce. And many other thynges he dyde/whiche we re to moche to wyrtte in this boke.

**C**onstantyne the thyrde/the sonne of Heracly was Emperour. xxvii. yere. This Constantyne was a grete ty-  
 raunt & a curlyd man/and an heretyke fals/subtyll/and odypous to crysten men. Ne he gaaf no place to pope Mertyne/  
 And he reyled a grete hoste agaynst the Lombardes. And there he lost the felde/and fledde vnto Rome. And honourably was recyued of the pope Vitellianus/ &

other of the cyte. And he rewarded not them lyke after theyr merytes as a pyrite holde haue done. But vled forth ty-  
 rannye and herelye. Wherfor at the last he was slayne of his owne knyghtes in a bath/the whiche wolde no lenger suf-  
 fre his tyrannye. And soo he wretchedly lyued/and deped unhappely. ¶ Martinus the fyrst was pope after Theodor. vi. yere. This Martinus was a very holy man/ & strongly stroue for the fayth of god. And whan he lange masse on a certayne dape at the awter/there pursed  
 wed hym to slee hym a man that was called Spatarius of Olymphe. And whan he wolde haue smyten hym / he was blynde sodaynly. This same man called a Synodi in the cyte of Rome/and dampned Syrum. Alexandriū Ser-  
 gium. Pyrum/and Paulum heretykes. Wherfore Constantyne the Emperour exyled hym/and he deped a laynt. ¶ Eu-  
 geni<sup>9</sup> a Romayne was pope after Mar-  
 tyne almost thre yere/and was an holy man/but of hym lytell actes is wyrtten. ¶ Vitellianus was pope after hym. xiiij. yere. This man made the longe that the Romayns vse/and accorded it also with the organys. And he also had the grace of the Emperour/the whiche was wrothe with his predecessours. Neuerthe-  
 lesse afterwarde he stode not in his con-  
 corde. Ne hitherto I coude not fynde/that euer the chirche of Rome had fully after the deeth of Constantyne y<sup>e</sup> mygh-  
 ty/the lordshyp of the cyte and of other the whiche he yaued to the chirche.

¶ Anno dñi .vi. C. xliiij.

**A** Decodatus a Romayne was pope after Vitellianus foure yere/and in his dayes was translated the body of saynt Benedictus/with the body of Saynt Scolastica his syster fro the hylle of Cassin vnto the monasterye of floricens nyghe Aurelian. ¶ Constans

tyne the fourthe was Emperour after his fader Constantyne the curlyd man This Constantyne was a good man & hated heretykes ouer all thynge. The chirche he reueyred/and grace he recon/lyled agayne to the chirche of Rome/& he with the pope gadred togyder the. vi. generall Synodus / in the whiche was graunted to preestes of Grece/for to vse theyr leyffull wpues/& to the preestes of the West for cause of grete hete/but not to those of the West party by no meanes for they amytted chastyte in the tyme of saynt Gregory. And euery man may auertyle & pondre how moche the goodnes of a prynce is worthe / to the quyete state of the chirche/& to the promocyon of the fayth/and also the contrary/how moche the malyce of a prynce hurteth that thynge. These two Constantyns the fader & the sone shewed openly. for in the faders dayes the chirche neuer had rest/and in the sones tyme it was quyet. Yet neuertheles our lorde suffred the Sarrasyns and the Bulgars to entre in this Emperours londe/that he them myght not withstande/but that he made his peas with them/& payed to them yerely a truage/so myghtely preuaylled that curlyd secte of Machomyte/& after he deyed blesydly. **Nota.**

That there were. vi. generall Synodus / and moost pryncypall of the whiche the auctoryte is equall to the gospels for the truche of the gospels is declared by them apenst the. vi. pryncypall heresyces the whiche strongely trowbled the chirche for the subtyltee of those heretykes to dylcepye symple men. This tyme deyed saynt Ledde of Lytchefeld/& hys thyrde yere of his byshopryche. Demus a Romayne was pope after Adeodatus thre yere. Of this man lytell is wyten. Bonifacius was pope after hym/& lytell of hym is wyten/but that he lyued lyke a priest. Agatho was pope after hym/and he was a very ho/

ly man. for on a daye whan he kyssed a lepre/the lepre anone was made hole/ **¶** *Ille et de consensu principis iussit celebrari sextū sinodū apud constantinopolī C. lxxx. epōr. in qua asseret duas naturas et duas voluntates esse in xpo.*

Leo the seconde was pope after Agatho thre yere/this Leo was an holy man and suffycientely taugh in latyn & greke/this man ordeyned that the pay sholde be peuen after Agnus dei/and deyed a blesyd man. **¶** Benedictus the seconde was pope after Leo almost thre yere This man about all thynge was vertuous/& his name accorded with his dedes. And in his tyme was a grete pestylence. **¶** Justinian<sup>9</sup> the seconde was Emperour this tyme/& he was a very good man/a prudent & a large/and he encreased the Emppre of Rome myghtly/but but he charged the offyce of the chirche ouer moche. Many lawes he made/and after was not good/he intended to haue lette hys decrees of the. vi. Synodus/wherfore the. x. yere of his Emppre he was taken of Leo the prynce of patricio and Tyberio / & they cutte of his nose & his tonge & exyled hym to Trylona. There was then turbacyon in hys chirche for stryue & heretykes. **¶** And knowe all men whan varyaunce falleth betwixt grete lordes/thenne errours ben mulceplyed/for there is no man corrected them/therfore that is oftentyme prued in the chirche. Thenne after felle a varyaunce betwixt Leo and Tyberio. And Tyberio preuaylled/& he exyled Leo / & cutte of his nose the thyrde yere of his regne / & regned for hym. Justinianus fledde to the Sarrasyns & the Bulgars/the whiche restored hym apen to his Emppre/& slewe Leo and Tyberio / the whiche fauoured heretykes. Thenne this same Justinianus refourmed hymself to the chirche of god/& had grete repentaunce But he venged hym to cruelly on his aduersaryes/so that he wolde haue slay

ne theyr Innocent childern . Therefore he was slayne with his sone / of Phylpp whom he exyled.

¶ Anno dñi .vi. C. lxxxiij.

**I**ohānes the fyfth was pope after Benedict<sup>o</sup> oo yere / he was a good man / but he decessid anone. ¶ Zeno was pope after hym. And he was a very holy man / for he wolde not medle with seculer maters. And in beaute he was an angell / quyet in vertues / & meke in soule / and very demure in langage of his relygyous lyf / this man was cholen at the last with one accorde of the chirche and laye men. But there was a grete distynccion / for the Clergy entended to haue chole Perys the Archebpyshop . And the hoste of alpe men wolde haue had Theodorū a preest. But at the last the holy ghost tourned the wyll of all this people in to this holy man. ¶ Sergius was pope .ix. yere. This man was vertuouse & comendable in his lyf . And in his electyon a grete dyscorde was / for one partye of the clergye chole Theodorū / and an other partye Palchalem. But as our lord wolde at the last they tourned all to this man. This man translated the body of saynt Leo. he also founde a grete parte of þe holy crosse by myracle. And he crystened Ladwaldre the laste kynge of Brytayne. he comaūded (Anus dei) to be sayd or longe thryes at masse. And decessyd blessydly. ¶ Nota.

¶ Saynt Beda the worlhyppfull preest was this tyme a grete man of fame in Englonde / the whiche was take the .viij. yere of his aege to Benedict the abbot Gyrwpen monastery to be taught. And thenne after to Colfrido the abbot after the dech of Benedict. And at the .xix. yere of his aege he was made Deaken of the bpyshop of Yorke . And at .xxx. yere he was made preest / in the whiche yere he began to wyte. So he contynued all

the tyme of his lyf in that monastery / in geuyng his labours to wytyng & scrypiture to be expowned. He made .lxxviij. bookes / the whiche he nombreth in the ende of his Englyshe boke. This man was euer in labour other in prayer or in synngynge dayly in the chirche / or to lerne or teche or wyte . for whiche thyng men may Juge by reason that he was neuer at Rome / all though some saye he went to Rome that he myght see that his bookes accorded with the doctryne of the holy chirche. But it was certayne that he was blynde / and wente to preche / & had a seruaunte that was not good / & made hym to preche to a myghty multytude of stonnes and sayd / that they were men. And whan all his sermon was done / the stonnes answered and sayd. Amen. But that he wente to Rome thryes / and soude wyten thre arres / thre effes / and expowned them / it was neuer soude in no boke of auctoryte. There was after the talkynge of the people luche a wytyng on the yates of Rome (R R R . f f f) And luche an expolicion (Regna Rome Ruent . ferro flama fame) But it is certayne that Beda was dellyred to come to Rome by the wytyng of Sergius the pope to Colfrido his abbot. And this Beda translated þe gospell of saynt Johan in to Englyshe tonge / & dyssebled blessydly. The same sayth that now he lyeth at Deuelyn with saynt Luthberte / & there is buryed with hym the knowlege of þe dedes of Englonde almost to the conquest . ¶ Leo the seconde was Emperour / and lytell of hym is wyten. ¶ Liberius was Emperour after hym .viij. yere / he rose apenst Leo & entred his kynngdom / and kepte hym in pylon as longe as he reigned. In his tyme Justinianus the seconde whiche in olde tyme was exyled to Crysonam openly sayd / he wolde recouer his Emppre agayue. Wherfore the people of that countree / for the loue of Liberius / were about to flee

that Justinianus. Wherfore he fledde to the prynce of Thurcoz & wedded his syster. And thorough helpe of his brother & the Bulgars he recovered his Emppre & slewe Liberius and Leo the usurper of his reame. And as many tymes almost as he wyped ony droppe from his nose/the whiche they kytted of/so many tymes he made one of his enemyes to be slayne. ¶ Leo the thyrde was pope after Sergius two yere. This man was made pope by the power of the Romayns & was not put in the nombre of popes/for he euill entred / but he dyde none euill. ¶ Johannes the. vi. was pope after hym a Greke. And he was a martyr/ but of whom and wherfore the cause is not founde in hystories. It is sayd/that it was of the dukes of Lombardy / for they were enemyes to the chyrche myghtly. ¶ Johanes the. vii. a Romayne was pope after hym thre yere/ but no chyng of hym is wyrtten. ¶ Justinianus was Emperour ayen with his sone Tyberius. vi. yeres. And this was he the whiche was reued the Emppre afore by Leo/ And whan this man was restored ayen he toke hym to the ryght fayth/ & worshypped the pope Constantyne. And certaynly he destroyed Treason & place where he was exyled vnto/ and all that dwelled in it/ except & children he slewe them. And he came ayen an other tyme to haue slayne the Innocentes. And the men of that countree made them a capytayne/ a certayne man that was called Philyp an outlawe/ the whiche anone wente to hym in batayll/ and slewe hym for his outrageous cruelnesse ayenst thole children. ¶ Sylinnius was pope twenty dayes/ and thenne was grete stryfe/ and he decessyd/ but lytell of hym is wyrtten. ¶ Constantyne was pope after hym. vii. yere. This man was a very meke man and so blessed/ that of all men he was beloued. He wente ouer the see to Justinianus the Emperour / and was recey-

ued with grete honour/ and deyed a blessed man. ¶ Philyp the seconde was Emperour one yere/ the whiche fledde in to Scicilia for the hoste of the Romayns/ And he was an heretyke/ and commaunded all pyctures of sayntes for to be destroyed. Wherfore the Romayns cast awaye his coyne/ ne wolde not receyue no moneye that his name or ymage were wyrtten vpon. ¶ Anastasius the seconde after he had slayne Philyp was Emperour thre yere. This man was a crysten man/ and he lyued well. But by cause he put out Philyp's eyen/ and slewe hym afterwarde. And therfore Theodolius faugh ayenst hym and ouercame hym/ & thenne he was made a preest / and lyued so quyetly.

¶ Anno dñi .vij. C. xliij.

¶ Gregorius the seconde was pope after Constantyne. xvij. yere/ this Gregorius was a chaste man & a noble man in scrypture. And about this tyme the popes began to deale more temporally with the Emperours than they were wonte for theyr fallnesse & theyr heresye. & also for to remeue the emppre froo people to an other as & tyme requyred / this man curtyd Leo the Emperour by cause he brente the ymages of sayntes. This same Leo commaunded Gregorius the pope that he sholde brenne chyrches & destroye them. And he sette noo chyng of his sayenge/ but commaunded the coutrairy manly. And soo it is openly shewed/ that the destruccyon of the Emppre of Rome was the cause of heresye. for certaynly saythfull people with the prelates with one wyll / drew to the pope/ and constrayned the Emperours for to leue theyr tyrannye and theyr heresye/ ¶ And this tyme in the east parte of the worlde strongly saylled the very fayth/ for & curtyd lawe of & fals Machomyte ¶ Theodolius was Emperour and reg-

ned but one yere. And he was a very cry-  
sten man / and euen as he dyde so was  
he done vnto. for Leo depolpd hym and  
made hym a preest. ¶ Leo the thyrde w  
Constantyne his lone was Emperour  
xxv. yere / this Leo whan he was mygh-  
ty he depolpd Theodosius and regned  
for hym / & was delceyued by a certayne  
Apostata / the whiche hadde hym that  
he sholde take & brenne all the ymages  
of sayntes. Wherfore he was punysshed  
bothe in batayll & in pestylence / & with  
other Infortunes. And by cause he was  
accurlpd of Gregorius / and bode therein  
thre dayes / therfore the pope with the co-  
myn people toke fro hym the best parte  
of his Emppre / comaundyng that noo  
man sholde obeye hym ne locour hym /  
by cause he lyued lyke an heretyke. ¶ Ho-  
ly men layd apenst hym. And many by  
hym were martred & exyled. And at the  
last in his myshyleue he deyed wretched-  
ly. And in this mannes dayes / but that  
Karolus Marcellus holpe the Crysten  
fayth / & faught manly apenst the Sar-  
rasyns / and draue them backwarde in  
to Spayne the whiche they had subdued  
els they had entred in to fraunce. And  
Karolus slewe thre hondred thousande  
Sarrasyns & moo. And of his peple we-  
re slayne but .xv. thousande. ¶ Nota  
¶ This man for the contynuall batay-  
le tooke to laye men the tresoure of the  
chirche. Wherfore saynt Eucharis the  
bysshop of Aurelian / as he was in his  
prayers / sawe that same Karolus in sou-  
le & body payned in helle. And the aun-  
gell that shewed the bysshop this man  
sayd . That that was the Jugement of  
all those that toke awaye the goodes of  
the chirche / or of poore men. And to for-  
cifye that that the bysshop sayd & to pro-  
ue it / the abbot of saynt Denys wente  
to the sepulcre there that Karolus was  
buried / & opened the cheste that he laye  
in. And there they see a grete dragon go  
out / but he had no body. ¶ Gregorius

the thyrde a Romayne was pope after  
Gregorius the seconde. The whiche con-  
formed the worshyppes of the ymages  
of sayntes / with the counseyll almost  
of a thousande bysshops. And he curlpd  
horrybly all the despylers of these yma-  
ges. As the Emperour & other that we-  
re of that condycyon . ¶ Constantynus  
the fyfth was Emperour after his fa-  
der Leo . xxxv. yere he was a curlpd man  
and a pure heretyke / so that he dyde sa-  
cretyce to the deuylls. He pursuwed the  
chirche . And no thynge that is good of  
hym is wyten. And so by the suffraunce  
of god the chirche was trowbled longe  
tyme. About this tyme were many mer-  
uaylles / & there were meruayllous erthe  
quakys . And certayne cytees that were  
sette on mountayns / they were remeued  
and borne awaye with the hylles in to  
the felde . vi. myles thens as they stode /  
and the cytees were not broken ne hurte  
In the londe of Melopotanian the erthe  
was broken by the space of two myle /  
And also there was a mule that spake  
in a mannes voyce. Althes fell fro heuen  
And in the see of Poncico there was ple  
for grete froste that was . xxx. cubytes of  
thycknesse. And sterres felle fro heuen so  
myghtely that men trowed that the en-  
de of the worlde had be comen. All these  
betokened meruayllous thynnges for to  
come.

¶ Anno dñi . vij. C. xliij.

**Z**acharias was pope after Grego-  
rius . x. yere. This Zacharis was  
a noble man & arayed with all vertue /  
With all men he was loued for his me-  
kenesse . And he depolpd the kyng of  
fraunce Hydery / and put in his place  
Puppinus / for he was more profytable.  
¶ Here may ye see what power the chir-  
che had that tyme / the whiche transla-  
ted that famous kyngdome fro the very  
heyres / to the kyngdome of Pippinus /

for a leysfull cause (Et habet. xv. q. v. a. lius) ¶ Stephanus the seconde a Romayne was pope after Zacharias. v. yere. This man in all thyng was profytable vnto the chirche/as well in worde as in doctryne. And he gouerned the spirytualtee and the temporaltee nobly. He was the louer and the defender of poore men. This man anoynted Pippin<sup>9</sup> the kynge of fraunce / & sente hym ayenst the Lombardes / that he sholde compell them to restore the chirche of suche goodes as they had with holde from theym longe tyme vnyghtwysly the whiche he dyde. He also translated the Emppre of the Grekes to the frenshmen. ¶ Paulus a Romayne was pope after hym. x. yere. This was a very holy man / for he dyde grete almesse to faderlesse children & prysoners / wydowes / and other poore men / that he myghte be a folower of saynt Poule. ¶ Constantyne a Romayne the seconde was pope after poule two yere. This Constantyne was a lay man and sodeynly was made a preest / as a tyraunt / and toke on hym the dygnyttee of the pope. And with a grete sclaudre to the chirche was pope a lytell tyme. But the faythfull men put hym out / and put out his eyen. And this was the fyfth In famed pope / amonge so many herde tofore. So the holy ghost that holy apolles sete kepte in all honour & holynesse ¶ Insynye martyrs were made this tyme by Constantyne the Emperour / for he was suche an heretyke. And men trowe that there was neuer Emperour / ne no pagon that slewe so many martyrs. And in his tyme the chirche was trowbled full sore / & very precyously bought the worthypynge of the ymages of the holy sayntes / for the grete shedynge of blood of martyrs. And certaynly that curlyd Emperour was not unpunysched. for whan that he deped / he cryed with an horryble voyce and sayd . I am taken to a fyre / that is vnable for to be

destroyed. And so he yelded vpon the ghost to euerlastynge payne. ¶ The Emppre of Rome was dyuyded about this tyme for Stephanus the pope translated Italy and other vnto Karolus a yonge man. And Constantyne helde the londe of Grece with other londes ouer the see with a grete labour and many rebellynge. ¶ This tyme Karolus magnus was a noble yonge man . And he began for to regne vpon fraunce / and was the sonne of Pippinus / and his moder was called Berta . ¶ Stephanus the thyrde was pope after Paulus thre yere . And he amended all the errours of Constantyne. And he degraded all thole the whiche Constantyne ordeyned in a generall Synodus.

¶ Anno dñi . vij . C . lxxiiij .

**A**drianus a Romayne was pope after Stephanus. xxiiij. yere. This man was myghtely worthyped of the people / no man greter afore hym in honour / ryches and buyldynge. This man sette two solempne Synodis. The fyrste of thre hondred and fyfty faders The seconde in Rome with an hondred and fyfty faders / beyng present Charles the kynge of fraunce / to whome it was graunted the lyberte of eleccon of the popes / and to ordeyne the appostles sete . ¶ Leo the fourthe regned Emperour with the Grekes fyue yere . This Leo was a curlyd man / but not loo mosche as his fader was. And he was a coneytous man / and he toke awaye a certayne crowne of a chirche and put it vpon his heed . And anone he was corrupted with an axes and sore dyslealed. And he had a curled wyf / the whiche regned after hym with her sonne. ¶ Constantyne was Emperour after Leo / & he was a meke man / and put awaye his moder fro the kyngdom / that she myght take hede vnto her wyemens werke . But she



with a fayned rancour put out his eyen  
afterwarde/and his childern also / and  
regned agayne thre yere. And at the last  
she was aboute for to haue be wedded.  
And whan the Grekes perceyued that  
she wolde be wedded to grete Karolus/  
they toke her and shyfte her by in a mo  
nastery/and toke Nychoferū to be theyr  
Emperour. ¶ The .v. vniuersall study  
the whiche in olde tyme was translated  
from Athens vnto Rome/aboute this  
tyme was translated to Parys/by Ka  
rolus kynge of fraunce. ¶ Nychoferus  
was Emperour after Constantyne. he  
was a very nygon / and was exalted to  
his Emppre by the Grekes. But he pro  
fytted not / for in his tyme all the West  
Imperyall was brought to nought. for  
the Romayns put them vnder Karolus  
magnus. ¶ Ierusalem about this ty  
me was recouered by Karolus/with all  
the holy londe. And the secte of the Sar  
calsyns was destruyed strongely. for the  
destruccyon of wretches came thenne.  
¶ Michaell was Emperour two yere/  
And he was a very crysten man/and he  
was well beloued/and also he was cons  
nyng in all scyences. And tho that Ny  
choferus hadde hurte and dystressyd of  
theyr goodes by his coueytousnesse/this  
Michaell restored them and made them  
ryche ayen. ¶ Nota.

¶ Karolus magnus the fyrst saynt was  
Emperour after Michaell. And he was  
crowned Emperour by Leo the pope/  
from the whiche tyme the Emppre was  
translated from the Grekes to fraun  
ce and Germaine. And for the transla  
cyon of that Emppre / the Grekes al  
waye were defectyue vnto the Romayns  
And the Grekes stroue euer more with  
them. But it was more with venemous  
wordes than with strengthe/and more  
with craftte than with batayll. for they  
hadde so grete enuye at the Romayns/  
that they wolde not obeye the chirche of  
Rome. for certaynly whan that the po

pes wolde wyfte vnto them/for to obeye  
the chirche of Rome/they wrote agayne  
ond sayd. Ye haue taken from our kyn  
rede the Emppre/and therfore we woll  
not obeye / and we vs take from you/  
And for this noble Emperour Karolus  
it is to be vnderstande / this man whan  
he was a yonge man/he was anoynted  
kynge of fraunce by Stephanus the po  
pe. In the yere of our lorde Ihesu Cryste  
.viij. hondred .liij. whan his fader Pip  
pinus lyued. Vnder whome/and with  
whome he regned. xv. yere vnto the deyth  
of his fader. ¶ Thenne after his fader  
vnder the yere of our lorde god. viij. hon  
dred. lxxviii. this Karolus with his broder  
Karolomannus regned two yere. And  
thenne his brother dealead in the secon  
de yere. And this Karolus there helde al  
the hoole kyngdom. xiiij. yere. to the yere  
of our lorde. viij. hondred. lxxiiij. In the  
whiche yere he wente to Rome / that he  
myght be crowned Emperour of the po  
pe Adrianus. And he regned Emperour  
xvi. yere/ to the yere of our lorde. viij. C.  
whan pope Leo confermed hym ayen  
the Emperour. And after that he was  
Emperour. xiiij. yere. And he dyslealyd  
in the yere of his aerge. lxxij. The whiche  
was the yere of our lorde. viij. C. and  
xiiij. ¶ If ye wyll see more of Karolus/  
go to the boke of Turpinus and Libra  
minus his mayster / for they wrote his  
noble actes. ¶ Leo the fourth was pope  
after Adrianus. xx. yere/this man whan  
he wente on a certayne daye with the Le  
tany to saynt Peters chirche on Saynt  
Markes daye / he was taken with curs  
lyd people/and bothe his eyen put out/  
and his tonge cutte of. But our lorde  
merueylously restored hy ayen his syghe  
and his speche/so that he spake without  
tonge/and lawe by myracle. Afterwar  
de he wente with Karolus in to fraun  
ce. And he came with hym vnto Rome/  
and venged the pope on his enemye. And  
thenne he crowned Karolus. And he

late afore crowned / comfermed hym a /  
 gayne. ¶ Ludouicus the meke the fyrste  
 begoten lone of Karolus was Empe-  
 rour after his fader. xxvi. yere / in whose  
 tyme was put awaye that clerkes sholde  
 vse no gyrdels with precyous stones / ne  
 straunge arayment. This Ludouicus of  
 his fyrst wyf gate two childern / & bothe  
 had an euyll ende. In all thyng that  
 wente ayenst hym he was pacyent / and  
 in the last ende he euer ouercame. for a-  
 yenst god he abode deuoucte. And his chil-  
 dern folowed hym in condycyons / & he  
 dysllesyd a blessyd man. ¶ Stephanus  
 the fourth was pope after Leo thre yere  
 This Stephanus redemed many cap-  
 tyue men / and crowned Ludouicus the  
 Emperour. And thenne he dysllesyd &  
 was byrped at Rome. ¶ Palchall was  
 pope after Stephanus. This Palchall  
 gaue a greate dyllygence to relyques of  
 Sayntes. And he toke vp Innumerable  
 bodyes of sayntes / & burped them wor-  
 shyppfully / as in the bylpon of saynt Le-  
 cile he was comaunded. ¶ Eugeni-  
 us the fourth was pope after Palchall / and  
 he was a verry holy man. And all those  
 thynges that were for cryste he toke he-  
 de to. This man was crowned a mar-  
 tyr / & by the laye men of Rome he was  
 burped in saynt Peters churcheyerde.

¶ Circa annū dñi .viij. C. xliij.

**U**alentinus was pope after Eu-  
 geni-  
 us .xl. dayes / and lytell of  
 hym is wyrtell. ¶ Gregorius the fourth  
 was pope after h̄. xij. yere / this Grego-  
 rius lawe many heuy tymes / for the pla-  
 ges amonge the comyn people. And at  
 this mannes petcyon. Ludouicus the  
 Emperour / and Marchio the prynce of  
 Lombardy exyled all the Sarralyns fro  
 Italy. And at the last he dysllesed after  
 Innumerable good dedes & werkes that  
 he had done at saynt Peters. ¶ Lothe-  
 rius the fyrste lone of Ludouicus was

Emperour. xv. yere in Italy & Rome &  
 the partyes of Germaine nexte to the  
 hylles of Alpy. This Lotharius rose a-  
 yenst his broder Ludouicus & Karolus /  
 for the kyngdome of Duchelonde / the  
 whiche some tyme Pippinus theyr brod-  
 helde. And they fought at a place called  
 fontanecū / where Lotharius was dyscom-  
 fyted. And there was suche slaughter  
 made on both the sydes / that they had  
 no men for to relyst theyr aduersaryes.  
 This vnderstode a fals crysten man / &  
 sente vnto Soudan of the Sarralyns h̄  
 he sholde come anone. And he toke Ro-  
 me / and saynt Peters church was ma-  
 de a stable for theyr horses. But Ludou-  
 cus with the frenshmen & Lombardes  
 all that Infenyte nombre destroyed / and  
 that with grete shedynge of crysten blo-  
 de. ¶ Sergius the seconde was pope af-  
 ter Gregorius two yere. This man was  
 called fyrst (os porc) in Englysh / hog-  
 gelmouth. Wherfore that man & all the  
 popes names are chaunged whan they  
 are cholen. And that for thre causes /  
 The fyrst for Cryste chaunged the na-  
 mes of those men the whiche he made  
 popes. The seconde / for as moche as  
 they are chaunged in the name / sholde  
 they be chaunged in perfeccyon of lyfe /  
 The thyrde lest he whiche is cholen to  
 an exceedynge degree sholde be hurte in  
 name. ¶ Leo was pope after Sergius  
 viij. yere. This Leo was an holy man /  
 & also he was in prudence as sharpe as  
 a serpente / and in his dedes as meke as  
 a doune. And he was brouhht forth ver-  
 tuously in a monastery. And whan that  
 he was made pope / he laboured to repey-  
 re his churches agayne / the whiche false  
 sarralyns one after an other had destroy-  
 ed. This man was a myghty wyrtter &  
 a grete precher / & myghtely laboured in  
 watche & prayer / and so deyed / and was  
 burped & lyeth at saynt Peters. ¶ Bene-  
 dictus a Romaine was pope after Leo  
 two yere. This Benedictus had the na-

me of the chynge. For in all chynge he was blessed. This man ordeyned that clerkes sholde go ordynatly & honestly.

Ludonicus the sone of Lotharius was Emperour this tyme and anoynted of Sergius the pope & a whyle reigned w<sup>th</sup> his fader and after reigned .xxi. yere alone. This man hadde a sone that hyght Karolus in to whome the deuyll entred & vexed hym afore his fader. And thene he conspyred his faders dech. And in his tyme many a meruaylle fell.

Nota Johannes Anglicus of the nacyon of Magynutin about this tyme was pope & he was a woman arayed in mannes garmentes. But she profyted so in holy scrypture that there was foude none lyke her. Thenne she was cholen pope but afterwarde she was with childe. And whan she sholde haue gone openly in procellon she trauelled & deceasyd. And this is the sixt pope / the whiche to this tyme had the name of holynesse & were vncypous. And this persone as other popes were was punished of god / ne she was not nombred in the boke of popes.

Nicholaus a Romayne was pope after this woman .ix. yere. This Nicholas was of grete holynes that there was no man comparable to hym after Gregory the pope. And whan he was made pope. Ludonicus the Emperour was present. And after he deceasyd a very good man & was buryed in saynt Peters chircheyerde. Adrianus a Romayne was pope after Nicholas. This Adrianus cursyd Lotharius broder to the emperour the kynge of Lotharynge for his aduoutry. But whan he came to Rome to excuse hym of his aduoutry / he layd he was cursyd wrongfully. And he brought w<sup>th</sup> hym all the noble men of his regyon & all were deed within one yere and the kynge deyed in the waye whan he came to the cyte of Placenciam.

Anno dñi .viij. C. lxxiij.

Of kynge Alured & how the Danys in his tyme prayed hym of mercy that they myght go out of the londe.



After the dech of this Eldred regned his broder Alured that Dolfin was called. Tho wente the Danys & assembled them & wente forth to seke Alured that tho was kynge newe made of Southsex & there they founde hym att Wylton with a lytell people. And neuerthelesse he faught w<sup>th</sup> them but at the last he fledde thens from the felde & wente in to Westsex & ordeyned so moche people of his owne reame & also of other tyll he had a stronge hoste so that the Danys had no power apenst hym to withstande. And he came to London with his hoste & there were the Danys soiourned. And there he wolde haue foughten w<sup>th</sup> them. But the Danys durste not w<sup>th</sup> hym fyght / but prayed hym of peas & he they myght go ayen in to theyr owne countree & neuer to come in to Englonde ayen that is to saye ony harme for to do. And vpon this couenaunt they sholde gyue hym to pledge good hostages & suche as the Englysh men wolde axe.

How Hubba & Hungat were slayne at Chyppenham and how the Danys brought theyr kynge to our kynge.

**A**nd the same daye that the Danys departed from London/soo fast they rode both nyght & daye / & neuer toke rest of goynge tyll þ they came vnto Excestre / & toke tho the towne / & there heide them. ¶ Whan kyng Alured herde these tydynge / anone he lete take the hostages / & wente from thens vnto Excestre w all the power that he had / And whan the Danys herde telle of his comynge / they wente from thens vnto Westlex / & came vnto Chyppenham / & there they dyde moche harme in the cou tree / they robbed folke / & brought them in pylson. The kyng Alured them pursewed / & came vpon them ryght soone & fyrseley them assayed. And there were slayne both Hubba & Hungar his brod / and Buerne Bocarde. And in this batayll were moche folke slayne in that o ne parte & in that other . But the gree of that felde bode with the Danys / for as moche as the kyng came with fewe folke. ¶ The kyng hasted hym as mo che as he myght for to go agayne. And whan the Danys foude Hubbacs body lyeng deed they burped it / & layd vpon it a grete logge / & lete calle it Hubeflowe / and soo it is called vnto this daye. And that place is in Deuenthyre. The Barons of Somerset. Wylshyre and Dor set herde tell how that theyr kyng was dyscomfyted / & ordeyned all the power that they myght haue / and came to the kyng there he was / and thanked god that they hym yet founde alyue / for they had wende that the Danys hadde hym slayne. Tho tooke they a counseyll the kyng & his barons / that wolde go and seke the Danys with them for to fyght. And so they rode all that nyght theym for to seke / & came on the morowe about pyne to Abyndon there þ the Danys were. The kyng Alured & his barons tho assembled & there assaylled the Danys egrely / & there yaued them a stronge batayll. And the Danys put them a lon

ge tyme that no man wylt whether parte more people were slayne. But thus it befell as god wolde that the kyng Alured had the byctory with moche honour for the Danys were so dyspuen that they ne wylt whyther for to toirne . And .xv. dayes the kyng them pursewed at his wyl / that gladly & fayne they were for to speke of peas and accorde / and tooke hym good hostage / & sayd they wolde neuer more vpon hym warre ne no debate arere. ¶ And more ouer they behyght vnto the kyng Alured / that they wolde go & bynge theyr owne kyng vnto hþ and that theyr kyng & they all sholde be baptysed . And vpon this condycyon kyng Alured graute them lpf & lymme And sayd vnto theym / that they sholde gone theyr kyng for to seke / & at a cer tayne daye to come ayen that to theym was lette. And so they wente forth faste & came ayen at a daye that to them was assygned . And all the Danys brought theyr kyng with them . ¶ The kyng Alured anone lete them be baptysed / & theyr names chaunged. And so the kyng of Denmark was called Athelstone And .xxx. of his felowes names were chaunged also / and the other were baptysed to the ryght byleue. ¶ And all this was done at Westmeire. And after that kyng Alured helde with hym kyng Athelstone and all his Danys .xij. dayes at soiourne with moche solempnyte / & yaued them grete yettes. And after that they were baptysed & so departed. Tho was kyng Alured all at ease / whan he had his enmyes ouercomen / & that they were toirned to the ryght byleue of god almyghty.

¶ How the Danys þ came in to frauce with Gurmonde came agayne in to Englonde / & of the dech of kyng Alured.

**A**nd thus it befelle afterwarde / that the Danys of Northumb

berlonde that were paynems came with a grete strength & an huge holte of fraunce that is to vnderstande / with them þ wente in to fraunce with Gurmodde of Affryke / whan he had conquered Englonde & yaued it vnto the Saxons . And tho þ came fro fraunce arryued in Kent & sent in to Northumberlonde that they sholde come to them / & whan those two hostes were come & assembled / anone they yede to destroye all the crysten people of Englonde from place to place / & dyde moche sorowe . ¶ It befelle thus as almyghty god wolde an harde chaunce in to Englonde . for the good kyng Alured þ was wonte to abate the Danys deyed in the meane tyme . This kyng Alured regned .xxx. yere / & a good kyng had he & well coude chastyle his enemyes . And also he was a good clerke / & lete make many boke / & a boke he made in Englyshe of aduentures of kynges / & of bataylles that had ben done in the lond / & many other boke of Gestes he lete them wyte that were of grete wyldome & of good lernynge / thourgh whiche boke many a man may hym amende / that woll them rede & vpon them loke / vpon whole soule almyghty god haue mercy . And this kyng Alured lyeth at Wynchestre .

**I**ohannes the .viij. was pope after Adrian .viij. yere . This Johanes anoynted Karolus the Emperour . And he suffred grete wronge of þ Romayns for he fauour d not the sayd Emperour . And therfore he put the sayd pope in kepynge . Also he degraded the bysshop of Portuense / the whiche was the occalyon of all his sorowe . ¶ Karolus the seconde was Emperour after Ludouicus . This Karolus had a brother the whiche was called Ludouicus / & he was the kyng of Germaine / and he ordeyned batayll agaynst his brother / but Karolus or they faught was poysoned . And he made ma

ny a monasterye . ¶ Martinus was pope after Johanes one yere . This Martin<sup>9</sup> lytell profyted / for he lyued but lytell tyme . ¶ Adrianus the thyrde was pope after hym oo yere . And of hym is no thyng wyten . ¶ Stephanus the fyfth was pope after hym .vi. yere . And no thyng of hym is wyten / but that he translated the body of saynt Martyn . ¶ Karolus the thyrde was Emperour after the seconde .xij. yere . This Karolus had in posseltyon peassible all fraunce and all Germaine / and was crowned Emperour of Johannes the pope . And after this gloruous vyctory / he turned all Normandy to the fayth of god almyghty / And he myght nomore relyste the frenshemen but four yere he regned on them . He was vnprofytable to them / & therfore they put hym awaye . ¶ Arnulphus was Emperour after Karolus .xij. yere . This Arnulphus vtterly constreyned þ Normans / þ whiche destroyed the frenshemen .xl. yere . Thenne he was lyke & had no comforte of no leche / for he was in a meruayllous sykenesse / soo that he was consumed with lye / and was deed . ¶ Formolus was pope after Stephan<sup>9</sup> .v. yere . this man fyrste was bysshop of Portuensis . And pope John was depryued for his Inobedynce / & was degraded to the lay see . But by Martyn the pope he was restored . And ayenst his othe / he came not aloonly to Rome / but to offre h<sup>9</sup> the dygnyte of the pope / for þ whiche there was grete alteracion . ¶ Bonifaci<sup>9</sup> the .vi. was pope .v. dayes . ¶ Stephan<sup>9</sup> the .vi. one yere & thre monethes . ¶ Johannes thre monethes and .xij. dayes / ¶ Jona also thre monethes and twelue dayes . ¶ Theodorus the seconde twenty dayes . ¶ Johannes the enleuenth was two yere & .xv. dayes . ¶ Benedic<sup>9</sup> the fourth thre yere and two monethes . ¶ Leo þ fourth was .xl. dayes . ¶ Kristoforus the fyrst .viij. monethes . All these viij. popes were but lytell tyme / & ther

foze we can not telle of them none notable thyngs / but yf we holde wyfte sclaū die of them that myght be founde / for the vnharde stryfe & contencion in that holy appostles sete. for one stroue ayenst an other / and repleued the dedes of an other. And for to telle how they stroue / it were no grete honour to shewe / for that holy appostles sete. ¶ Ludouicus the thyrde was Emperour after Arnulph<sup>9</sup> .vi. yere. This man had not the popes blessing / for the vnstabilenelle of them the whiche regned in Ptalp. And he was constreyned to expulke Berynge. And this man was the last Emperour of all the kynred of Karolus kynge of fraūce. ¶ This tyme the Emppre was remeued and translated & dyuided. for the frenchemen halpe not the chirche / the which theyr faders had edifyed and fortifyed / but destroyed / ne halpe not y Romayns ayenst Lombardes / the whiche vexed the Romayns ryght sore. Therefore by the compyns assente they were excluded fro the Emppre / and the Ptalpens beganne to be Emperour in Ptalp / and the Almanys in Almanpe / vntyl Ottanen the whiche regned in bothe the places. The frenshmen were constreyned to abyde in theyr owne countree / and no more to be Emperour for theyr myscheuous lpyngge. ¶ Beryngearius the fyrst. ¶ Conradus and Beryngearius the leconde / & Hugo were Emperours after Ludouic<sup>9</sup> But they are not nombred amonge the Emperours. for some were but in Almanpe / and some were in Ptalpe.

¶ Of kynge Edward that was kynge Aluredes lone.

**A**nd after this Alured regned his lone Edward / and was a good man & a wyle / that was called Edward / & was wonder curteys. ¶ The Danys dyde moche sorowe in the londe / & theyr power encreaced and began for to

were from daye to daye. for the Danys came often with theyr companys in to this londe. And whan the kynge sawe he myght no better do / then he toke peas with them & graunted them his trewes And neuerthelesse the trewes dured not longe / that the Danys ne began strongly for to warre vpon the Englyshmen & dyde them moche sorowe. Wherefore kynge Edward dyde assemble a grete hoste for to fyght with them. And then this kynge Edward deyed whan god wolde. This kynge Edward regned xxiiij. yere / and lpyeth at Wynchestre besyde his fader.

¶ Anno dñi .ix. C. xiiij

**S**ergius the thyrde was pope after Kristoforus. vij. yere. This man was a Cardynall of Rome / & was expelled by formolus the pope / & then he wente to the frenshmen. And so thourough the helpe & fauour of them he came agayne to Rome / and anone expelled Kristoforus the pope. And thenne was pope hymself. And for to auenge & wreke his exyle / he toke out the body of pope formolus where that he was buryed. And arayed hym in the popes arayment & caused hym to be heeded & to be caste in the water of Tybre by Rome / Thenne sylthers founde hym & broughe hym in to the chirche. And the holy ymagines of sayntes bowed downe to hym / whan the body of hym was brought in to the chirche / that all men myght see / and honourably hym hallpd. ¶ Pet Scrgius destroyed all that thyngc the whiche the holy man had ordcyned. ¶ Anashtalius was pope after hym two yere. ¶ Laudo was pope. v. monethes / & lpyel they dyde. ¶ Johannas the .x. was pope thenne. This Johānes was the lone of Sergius pope / both of nature & of maners. And he was pope by myght. And wretchedly slayne of Guidoys knyghts /

for they put on his mouth a pylowe and stopped his breth. And after hym was a nother put in / but anone he was out / and therfore he is not named as pope / **H**enric the duke of Saxon was Emperour of Almayne. xvij. yere. this Henric was a noble man / but he is not nombred amonge themperours. for he regned but aloonly in Almayne. And he had a very holy woman vnto his wyf / & her name was Matylda / on whom he gave two sones / that is to saye. Otto & Harry. And Otto succeded hy in the Emppre. And Harry had moche londe in Almayne. And he gave an other sone þ hyght Guimen / & he was a very holy man / & was byshop of Coleyne. And he fouded the monastery of Panthaleon.

**Of kynge Adelstone.**

*Adelstone was a noble king of the Danys*  
**N**ow after this Edward regned Adelstone his sone. And whan he had regned foure yere he helde batayle ayenst the Danys. And droue kynge Gaufride þ was kynge of the Danys & all his hoste vnto the see / and rested by Scotlonde / & toke strongly all the coun-tree an hoole yere. And after that tho of Comberlonde & of Scottes of Westmerlonde began to warre vpon kynge Adelstone. And he gaue them so stronge batayll / that he slewe so many of them / þ no man coude telle the nombre of them. And after that he regned but thre yere / And he regned in all .xxv. yere / & lyeth at Malmesbury.

**Of kynge Edmonde.**

**U**henne after this Adelstone regned Edmonde his brother. For kynge Adelstone had no sone / & this Edmonde was a worthy man & a doughty knyght of body / & as noble also. And þ thyrde yere after that he was kynge / he wente ouer Humber in to that countree /

in the whiche countree he foude two kynnes of Danys. That one was called Enelef. & that other Renant. This kynge Edmonde droue them both fro þ lond / & after went & toke a grete pryce in Comberlonde. This Edmonde regned but. viij. yere / & lyeth at Glasterbury.

**Of kynge Eldred.**

**A**nd after this Edmonde regned Eldred his broder that auenged Edward his fader of his ennys that dyde hym slee. And after he seled all Northumberlonde in to his honde. And made the Scottes for to bowe & meke vnto his wyll. And in the seconde yere of his regne came Arnalaf Guyran / that was kynge of Denmarke / & seled all Northumberlonde / & helde that londe two yere. And after that came kynge Eldred & diaue hym out of this londe. And this kynge Eldred was a noble man & a good / of whoos goodnes saynt Dunstane preched. And this kynge Eldred regned. xi. yere / & lyeth at Wynchestre.

**Of kynge Edwyn.**

**A**nd after this Eldred regned Edwyn the sone of Edmonde. And he was a symple man towarde god and the people. for he hated folke of his owne londe / and loued & honoured straunge men. And sette lytell by holy chirche. And he toke of holy chirche all the tresour that he myght haue. That was grete shame & vylany to hymself / and peryll to his soule. And therfore god wolde not that he sholde regne no lenger than foure yere & deyed / and lyeth at Wynchestre.

**U**so the sixt a Romayne was pope. vi. monethes. **S**tephanus the. viij. was after hym two yere. **J**ohannes the. xi. a Romayne was pope in i

thre yere. ¶ Stephanus the. viij. a Ger  
mayne was pope after hym .viij. yere/  
¶ Martinus the thyrde was pope after  
hym thre yere / & of these. vi. popes is no  
thyng had in scrypture. for what cau  
se I can not telle.

¶ Anno dñi .ij. C. liij.

**A**gapitus a Romayne was pope  
after Martin<sup>us</sup>. ij. yere & .viij. mo  
nethes / & no thyng of hym is wyrtien /  
¶ Johes the .xij. a Romayne was pope  
after Agapitus. viij. yere / & he had a fad  
þ hyght Alberkye & was a worthy man  
in the cyte of Rome. he Induced the no  
ble men to swere þ after þ dech of Aga  
pitus they sholde chese Octavianus his  
sone pope / & soo it was done & was na  
med John / & he was a hunter & a lecher  
ous man / so þ openly he kepte wýmen  
Wherfore certen Cardynalles wrote vn  
to Otto the Emperour of Saxon / that  
he sholde come to Rome for to helpe to  
destrope the sclaüdre of þ churche. This  
the pope percepued / & þ honde that wro  
te the pyttle he made to be cutte of. And  
many tymes he was warned by the Em  
perour & the clergy that he sholde correc  
te hymself / but he nolde. for no thyng /  
Thenne he was depolpyd / & Leo was put  
in to his place. Wherfore the Emperour  
was anoyed / and came apen & belyeged  
Rome so longe tyll they toke Benedicte  
to hym / & restored Leo.

¶ Of kynge Edgar that regned aboue  
the kynges of Scoclonde & of Walys / &  
how he was begyled thugh the takyn  
ge of his wyf.

**A**nd after this Edwyne regned  
Edgar his brother a man that  
moche loued god & peas / and the ryght  
of holy churche also. And he was a wor  
thy man / and a grete lorde of blood and  
myghty / & mayntened well this londe in

peas. And this Edgar was lorde & kyn  
ge aboue all the kynges of Scoclonde &  
of Walys / fro the tyme that Arthur was  
gone / & neuer was lythen kyng of his  
power. ¶ And this Edgar was Saynt  
Edwardes fader. And whan Edgars  
wyf was deed that was saynt Edwar  
des moder & enteryd / he herde speke of  
the fayrnesse of Estrylde / that was Dy  
garus doughter a baron of Deuenshyre  
that was so fayr a woman / that al men  
dyde speke of her. he called one of his  
knyghtes that he moche loued & trusted  
vpon & tolde hym. Soo sayd he to the  
noble baron Digarus of Deuenshyre /  
and see yf that his doughter be so fayre  
as men speke of / & yf it be loth I wyll  
haue her vnto my wyf. ¶ This knyght  
that was called Edelwolde went forth  
his waye as the kyng hym had sayd / &  
came there that þ lady was. And whan  
he sawe her so fayre / he thought to haue  
her hymself to wyf. And therof spake to  
Digarus her fader. And her fader was  
an olde man & had no moo childern but  
oonly her / & sawe that Edelwolde was  
a fayre ponge knyght & worthy & ryche  
and was well beloued wíth the kyng /  
& thought his doughter sholde well be  
maryed & belette vpon hym / and graū  
ted hym his doughter yf the good lorde  
the kyng wolde consente therto. ¶ And  
thenne this Edelwolde came apen vnto  
the kyng & tolde hym / that she was fay  
re ynough vpon to see / but she was won  
der lothly. ¶ Tho answered the kyng  
and sayd that he toke but lytell charge.  
Syr sayd Edelwolde / she is her faders  
heyr / & I am not ryche of londes / and  
yf ye wolde consente & graunte that I  
myght her haue / thenne sholde I be ry  
che ynough. In goddes name sayd the  
kyng. I consente therto. Edelwolde tho  
thanked the kyng ryght moche / & wen  
te apen in to Deuenshyre & spowled the  
damoyzell / & in that couñtree he dwelled  
¶ And thus it befell vpon a tyme / that



he tolde his counseyll & all this thynge vnto his wyf / how & in what maner he had begyled his lorde & kynge that wolde haue had her to wyf. And anone as she it wyf / she loued hym neuer more afterwarde as she dyde before. ¶ This lady conceived by hym a sone. And whan tyme was that the childe sholde be borne. Edelwolde came to the kynge and prayed hym to haue a sone of his at the fonte stone. The kynge hym graunted / And lete calle hym Edgar after his owne name. And whan this was done he thought that all was lyker ynough for the kynge / that he wolde not take his wyf / for as moche as his lorde was a Joly man & an amorous.

¶ How that kynge Edgar wedded Estrylde after the dech of Edelwolde.

¶ Thus it befell that all men in kynge Edgars courte thenne spake and sayd / that Edelwolde was ryche and auanced / though the forsayd maryage of his wyf. And yet they sayd / he was auanced an hondred folde more. for he had spowled the moost fayrest creature that euer was seen. And the kynge herte speke so moche of her beaute / that he thought he wolde haue hym dysceyued / & begyled. And thought pryuely in his herte / that he wolde go in to Deuenshyre / as it were for to hunte for the harte & for the hynde & other wylde bestes / and thenne he sholde see there the lady or he departed thens. And this lady was dwellynge at a manere place helydest the forest / there that the kynge wolde hunte / And at that manere he was herborowed all nyght. And whan tyme came that the kynge sholde suppe / & the sonne shone / the kynge asked after his godspype & after his godsonne. And Edelwolde made her to come before the kynge. And neuertheless yf it ocher wyle myght haue be she sholde not haue come in his syght

by his wyll. ¶ The lady welcomed the kynge and swetely hym kyssed. And heooke her by the honde / and tho nexte by hym her late / and so louped they toggyder. ¶ And there was a custome and an vblage in this londe that tyme. That so whan one dranke to an ocher / the drynker sholde saye Wassayll. And that ocher sholde answere / and saye Drynke hayll. And this dyde the kynge and the lady / and also kyssed many tymes. And after supper whan tyme was for to go to bedde / the kynge wente to bedde / thynkynge hertely on the fayrnesse of that lady / and thenne was ouercome for her loue / that hym thought that he sholde depe / but yf he hadde his wyll on her / ¶ Upon the morowe the kynge arose / and in the forest wente hym for to dysporte with hartes and hyndes and all ocher wylde bestes. And of the hartes grete plente he sente to that lady. And thys he wente for to solace and to speke with that lady the whyles he dwelled there in that countree. ¶ And after that the kynge remeued thens / and thought hym how he myght best delyuer Edelwolde fro his wyf / as he had hym fyrst desceyued. And the kynge anone after viij. dayes ordeyned a parlyament at Salysbury of all his baronage counseyll to haue. And for to ordeyne how the countree of Northumberlonde sholde best be kepte that the Danys came not there / the londe for to destroye. And this Edelwolde came vnto the kynge parlyament. And the kynge sente hym vnto Porke / for to be keper of that countree. ¶ And thus it befell / that men that knewe hym not slewe hym by the waye. ¶ And anone as the kynge herde telle that he was deed / he lete sende after the lady Estrylde that she sholde come vnto the cyte of London / and there be wedded to the kynge with grete solempnyte and workypp. And helde a solempne feest. And he wore a crowne that was of golde / and the

quene an other. ¶ And saynt Dunstane on the morowe came vnto the kynge in to the chambie / & founde the kynge in bedde & the quene togyders . And saynt Dunstane axed the kynge who she was And the kynge answered & sayd / that she was h̄ quene Estrylde. And the Archybyschop saynt Dunstane sayd / that he dyde grete wronge / & ayenst goddes wyll to take a woman to wyf whole childe ye had take at fonte stone. And h̄ quene for that worde neuer loued saynt Dunstane after. And the good man warned of that foly to be lefte / but it auaylled but lytell / for h̄ loue bytwene them was so moche . The kynge begate vpon her a sone that was called Eldred . Whan this childe was .vi. yere olde / the kynge his fader deyed . And aboute that tyme he had regned .xviij. yere / and lyeth atte Glastenbury .

**B**eringarius the thyrde was Emperour after Henricus .vii. yere / this Beringari<sup>9</sup> was Emperour in ytaly . In whoos tyme was grete dryuylon . ¶ And Henricus theemperour decessed / & Otto began to regne in Almayne . ¶ Lotharius regned after hym two yere / & decessed whan Otto regned in Almayne . And had a wyf that h̄ght Dalnydam . the whiche after wedded Otto . ¶ Beringarius the fourth was after hym / this man with grete tyrannye subdued ytaly / wherfore the pope & other Romayns called Otto that he myght delyuer them whiche he dyde . And he toke Beringarius by strengthe / & twyes he ouclawed hym . And he toke Lotharius wyfe the whiche the tyraūt had pyloned . ¶ Leo the .viij. was pope after Benedictus one yere & foure monethes . This man was cholen with the comyn boys / & Johānes was depolyd . This Leo ordeyned that no pope sholde be made without consente of the Emperour . for the malyce of the Romaynes / the whiche opprestyd

them . This man graūted all the yettes to Otto and his successours / the whiche were yeuen by Iustitianus & Karolus to the chirche / that he myghte defende ytaly from the rebellyons . ¶ Johannes the .xij. was pope after hym almost .viij. yere / this Johēs suffred grete wronge of the Romayns . for he was take & exyled but Otto bare this heuply . for he slewe the noble men of Rome / & certayne of them exyled for cuer more . ¶ Benedict<sup>9</sup> the .vi. was pope after hym .vi. yere / this man was take / & in the castell Aungell was strangled . ¶ Nota .

¶ The Empyre in this tyme was translated to the Almayns . And the same cause is here as was before / for the bycous lyuyng . Ne these vnhappy men cowde not be Informed / that they sholde eschewe that oo byce / thugh the whiche they sawe soo many noble men to peryshe . ¶ Otto was Emperour after Beringarius .xij. yere . This Otto was the fyrste Emperour of Almayne . And he was all vertuous as an other kynge Karolus for he was the defender of the chirche of god / and the synguler promoter / for the whiche he was worthy to be Emperour . Many men of fals byleue he conuerted . And he helde with hym pope Benedictus the vslurper of the popeheede in to Saxonye . And there he decessyd in his exyle . And this Emperour decessyd a ryche man in vertue & goodnes . ¶ Otto the seconde was Emperour after his fader . And he was a noble man to the chirche as his fader was . And many a battayll he had ayenst the fals men of byleue . And att the laste he almost loste all his hoste in Kalabur . Pet forloche with all his mynde belought saynt Peter to helpe . And meruayllously saynt Peter delyuered hym . And his wyf was the doughter of the Emperour of Constantinopolitan of the Romayns blood . And this man was crowned of Benedictus the pope .

Of saynt Edward the martyr how  
 Escryde his stepmoder lete kille hym/  
 for to make Eldred her owne sone kyn-  
 ge.

**A**nd after this Edgar reigned Ed-  
 warde his sone / that he begate  
 vpon his fyrst wyf / that well and nobly  
 gouerned the londe . for he was full of  
 all maner of goodnes / and ledde a full  
 holy lyf. And aboue all thynge he loued  
 god & holy chirche . And the quene El-  
 cryde that was his stepmoder lete flee  
 hym / by cause to make her owne sone  
 Eldred kynge . And thus on a daye he  
 was slayne / as ye shall here afterwarde  
 ¶ It befell thus vppon a daye that the  
 kynge Edward wente in to a wood for  
 to playe / in the south countree belyde a  
 towne that is called Warham. In whi-  
 che forest was grete plente of hartes and  
 hyndes. And whan he had ben a whyle  
 there hym for to playe / he thought vpon  
 on his broder Eldred that was with his  
 moder the quene for her place was nygh  
 the forest / and thought for to go thyder  
 and vlyte and see his brother. And to-  
 ke with hym but a lytell meyne / & wente  
 hym towarde his stepmoder's hous /  
 that in that tyme soiourned in the cas-  
 tlell of Corke. And as he rode in the thye  
 kenesse of a wood to aspye his game / it  
 befell that he wente amyss and lost his  
 meyne that with hym came. And at the  
 last he came out of the wood. And as he  
 looked hym about / he sawe there fast be-  
 sydes a manere that his stepmoder dwel-  
 led in / and thyderwarde he wente alone  
 And anone it was tolde the quene / how  
 that the kynge was comen alone with-  
 out ony company. And therefore she ma-  
 de Joye ynough / and thought how that  
 she myght do / that he were slayne as pry-  
 uely as she myght / and called to her one  
 of her knyghtes. To whome she had tol-  
 de moche of her counsell bytwene them.  
 And bothe they came to the kynge and

curteply hym receyued. ¶ And the kyn-  
 ge tolde that he was come to vlyte and  
 also for to speke with Eldred his broder  
 The quene many tymes hym thanked.  
 and hym prayed for to alyght / and her-  
 borough with her all that nyght. ¶ The  
 kynge sayd / that he myght not. But a-  
 gayne he wolde go vnto his folke / if he  
 myght theym fynde . ¶ And whan the  
 quene sawe that he wolde not abyde / she  
 prayed hym that he wolde ones drynke /  
 and he graunted her. And anone as the  
 drynke was come / the quene dranke vnto  
 to the kynge . And the kynge tooke the  
 cuppe and sette it to his mouth. And in  
 the meane whyle that he dranke / the fal-  
 se knyght that was with the quene with  
 a knyfe smote the kynge vnto the herte.  
 and there he felle downe deed vnto the  
 erthe of his parkroy. The quene for this  
 dede gaue the knyght golde and syluer  
 grete plente and of ocher ryches ynough  
 And the knyght anone as this was do-  
 ne wente hym ouer the see. And so esca-  
 ped he out of this londe . ¶ Whan this  
 kynge Edward was thus martyred. It  
 was in the yere of the Incarnacyon of  
 our lorde Ihesu Cryste . ix. C. lxxx. and  
 he had regned . xij. yere and an halfe /  
 and lyeth at Blastenbury.

¶ Of the kynge Eldred / and how the  
 kynge Swyne of Denmarke helde Eng-  
 glonde. and how Eldred that was saynt  
 Edwardes brother was not beloued in  
 his Realme / and therefore he fledde in to  
 Normandy.

**S**o after this Edward reigned  
 Eldred his brother . And saynt  
 Dunstane crowned hym. And this saynt  
 Dunstane deyed loone after that he  
 had foryeuen the quene her trespaas / by  
 cause that she was cause of kynge Ed-  
 wardes deth. And saynt Dunstane had  
 her assoylled / & penaunce had her enjoy-  
 ned. And she lyued after a chaste lyf and

a clene. ¶ This kynge Eldred wedded an Englyshe woman / & on her begate Edmonde Jrenlyde / and an other sone that was called S wyne. And after deyed the quene theyr moder. ¶ And in that tyme came S wyne in to Englonde that was kynge of Denmark / for to chalenge & to conquere all that his auncestres had before that tyme. And so he conquered & had it all at his arynge. ¶ For the good erle Luthberte of Lyndeleye and all the people of Northumberlonde / and almost all the grette of Englonde helde wih S wyne that was kyng of Denmark / for soo moche as they loued not kyng Eldred / for by cause that his good brother Edward was slayne for loue of hym. And therfore no man lette but lytell by hym. Wherfore kyng S wyne had all his wyll / and toke all the londe. And Eldred the kynge fledde tho in to Normandy. And soo spake to the duke Richard / that the duke gaue hym his syster Emme to wyf. Upon the whiche he gate two sones / that one was called Alured / and that other Edward. And whan S wyne had conquered all the londe / he regned nobly & lyued .xv. yere and thenne he deyed & lyeth at Yorke.

¶ How kynge Eldred came ayen from Normandy / and how knoght the Dane regned / & of the warre betwixt hym and Edmonde Jrenlyde.

¶ Thus after the dethe of S wyne that was a Dane. Knoght his sone dwelled in Englonde / and wolde haue ben kynge. And tho came agayne Eldred out of Normandy with moche nombre of people / and with a stronge meyne that knoght durste not abyde / but fledde thens in to Denmarke. The kynge Eldred had agayne his reame / & helde so grette woithypp / that he began for to destroye all tho that halpe S wyne that was a Dane ayenst hym. And

afterwarde came agayne this knoght from Denmark with a grette power / so that kynge Eldred durste not wih hym fyght / but fledde from thens vnto London / & there helde hym. ¶ Tho came knoght & hym besyged soo longe / tyll that kynge Eldred deyed in the cyte of London / & lyeth at saynt Poules. And he regned .ix. yere.

¶ Bonus was pope after Benedicctus one yere. This man abode but a lytell tyme. ¶ Bonifacius was pope after hym fyue monethes. ¶ Benedictus was pope after hym .x. yere / This man crowned Otto the seconde / and made many Romayns to be taken. And he gadred a counseyll agaynst the kynge of fraunce / where Gylberte the Nygromancer was depolpd. ¶ For hanes the .xiiij. was pope after hym .viij. monethes. And he was put in the castell Aungell / and was fampned to dethe. ¶ Johanes the .xv. was pope after hym foure monethes. ¶ Johanes the .xvi. was pope after hym almost .xi. yere / This man was taught in armes / and made many bookes / and elles lytell of hym is wyrtten. ¶ Gregorius the .v. was pope after this man almost thre yere. And this Gregorius was made pope att the Instauce of the Emperour Otto the thyrde / for he was his colyn / And whan he had be a lytell whyle pope / and the Emperour receded from the cyte of Rome. Placentinus was put in by Ercenius a Counsell for moneye / And theñe was stryf a fewe dayes. But the Emperour came soone after / & toke Ercenius the Counsell / and stroke of his heed / and putte out the eyen of this man Placentius pope / the whiche putte out his colyn of the dygnyte of the pope. And maymed hym on other membres / his knyghtes ne his dukes halpe hym no thyng. for he dyde that thyng that he sholde not haue done. And he suffred

that that he deserued.

**[Nota.**

**[This Gregorius the Emperour Otto ordeyned the chelers of the Emppre the whiche from thens forth hath a bode vnto this day. for the frenshmen ne none other myght not bieke that ordynance. And those chelers of the Emppre by the pope and Otto were not made for ony blame of the Saxons but to elchewe the euylles to come. And theyr names ben wypten for lerned men in latin in thele verses. Maguntinensis Treuerensis Colonienlis Quilibet imperij fit cancellarius horum. Et Palatinus datifer Dux Portitorienlis. Marchio prepositus camere. Pincerna Bohemus hij statuunt enim cunctis per secula summu. Palatinus est comes reni. Marchio est Brandeburgenlis. Dux saxoz et rex Bohemoz. veru de quida dicunt. Thugh this occalyon the Egle hath losse many a feder. And in the ende he shall be made naked. Otto the thyrde was Emperour .xviij. yere. This man was a worthy man all the dayes of his Emppre. And after the wpldome of his fader / he was a very faythfull man to the chirche. And in many batayls he prosperyd by cause he was deuoute vnto almighty god and his sayntes. And yaued myghty worlhyppynge to the relykes of sayntes. And ofentymes he vlyted holy places. This man was crowned by Gregorius his colyn. And at the last he deceasyd at Rome.**

**[Anno dñi .M. iij.**

**S**ilvester the seconde was pope after Gregorius fourte yere. And he was made pope by the helpe of the desuyll to whome he dyde homage for he holde yeue hym all thynge that he desyred. And he was called Sylbert. And his enemye gate hym the grace of the kynge of fraunce / and he made hym the blyshop of Remenlis / but anone he was de

polyd. And after he gate the grace of the Emperour / and was made the blyshop of Rauennie / and after the pope / But he had an ende anone / and so haue all that put theyr hope in fals denyles. **[Yet men truste in his saluacyon / for certayne demonstracyon of his sepulchre / and for the grete penaunce that he dyde in his laste ende. for he made his honde and his legges to be cutte of / and dylmembred in all his body / and to be caste out at the dore to foules / & thenne his body to be drawen with wylde beests and there to be buryed where some euer they rested as an honde. And they stode styll at saynt Johan lateranenlis / and there he was buryed. And that was sygne of his saluacyon. Johannes the xvij. was pope fyue monethes. Johannes the .xix. was pope after hym fyue yere. And these two dyde lytell thynnges. Henricus the fyrst was Emperour in Almayne .xx. yere / this Henricus was duke of Barry / and all accordynge he was cholen / for his blessyd fame and good name the whiche he hadde. **[And it is redde / that many of these dukes of Barry were holy men not alonly in absteynyng of fleshely desyres / but also in vertuous luyng. And this man had a syster that was as holy as he / the whome he yaued to wyfe vnto the kynge of Hungry. And she brought all Hungry vnto the ryght byleue & the crysten fayth. And his wyues name was (sancta Konnogundis) with whome he lyued a virgyn all his lyues dayes. And also he dyde many a bataylle / as well in Pealy / as in Almayne apent the rebellyons / and prosperyd ryghtwysly. At the laste with a blessyd ende he deceasyd. And in the lyfe of saynt Laurence he and his wyfe be put for enlamples. **[Benedictus was pope after Johannes .xi. yere. This man had grete stryfe in his dayes / for he was put out / and another put in. And this Benedictus after******

that he was deed / was seen of an holy man byshop in a wietchyd fygure / & he had grete payne. And this fygure layd. He trusted noo thynge in the mercy of god. And no thynge profyted hym that was done for hym / for it was gotten with extorcyon & vniustely. Thenne this byshop lefte his byshopryche for drede of this syght & wente in to a monasterye & lpyued vertuouly all his dayes. ¶ Johannes the .x. was pope after hym .xi. yere / and lycell profyted.

¶ Of kynge Knoght that was a Dane

**A**nd after the dethe of Eldred Knoght that was a Dane began to regne. But Edmonde Jrenlyde that was kynge Eldredes sone by his fyrste wyf / ordeyned a grete power of men / & began for to warre on kynge Knoght / And soo he dyde many tymes & often / And the warre was so stronge & harde / that wonder it was to wyte. ¶ And the quene Emme that dwelled tho at Westmestre / had grete drede of her two sones of the warre Alured and Edwarde / lest they sholde be defoyled & myldone thourgh this warre. Wherfore she sente theym ouer the see in to Normandy to the duke Richarde theyr vncl. And there they dwelled in laufte & peas longe tyme. ¶ This Edmonde Jrenlyde and Knoght the Dane warred strongely togyder. But at the laste they were accorded in this manere / that they sholde departe the reame betwixt them both / and so they dyde / & after they became good frendes. And soo well loued togyder as they had ben brethern gotten of one father & of one moder borne.

¶ How kynge Edmonde Jrenlyde traytoursly was slayne thorough a traytoure / that was called Edrith of Stratton.

**A**nd after tho regned kynge Jren

lyde & Knoght the Dane. But thus it befell afterwarde / that in the same yere that they were accorded & so moche loued togyder. Wherfore a fals traytoure had enuytee to the loue that was betwixt them and frendshyp / whoos name was Edrith of Stratton / that was a grete lord / that was Edmond Jrenlydes man / & of hym helde all the londe that he had. And neuertheles he thought his lord to betraye & make Knoght kynge of the londe / to the entente ryche to be auanced / & with hym be well beloued / Wherfore he prayed his lord Edmond Jrenlyde vppon a daye with hym for to etc. And the kynge hym curteply graunted & to hym came at his prayer. And at the meete the kynge ryally was serued with dyuers meets & drynkes. And whan the nyght came that he sholde goo vnto bedde. The kynge toke his owne meyne & wente vnto the chambere there that he sholde take his nyghtes reste. And as he looked hym about / he sawe a fayre ymage & well made / and in semblaunt as it were an Archer with a boowe / & in the boowe a fyne arowe. ¶ Kynge Edmonde wente tho nere for to beholde it better what it myght be. And anone þe arowe smote hym thurgh the body & there slewe the kynge. for that engyne was made for to slee his owne lord traytoursly. ¶ And so whan kynge Edmonde was thus deed & slayne / he had regned but .x. yere. And his people for hym made moche sorowe. And his body they bare vnto Glastenbury & there they hym entyred. ¶ And this fals traytoure Edrith anone wente vnto the quene / that was kynge Edmondes wyfe / that wyll not of her lordes dech. Anone he toke from her two sones that were fayre & yonge / that her lord had vpon her gotten / that one was called Edwarde / & that other Edwyne. & ladde theym with hym to London / & toke them vnto kynge Knoght / that he sholde do with them what his wyll wes

re. And tolde hym how subtyllly he hadz  
slayne kynge Edmonde / for by cause &  
loue of hym / so that kynge Knoght all  
Englonde in his power hooly myght  
haue. ¶ Thou fals traytour / hast thou  
my true brother that was soo true thus  
slayne for me / the man I moost loued  
in the worlde . Now by my heed I shall  
for thy trauell the well rewarde as thou  
hast deserued / & anone lete hym be take  
& bounde honde & foot in manere of a  
traytour / & lete cast hym there in to Ta  
myle / & in this maner the fals traytour  
ended his lyf . The kynge toke the two  
childern & put them vnto the abbot of  
Westmestre to warde & to kepe tyll h he  
wylt what was best with them to do.

¶ How kynge Knoght sente kynge Ed  
mondos lones both in to Denmarke to  
be slayne / & how they were saued.

¶ S D it befell soone after that kyn  
ge Knoght had all h londe in his  
honde / & spowled the quene Emme tho  
rough contente of his baronage . For she  
was a fayre woman / the whiche was El  
dredes wyf and the dukes syster of No  
mandy / & they lyued togyder with mo  
che loue as reason wolde . The kynge  
axed vpon a daye counseyll of the quene  
what was best to do w the lones h were  
Edmonde Jrenlydes. Syr sayd she. they  
ben the ryght heyres of the londe / & yf  
they lyue they wyll do moche sorowe w  
warre / & therefore lete sende them in to  
a strange londe a ferre to some man that  
may them defoyle & destroy. The kynge  
anone lete call a dane h was called Wal  
gar / & comaunded h h he sholde lede tho  
two childern in Denmark / & so to do &  
ordeyne for them / h he sholde neuer here  
more of theym. Syr sayd this Walgar /  
gladly your comaudemment shall be done  
& anone tho two childern he toke & ladz  
them in to Denmark. And for as moche  
as he saue that the childern were wond

fayre & also meke / he had of them grete  
pyte & ruth / & wolde them not slee / but  
ladz them to the kynge of Hungry for to  
nouryssh / for this Walgar was well be  
knownen with the kynge & well beloued.  
Anone the kynge axed whens the childrn  
were / & Walgar tolde hym & sayd / that  
they were the ryght heyres of Englonde  
& therefore men wolde destroye theym /  
And therfore syr vnto you they be come  
mercy & helpe for to seke. And forsothe  
yf they may lyue / your men they shall  
become / and of you they shall holde all  
theyr londe. The kynge of Hungry re  
ceyued them with moche honour / & lete  
them worthely be kepte . ¶ And thus it  
befell afterwarde h Edwyne the yonger  
brother deyed / & Edwarde the elder bro  
ther lyued / a fayre man & a stronge / & a  
large of body & gentyll / and curteys of  
condycyons / so that all men hym loued  
And this Edwarde in the Cronycles  
is called amonge the Englysshmen Ed  
warde the outlawe . ¶ And whan as he  
was made knyght / the kynges dought  
er of Hungry hym moche loued for his  
goodnes and his faynes / that she hym  
called her derlynge. The kynge that was  
her fader perceyued well the loue that  
was betwixt them two / and had no hey  
re but only that doughter / and the kyn  
ge bowchelauf his doughter to no man  
so well / as he dyde to hym that she lo  
ued so well & he her / and yaued her vnto  
hym with a good wyll / & Edwarde her  
spowled with moche honour. The kyn  
ge of Hungry sente after all his barona  
ge / and made a solempne feest & a ryche  
weddyng. And made all men to vnder  
stande / that this Edwarde sholde be  
kynge of that londe after the deceste of  
hym. And of that tydyngs they were all  
full gladd. This Edwarde begate vps  
pon his lady a sone / that was called Ed  
gar Helynge / & afterwarde a doughter  
that was called Margarete h afterwar  
de was quene of Scotlonde. And by the

kyng of Scotland that was called Man-  
colin the had a doughter that was called  
Maude þ was quene afterwarde of Eng-  
lond / thugh kyng Henry that was the  
fyrst sone of þ conquerour that her wed-  
ded. And he begate on her a doughter þ  
was called Maude that afterwarde was  
Empresse of Almayn. And of this Mau-  
de came þ kyng of Englonde that vn-  
to this daye is called Henry þ Empresse  
sone. And yet had this Edwarde an o-  
ther doughter by his wyf that was cal-  
led Crystyan & she was a Nonne.

**H**ow kyng Knoght that was a prou-  
de man conquered Normandy / & how he  
became afterwarde meke & mylde.

**N**ow haue ye herde of Edmonde  
Trenlydes sones þ kyng Knoght  
wend they had ben slayne as he had cō-  
maūded Walgar before. And this kyng  
Knoght had in his honde all the reame  
of Englonde & Denmarke . And after  
that they wente vnto Norwaye that lon-  
do for to conquere. But the kyng of the  
londe that was called Elaf came w<sup>th</sup> his  
people / & wende his londe to haue well  
kepte & defended. & so there he faught  
with hym / tyll at the last he was slayne  
in that batayll. And tho this Knoght to  
ke all the londe in to his honde . And  
whan he had conquered Norwaye / & ta-  
ken feaue & homages there / he came a-  
yen in to Englonde / & helde hymself so  
grete a lorde / that hym thoughte in all  
the worlde his pere noo man was. And  
he came so proude and haufeyne that it  
was grete wonder. And so it befell vp-  
on a daye as he had herde masse at West-  
mestre / & wolde haue gone in to his pas-  
lays / the wawes of the Tample so swyft-  
cly ayenst hym came that almost they  
touched his feet. Tho sayd the kyng w<sup>th</sup>  
a proude herte . I cōmaunde the water  
to torne ayen / or elles I shall make the /  
The wawes for his cōmaūdemēt wol-

de not spare / but flowed euer in heyghe  
more & more. The kyng was so proude  
of hert that he wolde not flee the water  
& bete it with a rodde that he had in his  
honde / & cōmaūded the water that it  
sholde go no ferder. But for all his cō-  
maūdemēt the water wolde not cesse /  
but euer wexed more & more on hygh / so  
that the kyng was all wete & stode de-  
pe in the water. And whan he sawe that  
he had abyden there to longe / & the wa-  
ter wolde noo thyng do his cōmaūdes-  
ment / tho soone he withdrewē hym / and  
tho stode he vpon a stone and helde his  
hondes on hyghe & layd these wordes he  
ryngē all the people . **T**his god that  
maketh the see thus aryle / is kyng of  
all kyngs / & of all myghtes moost. And  
I am a captyf & a man deedly / and he  
may neuer depe / & all thyng doth his cō-  
maūdemēt / and to hym is obeyent /  
**T**o that god I praye / that he be my  
warrault. for I knowlege me a captyf  
feble / and of no power . And therefore I  
wyll go vnto Rome without ony longe  
lettyngē / and my wychednesse for to pur-  
nyllhe and me to amende. for of god I  
clayme my londe for to holde / & of none  
other. And anone made redy his hepre /  
and hymself wente to Rome without on-  
ny lettyngē. And by the waye dyde ma-  
ny almesse dedes / and whan he came to  
Rome also. And whan he had be there /  
for his synnes do penaūce / he came ayen  
in to Englonde / & became a good man  
and an holy. And lyued and left all ma-  
nere of pryde and stoutenes / and lyued  
an holy lyf after / & made two abbayes  
of saynt Benet / one in Englonde and  
an other in Normandye / for as moche  
as he loued saynt Benet more specpally  
than other sayntes. And moche he loued  
also saynt Edmonde þ kyngē. And oft  
he yauē grete yettes to the house / wher-  
fore it was made ryche . And whan he  
had regned. xx. yere he deyed / and lyeth  
at Wynchestre.



Anno dñi .M. xviij.

**B**enedictus the .ix. was pope after Johannes / & he was a grete lechour / & therfore he was dampned / and he aperyd to a certayne man vnd a meruaylous fygure & an horryble. His heed & his tayle was lyke an asse / that other part of his body lyke a becr. And he layde to this man to whom he aperyd. Be not aferde / for I was a man as ye now be / but I apeyre now / for I lyued vnhappely in olde tyme lyke a beest whan I was pope. In this mannes tyme there was grete dpyltyon & sleaunders to the chirche / for he was put out & in two tymes. And here Tholomeus noteth / that the pryde of bysshops had euer an euyll ende. And it was euer the occasyon of moche vnryst and batayll. Conradus the fyrst was Emperour after Henricus .xx. yere. This man made many lawes / and comaunded peas to be kepte moost stryctly of ony man. But the erle of Ludolf was accused / & he fledde from his londe / & desyred more to lyue lyke a churle than lyke a gentylman / & yet meruayllously his lone was made Emperour by the comaundement of god apenst the wyll of Conradus. And at the laste they were accorded. And he toke Corodis doughter to his wyf.

Of kynge Harold that leuer had go on foot than ryde on hors.

**T**his knoght of whome we haue spoken of before / had two sones by his wyf Emme / & h one was called Hardiknought / & that other Harold. And he was so lyght of foot h men called hy moost comynly Harold Hare foot. And this Harold had no chynge the condycyons & the maners of kyng Knoght that was his fader. for he sette but lytell pryce of chyualltye / ne noo curtesy / nother worshyp / but oonly by his owne wyll /

And he became so wycked that he exyled his moder Emme. And she wente out of the londe in to flandres / & there dwelled w the erle / wherfore after there was neuer good loue betwixt hym & his broder / for his broder hated hy deedly / & whan he had regned two yere & a lytell more / he deped & lyech at Westmestre.

Of kynge Hardiknought that was Haroldes brother.

**A**fter this Harold Harefoot / regned his brother Hardiknought / a noble knyght & a worchy man / & moche loued chyuallty / & all maner of goodnes. And whan this Hardiknought had reigned a lytell whyle / he lete vncouere his brother Harold & smote of his heed / that was his broder at Westmestre / & lete cast the heed in to a gonge / & the body in to Tample. And after came fysshers & toke the body with theyr nettes by nyght / & bare hym to saynt Clementes chirche & there hym buryed. And in this maner auenged hym Hardiknought of his broder / for in none other maner he myght be auenged. This kynge Hardiknought was so large a yeuer of meete & drynke / that his tables were sette euery daye thre tymes full with ryall meetes & drynkes for his owne meyne / and for all that came vnto his courte / to be rychely serued of ryall meetes. And this kynge Hardiknought sente after Emme his moder / & made her to come aye in to Englonde / for she was dryuen out of Englonde whyle that Harold Harefoot regned / thugh counseyll of the erle Godewin / that tho was the gretttest lorde of Englonde next the kynge / & moost myght do thugh out all Englonde what he wolde his comaundement / for as moche as he had spowled the doughter of the good kynge Knoght / that was a Dane / whiche doughter he hadde by his fyrst wyf / And whanne this quene was dryuen

out of Englonde / & come to the Erle of  
flaūdres / that was called Baldewyne  
her colyn / he foude her there all thynge  
that her neded / vnto the tyme þ she wen-  
te ayen in to Englonde / that the kynge  
Hardiknocht had sent for her that was  
her sone & made her come ayen with mo-  
che honour. This kynge Hardiknocht  
whan he had regned fyue yere he deyed  
and lyeth at Westmestre.

**O**f the vylany that the Danys dyde  
to the Englysshmen. Wherfore fro that  
tyme after was no Dane made kynge  
of this londe.

**A**nd after the dech of this kynge  
Hardiknocht / for as moche as  
he had noo thynge of his body begoten /  
The erles & barons assembled / & made  
a coulell / that neuer more after no man  
þ was a Dane / though he were neuer so  
grete a man amonges them / he sholde  
neuer be kynge of Englonde for the des-  
pyte þ the Danes had done to Englyssh-  
men. for euermore before & yf it were so  
that the Englysshmen & þ Danys hap-  
ned for to mete vpon a brydge / the En-  
glysshmen sholde not be so hardy to me-  
ue ne styre a foot / but stande styll tyll þ  
Dane were passed forth. And more ouer  
yf þ Englysshmen had not bowed dow-  
ne theyr heedes to do reuerence vnto the  
Danys / they sholde haue ben beten & de-  
foyled. And suche maner despytes & vy-  
lany dyde the Danys to our Englysshe  
men. Wherfore they were dryuen out of  
þ londe after tyme þ kynge Hardiknocht  
was deed / for they had no lorde þ theym  
myght mayntene. And in this maner  
auoyded the Danys Englonde / þ neuer  
they came ayen. The erles & barons  
by theyr comyn assente & by theyr coule-  
les sent vnto Normandy for to seke tho-  
se two brethern. Alured & Edwarde that  
were dwellynge with the duke Richarde  
that was theyr eame / in entente for to

crowne Alured the elder brother / & hym  
make kynge of Englonde. And of this  
thynge to make an ende / the erles & ba-  
rons made theyr othe. But þ erle Gode-  
win of Westsex falsely & traytoursely  
thought to see these two brethern anone  
as they sholde come in to Englonde / in  
entent / to make his sone Harold kynge  
the whiche sone he had begote vpon his  
wyfe / the whiche was kynge Knoghtes  
doughter that was a Dane. And so this  
Godewin pryuely h̄ went vnto South  
hampton for to mete there the two bre-  
thern whan þ they sholde come vnto lon-  
de. And thus it befell the messengers  
that wente in to Normandy / foude not  
but oonly Alured þ was the elder brother  
for Edwarde his brother was gone in  
to Hungary for to speke with his colyn  
Edwarde the ouclawe / þ was Edmon-  
des sone with the Jrensylde. The messen-  
gers tolde & sayd Alured / how that the  
erles & barons of Englonde sente after  
hym / & that he boldely sholde come in to  
Englonde & receyue the reame. for kyn-  
ge Hardiknocht was deed / & all the Da-  
nes dryuen out of the londe.

**H**ow Godewin the fals traytour to-  
ke Alured vpon Gyldezdowne whan  
that he came from Normandy to be kyn-  
ge of Englonde / & how he cauled hym  
to be martyred in the yle of Ely.

**A**s Alured herde these tydynges  
he thanked god. And in to thyp-  
pe went with all the hast that he myght  
and passed the see / & arryued at South-  
hampton there Godewin the fals tray-  
tour was. And whan this traytour sawe  
that he was come / he welcomed hym &  
receyued hym with moche Joye & sayd /  
that he wolde lede hym to London there  
that all the barons of Englonde hym a-  
bode to make hym kynge. And so they  
wente on theyr waye towarde London /  
And whan they came on Gyldezdowne

tho layd the traytour Godwin vnto Alured. Take kepe about you bothe on the lyfte syde & ryght syde / & of all ye shall be kynge / & of suche an hondred more / Now forsothe layd Alured . I behyght you & yf I be kynge . I shall ordeyne & make suche lawes / wherfore god & man shall be well pleased. Now had the traytour comaunded all his men that were w<sup>th</sup> hym. that whan they were come vpon Gildesdowne / that they sholde slee all þ were in Aluredes company / that came with hym fro Normandy / & after that take Alured & lede hym in to the yle of Ely / & after put out bothe his eyen of his heed / & afterwarde bynge hym to deth / & so they dyde. for they slewe all þ company that there were / the nombre of .xij. gentylmen that were come w<sup>th</sup> hym fro Normandy / & after toke they Alured & in the yle of Ely they put out his eyen & rent his wombe & toke the chyef of his bowels / & put a stake in the grounde / & an ende of the bowels therto fastened / & with nedpls eplesse of yren they pryched the good childe / and so made hym to go about the stake tyll that all his bowels were drawen out of his body / & so deyed Alured there thourgh treason of the erle Godwin. ¶ Whan the lordes of Englonde had herde & wyft how Alured that sholde haue be theyr kynge was put to deth thugh the fals traytour Godwin they were wonder wroth. And swore bys twene god & them / that he sholde deye a more wors dethe / than dyde Edyth of Stratton / that had betrayed his lorde Edmonde Jrensyde / & they wolde haue put h<sup>er</sup> to deth / but þ theyf traytour fledz thens in to Denmark / & there helde h<sup>er</sup> foure yere & more / & lost all his londe in Englonde.

**S**iluester the chyrd was pope after Benedictus. This Siluester was chole / and Benedictus was expul / syd. And afterwarde was he expul / syd.

Benedictus was put by ayen. And after he was put out / and Gregorius was made pope . And he was but a symple let / tred man / & therfore he chole an other man for to be consecrate with hym. And whan many men were dyspleased with this gydynge of two popes / the chyrd was brought in / the whiche sholde occupye the place of bothe tho two. And soo they stroue amonge themself. But Henry the Emperour came thenne to Rome & depolysd them all / and made Clement the seconde pope / whome he made anone to crowne hym . And he layd to the Romayns / they sholde neuer chere pope without his assent. And so fyue beyng popes / the sixte was put in . But many men saie / this Gregorius was an holy man. ¶ Damalius the seconde was after Clement .xx. dayes. This man was an vlsurper of the popeheed / and soo he deyed sodenly. And anone the Romayns asked to haue a pope / & that the Almaynes sholde haue none. For they were soo harde herted / that they myght not encline to the entente of the Emperour / the whiche layd . There sholde be no pope cholen but yf he wolde be of counseyll of the eleccyon . But for all that they putt in this holy man Leo / & after he had of that conscyence / & refused . And anone he was cholen by the comyn assent / this Leo put Cryste in the fourme of a saler in his owne bedde / & in the morowe he founde no thyng there.

¶ Of saynt Edwarde the Confessor / that was Aluredes brother / how he was kynge of Englonde.

**A**nd whan this was done / all the barons of Englonde sent an o / ther tyme in to Normandy / for that Edwarde sholde come in to Englonde with moche honour. ¶ And this Edwarde in his childehode loued almyghty god and hym dradde. And in honeste & clenness

had ladde his lyf / & hated synne as deeth  
And whan he was crowned & anoynted  
with a ryall power / he forgate not his  
good maners & condycyons that he fyrst  
vled. And forgate not al good customes  
for no manere honour / ne for ryches / ne  
no manere hyghnes. But cuer more and  
more yaued hym to goodnesse / and loued  
god and holy chirche passynge all other  
manere thyng. And poore men also he  
loued / & them helde as they had ben his  
owne brethern. And to them oft he yaued  
grette almesse with full good wyll.

**O**f the fyrst specyal loue that god the  
wed to saynt Edwarde luyng.

**I**t befell on a dape / as he wente  
from the chirche of Westmynstre.  
& had herde masse of saynt Johan the  
Euangelyst / for as moche as he loued  
saynt John Euangelyst more specpally  
after god & our lady than he dyde ony o-  
ther saynt. And so there came to hym a  
pylgryme / & prayed hym for the loue of  
god & our lady & saynt John the Euan-  
gelyst some good hym for to yeue. And h  
kyng pryuely toke his ryng of his fyn-  
ger / that no man percepued it & yaued it  
to the pylgryme / & he it recepued & went  
thens. **T**his kyng Edwarde made  
alle the good lawes of Englonde / that  
yet ben moost vled & holden. And was  
so mercpable and so full of pyte / that no  
man myght be more.

**H**ow the erle Godewin came apen in  
to Englonde & had apen all his londe /  
and afterwarde saynt Edwarde wedded  
his doughter.

**A**s the Erle Godewin that was  
adwellyng in Denmarke had  
moche herde of the goodnesse of kyng  
Edwarde / & that he was so full of mer-  
cy & of pyte. He thoughte that he wolde  
go apen in to Englonde / for to seke & to

haue grace of the good kyng Edwarde  
that so mercpfull was / that he myght  
haue apen his londe in peas. And aray-  
ed hym as moche as he myght & put h  
to warde the see & came in to Englonde  
to London there that the kyng was that  
tyme & all the lordes of Englonde / and  
helde a parlyament. Godewin sente to  
hym that were his frendes / & were the  
moost grettest lordes of the londe / & pray-  
ed them to belesche the kynges grace for  
hym / & that he wolde his peas & his lon-  
de grannte hym. The lordes ledde hym  
before the kyng to seke his grace. And  
anone as the kyng hym sawe / he apeled  
hym of treason / & of the deeth of Alured  
his brother / and these wordes vnto hym  
sayd. Traytour Godewin sayd the kyn-  
ge I the appele / that thou hast betrayed  
& slayne my brother Alured. Certes syr  
sayd Godewin. sauyng your grace and  
your peas & your lordshipp. I hym neuer  
betrayed / ne yet hym slewe. And therfo-  
re I put me in rewarde of h court. Now  
fayr lordes sayd the kyng. Ye that ben  
my lpeges / erles and barons of the londe  
that here be assembled / full well ye hers  
de myn appele / and the answer also of  
Godewin / and therfore I woll that ye  
award & dooth ryght. The erles & bar-  
ons tho gadred them all togpyder for to  
do this awarde by themselves / and so they  
spake dyuersely amonge them. for some  
sayd / there was neuer alpayce by homa-  
ge seriment serupce / ne by lordshipp by-  
twene Godewin and Alured / for which  
thyng they myght hym drawe. And aft-  
er the laste they deupled and demed / that  
he sholde put hym in the kynges mercy  
all togpyder. Tho spake the erle Leuerik  
of Couentree a good man to god and to  
all the worlde / and tolde his reason in  
this maner & sayd. The erle Godewin  
is the best frended man of Englonde af-  
ter the kyng / & well it myght not be a-  
gayne sayd / that without counsell of Go-  
dewin Alured was neuer putt to dethe.

Wherfore I awarde as towchynge my parte/that hymself & his lone & euery of vs. xij. erles that ben his frendes go befo re the kynge/charged with as moche gol de & syluer as we may bere betwixt our hondes/prayenge the kynge to forgeue his euill wpll to the erle Godewin/ & re ceue his homage / & his londe yelde a/ yen. And they accorded vnto that awar de/and came in this maner as is aboue sayd/ euery of them with golde & syluer as moche as they myghte bere bytwene her hondes before the kynge/ & there lay de the fourme & the maner of theyr acor de & of theyr awarde. The kyng wolde not thcym agaynslaye/ but as moche as they ordeyned/ he graūted & confermed. And so was the erle Godewin accorded with the kynge/ & so he had ayen all his londe. And afterwarde he bare hym soo well & soo wysely/ that the kynge loued hym worder moche/ & with hym he was ful preuy. And within a lytell tyme they loued soo moche / that there the kynge spowled Godewins doughter/ & made her quene. And neuerthelesse though the kynge had a wyfe / yet he lyued euer in chastyete & clenness of body without ony fleshly dede doynge with his wyf. And the quene also in her halfe ladde an holy lyl two yere/ & deyed. And afterwar de the kynge lyued all his lyfe withoute ony wyf. ¶ The kyng paue the erledom of Drenforde to Harolde that was Godewins lone/ & made hym erle. And soo well they were beloued/ bothe the fader & he/ and so pryue with the kynge/ both the fader & the lone/ that they myght do by ryght what thynge that they wolde/ for ayenst ryght wolde he no thynge do for no maner man/ so good and true he was of conspence. And therfore our lord de Ihesu Cryste grete specyll loue vnto hym shewed.

¶ How kynge Edwarde sawe Swyne kynge of Denmark drowned in the see

in the tyme of the Sacrament as he stode & herde masse.

**I**T befelle vppon Wyfclondaye as kynge Edwarde herde his masse in the grete chirche of Westmestre ryght at the leuacyon of Ihesu Crystys body/ & as all men were gadied in to the chir che/ and came nygh the awter for to see the sacrynge/ the kynge his hondes lyft vp on hyghe / and a grete laughter toke vp. Wherfore all that aboute hym stode gretefully ganne wonder. And after masse/ they axed why the kynges laughter was fayre lorde sayd kynge Edwarde. I sawe Swyne the yonger that was kynge of Denmark come in to the see with all his power for to haue come in to Eng/ londe vpon vs for to warre. And I sawe hym & all his folke drowned in the see. and alle this I sawe in the leuacyon of Crystis body bytwene the preestes honz de/ and I had therfore so grete Joye that I myghte not my laughter withholde. ¶ And the erle Leueyrk belyde hym stode at the leuacyon/ and openly sawe the fourme of biede torne in the lyknesse of a yonge childe/ & toke vp his ryght honz de and blessyd the kynge & after the erle and the erle anone turned hym towarde the kynge for to make hym see that holy syght. And tho sayd the kynge. ¶ Syre Erle sayd he I see well that ye see/ that hed be god & I haue honoured my god my sauyour vilybly Ihesu Cryst in four me of man. Whoos name be blessyd in all worldes. **A M E N**

¶ How the kynge that saynt Edwarde had gyuen to a pooze pylgryme/ for the loue of god & saynt Johan Euangelyst came ayen to kynge Edwarde.

**T**his noble man saynt Edwarde regned. xij. yere. And thus it befell vpon a tyme are he deyed/ that two men of Englonde were gone in to holy

londe/ & had done theyr pylgrymage/ & were goynge apen in to theyr owne couñtree where they came fro. And as they wente in the waye/ they mette a pylgryme that curteply them saluwed/ & axed of them in what londe & in what couñtree they were borne. And they sayd in Englonde. Tho axed he who was kynge of Englonde. And they answered & sayd. the good kynge Edwarde. ¶ Fayre fren des sayd tho the pylgryme / whan that ye come in to your couñtree apen. I praye you that ye wyll go vnto kynge Edwarde/ & oftentymes grete hym in myn name/ and oftentymes hym thanke of his grete curteplye/ that he to me hath done & namely for the ryngge that he yaued me whan he had herde masse at Westmestire for saynt Johans loue Euangelyst And toke the ryngge/ & toke it to the pylgrymes & sayd. I praye you go and bere this ryngge/ & take it vnto kynge Edwarde/ & telle hym that I sende it hym/ & a full ryche yeste I wyll hym yeuue. for vpon the .xij. dawe he shall come vnto me/ & euer moie dwelle in blysse without ony ende. ¶ Syr sayd the pylgrymes/ what man be ye/ and in what couñtree is your dwellynge. ¶ Fayre fren des sayd he. I am John the Euangelyst/ & I am dwellynge with almyghty god/ & your kynge Edwarde is my frende/ & I loue hym in specyall for by cause that he hath euer more lpyued in clenness & is a clene mayde/ & I praye you my message fulfyll as I haue you sayd. Whan þ saynt John þ Euangelyst had them thus charged/ so denyly he voyded out of theyr syghts both The pylgrymes tho thanked almyghty god & went forth theyr waye. And whan they had gone two or thre myle/ they began to waxe wery & sette them adowne for to rest them/ & so they felle on slepe/ And whan they had slepte well/ one of them awoke & lyfte vp his heed & looked about/ & sayd to his felowe. Aryse vp & walke we in our waye. What sayd that

one felowe vnto that other/ where be we now. Certes sayd that other/ it seemeth me that this is not the same couñtree there we layde vs downe in for to rest & slepe. for we were from Jerusalem but thre myle. They toke vp theyr hondes & blesyd them/ & wente forth in theyr waye/ And as they went in theyr waye/ they sawe sheperdes goynge with theyr shepe þ spake none other langage but englyshe ¶ Good fren des sayd one of the pylgrymes/ what couñtree is this/ & who is lord thereof. ¶ And one of the sheperdes answered & sayd/ this couñtree is the couñtree of Kente in Englonde/ of the whiche the good kynge Edwarde is lorde of. The pylgrymes thanked tho almyghty god & saynt John Euangelyst/ & wente forth in theyr waye & came to Launterbury/ & fro thens vnto London/ & there they foude the kynge. And tolde hym all from the begynnynge vnto the endynge almoche as saynt John had them charged/ & of all thynge how they had sped by the waye. And toke the ryngge to kynge Edwarde/ & he toke it/ & thanked almyghty god & saynt John Euangelyst And tho made hym redy euery dawe fro dawe to dawe to departe out of this lyf/ whan god wolde for hym sende.

¶ How saynt Edwarde deyd the Twelfth dawe.

¶ And after it befell thus on Crystmasse euen/ as the holy man Edwarde was at goddes seruyce matyns for to here of that hyghe solempne feest. he became full spke/ and in the morowe endured with moche payne the masse for to here. And after masse he lete hym be ladde in to his chambre/ there for to reste hym. But in his halle amonge his barons and his knyghtes myght he not come theym for to comforte and solace/ as he was wonte for to do at that worthy feest. Wherfore all theyr myrth and

comfort amonge al that were in the hal-  
 le was turned in to care & sorowe/bycau-  
 se they dradde for to lese the good lorde  
 the kyng. ¶ And vpon saynt John dave  
 Euangelyst that came next/the kyng re-  
 ceved his ryghtes of holy chirche/as it  
 befalleth to euery crysten man/& abode  
 the mercy & y will of god. And the two  
 pylgrymes he lese before hym come & va-  
 ue theym ryche yestes & betoke theym to  
 god. Also the abbot of Westmestre he le-  
 se before hym come & toke hym that yun-  
 ge in the honour of god & saynt Mary/  
 & of saynt Johan the Euangelyst. And  
 the abbot toke it & put it amonge othet  
 relikes/so that it is at Westmestre/& es-  
 uer shall be/& so lape the kyng syke tyll  
 the twelfth eue. And tho deyed the good  
 kyng Edwarde at Westmestre/& there  
 he lyeth. for whoos loue god hath she-  
 wed many a fayre myracle. ¶ And this  
 was in the yere of the Incarnacyon of  
 our lorde Jhesu Cryste .M.lxv. And af-  
 ter he was translated & put in to y shry-  
 ne by the noble martyr saynt Thomas  
 of Caunterbury.

**U**ictor the seconde was pope af-  
 ter Leo/& of hym lytell is wy-  
 ten. ¶ Henry y seconde was Emperour  
 after the fyrst Henry .xviij. yere/this man  
 was colyn to Conradus/& he was borne  
 in a wood/& twyes taken for to be slay-  
 ne whan he was a childe/but god defen-  
 ded hym euermore. Whan he was made  
 Emperour many a monastery he made  
 in the same place in the wood where he  
 was borne. This man was a victoruous  
 man/& he entred in to Italy/& there he  
 toke Padulphus the prynce of Campa-  
 ny. ¶ Stephanus the .ix. was pope after  
 Victor .ix. monethes. ¶ Benedictus af-  
 ter hym/& he toke the dygnyte of the po-  
 pe Stephanus by strength & kept it .ix.  
 monethes/& thenne deceasyd. ¶ Henry  
 the thyrde was Emperour after Henry  
 the seconde/this Henry was an Inque-

te man/& many tymes troubled that ho-  
 ly man Gregorius the .viij. And fyrst he  
 axed foryeuenesse & was alloyled. But  
 he perceued not longe/but brought in  
 an other pope ayenst hym/and layd he  
 was an heretyke. And Gregori<sup>9</sup> cursyd  
 hym. And the chelers of the Emperour  
 they chose the duke of Saxon for to be  
 Emperour/whom this Henry in batay-  
 le ouercame. And thenne he came to Ro-  
 me with his pope & purswed pope Gre-  
 gorius & the Cardynalles also. ¶ And  
 thenne anone Robert the kyng of Na-  
 ples droue hym thens/and delyuered the  
 pope & his Cardynalles. Neuerthelesse  
 yet he was a man of grete almesse. And  
 .xij. tymes he faught in batayll/and att  
 the laste he deyed wretchedly/for he was  
 put there by his owne lone. for so as he  
 dyde to other men/so was he done vnto  
 ¶ Nichola<sup>9</sup> the seconde was pope after  
 Benedictus two yere/this Nichola<sup>9</sup> cal-  
 led a couseyll ayenst the Archedeken of  
 Turonoleus/the whiche was an herety-  
 ke/& he taught ayenst the fayth. for he  
 erred in the sacrament / & after he was  
 couerted & was an holy man/but he cou-  
 de neuer couerte his dyscyples. Nota.  
 ¶ Alexander y seconde was pope after  
 hym .xij. yere/this Alexand was an holy  
 man.& he ordeyned y vnder payne of cur-  
 syng that no man sholde here a priest's  
 masse whom men knewe had a lemman  
 (Wt pz .xxxij. pter hoc) He had stryue w  
 one Godulo/but he expulsd hy as an v-  
 surper/& put hym out as a lymonper.

¶ How Harolde that was Godewins  
 lone was made kyng/& how he escaped  
 from the duke of Normandy.

**A**S saynt Edward was gone out  
 of this worlde/& was passed to  
 god & worthely enteryd as to suche a gre-  
 te lorde ought / the barons of the londe  
 wolde haue had Edwarde Elingus. so-  
 ne to Edwarde the ouclawe that was

Edmonde Irenspdes sone to be kyng/  
 for as moche as he was moost kyndest  
 kynges blood of the reame. ¶ But Ha-  
 raldes sone thugh the erle Godewin / &  
 the strength of his fader Godewin / and  
 thugh othec grete lordes of the reame/  
 that were of his kynne & vnto h<sup>y</sup> lybbe  
 sealed all Englonde in to his honde / &  
 anone lete crowne hym kyng after the  
 entrement of Saynt Edwarde. This  
 Harolde that was Godewines sone the  
 seconde yere afore that saynt Edwarde  
 was deed / wolde haue gone in to flaun-  
 dres / but he was dryuen thugh tempest  
 in to the coustree of Pountple / & there he  
 was taken & brought to duke Wyllyam  
 And this Harolde wende that tho this  
 duke Wyllyam wolde haue be auenged  
 vpon hym / for by cause that h<sup>e</sup> erle Go-  
 dewin that was Haroldes fader / had le-  
 te flee Alured that was saynt Edwardes  
 brother / & pryncypally for by cause that  
 Alured was quene Emmes sone / that  
 was Richardes moder duke of Norman-  
 dy / that was aienll to the duke William  
 And neuertheles whan the duke Willis-  
 am had Harolde in pryson & vnder his  
 power / for almoche as this Harold was  
 a noble wyle knyght & a worthy of bo-  
 dy / & that his fader & he was accorded  
 with good kyng Edwarde / & therfore  
 wolde not myldo hym. But all manere  
 thynges that betwixt them was spoken  
 and ordeyned. Harolde by his good wyl  
 swore vpon a boke / & vpon holy sayntes  
 that he sholde spoule & wedde duke Wil-  
 lyams doughter after the deeth of saynt  
 Edwarde / & that he sholde besely do his  
 deuour for to kepe & saue the reame of  
 Englonde vnto the profyte & auantage  
 of duke Wyllyam. ¶ And whan Harol-  
 de had thus made his othe vnto h<sup>e</sup> duke  
 Wyllyam / he lete hym goo / & paue hym  
 many a ryche yettes. And he tho wente  
 thens / & came in to Englonde / & anone  
 dyde in this manere. Whan saynt Ed-  
 warde was deed / & as a man fallly for

sworne / he lete crowne hym kyng of En-  
 glonde / and falsely brake the couenaunt  
 that he had made before with duke Wil-  
 lyam / wherfore he was wonder wrothe  
 with hym & swore / that he wolde vpon  
 hym be auenged what some euer hym  
 befell. ¶ And anone duke Wyllyam lete  
 assemble a grete hoste & came in to En-  
 glonde to auenge hym vpon Harolde / &  
 to conquere the londe yf that he myght.  
 ¶ And in the same yere that Harolde  
 was crowned. Harolde Herestrynge kyn-  
 ge of Denmarke arryued in Scotlonde  
 & thought to haue be kyng of Englonde  
 & he came in Englonde & robbed / &  
 destroyed all that he myght / tyll that he  
 came to Porke / & there he slewe many  
 men of armes a thoulande & a hondred  
 prestes. Whan this tydynges came to h<sup>e</sup>  
 kyng / he assembled a grete power / and  
 wente for to fyght w<sup>th</sup> Harolde of Den-  
 mark / & with his owne hondes he hym  
 slewe / & the Danes were dyscomfyted /  
 and tho that were left aloue with moche  
 sorowe fledde to theyr shyppes. And th<sup>e</sup>  
 kyng Harolde of Englonde lewe kyn-  
 ge Harolde of Denmark.

¶ Anno dñi .M. lxxvi.

¶ How William Bastarde duke of Nor-  
 mandy came in to Englonde / and slewe  
 kyng Harolde.





**A**nd whan this batayll was done. Haroldde became so proude / & wolde no thyng parte with his people of the thyng that he had gotten / but helde it all to hymself. Wherfore the moost parte of his people were wrothe & from hym departed / so soonly w<sup>th</sup> hym abode nomoo but his soldyours. And vpon a dape as he late at meete / a messager came to hy<sup>m</sup> & sayd / that Wyllyam bastarde the duke of Normandy was aryued in Englonde w<sup>th</sup> a grete hoste / & had take all the londe about Shalynge / & also myned the castell. Whan the kynge had herd this tydynge / he went thither w<sup>th</sup> a lptell power in all the hast / & he myght for there were but fewe peole with hym left. And whan he was come thyder / he ordeyned to yeue bataylle to duke Wyllyam. But the duke axed hym of these thre thynges / yf that he wolde haue his doughter to wyf as he made & swore his othe & behyght / or that he wolde holde the londe of hym in truage / or he wolde determyne this thyng in batayll. This Haroldde was a proude man & a stronge & trusted wonder moche vpon his strengthe / and faught with the duke William and w<sup>th</sup> his people. But Haroldde and his men in this batayll were dyscomfyted / and hymself there was slayne / and this batayll was ended at Tombrydge in the seconde yere of his regne / vpon saynt Calixtus dape / & so he was buryed at Waltham.

**O**f kynge Wyllyam bastarde & how he gouerned hym well and wply / and of the grete warre bytwene hym & the kynge of fraunce.

**A**s Wyllyam Bastarde duke of Normandy had conquered all y<sup>e</sup>londe / vpon Crystmasse dape then nexte he lete crowne hym kynge at Westmestre & as a worthy kynge gaue vnto Englysh men largely londes / & to his knyghtes /

And afterwarde he wente hym ouer the see & came in to Normandy / & there he dwelled a whyle. And in the seconde yere of his regne he came ayen in to Englonde / & brought with hym Maude his wyf & lete crowne her quene of Englonde on Wyfsondape. And tho anone after the kynge of Scotlonde / that was called Malcolin began to stryue & warre w<sup>th</sup> the kynge Wyllyam. And he ordeyned hym towarde Scotlonde with his men bothe by londe & by see / for to destroye kynge Malcolin. But they were accorded / & y<sup>e</sup> kynge of Scotlonde became his man / & helde all his londe of hym. And kynge William receyued of hym his homage & came ayen in to Englonde. And as kynge William had be kynge .xviij. yere. Maude y<sup>e</sup> quene deyd / on whom kynge William had begote many fayre children / that is for to say. Robert Turchos William Rous. Richarde also that deyd. Henry Beauclerke / and Maude also that was the erles wyf of Blynes / & o<sup>th</sup>er foure fayr doughters. And after his wyues dethe / grete debate began betwixt hym & the kynge of fraunce Philip but at the laste they were accorded. And tho dwelled the kynge of Englonde in Normandy / & noo man hym warned / & he no man longe tyme. And the kynge of fraunce sayd vpon a dape in scoone of kynge William had longe tyme lpen in childe bedde / & longe tyme had rested hym there. And this worde came to the kynge of Englonde there that he dyde lye in Normandy at Rone. And for this worde was tho euyl apayed / & also wonder wroth towarde the kynge of fraunce. And swore by god / that whan he were aryen of his lykenesse / he wolde lpyghten a thousande candelles to the kynge of fraunce / & anone lete assemble a grete hoste of Normandy & of Englysh men. And in the begynnynge of Heruel he came in to fraunce / & biente all the townes that they came by thugh the

countree/and robbed & dyde all the loze  
 we that he myght thugh out all fraun  
 ce. And at the last he brenned the cyte of  
 Mandos/and commaunded his people  
 to bere wood/& as moche as he myghte  
 brenne. And hymselfe halpe ther to alle  
 that he myghte with a good wyll. And  
 there was a grete hete/what of the fyre  
 that was so grete/& of the sonne that it  
 was wonder hote/that it stuffed hym so  
 that he became & felle in to a grete dys  
 ease & syknesse. And whan he sawe that  
 he was so stronge syke/he ordeyned & al  
 sygnd all Normandy to Robert Cur  
 thos his sone / & all Englonde to Wyl  
 lyam the Rous/and bequaue to Henry  
 Beauclerke all his treasour. And whan  
 he thus had done/he receyued all the sa  
 crament's of holy chirche/& deyed the .xx.  
 yere of his regne/& lyeth at Lane in Nor  
 mandy.

¶ Anno dñi .M. lxxvi.

**O** Regorius the .viij. was pope after  
 Alexander .xij. yere/this man orde  
 yned in a generall Synodus/that no  
 preeft sholde haue a wyf ne sholde dwel  
 le with wyemen/but tho that þe holy Sy  
 nodus of Nicena & other decrees hadde  
 suffred. And then þe preeft's sette nought  
 or lytell pondred his ordynaunce. This  
 pope comaunded þe no man sholde here  
 masse of a preeft þe had a cocubyne. And  
 he on a certayn tyme whan he was Car  
 dynall & Legate in to fraunce/proceeded  
 sharply ayenst prelates & preeftes/that  
 were symoniers. And among other was  
 one byshop there that was gretely fa  
 med with symonye. And those that accu  
 sed hym/pryuelly he hypered them to laye  
 the countrarpe. The whiche the Legate  
 conceyued/& afore all the people he lay  
 de. Lete the Jugement of this men celle  
 at this tyme for it is dyscepuable/& lete  
 god dyspose for it. And sayd/thus it is  
 certayne. That the dygnyte of a byshop

is the yeuer of the holy ghost. And who  
 some euer byeth a byshopryche/doth a  
 yent þe holy ghost. Thenne yf thou bys  
 shop dyde not ayenst the holy ghost/laye  
 openly afore all the people (Gloria pa  
 tri et filio et spiritui sancto) And many  
 tymes he began to laye it / but he coude  
 neuer speke (spiritui sancto) Thenne  
 he was depolyd of his byshopryche/and  
 after he coude speke it well ynoughe.  
 ¶ Victor the thyrde was pope after hym  
 do yere/& this man was poysoned with  
 venym in the chalys. ¶ Urbanus was po  
 pe after hym two yere. This man cur  
 syd the kynge of fraunce for his aduoul  
 terye. And he called a counseyll at Claru  
 in the whiche he ordeyned/that matyns  
 of our lady sholde be layd euery daye/&  
 on Saterdaye her solempne masse. And  
 it is layd/that this was shewed vnto þe  
 freres of Cartulis. ¶ Also he called an  
 other couñseyll at Turam for the holy  
 londe to be wonne ayen/& prouoked the  
 people to that matere / & within a lytell  
 tyme after that matere / the holy londe  
 was recouered & the sepulcre of our loz  
 de/& Anthioche with many other cytees  
 taken fro the Sarralyns. And it is layd  
 & men byleued that .L.C.M. crysten men  
 wente to that Journey. for there wente  
 of states olde men & yonge/and also ry  
 che and poore/and noo man compelled  
 theym. And this passage was made by  
 the dysyon of our lady. And the prynces  
 of this people were dyuerse. One was  
 Godfroyde Boloyne a full noble man  
 of all the worlde/and a vertuous man/  
 And an other was Beemonde the Du  
 ke of Neaples. The thyrde was Hughe  
 the kynge's brother of fraunce/& many  
 other/the whiche dyde full nobly for the  
 fayth of god. ¶ And it were to longe in  
 this booke to reherce the gloriouse actes  
 that they dyde.

¶ Of kynge Wyllyam Rous that was  
 kynge Wyllyams bastardes sone / that

destroyed townes & houses of Kelyggon  
for to make the newe forest.

**A**nd after this Wylliam bastars  
de regned his sone William the  
Rous. And this Wylliam was a won-  
der contrarpyous man to god & holy chir-  
che/and lete amende & make the towne  
of Cardeis/that the Paynems had des-  
troyed. This kyng Wylliam destroyed  
holy chirche & theyr possessyons. in what  
parte he myght them fynde. And therfor-  
re there was soo moche debate bytwene  
hym & the Archebysshop of Caunterbur-  
ry Ancelmus. for by cause that he repre-  
uyd hym of his wychednesse/that he de-  
stroyed holy chirche. And for that cause  
the kyng bare to hym grete wrath. And  
so he exyled hym out of this londe/and  
the Archebysshop wente to the courte of  
Rome / & there dwailed with the pope/  
And this kyng made the newe forest/ &  
caste downe & destroyed. xxvi. townes/ &  
lxxx. houses of Kelyggon/ all for to ma-  
ke his forest lenger & broder. And beca-  
me wond gladd & proude of his wood  
& of his forest. And nourysshed the wyl-  
de beestes that were within/that it was  
meruaylle for to wyte/so that men cal-  
led hym heper of woodes & of pastures.  
And the more lenger that he lyued / the  
more wyched he became both to god & to  
all holy chirche & to all his men. And  
this kyng lete make the grete halle of  
Westmestre. So vpon a daye in þe Wyt-  
sontyde he helde therein his fyrst feest/ &  
he loked hym aboute and sayd/that the  
halle was so lytell by þe half deale. And  
at the laste he became soo contrarpyous/  
that all thyng þe pleased god/dysplea-  
sed hym/ & alle thyng that god loued/  
he hated deedly. And so it befell/that  
he drempd vpon a nyght a lytell or that  
he deyed/that he was lete blood/ & bled  
a grete quantyte of blood/ & a streame of  
blood lepte on hygh towarde heuen mo-  
re than a hondred fadom/and the clere/

nesse of the daye was tordned vnto nyght  
and derkenesse of the fyrment also/  
And whan that he awoke he had gre-  
te drede/so that he not wist what for to  
doo. And tolde his dreme to men of his  
coulepyll & sayd/that he had grete drede/  
& suppolyd that to hym was some myst-  
chaunce to come. And þe seconde nyght  
before a monke drempd of the houshol-  
de/that the kyng wente in to a chirche  
with moche people/and he was proude  
that he despyled all the people that wes-  
re with hym/ & that he toke the ymage  
of the Crucifixe/ & shamefully bote it w-  
his teeth. And the Crucifixe mekely suf-  
fred all that he dyde. But yet the kyng  
& as a wood man rente of the armes of  
the Crucifixe/ & cast it vnder his feet/ &  
defoylled it / and threwe it all a brode/  
And a grete fyre came out of the Crucif-  
ixe mouthe. Of whiche dreme many a  
man had grete meruaylle and wondre/  
The good man that had drempd this  
straunge dreme/ tolde it to a knyght that  
was moost pryue with the kyng of all  
men/ & the knyght was called Hamon-  
des. Soone the monke & he tolde the  
dremes to the kyng & sayd. That it shol-  
de betokenen ocher thyng than good/  
And neuertheles þe kyng laughed therat  
twyes or thryes/and lytel sette therby/ &  
thought that he wolde goo & hunte/and  
playe in the forest. And men coulepylled  
hym that he sholde not go that daye for  
no maner thyng ne come in the wood/  
so that he abode at home before meete/  
But anone as he had eten no man hyn-  
myght lette / but he wolde goo vnto the  
wood for to haue his dysporte. And  
so it befell that one of his knyghtes that  
hyght Walter Tyrell wolde haue shoe  
to an harte/and his arowe glensyd vps  
on a braunche/and thorough myslauten-  
re smote the kyng to the herte. And soo  
he felle downe deed to the groude with-  
out ony woide spehyng/and soo ended  
his lyf dayes. And it was no meruayll/

for the daye that he deyed he had lete to ferme the Archebysshopryche of Caüterbury and .xij. abbayes also / & euermore dyde greate destruccyon to holy chirche / thugh wrongfull takynge & arynge / for no man durst withstande that he wolde haue done. And of his lewdenes he wolde neuer withdraue / nother to amende his lyfe. And therfore god wolde suffre hym no lenger to regne in his wyckednes And he had be kyng .xiiij. yere and .vi. weekes / & lyeth at Westmestre

¶ Anno dñi .M. lxxviiij.

**P**alschall was pope after Urban<sup>9</sup> .xviij. yere and .v. monethes / the whiche the .xiiij. yere of his bysshopryche w<sup>h</sup> his Cardynalles was put in pylson / by Henry the fourth Emperour. And they myght not be deliuered vntyll the pope had sworne that he sholde kepe peas w<sup>h</sup> hym / & that he sholde neuer curse hym / And on that promysse / the pope gaue the Emperour a preuylege / & the yere after the pope damned that preuylege / & sayd on this wyse. Lete vs comprehend al holy scrypture the olde testamēt & the newe the lawes of the prophēcies / the gospell & the canons of appostles / & all the decrees of the popes of Rome / that al they helde I holde / & that that they dampned I dampne / & moost specially that preuylege graunted to Henry the Emperour / the whiche rather is graunted to venge his malyce / than to mulceplye his pacyence in vertue. for euer more I dampne that same preuylege.

¶ Of kyng Henry Beauclerk that was Wyllyam Rous brocher / and of the debate bytwene hym & Robert Curthos his brocher.

**A**nd whan Wyllyam Rous was deed. Henry Beauclerk his brod was made kyng / by cause Wyllyam

Rous had no childe begote on his body. And this Henry Beauclerk was crowned kyng at London the fourth daye after that his brother was deceyde / that is to saye / the fyfth daye of August. ¶ And anone as Ancelmus that was Archebysshop of Caüterbury that was at the court of Rome herde tell that William Rous was deed / he came apen in to Englonde & the kyng Henry welcomed hym with moche honour. And the fyrste yere that kyng Henry reigned & was crowned. He spowled Maude that was Margaretes doughter the quene of Scotlonde. And the Archebysshop Ancelmus of Caüterbury wedded them. And this kyng begate vpon his wyfe two lones & a doughter / that is to saye. Wyllyam and Richard & Maude. And this Maude was afterwarde the Emperesse of Almayne. ¶ And in the seconde yere of his regne / his brod Robert Curthos / that was duke of Normandy came with an huge hoste in to Englonde for to chalenge the londe. But thugh counseyll of the wyse men of the londe / they were accorded in this manere. That the kyng sholde geue his brother the duke a thousande pounce euery yere. And whiche of them that lyued lengest sholde be that others heyre / and so bytwene them sholde be no debate ne stryfe. ¶ And then whan they were thus accorded / the duke wente home agayne in to Normandy. ¶ And whan the kyng had reigned foure yere. there arose a grete debate bytwene hym and the Archebysshop of Caunterbury Ancelmus. for by cause that the Archebysshop wolde not graunte to hym for to talenges of churches at his wyll. And the reforde efdones the Archebysshoppe Ancelmus wente ouer the see vnto the courte of Rome & there he dwelled with the pope. And in the same yere the duke of Normandy came in to Englonde to speke w<sup>h</sup> his brocher. ¶ And amonge all other thynges the duke of Normandy.

forpauē vnto the kynge his brother the  
forlaid thousande poude by yere that he  
sholde paye vnto the duke. And w good  
loue the kynge & the duke departed / &  
there þ duke wente ayen in to Norman-  
dy. ¶ And whan tho two yere were ago-  
ne / through the entycement of the deuyl  
& of synple men / a grete debate arose  
bytwene the kynge & the duke / soo that  
through counseyll the kynge wente ouer þ  
see in to Normandy / & whan the kynge  
of Englonde was come in to Norman-  
dy / all the grete lordes of Normande too-  
ned vnto the kynge of Englonde & hel-  
de ayenst þ duke theyr owne lorde / & hþ  
forloke / & to the kynge them yelde / & all  
the good castelles & townes of Norman-  
dy. And soone after was the duke taken  
& ladde with the kynge in to Englonde  
And the kyng lete put the duke in to pry-  
son / & this was the vengeaunce of god /  
¶ For whanne the duke was in the holy  
londe / god paue hym luche myght & gra-  
ce / that he was cholen for to haue be hþ  
ge of Iherusalem / and he forloke it and  
wolde not take it vpon hym / and ther-  
fore god sente hym that shame & despy-  
te for to be putt in his brothers pryson /  
Tho sealed kynge Henry all Norman-  
dy in to his honde / & helde it all his lyfe  
tyme. ¶ And in the same yere came the  
bysshop Ancelmus fro the courte of Ro-  
me in to Englonde ayen. And the kyng  
& he were accorded. ¶ And in the next  
yere compynge after / there began a grete  
debate bytwene the kynge Phylippe of  
fraunce & kynge Henry of Englonde /  
Wherfore kynge Henry wente in to Nor-  
mandye / & there was stronge warre by-  
twene them two. And tho deyed the kyn-  
ge of fraunce / & lowys his sone was ma-  
de kynge anone after his dech. And tho  
wente kynge Henry ayen in to Englon-  
de / & maryed Maude his doughter vnto  
Henry the Emperour of Almayne.

¶ Of the debate that was betwixt kyn

ge Lowys of fraunce & kynge Henry of  
Englonde / & how kynge Henryes two  
sones were losse in the hyghe see.

**A**S kynge Henry had be kynge  
xviij. yere / a grete debate arose be-  
twixt kynge Lowys of fraunce & kynge  
Henry of Englonde / for by cause that þ  
kynge had sente in to Normandy to his  
men / that they sholde be helpynge vnto  
therle of Bloys almoche as they myght  
in warre ayenst the kynge of fraunce /  
And that they sholde be as redy to hym  
as they were to theyr owne lorde / for by  
cause that therle had spowled his syster  
dame Maude. And for this cause þ kyn-  
ge of fraunce dyde moche sorowe to Nor-  
mandy. Wherfore the kynge of Englon-  
de was wonder wroth / & in haste wente  
ouer the see with a grete power / & came  
in to Normandy for to defende that lon-  
de. And the warre bytwene them lasted  
two yere / tyll at the last they two faught  
to gyder. And the kynge of fraunce was  
dylcomfyted / & vnnethes escaped awaye  
with moche payne / & the moost partye  
of his men were taken. And the kynge  
dyde with theym what hym best lyked /  
And some of them he lete go freely / and  
some he lete be put vnto the dech. But  
afterwarde thole two kyngs were accor-  
ded. And whan kynge Henry had hooly  
all the londe of Normandy / & scomfy-  
ted his ennys of fraunce / he torned a-  
gayne in to Englonde with moche hos-  
nour. And his two sones William & Ry-  
charde wolde haue come after the fader  
& went to the see with a grete company  
of people. But are that they myght co-  
me to londe / the schyppes came ayenst a  
roche & all were drowned that were the-  
re in / saue oo man that was in the same  
schyppes that escaped. And this was vpon  
saint Katheryns dape / & thele were the  
names of them that were drowned. Wil-  
lyam and Rycharde the kynges sones /  
the erle of Chestre Otonell / his brocher

Geffroy Rydell. Walter Emurci. Gos-  
defray Archedeken. the kynges doughter  
the countesse of Perches. the kynges  
niece the countesse of Chestre. & many o-  
ther. ¶ Whan kyng Henry & other lor-  
des arryued in Englonde. & herde these  
tydynge / they made sorowe ynough /  
And all theyr myrth & Joye was torned  
in to mornynge & sorowe.

¶ How Maude þ Empresse came apen  
in Englonde. & how she was afterward  
wedded to Geffroy therle of Angoy.

**A**nd whan that two yere were as  
gone that the Erle had dwelled  
with the kyng. the erle wente from the  
kyng. & began to warre vpon hym & dy-  
de moche harme in þ lond of Norman-  
dy. & toke there a stronge castell & there  
he dwelled all that yere. And tho came  
to hym tydynge that Henry the Empe-  
rour of Almayne þ had spowled Maude  
his doughter was deed. and that she  
dwelled noo lenger in Almayne. & that  
she wolde come apen in to Normandy to  
her fader. And whan that she was come  
vnto hym. he toke her tho to hym & ca-  
me apen in to Englonde. & made the  
Englyshmen to do othe & feaute to the  
Empresse. And the fyrst man that made  
the othe. was William þ Arthebysshop  
of Caüterbury. And that othe Dauid  
kyng of Scotlonde. & after hym all the  
barons & erles of Englonde. ¶ Also af-  
ter that the noble man therle of Angoy  
that was a worthy knyght / sente vnto  
the kyng of Englonde / that he wolde  
graunte hym for to haue his doughter to  
spowle. that is to saye Maude the Em-  
presse. And for by cause that her fader  
wyll that he was a noble man. the kyn-  
ge hym graunted & consented ther to. And  
tho toke he his doughter & ladde her in  
to Normandy. & came to þ noble knyght  
Geffroy / and there he spowled the  
forlaid Maude with moche honour / &

the Erle begate vpon her a sone. that  
was called Henry the Empresse sone.  
¶ And after whan alle this was done.  
kyng Henry dwelled all that yere in Nor-  
mandy. And after that longe tyme a  
greuous sykenesse toke hym. where tho  
rough he deyed. And this kyng Henry  
regned. xxxv. yere & foure monthes. And  
after he deyed as is before layd in Nor-  
mandy. And his herte was enterpd in þ  
grete chirche of our lady in Rouen. And  
his body was brought w moche honour  
in to Englonde. & enterpd at Redynge  
in the abbaye / of the whiche abbaye he  
was begynner & founder.

**H**enicus the fourth was Empe-  
rour in Almayn after Harry the  
thyrde. xv. yere. This man put his owne  
fader in pylon. & there helde hym tyll  
he deyed. And toke pope Palchall with  
his Cardynalles. & presenten them. as it  
is layd afore. for the whiche cause as it  
is supposed. he lacked yllue. for he wed-  
ded the kynges doughter of Englonde  
Maude. But afterward he came to gra-  
ce. and all the lawes of the chirche free-  
ly he relpyed to Calixtus the pope. And  
belought hym to yeue hym in penaunce  
that he sholde neuer come apen to his  
Empyre. that he myght haue remys-  
sion of his trespaas. And after the oppy-  
nyon of many a man / he was wyllfully  
exyled & deyed and his wyf both at Che-  
stre in Englonde. ¶ Gelasius was po-  
pe after Palchall two yere. And fledde  
from Henry the Emperour in to Bour-  
goyne and there decelld. This Empe-  
rour chole Benedictus a Spanyarde to  
be pope. the whiche stroue with Calixt.  
¶ Calixtus was pope after hym two ye-  
re & syue monthes. This Calixtus was  
the sone of the duke of Bourgoyne and  
was cholen in the place of Gelasius.  
And whan he sholde come to Rome. he  
toke the forlaid Benedictus. and made  
hym to ryde afore hym shamefully. for

he on a mule turned his face to the tayle of the mule/ & helde the tayle in his honde as a byrdell/ tyll he came thugh the cyte/ & there he was put in pylon. And this pope made peas with h<sup>e</sup> Emperour. ¶ Honorius was pope after hym two yere/ & lytell of hym is wyrtten. ¶ Nota. ¶ Harry the fourthe Emperour of Almayne decessyd this tyme/ and was buryed with his progenytours/ after some men with luche an Epitaphe. ¶ Hilus hic: pater hic Auus hic: proauus iacet istis. ¶ But it is lykely to be truer that that GERALDE sayd (in Itinerario walie) Where he sayth / that after he had pyloned his carnall fader/ and his spyrytuell fader the pope with his Cardynalles/ after he was reconcyled & wylfully he was exyled. And he lette Maude his wyf the kynges doughter of Englonde pryuely/ and lyued an heremytes lyf at Chelst<sup>r</sup>. x. yere/ where he myghte lyue as no man knewe hym. And he called hymself Godiscallus/ h<sup>e</sup> whiche Godisson is called. So the Emperour secretly wente awaye/ & Maude his wyf the Empresse there/ she wente vnto her fader Henry in to Normandy. Where anone after she was wedded vnto Gesteoy Plantaginet the duke of Andegame/ vpon whome he begate Henry the seconde afterwarde kyng of Englonde. Vnder whome saynt Thomas of Caunterbury regned & deped. ¶ Lochari<sup>9</sup> was Emperour after Henry the fourth. xij. yere/ And lytell of hym is wyrtten/ but that he was mancrely to the chirche. And that he subdued Roger the vlsurper of the kyngdom of Aycyle. ¶ Hugo de sancto Victori was a noble man this tyme at Parys/ & a noble doctour/ of the nacyon of Saxons. ¶ The ordre of saynt Johan Baptist at Iherusalem began this tyme/ by the worshipfull man Reymonde myghtely dysposed vnto the werkes of mercy. All this ordre make theyr waye to serue poore men.

¶ Anno dñi .M. C. xxxiij.

**I**nnocecius was pope after Honorius. xiiij. yere and. viij. monthes. This man was a very deuoute man/ & with luche men he accompanied hym/ And he had stryf ayenst peps of Lyon the whiche named hym Anocletus. And by strength he tooke the popehede. The whiche Innocencius lawe/ & with two Galeys he fledde in to fraunce/ & was worshipfully receued of saynt Bernarde/ the whiche that tyme had all the kynges & prynces in his honde. And he prouoked them for to bynge this pope Innocencius in to his dygnyte apen. And att the laste all thynge was cessyd/ & his enemyes were destroyed thugh the Iugement of god. And he was pope apen/ & lyued prouffably/ and was buryed att Latranence.

¶ How Stephen that was kyng Henryes systers lone / was made kyng of Englonde.

**A**fter this kyng Henry that was the fyrst/ was made kyng his neuewes syster lone. Stephen erle of Boloyne. for anone as he herde the tydynge of his vncles dech/ thenne he passed the see & came in to Englonde though coulepyll & strength of many grete lordes in Englonde / ayenst the othe that they had made to Maude the Empresse/ toke the reame/ & lete crowne Stephen kyng of the londe. ¶ And the Archebyschopp Wyllyam of Caunterbury/ that fyrst made the othe of feaute to Maude the Empresse/ lette the crowne vpon Stephens heed & hym anoynted. And byllhop Roger of Salysbury mayntened the kyngs parte in as moche as he myght. ¶ The fyrst yere h<sup>e</sup> kyng Stephen began to regne/ he assembled a greate hoste & wente towarde Scotlonde/ for to haue warred vpon the kyng of Scotlonde. But he

came ayenst hym in peas & in good manere / & to hy trusted. But he made to hy none homage / for as moche as he had made vnto thempresse Maude. And in y fourth yere of his regne Maude the Empresse came in to Englonde. And tho began debate bytwene kynge Stephen & Maude thempresse. This Maude went vnto y cyte of Nicholl / & the kyng her belyged longe tyme & myght not spede / so well the cyte was kept & defended. And tho y were win the cyte / meruaylously scaped awaye wout ony manner of harme. And tho toke y kyng the cyte / & dwelled therin tyll Landelmasse. And tho came the barons y helde with Empresse. That is for to laye the erle Radulphe of Chestre / the erle Robert of Glocestre. Hugh Bygot. Robert of Morley / & these brought with them a stronge power & faught w the kynge / & paue hy a grete bataylle. In the whiche bataylle kynge Stephen was taken / and lette in pylon in the castell of Bristowe.

How Maude the Empresse went fro Wynchestre to Drenforde / & after she escaped to Walynforde / & of the sorowe & displease that she had.

**N**ow as the kynge was taken & brought in to warde in the castell of Bristowe / this Maude the Empresse was made lady of all Englonde / & all men helde her for lady of the londe. But thole of Kent helde w kynge Stephens wyf / & also Wyllyam of Dree & his reteneue halpe them & helde warre ayenst Maude thempresse. And anone after y kynge of Scotlande came to them w a huge nombre of people. And tho wente they togpder to Wynchestre / there y the Empresse was / & wolde haue taken her. But the erle of Glocestre came w his power & fought with them. And the Empresse in the meane whyle that the bataylle dured scaped from them & wente

vnto Drenforde & there helde her. And in that bataylle was the erle of Glocestre dyscomfyted & taken / & with hym many other lordes. And for his delyueraunce / was kynge Stephen delyuered oute of pylon. And whan he was delyuered oute of pylon / he went thens vnto Drenforde & besyged thempresse y was tho at Drenforde. And the seyge endured fro Myghelmalle vnto saynt Andrewes tysde. And the Empresse lete clothe her tho all in whyte lynn clothe / for bycause she wolde not be knowen. for in the same tyme there was moche knowe / & she escaped by the Temple from them awaye that were her enemyes. And from thens she went to Walynforde & there helde her. And the kyng wolde haue besyged her / but he had so moche to do w the erle Radulphe of Chestre & w Hugh Bygot that strongely warred vpon hy in euery place / that he not wyll whether for to tome. And the erle of Glocestre halpe hym with his power.

How Gaufride the erle of Angoy paue vnto Henry the Empresse lone alle Normandye.

**A**nd after this the kynge wente vnto Wylton / & wolde haue made a castell there. But tho came to hym the erle of Glocestre w a stronge power & there almost he had taken the kynge but yet the kynge escaped w moche payne. And William Martell there was taken. And for whoos delyueraunce they paue vnto the erle of Glocestre y good castell of Shyrborn y he had taken. And whan this was done / the erle Robert & all the kynges enemyes wente vnto faryngdon / & began there for to make a stronge castell / but the kynge came thys w a stronge power & drioue hym thens. And in that same yere / the erle Radulphe of Chestre was accorded with y the kynge and came to his court at his



comaunderment. And the erle demed lastely for to come. And the kynge anone lete take hym / & put hym in to pylson. And myght neuer for noo thynge come out tyll þ he had yelded vp to the kynge the castell of Nicholl / the whiche he had taken from the kynge with his strength in the .xv. yere of his regne. ¶ And Gaufride þ erle of Angoy paue vp vnto Henry his sone all Normandy. And in the yere that nexte enlewed / deyed the erle Gaufride. And Henry his sone do anon torne ayen to Angoy / & there was made erle with moche honour of all his men of the londe. And to hym dyde feaute & homage the moost party of the londe. And tho was this Henry þ Empresse sone erle of Angoy / & also duke of Normandy. ¶ In the same yere was made a dyuorce bytwene the kynge of fraunce / & the quene his wyfe that was ryght heyre of Galcoyne. for by cause that it was knowen and proued / that they were lybbe & nyghe of blood. And tho spowled her Henry the Empresse sone erle of Angoy & the duke of Normandy / & duke of Galcoyne. ¶ In the .xviii. yere of this Stephen this Henry came in to Englonde with a stronge power / & began for to warre vpon this kynge Stephen. & toke the castell of Malmesbury / & dyde moche harne. And þ kynge Stephen had so moche werre / that he wylte not whether for to go. But at the laste they were accorded thugh the Archebysshop Theobaldus / & thugh other worthy lordes of Englonde / vpon this condycyon. that they sholde departe the Realme of Englonde bytwene theym two / soo that Henry þe Empresse sone sholde hooly haue the half of all the londe of Englonde. And thus they were accorded and peas was cryed thughout all Englonde. ¶ And whan the accorde was made bytwene tho two lordes / kynge Stephen became so soyr / for by cause that he had loste half Englonde / and felle in to su-

che a malady / and deyed in the .xix. yere and .viij. wekes and .v. dayes of his regne / all in warre and in confake. And he lyeth in the abbaye of feuertham / the whiche he lete make in the .xvi. yere of his regne.

**C**elestinus the seconde was pope after Innocencius .v. monethes. And lytell he dyde. ¶ Lucius was after hym and lytell proffyt / for they deyed both in a pestylence. ¶ Eugenius the seconde was pope after hym .v. yere and foure monethes. This man fyrste was the dyscyppe of saynt Bernarde / & after the abbot of saynt Anastasius by Rome. And came to the chirche of saynt Celasry / and was cholen pope by the Cardynalles / he no thynge knowynge therof / And for drede of the Senatours he was consecrated without che cyte / this man was an holy nan / & suffred trybulacyon. And at the laste he deceasyd / and lyeth at saynt Peters. And after anone deceasyd saynt Bernarde. ¶ Petrus Lombardus the bysshopp of Parys / brother to Gracian / compyled the foure boke of the Sentence this tyme. ¶ Petrus Lombardus brother to Gracian & to pper Lombardus / made hystoriam Scolasticam / and other boke. ¶ Fredericus primus after Conradus was Emperour in Almayne & in Rome .xxxiiij. yere. This man after the deeth of Adrian the pope the whiche crowned hym / dyde curlydly with Alexander to hym grete preiudyce for he dyde helpe foure that stroue ayenst the appostles seate. And he faught myghtely ayenst the kynge of fraunce. thugh power of the Danys & other nacjons. But Richard the kynge of Englonde halpe for to expulle hym. And he destroyed medopolanum to the grounde. Of the whiche cyte / the walles were hygher than the walles of ony other cyte. This man at the last after that he had done many veyacions to the pope / he

was reconcyled / for he dradde lest the Lombardes wolde haue rebelled ayenst hym / he axed foryeuenes of y<sup>e</sup> pope. And toke the crosse vpon hym / & wente vnto the holy londe / and dyde many meruaylous thynges there / almost as moche as euer dyde Karolus magnus. And there he came by a towne that men calle Armeniam & in a lytell water he was drowned / & at Tyru he was buryed. ¶ Anastalius was pope after Eugenius foure yere and more. This man was abbot of Ruffy / and thenne he was chole Cardynall / & after pope.

¶ Of kyng Henry the seconde that was the Emperesse lone / in whole tyme saynt Thomas of Launterbury was Chaunceller.

¶ And after this kyng Stephen reigned Henry the Emperesse lone / & was crowned of the Archebysshop Theobaldus the .xviij. daye before Crystmasse. And in the same yere Thomas Beket of London Archebysshop of Launterbury was made the kyngs Chaunceller of Englonde. ¶ The seconde yere that he was crowned / he lete caste downe all the newe castels that were longynge to the crowne / the whiche kyng Stephen had yeue vnto dyuerse men / & them had made erles & barons / for to holde with hym & to helpe hym ayenst Henry the Emperesse lone. ¶ And the fourth yere of his regne he put vnder his owne lordshyppe the kyng of Walys. And in the same yere the kyng of Scoclonde had in his owne honde / that is to saye / the cyte of Karlepyll / the castell of Bambugh / & the newe castell vpon Tyne / & the erledom of Lancastre. ¶ The same yere the kyng with a grete power wente in to Walys / & lete cast downe woodes & made wayes & made stronge the castell of Ruclonde. Balyngwark. And amonge the castels he made an house of the temple. ¶ And

in the same yere was Richarde his lone borne / that afterwarde was erle of Derbyford. And y<sup>e</sup> fourth yere of his regne / he made Gaufride erle of Byspayne. And in that yere he chaüged his moneye. And the .vi. yere of his regne / he ladde a grete hoste to Colouse & conquered it. And y<sup>e</sup> vij. yere of his regne deyed Theobaldus the Archebysshop of Launterbury / & tho almost all the cyte of Launterbury thorough mylchpief was brente. The .ix. yere of his regne Thomas Beket that was his Chaunceller was chosen Archebysshop of Launterbury. And vpon saynt Bernardes daye he was sacred. And in that yere was borne the kyngs doughter Eleuore. ¶ And in the .x. yere of his regne. saynt Edward the kyng was translated with moche honour. ¶ And the .xi. yere of his regne / he helde his parlyament at Northampton / & fro thens fled saynt Thomas Archebysshop of Launterbury for y<sup>e</sup> grete debate that was betwixt the kyng & hym. For yf he had be founde on the morowe he had be slayne / & therfore he fled thens with thre felowes on foot oonly / that no man wylde where he was / & wente ouer the see to the pope of Rome. And this was the pryncypall cause. for almoste as the kyng wolde haue put clerkes to deeth that were ataynt of felonye / without ony pryeuilege of holy chirche. ¶ And the .xij. yere of his regne was John his lone borne. ¶ And the .xiiij. yere of his regne deyed Maude the Emperesse that was his moder. ¶ The .xiiij. yere of his regne y<sup>e</sup> duke of Saxon spowled Maude his doughter. And he begate vpon her thre lones / that were called Henry. Dehus. & William. ¶ And in the .xv. yere of his regne deyed the good erle Robert of Glocestre / that founded the abbaye of Nonnes of Eton. ¶ And in the same yere Marke kyng of Jerusalem conquered Babylon. ¶ And the .xvi. yere of his regne / he lete crowne his lone Henry at Westmestre. And hy crow

ned Roger Archebysshop of Poike / in harmynge of Thomas Archebysshop of Launterbury. Wherefore this same Roger was accursyd of the pope.

**H**ow kynge Henry that was sone of kynge Henry the Emprisse sone / & of the debate that was bytwene hy & his fader whyle that he was in Normandy.

**A**fter the coronacyon of kynge Henry the sone of kynge Henry the Emprisse sone . That same Henry the Emprisse sone wente ouer to Normady & there he lete marye Elenore his doughter of the Dolphyn that was kynge of Almayne. And in the .vij. yere that y Archebysshop saynt Thomas had ben outlawed / the kynge of fraunce made the kynge & saynt Thomas accorded. And theñe came Thomas the Archebysshop to Laüterbury ayen to his owne chirche And this accorde was made in y begynnynge of Aduente / & afterwarde he was slayne & martred y lxxij. dawe of Crystmasse thenne folowynge . For kynge Henry thought vpon saynt Thomas y Archebysshop vpon Crystmasse dawe as he late at his mete / & these wordes sayd That yf he had ony good knyghtes w hym / he had be many a day passed auenged vpon the Archebysshop Thomas / And anone syr Wyllyam Breton / syr Hugh Moruile / syr Wyllyam Tracy / & syr Reynolde fitz wile / beers sone in Englyshe / pryuelly wente vnto the see / & came in to Englonde vnto the chirche of Laüterbury / & there they hym martred at saynt Benets awter in y moder chirche . And that was in the yere of the Incarnacyon of Ihesu Cryst . M . C . lxxij. yere . And anone after Henry the newe kynge began for to make warre vpon Henry his fader & vpon his brethern Wyllyam & Othus . And so vppon a dawe the kynge of fraunce & all the kynges sones / & the kynge of Scotlonde / &

all the grettest lordes of Englonde were rylen ayenst kynge Henry the fader. And at the last as god wolde / he conquered al his enemyes. And the kynge of fraunce & he were accorded. And tho sente kynge Henry specyally vnto the kynge of fraunce / & prayed hym hertly for his loue that he wolde lende to hym the names by letters of them that were the begynners of that warre ayenst hym. And the kynge of fraunce sente ayen to hym by letters the names of them that began the warre ayenst hym. The fyrst was John his sone / & Rycharde his brother / & Henry the newe kynge his sone. Tho was Henry the kynge wonder wroth / & cursyd the tyme that euer he hym begate / & whyle the warre dured. Henry his sone the newe kynge deyed sore repentynge his myddedes & moost sorowe made of ony man for by cause of saynt Thomas dethe of Laüterbury. And prayed his fader with moche sorowe of herte mercy for his trespaas. And his fader forgaaf hym / and had of hym grete pyfte. And after he deyed the .xxxvi. yere of his regne / & lyeth at Redynge.

**H**ow the crysten men lost all the holy londe in the forsayd kynges tyme by a fals Crysten man y became a sarralyn.

**A**nd whyle this kynge regned / the greate bataylle was in the holy londe bytwene the Crysten men and the Sarralyns / but Crysten men were there slayne though grete treason of the erle Tyrpe / that wolde haue had to wyf the quene of Jerusaleme / that somtyme was Baldewynes wyf / but she forsoke hym and toke to her lorde a knyght a worthy man / that was called syr Gnypperches / Wherefore the erle Tyrpe was wroth / & wente anone ryght to the Soudan that was Soudan of Babylon / and became his man and forsoke his crystendome / and all crysten lawe. And y crysten men

wylt not of his dedes / but wende for to haue had grete helpe of hym as they were wonte to haue before. ¶ And whan they came to the bataylle / this fals cryssten man turned vnto the Sarralyns / & forloke his owne nacyon. And soo were the cryssten men there slayne with þe Sarralyns. ¶ And thus were þe cryssten men slayne & put to horryble dech / and the cyte of Ierusalem destroyed / and the holy crosse borne awaye. ¶ The kynge of fraunce and all the grete lordes of the londe lete them be croslyd for to go in to the holy londe. And amonges them went Rycharde kynge Henryes sone fyrst after the kynge of fraunce / that toke the crosse of the Archebysshop of Toures / But he toke not the vyage at that tyme for cause that he was lette by other maner wayes / and nedes to be done. ¶ And whan kynge Henry his fader had regned .xxxvi. yere and .v. monethes & foure dayes / he deyed and lyeth at fountes uevad.

¶ Anno dñi .M. C. lvi.

**A**drian⁹ the fourth was pope after Anastalius .v. yere. This pope was an Englyshe man / & the boys of the comyn people sayth he was a boude man to the abbot of saynt Albon in Englonde. And whan he desyred to be made a monke / thre he was expullyd / & he wente ouer see & gaue hym to studeye & to vertue And after was made bysshop of Albanacens / then he was made Legate in to þe londe of Wormacian / & he conuerted it to the fayth. Then he was made pope / & for the wouidyng of a Cardynall he enterdyted all the cyte of Rome And he cursyd William the kyng of Cecyle / and caused hym to submytte hym. This man the fyrst of all the popes whis Cardynalles dwelled in the olde cyte. ¶ Alexander the thyrde was pope after hym .xij. yere. This Alexander had

kyng .xviij. yere / & the foure knyghtes that the Emperour sette ayenst hym / he ouercame them & cursyd them / & all deyed an euyll dech. This man also accorded Frederyk the Emperour and Emanuel of Constantynople / & the kynge of Siculor. And this man nourysshed saynt Thomas of Caunterbury in his exyle.

¶ Nota. ¶ Saynt Bernarde was canonyled by this Alexander / & his abbot forbode hym he sholde do no myracles / for there was soo myghty concours of people. And he obeyed to hym whan he was deed & dyde no moo. ¶ Lucius the thyrde was pope after Alexand .iiij. yere & two monethes. Of hym lytell is wyrtten. In his dayes decessyd Henry the fyrst sone to Henry the seconde / & this is his Epytaphy. Omnis honoris honor. decor et decus vrbis et orbis. Milicie splendor gloria lumen apex. Julius ingenio vtriusq; Hector. Achillis viribus. Augustus moribus. ore Paris. ¶ Urbanus the thyrde was pope after Lucius two yere / this man decessyd for sorowe whan he herde tell that Ierusalem was taken with the Sarralyns. ¶ Gregorius the viij. was pope after hym foure monethes And he practysed myghtely how Ierusalem myght be wonne ayen / but anone he decessyd. ¶ Clemens the thyrde was pope after hym thre yere / and lytell he dyde.

¶ Of kynge Rycharde that conquered ayen all the holy londe / that the cryssten men had loste.

**A**nd after this kynge Henry reigned Rycharde his sone a stowte man and a stronge & a worthy / and also bolde. And he was crowned at Westmestre of the Archebysshop Baldewyne the thyrde daye of Sertembre. ¶ And in the seconde yere of his regne / kynge Rycharde hymself and Baldewyne the Archebysshop of Caunterbury / and hu

bert byshop of Salysbury/and Radulf erle of Glocester/and ocher many lordes of Englonde/went in to the holy londe And in that vpage deped the Archebyschop of Caunterbury. And kynge Rycharde wente before in to the holy londe and rested not tyll that he came forth in his waye vnto Lypics/and toke it with grete force. And after that kynge Richarde went forth towarde the holy londe/ & gate there as moche as the crysten men had there before lost. And conquered the londe ayen though grete myghte/ lauf only the holy crosse. And whan kynge Rycharde came to the cyte of Acres for to gete the cyte/there arose a grete debate bytwene hym & the kynge of frauce/ so that the kynge of frauce wente ayen in to fraunce/and was wrothe towarde the kynge Rycharde. But yet for alle that/are kynge Rycharde wente ayen/ he toke the cyte of Acres. And whan he had take it/ he dwelled in the cyte a whyle. But to hym came tydynge/ that the erle John of Oxerforde his brother wolde haue sealed alle Englonde in to his honde/and Normandy also/and wolde lete crowne hym kynge of all the londe. ¶ And whan kynge Rycharde herde tell of these tydynge/ he wente ayen towarde Englonde with all the spede that he myght. But the duke of Dstryche mette with hym/and toke hym and broughte hym vnto the Emperour of Almayne/ And the Emperour hym broughte vnto pylon. And afterwarde he was delyuered for an huge raunson / that is for so lape/an hondred thousande poude. And for the whiche raunson to be payed / eche other chalpyce of Englonde was molten & made in to moneye. And all the monkes of the ordie of Cisteaux paue alle theyr bokes thugh out alle Englonde/ for to do them to selle/and the raunson for to paye.

¶ How kynge Rycharde came agayne

from the holy londe/and auenged hym of his ennynes

¶ **S** as this kynge Rycharde was in pylon/the kynge of fraunce warred vpon hym strongly in Normandy/ & John his brod warred vpon hym in Englonde. But the byshops & the barons of Englonde withstode hym with all theyr power that they myght gete/ & toke the castell of Wyndelore & ocher castelles. And the forsayd John sawe that he had no myght ne power ayenst the barons of Englonde for to fyght. But as none went hy ouer the see vnto the kynge of fraunce. ¶ And whan Rycharde came out of pylon/and was delyuered and came in to Englonde / anone after Landelmasse in grete hast/ he wente vnto Notyngham/ & the castell of Notyngham to hym was yolden/and tho dyscomfyted he his brother John and tho that with hym helde. And after he wente vnto the cyte of Wynchestre / & there he lete hym crowne kynge of Englonde And after he wente vnto Normandy for to warre vpon the byng of frauce. And the kynge of fraunce came with .vi. hondred knyghtes towarde Gisors. And kynge Rycharde mette hym/and tho wolde haue yeue hym batayll. But the kynge of fraunce fledde tho / and an hondred knyghtes of his were taken & two hondred stedes that were trapped with yren ¶ And anone after wente kynge Richarde for to besyege the castell Gaillarde/ And as he rode vppon a daye by the castell for to take auyement of the castell an arbalaster smote hym with a quarell that was enuynymmed. And the kynge drewe out the shafte of the quarell / but the quarels heed abode styll in his heed. And it began for to rancle / that he ne myght not helpe hymself / ne meue his armes. And tho he wyll that he had dethes wounde vpon hym/that he myght not be hoole for noo manere of thyng/

**T**he commaunded anone Charpely all his men for to assaylle the castell. Soo that the castell was taken or he deyed. And so manly his men dyde that all the people that were in the castell were taken/ and the kynge dyde with them what he wolde. And commaunded his men that they sholde brynge before hym the man that hym soo hurte & so wounded. And whan he came before the kynge/ the kynge asked hym what was his name. And he sayd/ my name is Bertram Gurdon. Wherfore sayd the kynge hast thou me slayne/ syth I dyde the neuer none harme. Syre sayd he. Though ye dyde me neuer none harme / ye your self w your owne honde slewe my fader & my brod. and therfore I haue quyte now your tra uaylle. Tho sayd kynge Rycharde. He þ deyed vpon the crosse/ to brynge mannes soule fro payne of helle/ foryeue the my dech/ & I also foryeue if the. Tho commaunded he that noo man sholde hym mysdo. But for all the kyngs defendynge/ some of the kyngs men hym folowed & pryuelly hym slewe. And the .vi. daye after the kynge dyde thryue hym/ & sore repentaunce haupnge of his mysdedes/ and was houseled and enoynted. And this kynge reigned but .ix. yere and .xxx. weekes/ & deyed & lyeth belyde his fader at fontenerad.

**H**enricus the fyfthe was Empe/ rour. viij. yere. This Henric was lone to frederyk/ & he wedded Constance the kyngs doughter of Lecple/ & though the occasyon of her/ he subdued all the kyngdom of Apulye/ & he driue all the people out þ enhabyte þ lond. Celestinus the thyrde was pope after Clemens almost thre yere. This man was crowned vpon Esterdaye/ & the daye followinge he crowned Henry the Empe/ rour. And he made a palays at saynt peters/ & deceasyd. Innocencius the thyrde was pope after hym. viij. yere and .v.

monethes. This man was well litted. And he made a boke of þ wretchydnesse of mannes condycōn. And he made Speculū misse/ & he made many constytucyons. This man dāpned þ boke of John Joachim/ þ whiche he made ayenst mayster Peys Lombarde/ the maker of the Sentence. This tyme deceasyd the Emperour Henry. And þ prynces of Almayne dyscorded/ for some chole Otto/ and some chole Phylippe brother to Henry. Thenne Phylippe was falsely slayne/ & Otto was crowned of Innocenci<sup>9</sup> in fraunce/ the whiche anone faught with the Romayns/ for they paue hym no de/ we honour. And for that cause/ ayenst the popes wyll he toke the kyngdom of Apulye from frederyk/ wherfore the pope cursyd hym. Thenne after the fourth yere of his regne/ the prynces of Almayne made frederyk Emperour/ and vncortously he subdued Otto. Wyllyam of Parys this tyme began the ordre of the freres Austyn/ the whiche ben called (fratres mendicantes) Francisus an Ptalyon a man of grete perfecyon and an ensample to many a man/ dyde many a myracle this tyme. And he ordeyned the frere Minores. And the .vi. yere of pope Innocenci<sup>9</sup> the thyrde/ the ordre of the frere Prechers beganne vnder Domyngh/ but it myght not be confermed tyll the fyrst yere of Honorius.

**O**f kynge John/ that in the fyrst yere of his regne lost all Normandye.

**A**s kynge Rycharde was deed/ by cause that he had no heysre/ nother lone/ ne doughter/ thenne his brother Johan was made kynge / and crowned at Westmestre of Hubert that tho was Archebysshop of Caunterbury. And whan he began for to regne/ he became so meruayllous a man/ and went ouer in to Normandye / & warred vpon the kyng of fraunce. And so longe they

warrd togyder / tyll at the laste kynge John lost all Normandy & Angoy / wherfore he was loze anoyed / and it was no meruaylle. ¶ Tho lete he assemble before hym at London Archebysshops / bysshops / abbots & pryours / erles & barons & helde there a grete parlyament / and axed there of the Clergye / the tenth of euery chirche of Englonde / for to conqueure & gete ayen Normandy & Angoy that he had lost. They wolde not graunt that thynge / wherfore he was wonder wrothe. ¶ And in that same tyme deyed Hubert . The pryour and the couent of Caüterbury chose ayenst the kynge's wyll to be Archebysshop Stephen of Langton a good clerke / that dwelled att the courte of Rome / & sent to the pope theyr eleccyon / & the pope confermed it / and sacred hym at Dicerbi. ¶ Whan the kynge wyll these tydynge / he was wonder wroth / & dioue the pryour & the couente fro Caüterbury / & exyled out of Englonde / & comaüded that no letter that come fro Rome / ne comaüdemment / sholde be recepued ne pleyd in Englonde. Whan these tydynge came to the pope / he sente kynge John his letter / & prayed hym w good wyll & good herte / that he wolde recepuie Stephen þ Archebysshopp of Caüterbury to his chirche / & lustre the pryour and his monkes to come ayen to theyr owne dwellynge . But the kynge wolde not graunte it for no thynge.

¶ How kynge John wolde noo thynge do for the popes comaüdemment. Wherfore alle Englonde was enterdpyted & suspended.

**A**nd at the last the pope sente by his auctoryte / & eniopyned to the bysshops of Englonde / that yf the kynge wolde not recepuie the pryour of Caüterbury & his monkes / that they sholde do generall enterdpytynge through out all Englonde. And graunted full power to

four bysshops to pronounce the enterdpytynge / yf he it warned. The fyrste was bysshop Wyllyam of London / & that other bysshop Eustace of Ely / & the thyrde was bysshop Walter of Wynchestre / & the fourth was bysshop Gyles of Hertforde. ¶ And these four bysshops prayed the kynge / knelynge on theyr knees / & loze wepynge / that he wolde do the popes comaüdemment . And shewed hy the popes Bulles of the enterdpytynge / but for noo prayer that they myghte praye he wolde not consent thereto. And whan the bysshops sawe this / they wente fro the kynge . And in the moine after the Annunciacion of our lady / they pronouced the generall enterdpytynge throughout all Englonde / so that the chirche doores were shytted with keys & w other fastnynges & with walles. And whan the enterdpytynge was pronouced / thenne þ kynge began for to wexe al out of mesure. And anone toke in to his honde all the posselions of the four bysshops / & of all the clergy throughout all Englonde / the lorde he toke / & ordeyned men for to kepe it / that the clerks myght not haue theyr lypynge . Wherfore the bysshops cursyd all them / that put / or sholde medle with holy chirche goodes / ayenst the wyll of theym that ought theym. ¶ And whan the kynge wolde not of his malyce cesse for no maner thynge. These four bysshops afore sayd wente ouer the see / and came to the bysshop of Caunterbury / & tolde hym all the thynge . And the Archebysshop to them sayd / that they sholde go ayen to Caunterbury / and he sholde come thyder to theym / or elles he wolde sende vnto theym certayne persones in his stede / that sholde do as moche as of he hymself were there. And whan the bysshops herde this / they torned agayne in to Englonde / and came vnto Caunterbury. The tydynge came to the kynge / that the bysshops were come agayne to Caunterbury / & hymselfe myght not

come thyder that tyme / he sente thyder bysshops erles & abbots / for to treate w<sup>th</sup> them / that the kyng sholde receyue thar / chebysshop Stephen / & the pryour & all the monkes of Caüterbury / that he sholde neuer after þ tyme no thynge take of holy chirche ayenst þ wyll of them that oweth the goodes. And þ the kyng sholde make full amendes to them / of whome he had any goodes taken. And þ holy chirche sholde haue all fraüchyle / as ferforth as they had in saynt Edward's tyme the holy Confessour.

**How** Stephen of Langton came ayen in to Englonde thugh the popes comaüdement / & how he wente ayen.

**W**han the fourme of accordement thus was ordeyned. It was in a payre of endentures / and they put theyr seales to þ one parte / & they that came in the kynges name put theyr seales to that other parte of the endentures. And foure bysshops aboue sayd toke þ one parte of the endentures to them. And that other parte of the endentures / they bare w<sup>th</sup> theym to shewe to the kyng. **W**han the kyng sawe the fourme & vnderstode / he helde h<sup>y</sup> full well apayed of all maner thynge as they had ordeyned / sauyng as touchyng / restytucyon of the goodes for to make ayen. To that thynge he wolde not accorde / & so he sente worde ayen to the foure bysshops / that they sholde do out & put away that one paynt of restytucyon. But they answered / that they wolde not doo one worde out. **Th**o sente the kyng to the Archebysshop by the foure bysshops that he sholde come to Caunterbury for to speke w<sup>th</sup> hym there / and sente vnto hym laufconduyte vnder pledges. That is to saye / his Justyces Gylbert Peyteum. Wyllyam de la Briener / and John Fitz Hugh / that in theyr conduyte / lauely he sholde come & go ayen at his owne wyll.

And thus in this maner thar chebysshop Stephen came to Caüterbury. Whan þ Archebysshop was come / the kyng came to Chilbaz. for he wolde no nyghe Caüterbury at that tyme. But he sent by his Trelozier bysshop of Wyncestre þ he sholde do out of the endentures þ clause of / restytucyon / for to make of the goodes. **A**nd thar chebysshop made his othe þ he wolde not neuer do out oo worde ther of / ne yet it chaüge of that the bysshops had spoken & ordeyned. And tho the Archebysshop yede ayen to Rome without ony more doynge. **K**ynge John was tho wrother than euer he was before / & lete make a comyn crye thozugh out all Englonde / that all tho þ had holy chirche rentes / & went oucr the see / that they sholde come ayen in to Englonde at a certayne daye / or elles they sholde lese theyr rentes for euer more. And that he comaüded to euery Shyref thugh out all Englonde / that they sholde enquirye yf ony bysshop / abbot or pryour / or ony other Prelate of holy chirche / fro that daye afterwarde / receyue ony comaüdement þ cometh fro the pope. That they sholde take the body / & bynge it before hym / and that they sholde take in to the kynges hondes all theyr londes of holy chirche / that were yeue to ony man / by þ Archebysshop or by the pryour of Caunterbury / from the tyme of the eleccyon of the Archebysshop. And comaüded that all the woodes that were the Archebysshops sholde be caste done vnto the groude / and all solde.

**How** kyng John destroyed the ordre of Cisteaur.

**A**nd in the same yere / the Frysshemen began to warre vpon kynge John / & the kyng ordeyned hym for to go in to Irlande / & lete arere an huge taxe thughout all Englonde / that is for to saye .xxx. thousande marke. And thus



he sente thurgh out all Englonde. vnto the monkes of y<sup>e</sup> ordie of Cisteaux that they sholde helpe hym of .vi. thousande marke of syluer. ¶ And they answered & sayd that they durst no thyng do w<sup>o</sup>ut theyr cheyf abbot of Cisteaux. Wherfore kynge Johan whan he came ayen from Jrlonde dyde them so moche sorow we & care that they wylt not wheder to abyde for he toke so moche raūson of euery hous & the somme amouūted to .ix. thousande & .iij. hondred marke so that they were clene loste & destroyed & voyded theyr houles & theyr londes thurgh out all Englonde. And y<sup>e</sup> abbot of Wa<sup>u</sup>erlaye dradde soo moche his menace that he forsoke alle the abbaye & wente thens & pryuely ordeyned hym ouer the see to the hous of Cisteaux. Whan the tydynge came to the pope that the kynge had done so moche malyce then he was towarde the kynge full wroth. And sente two Legates vnto the kynge that one was called Pandulf & that other Durant that they sholde warne the kynge in the popes name that he sholde cesse of his persecucion that he dyde vnto holy chirche & amende the wronge & the trespass that he had done to the Archebysshop of Caunterbury & to the pryour & vnto the monkes of Caunterbury & to all the clergye of Englonde. And that he sholde restore al the goodes ayen that he had taken of them ayenst theyr wyl & elles they sholde curse hym by name. And to do this thyng and to conferme the pope toke them his letters in bulles patentes. ¶ These two Legates came in to Englonde & came to the kynge to Northampton there that he helde his parlament & full curteysly they hym salewed & sayd. Syr we come fro the pope of Rome the peas of the holy chirche and the londe to amende. And we admonest you fyrst in the popes half that ye make full restytucō of the goodes that ye haue rauysshed & taken of holy chir

che & of the londe. And that ye receyue Stephen Archebysshop of Caunterbury in to his dygnytē & the pryour of Caunterbury & his monkes. And that ye yelde ayen vnto the Archebysshop all his londes & rentes / without ony withholde dyngē. ¶ And syr yet more ouer that ye shall make restytucion / vnto all holy chirche / wherof they shall holde theym well apayed. ¶ Tho answered the kynge as touchynge the pryour & his monkes of Caunterbury. Alle that ye haue sayd I wyl do gladly & all thyng that ye wyl ordeyne. But as touchynge the Archebysshop. I shall tell you in my herte as it lyeth. That the Archebysshop leue his Archebysshopryche / & that the pope thenne for hym wolde praye / and thenne vpon auenture me sholde lyke some other bysshopryche to yeue hym in Englonde. And vpon this condycion I wyl hym accepte & receyue. And neuer theles as Archebysshop in Englonde ye he abyde / he shall neuer haue soo good laufcondytc but that he shall be take. ¶ Tho sayd Pandulf vnto the kynge. Syrre holy chirche was wonte neuer to dyscharge an Archebysshoppe withoute cause resonable. But euer if hath be wrothe to chastyle prynces that to god & holy chirche were Inobedyente. ¶ What how now sayd the kynge menace ye me. Mape sayd Pandulf but ye now openly haue tolde as it standeth in your herte. And to you we wyl tell what is the popes wyl. And thus it standeth that he hath you hooly enterdyted & accursyd for the wronges that ye haue done to holy chirche and to the clergye. And for as moche as ye dwelle and beth in wyl to abyde in malyce & in wretchednesse and wyl not come out therof ne to amende ye shall vnderstande that this tyme afterwarde the sentence is vpon you yeuert and holdeth stede & strenght / and vpon all tho that with you hath comuned before this tyme / whether they ben erles /

barons/or knyghts/or ony other what so euer þ they be/we them assoyle/laufly vnto this daye. And fro this tyme after warde of what condycyon someuer that they ben we them accurse/that w you comyne ony worde/ & do we sentence vpon them openly & specyally. And we assoyle clene/erles/barons/knyghtes/and all o ther men of theyr homages/seruyces & scautees/that they sholde vnto you do/ And this tydnyng to comferme/we ye/ ue playne power/to the bysshop of Wynchestre / & to the bysshop of Norwyche. And the same power we yeue in to Scotlonde to the bysshops of Rochestre & of Salysbury. And in Walys we yeue the same power to the bysshop of saynt Dauid and of Landaf & of saynt Alle. And more ouer we sente thugh out all Crystendom / that all the bysshops beyonde the see/that they do accurse all tho that helpe you/or ony couleyll yeueth you in ony maner nede that ye haue to do in ony parte of the worlde. And we assoyle them also all/by auctorite of the pope/ and comaunde them also wiche you for to fyght/as wiche hym that is crumpe to all holy chirche. ¶ Tho answered the kynge. What may ye doo more to me/ ¶ Tho answered Pandulf. We saie to you in the worde of god/that ye ne noo heyre that ye haue/neuer after this daye may be crowned. ¶ Tho sayd the kynge. By hym that is almyghty god/& I had wylt this are that ye came in to mylonde/that ye had brought me suche tydynges. I sholde haue made you ryde al one yere. ¶ Tho answered Pandulf/full well wende we at our fyrst comynge / that ye wolde haue be obedyent to god & holy chirche/& haue fulfyllled the popes comaundement / & now we haue shewed vnto you / & pronounced the popes wyl/as we were charged therwiche And as now ye haue sayd / that yf ye had wylt the cause of our comynge/that ye wolde haue do vs to ryde all an hole

yere. And as well ye myght haue sayd/ that ye wolde haue taken an hool yere of respyte/by the popes leue. ¶ But for to suffre what deth ye coude ordeyne/we shall not spare for to telle you hooly all the popes message & his wyl / that we were charged wiche.

¶ How Pandulf delyuered a clerke that had falsyd & coultreteyd the kynge's moneye before the kynge hymself.

**A**nd anone tho commaunded the kynge the Sypres & Baylyfs of Northampton/that were in the kynges presence / that they sholde brynge forth all the pylsoners/that they myght be done to deth before Pandulf / for by cause the kynge wened that they wolde haue gaynsayd theyr dedes / for cause of the deth all thynge that they had spoken afore. ¶ Whan the pylsoners were come before the kynge/the kynge comaunded some to be hanged/& some to be drawen and some to drawe out theyr eyen out of theyr heed. And amonge all other/there was a clerke that had falsyd the kynges moneye. And the kynge comaunded that he sholde be hanged and drawed. And whan Pandulf herde this commaundement of the kynge/he sterre hy vp ryght quychly/& anone axed a booke & a candell/and wolde haue cursyd the kynge/& all theym that wolde sette vpon the clerke ony honde. And Pandulf hymself wente for to seke a crosse. And the kynge folowed hym/& delyuered hym the clerke by the honde that he sholde doo wiche hym what he wolde. And thus was the clerke delyuered & wente thens. ¶ And Pandulf and Durant his felowe wente fro the kynge / & came agayne to the pope of Rome. And tolde hym that kynge Johan wolde not amended be. But euer abode so accursyd. ¶ And neuertheless the pope graunted that yere thorough out all Englonde / that preestes myght

spynge masse in couenable churches/and consecrate our lordes body/ & gyue it to lyke men whiche were lykly to passe out of this worlde. And also s̄ men myght crysten childern ouer all s̄londe. ¶ And whan the pope wylte and sawe that the kynge wolde not be vnder the rule of holy chirche for no maner thyng. The pope thenne sente to the kynge of fraunce in remyslyon of his synnes/ that he sholde take with hym all the power that he myght / & go in to Englonde for to de/ uoye the kynge John. ¶ Whan these tydynge came to kynge John / thenne was he sore anoyed/ & sore dradde lest he sholde lese his reame/ & hymself be done to the deeth. ¶ Thenne sent he to the pope messengers & sayd. He wolde be Justifyed / and come to amendement in all thynges/ & wolde make satisfaccyon to all maner of men after the popes ordynance. ¶ Thenne sente the pope ayen in to Englonde Pandulf & other messengers / and came to Saunterbury to the kynge & there abode. And the .viij. dawe of May/ the kynge made an othe for to stande to the popes ordynance / before Pandulf s̄ Legate in all maner of thynges in whiche he was accusyd. And that he sholde make full restytucyon to all men of holy chirche & of relygyon/ and of the goodes that he had taken of them apenst theyr wpll. And all the grete lordes of Englonde swore vpon the boke & by theyr holydom / that yf the kynge wolde not holde his othe/ they sayd that they wolde by strength make hym holde it. ¶ Thenne put the kynge hym to the courte of Rome/ and thenne gaaf he vpon the reame of Englonde and of Irlande for hym and for his heyres for euer more that sholde come after hym/ soo that kynge John and his heyres sholde take the two reames of the popes hondes/ And sholde euery yere paye ferme vnto the courte of Rome a thousande marke of syluer. And tho toke the kynge the

crowne of his heed and sette it vpon his knees. And these wordes sayd he in helyng of all the grete lordes of Englonde. Here I relygne vpon the crowne and the realme of Englonde in to the pope Innocenci<sup>9</sup> hondes the thyrd/ and put me hooly in his mercy & in his ordynance ¶ Tho receyued Pandulf the crowne of kynge John/ and keppe it kyue dayes as fore sealyng/ takynge of two reames/ of Englonde & of Irlande. And rōfermed all maner thyngs by his Chartre/ that foloweth after.

¶ Of the letter oblygatoire that kynge Johan made to s̄ court of Rome/ wherfore the Peters pens ben gadied thugh out all Englonde.

¶ All crysten people thugh out all the worlde dwellynge. Johan by the grace of god kynge of Englonde greetynge to your vnpuersyte. And be it knownen that for as moche as we haue greued and offended god & our moder holy chirche of Rome. And for almoche as we haue nede vnto the mercy of our lord Ihesu Cryst. And also we may no thyng so worthy offre/ as competent satisfaccyon to make to god and to holy chirche/ but yf that it were our owne body/ as with our reames of Englonde & of Irlande. Thenne by the grace of god we desyre to meke vs/ for the loue of h̄y that meked h̄y to the deeth of the crosse Thorough coueylle of these noble erles and barons/ we offre all freely/ graunte to god and to the appostle saynt Peter and saynt Poule/ and to our moder chirche of Rome/ and to our holy fader pope Innocenci<sup>9</sup> the thyrd/ and to all the popes that cometh after hym all the reame and patronages of churches of Englonde and of Irlande/ with theyr appertenaunces/ for remyslyon of our synnes/ and for helpe & helth of our kynges soules/ and of all crysten soules. So that

from this daye afterwarde we wyll receyue / & holde of our moder chirche of Rome/as fee ferme/dooyngge feaute to our holy fader pope Innocenci<sup>9</sup> the thyrde/and soo to all the popes that cometh after hym/in the same manere aboue sayd. And in pience of the wysle man Pandulf the popes Subdcaken/we make lyegeges homage/as it were in the popes pience/and before hym were. And shall do all manere thyngs aboue sayd/ And therto we bynde vs/and all that cometh after vs / and our heyres for cuer more, without ony agaynlayenge to the pope/and eke the warde of chirche vantage. And in token for this thyngge for euer to laste/we wyll conferme and ordeyne/that our specyal rentes of the forsayd reame/launge saynt Peters pens in all thyngge to the moder chirche of Rome payenge by yere a thoulande marke of syluer/and two termes of the yere for all manere customes that we holde do for the forsayd reames/that is to say at Myghelmas/and at Ester. That is to saye. vij. hondred marke for Englonde/and thie hondred marke for Irlonde Saunge to vs & to our heyres our Justices/and other fraunchyle/and other ryaltees/that perteyne vnto the crowne And these thynges that before ben sayd we wyll/that it be ferme & stable without ende. And to that oblygacyon/we & our successours & our heyres in this manere be bounde/that yf we/or ony of our heyres/thorough ony presumption falle/in ony poynt/apenst ony of these thynges aboue sayd/and he be warned/and wyll not ryght amende/he shall thenne lese y<sup>e</sup> forsayd reame for euer more. And that this chartre of oblygacyon and our warraunte for euer more/be ferme and stable wout ony gaynlayenge. We shall from this daye afterwarde be true vnto god and to the moder of holy chirche of Rome/and to the pope Innocencius the thyrde/and to all that cometh after hy<sup>e</sup>.

And the realmes of Englonde and of Irlonde / we shall maynte truly in all manere poyntes apenst all manere men by our power thugh goddes helpe.

How the clerkes that were outlawed came agayne/and how kyng John was assoylled.

Whan this chartre was made and ensealed/the kyngge receyued agayne his crowne of Pandulfus honde. And sente anone vnto the Archebysshop Stephen/and to all his other clerkes and lewde men / that he had exiled out of this londe / that they sholde come ayen in to Englonde/and haue agayne theyr londes and also theyr rentes. And that he wolde make restytucyon of the goodes that he had taken of theyrs apenst theyr wyll. The kyngge hymself tho and Pandulf/and erles and barons went vnto Wynchestre apenst the Archebysshop Stephen. And whan he was come.the kyngge wente apenst hym and fell adowne to his feet/and thus to hym sayd. fayne syre ye be welcome. And I crye you mercy by cause that I haue trespassed apenst you. The Archebysshop toke hym vnto in his armes/and kyllyd hym curteply oftentymes/and after ledde hym to the doore of saynt Swythunes chirche by the honde/and assoylled hym of the sentence/and hym reconsoyled to god & to holy chirche. And that was on Saynt Margaretes daye. And the Archebysshop anone went for to synge masse. And the kyngge offred atte the masse a marke of golde. And whan the masse was done/alle they wente for to receyue theyr londes/without ony manere gaynlayeng. And that daye they made all myrth and Joye ynough. But yet was not the enterdytynge releaced/by cause the pope had sette/that the enterdytynge sholde not be done / tyll the kyngge had made full restytucyon of the

goodes that he had taken of holy chirche. And that hymself holde do homage to the pope by a certayn Legate/that he holde sende in to Englonde. ¶ And thenne toke Pandulf his leue of þe kynge and of the Archebysshop/and wente agayne vnto Rome. ¶ And the Archebysshop anone lete come before hym prelates of holy chirche atte Redyng/for to treat and counseyll how moche/and what they holde are of the kyng/for to make resktycyon of the goodes that he had taken of theym. And they ordeyned and sayd/that the kyng holde yeue to the Archebysshop thre thousande marke for the wronge that the kyng had done vnto hy. And also by porcyons to other clerkes. xv. thousande marke. ¶ And the same tyme Nicholaus bysshop of Tuscany Cardynall Penpenciarius of Rome came in to Englonde thugh the popes comaundement/the fyfth halendas of Octobrie & came to London/the fyfth Nonas of Octobrie/for by cause þe kyng Johan and all the kynges that came after hym/shalde euer more holde the reame of Englonde & of Irlonde/of god & of the pope/payenge to the pope by yere as it is aboue sayd.

¶ How the enterdptynge was vndone in Englonde/& of the debate that was bytwene kyng Johan and the barons of the reame.

**A**S kyng Johan had done his homage to the Legate that shewed hym the popes letter/that he holde paye to Julyan/& yelde ayen that was kyng Rychardes wyfe the thyrde parte of the londe of Englonde and of Irlonde that he had withholde syth that kyng Rycharde deyed. ¶ Whan kyng Johan herde this/he was wonder wroth. for vnterly the enterdptynge myght not be vndone tyll that he had made gree and resktycyon to the forsayd Julyan/of that

he asked. The Legate wente thenne agayne to the pope after Cristmasse. And the kyng sente ouer see to Julyan that was kyng Rychardes wyf/for to haue a relace of that he axed of hym. ¶ And so it befell/that Julyan deyed anone after Ester. And in soo moche the kyng was quyte of that thynge that he axed. ¶ But thenne at the feest of saynt John that came next after/though the popes comaundement/the enterdptynge was fyrst releasyd thughout all Englonde/the seuench dawe of July. And. viij. yere was the londe enterdpted. And on þe morninge men ronge and sayd masse thourough out all London/and soo after thourough out all Englonde. ¶ And the next yere after there began a grete debate bytwene kyng Johan and the lordes of Englonde/for by cause that he wolde not graunt the lawes and holde/the whiche saynt Edward had ordeyned/and had ben vled and holden vnto that tyme that he had them broken. for he wolde holde noo lawe/but dyde alle thynge that hym lyked/and dysheryted many men without consente of lordes and perys of þe londe. And wolde dysheryte the good erle Radulf of Chestre/for by cause that he undertoke hy of his wychednesse/and for cause that he dyde so moche shame and vylany to god and to holy chirche. And also for he helde & haunted his owne brothers wyf/and laye also by many other wymmen greate lordes daughters. for he spared noo woman that hym lyked for to haue. Wherefore all the lordes of the londe were wrothe/and tooke the cyte of London. To celsse this debate the Archebysshop and lordes of the londe assembled before the feest of saynt John Baptyst in a medowe helyde the towne of Stanys/that is called Romney mede. And the kyng made them there a chartre of fraunchyse/suche as they wolde axe/and in suche manere they were accorded/and that accord

dement lasted not ful longe. for the kynge hymselfe loone after dyde apenst the popntes of the same chartre that he had made. Wherfore the moost parte of the lordes of the londe assembled and began to warre vppon hym apen/ and brenned his townes/ & robbed his folke/ and dyde all the sorowe that they myght/ & made them as stronge as they myght with all the power they had / and thought to dryue hym out of Englonde/ and make Lowys the kynge's sone of fraunce kynge of Englonde. ¶ And kynge Johā sente cho ouer see/ and ordeyned so moche people of Normans/ & of Pycardes/ and of flemynge / soo that the londe myght not susteyne them/ but with moche sorowe. ¶ And amonge all this people/ there was a man of Normandye that was called fawkis of Brient/ and this Norman & his company spared nother churches / ne houses of relygion / but they brente & robbed it/ and bare awaye alle that they myght take so that the londe was all destroyed/ what of ony syde and of ocher. ¶ The barons and lordes of Englonde ordeyned amonge theym the beste spekers and wylest men/ and sente them ouer the see to kynge Phylipp of fraunce/ & prayed hym/ that he wolde sende Lowys his sone in to Englonde to be kynge of Englonde / & to receyue the crowne.

¶ How Lowys the kynge's sone of fraunce came in to Englonde with a stronge power of peple/ to be kynge of Englonde

**A**None as kynge Phylipp of fraunce herde these tydynge/ he made cetayne alpaunce bytwene theym by theyr comune eleccon/ that Lowys kynge Phylipp's sone of fraunce sholde goo with theym in to Englonde/ and dryue out kynge Johā of the londe. And alle that were in presence of Lowys / made vnto hym homage/ and became his men

¶ And the Barons of Englonde helde them styll at London/ and abode Lowys the kynge's sone of fraunce. And this was the next Saterday before the Ascensyon of our lorde/ that Lowys came in to Englonde with a stronge power. And that tyme kynge Johā had taken all the castels of Englonde in to Alpens hondes/ ¶ And tho came Lowys / and besyged Rochestre castell/ & toke it with st. ength And the thursdaye in Wyfsonweke lete hange all the Alpens that were therin/ And the Thursday next lewynge/ he came to London / & there he was receyued with moche honour of the lordes that abode hym there / and alle to hym made homage. ¶ And afterwarde on the Tewpsday next after the Trynpte sonday he toke þe castell of Reigate. And on the morowe after the castell of Gilforde/ & the frydaye next after the castell of farneham. And the Monday next after the cyte of Wynchestre to hym was polde/ And the morowe after Saynt Johans daye the maneer of Wulueseye to hym yelden. And the Tewpsdaye after the Dtas of saynt Peter and poull they toke the castell of Diham. And the mondaye after saynt Margaretes daye / he ordeyned hym towarde Barwore/ for to spege the castell/ and there he dwelled xij. dayes & myght not gete the castell/ & thenne went he thens & came to London and the Toure to hym was polden.

¶ How the pope sente in to Englonde a Legate that was called Swalo / & of the deth of kynge Johā.

**A**nd in the same tyme the pope sente in to Englonde a Legate/ that was called Swalo/ & he was preest Cardynall of Rome / for to mayntene kynge Johā's cause / apenst the barons of Englonde. But the barons had so huge parte & helpe/ though Lowys the kynge's sone of fraunce/ that kynge Johā

wyst not whether to torme ne go. And so it befell that he wolde haue gone to Nicholl. And as he wente thyderwarde/ he came by the abbaye of Swynethede / & there he abode two dayes. And as he saite at mete/ he axed a monke of the hous how moche that a loof was worth that was sette before hym vpon the table/ And the monke sayd/ that the loof was worth but an half peny. D sayd the kynge tho. Here is grete chepe of brede. Now sayd he tho/ and I may lye ony whyle such a loof shall be worth. .xx. shelynges or half a yere be gone. And so whan he sayd this worde/ moche he thought/ and often he syghed/ and toke and ete of the brede/ and sayd by god / the worde that I haue spoken/ it shall be soth. ¶ The monke that stode before the kynge was for this worde full soyr in his herte/ and thought/ rather he wolde hymselfe suffer dech/ and thought yf he myght ordeyne therfore some manere remedye. And anone the monke wente vnto his abbot and was thryuen of hym/ and tolde the abbot all that the kynge had sayd. And prayed his abbot for to assople hym/ for he wolde yeue the kynge suche a drynke that all Englonde sholde be glady there of and Joyfull. Tho yede the monke in to a gardeyne/ and founde a greate tode therin/ and toke her vp and put her in a cuppe/ & prycked the tode thorough with a broche many tymes tyll that the venym came out of euery syde in the cuppe. And tho toke the cuppe & fylled it with good ale/ and brought it before the kynge knelynge sayenge. Syr sayd he Wal dionke ye of so good a cuppe. ¶ Begyn monke sayd the kynge. And the monke dranke a grete draught/ & toke the kynge the cuppe/ and the kynge dranke also a grete draught/ and sette downe the cuppe. The monke anone ryght wente in to farmerye and there deyed anone/ on whoos soule god haue mercy Amen.

And fyue monkys lpyng for his soule spe cyally/ and shall whyle that the abbaye standeth. The kynge rosc vp anone full euyll at ease and comaunded to remeue the table/ & axed after the monke. And men tolde hym that he was deed/ for his wombe was broken in londre. ¶ Whan the kynge herde this/ he comaunded for to trulle/ but it was for nought / for his bely began to swelle for the drynke that he had dionke/ and within two dayes he deyed on the morowe after saynt Lukis dape/ and had many fayre childern of his body begoten/ that is to saye. Henry his sone that was kynge after John his fader/ and Rycharde that was Erle of Cornewalle/ and Plabell that was Emperesse of Rome/ and Elenore that was quene of Scotlonde. And this kyng Johan whan he had regned .xliij. yere and fyue monethes and fyue dayes/ he deyed in the castell of newerke. And his body was buryed at Wynchestre.

¶ Anno dñi .M. CC.

**H**edericus the seconde was Emperour. .xxx. yere. This man was crowned of honou<sup>r</sup> y pope apenst Otto for by cause that he sholde fyghte with hym/ the whiche he dyde/ and expullyd hym. And fyrste he nourysshed the chirche/ and afterwarde he dyspoyled it/ as a stepmoder. Wherfore Honorius curlyd hym/ and all tho that were contrary to his oppnyon the pope assoylled. And the same sentence Gregori<sup>9</sup> the .ix. renewed. And this same man put Henry his owne sone into pryson/ and there murdred hym. Wherfore whan this Emperour an other leason was lyke / by an other sone of his owne he was murdred/ in the tyme of Innocencius the fourth. ¶ Honorius the thyrde was pope after Innocencius. .x. yere/ & confermed the ordre of frere prechers and Mynors. And made certayne Decretalles,

Of kyng Henry the thyrde that was crowned at Gloucestre.

**A**nd after this kyng John reigned his sone Henry / & was crowned at Gloucestre whan he was .ix. yere olde / on laynt Symondes daye & Jude of Swalo the Legate of Rome thugh coulepyll of all the grete lordes that helde with kyng Johan his fader / that is to saye / the erle Radulf of Chestre. Wyllyam erle Marshall erle of Penbroke. Wyllyam the Biener erle of feriers. Serle the manly baron. And all other grete lordes of Englonde helde with Lowys the kynges sone of fraunce. And anone after whan kyng Henry was crowned. Swalo the Legate helde his coulepyll at Bystowe at laynt Martyns feest. And there were .xi. bysshops of Englonde & of Walys / & of other prelates of holy chirche a grete nombre / and erles & barons / & many knyghtes of Englonde. And all tho that were at that coulepyll / swore feawte vnto Henry the kyng that was kyng Johns sone. And anone after the Legate enterdpyted Walys / for cause that they helde with the barons of Englonde. Also all tho that holpe / or yaued ony coulepyll to meue warre ayenst the newe kyng Henry he accuryd them. And at the begynnynge / he put in the sentence the kyngs sone of fraunce Lowys. And neuertheles the same Lowys wolde not spare for all that. But wente & toke the castell of Barcamstede / and also the castell of Hertforde. And from that daye afterwarde / the barons dyde there somoche harme thughout all Englonde. and pryncypalle the frenshe men that were with kyng Lowys. Wherfore the grete lordes / and all the compyn people of Englonde / lete them dresse / for to dyspue Lowys & his company out of Englonde / but some of the barons & frenshe men were gone to the cyte of Nicholl / & toke the towne & helde it to kyng Lowys pro-

pyte. But thither came kyng Henryes men with a grete power / that is to saye the erle Radulf of Chestre / & Wyllyam erle Marshall / & Wyllyam the Biener erle of feriers / & many other lordes with them / & yaued batayll vnto Lowys men. And there was slayne the erle of Perchees / and Lowys men were fowle dyscomfyted. And there was taken Serle erle of Wynchestre / and Humfroy de Boune erle of Hertforde / & Robert the sone of Walter / & many other that began warre ayenst the kyng. there they were taken & ledde vnto kyng Henry / that was kyng Johns sone. And whan the tydynges came to Lowys of the dyscomfyture / he was the kynges sone of fraunce. He remeued fro thens & wente vnto London / and lete chytte the yates fast of the cyte. And anone after the kyng sent to the Burgys of London / that they sholde yelde them vnto hym / & the cyte also. And he wolde theym graunte all theyr fraunchyses that euer they were wonte to haue before. And wolde conferme them by his grete newe chartre vnder his brode seale. And in the same tyme a grete lorde that was called Eustace the monke came out of fraunce with a grete company of lordes / and wolde haue comie in to Englonde / for to haue holpen Lowys the kynges sone of fraunce. But Hubert of Burgh / & the fyue portes with .viij. shyppes tho mette with them in the hyghe see / & assaylled theym egrely / and ouercame them with strength / & smote of Eustace the monkes heed. And toke also .x. grete lordes of fraunce & put theym in to pylon. And slewe almost all the men that came with theym / and anone drowned the shyppes in the see.

*in the see & monke of Burgh or Bevalle*

How Lowys turned ayeu in to fraunce / and of the confermacyon of kyng Johns chartre.



**S**o whan Lowys herde these ty-  
 dynges he dradde sore to be deed  
 & lost. And lete ordeyne / & speke bytwe-  
 ne h̄ kynge & Lowys by the Legate Swa-  
 lo. And though the Archebysshopp of  
 Caüterbury / & thugh other grete lordes  
 that all the prysoners on that one halfe  
 & that other sholde be delyuerd & go quytte.  
 And Lowys hymself sholde haue for  
 his costes a thoulande pounce of syluer.  
 & sholde go out of Englonde / and come  
 neuer more therin agayne. And in this  
 maner was the accorde made bytwene  
 kynge Henry and Lowys. And tho was  
 Lowys assoppled of h̄ popes Legate / that  
 was called Swalo of the sentence that  
 he was in / & the Barons of Englonde  
 also. And after this kyng Henry & Swa-  
 lo the Legate & Lowys went to Merton  
 & there was h̄ peas confermed / & bytwe-  
 ne them ordeyned. And after Lowys wen-  
 te from thens vnto London & tooke his  
 leue / & was brought with moche honour  
 vnto the see with the Archebysshopp of  
 Caunterbury / and with other bysshops /  
 & also with erles & barons / and so wen-  
 te in to fraunce. And afterwarde the  
 kynge & the Archebysshop / and also er-  
 les and barons assembled them / & came  
 to the cyte of London atte Myghelmas  
 that next came tho sewynge and helde  
 there a grete parlyament atte London /  
 And there were tho renewed all the frau-  
 chyle that kynge John had graunted /  
 atte Romney mede / and kynge Henry  
 tho confermed by his chartre / the whis-  
 che yet ben holden thugh out all Eng-  
 londe. And in that tyme the kynge to-  
 ke of euery plough londe .ij. shelynges /  
 And Hubert of Brugh was made tho  
 cheyf Justyce of Englonde. And this was  
 in the fourth yere of kynge Henryes reg-  
 ne. And in the same yere was Saynt  
 Thomas of Caüterbury translated the  
 .i. yere after his martyrdom. And after  
 it was ordeyned by all the lordes of En-  
 glonde / that all Alyens sholde go out of

Englonde / & come nomore therin. And  
 kynge Henry toke tho all the castelles in  
 to his honde / that kynge Johan his fa-  
 der had yewe & take to Alyens for to ke-  
 pe that helde with hym. But the prou-  
 de fawkis of Brytayne rychely lete as-  
 raye his castell of Bedforde / whiche he  
 had of kynge Johns yeste / & helde that  
 castell ayenst kynge Henryes wyll with  
 myght and strength. And the kynge ca-  
 me thyder with a stronge power / and be-  
 syged the castell. And the Archebysshop  
 mayster Stephen of Langton / with a  
 fayre company of knyghtes came to the  
 kynge hym for to helpe. And from the  
 Assenlyon of our lord vnto h̄ Assump-  
 cyon of our lady lasted the syege. And  
 tho was the castell wonne and take. And  
 the kynge lete hange all tho that wen-  
 te in to the castell with theyr good wyll.  
 for to holde the castell. That is for to  
 save .lxxx. men. And tho afterwarde  
 fawkis hymself was founde and had  
 in a chirche att Louentree / and there he  
 forswore all Englonde with moche sha-  
 me / and wente agayne in to his owne  
 countree. And whyles that kyng Hen-  
 ry reigned. Edmonde of Abyndon / that  
 was tresorer of Salysbury was conse-  
 crated Archebysshopp of Caunterburpe.  
 And this kyng Henry sente ouer the see  
 vnto the Erle of prouynce / h̄ he sholde  
 sende h̄ his doughter in to Englonde /  
 that was called Ellenore / and he wolde  
 spowse her. And sho she came in to En-  
 glonde after Crystmas. And on the mor-  
 rowe after saynt Hylaryes daye / the Ar-  
 chebysshop Edmonde spowled them to-  
 gyder at Westmestre with grete solemp-  
 nyte. And there was a swete syght by-  
 twene them. That is to save. Edwarde  
 that was nexte kynge after his fader /  
 floure of curteply & of largenelle / and  
 Margarete h̄ was after quene of Scots  
 londe / & Beaurice that was after coun-  
 tesse of Brytayne / and Katheryne that  
 deded mayde in relyggon.

¶ Of the quinzeme of goodes that were graunted for the newe chartre/ and of the purueaunce of Oxforde.

**A**nd thus it befell that the lordes of Englonde wolde haue some addicyons moo in the chartre of fraūchyse that they had of the kynge/ & spake thus bytwene them. And the kynge graunted them all theyr appynge. And made to them two chartres/ that one is called the grete chartre of fraūchyyles/ & that other is called þe chartre of forest. And for the graunte of these two chartres/ prelates/ erles & barons/ & all the compyns of Englonde / yaued to the kynge a thousande marke of syluer. ¶ Whan kynge Henry had be kynne .xliij. yere/ the same yere he & his lordes/ erles & barons of the reame wente to Oxforde / and ordeyned a lawe in amendement of the reame. And fyrst swore the kynge hymself/ & afterwarde alle the lordes of the londe/ that they wolde holde that statute for euer/ more / and who that them brake sholde be deed. But the seconde yere after that that ordynaūce/ the kynge thugh counseyll of Edward his sone/ & of Rycharde his brother / that was erle of Cornewaylle/ & also of other repented hym of that othe that he had made for to holde that lawe & ordynaūce. And sente to the courte of Rome to be assolpled of that othe. And in the yere next comynge after/ was the grete darch of corne in Englonde. for a quarter of whete was worth .xxiiij. shelynges. And the poore people ete netles and other wedes for hungre. And deyed many a thousande for defawte of mete. ¶ And in the .xlviij. yere of kynge Henryes regne began warre and debate bytwene hym and his lordes/ for by cause that he had broken the couenauntes that were made bytwene them at Oxforde. ¶ And the same yere was þe towne of Northampton taken/ and folke slayne that were within/ for by cause

that they had ordeyned wyldre fyre for to brenne the cyte of London. ¶ And in the moneth of Maye that came next after/ vpon saynt Pancras dape/ was the batayll of Lewes/ that is to saye/ the Wenesdaye before Saynt Dunstons dape. And there was taken kynge Henry hymself/ & syr Edward his sone/ & Rycharde his broðer erle of Cornewaylle/ & many other lordes. And in the same yere nexte sewynge syr Edward the kynges sone brake out of the warde of syr Symonde of Mountforth/ erle of Lepetere/ at Hertford / & wente vnto the barons of the Marche/ & they receyued hym with moche honour. ¶ And the same tyme Gilbert of Claraūce erle of Gloucestre that was in the warde also of þe forsayd Symonde thourgh the comaundement of kynge Henry/ that wente fro hym with a grete herte/ for cause that he layd/ that the forsayd Gilbert was a foole/ wherfore he ordeyned hym afterwarde lo/ & helde hym with kynge Henry. ¶ And on the Saterdaye next after the myddes of August/ syr Edward the kynges sone dyscomfytte syr Symonde de Mountforth at Kelyngworth/ but the grete lordes that were there with hym were taken/ that is to saye. Baldewyne Wake. & Wyllyam de Moūchenlye/ & many other grete lordes. And the Tewysdaye next after was þe batayll done at Euthā. And there was slayne syr Symonde de Mountforth. Hugh the Spenser/ & Mountforth that was Rauf Bassettes sader of Draiton/ and other many grete lordes/ And whan this bataylle was done/ alle the gentylmen that had ben with the erle Symonde were dyshercyted / & ordeyned togyder & dyde moche harme to all the londe. for they destroyed theyr cuntryes in all that they myght.

¶ Of the syege of Kenylworth / & how the gentylmen were dyshercyted thourgh counseyll of the lordes of the reame of

Englonde/and how they came agayne  
and had theyr londes.

**A**nd the nexte yere comynge in  
May/the fourth daye before the  
feest of saynt Dunstane/was the batay  
le & lcomfytur at Chestrefelde/of them  
that were dysheryted/& there was many  
of theym slayne. And Robert Erle of  
feriers there was taken/& also Balde  
worne Wake/& John de lahay/W moche  
sorowe escaped thens. And on saynt Jo  
hans eue the Baptyst tho lewynge/bes  
gan hys seige of the castell Kenilworth/&  
the seige lasted to saynt Thomas eue hys  
apostle.in whiche daye syr Hugh Halyng  
ge had the castell for to kepe/that yelded  
vnto the kyng in this maner/that hymself  
& the other that were  
within the castell/sholde haue theyr lyses  
& lymes/& as moche thyng as they  
had therein/boch hors & harneys/& four  
dayes of respyce/for to deliuer clenly hys  
castell/of themselves/& of all other maner  
thyng/as they had within the castell/&  
so they went fro the castell. And syr Sy  
monde Mountfort the yonger/& the coun  
telle his moder were gone ouer the see in  
to fraunce/& there helde them as peo  
ple that were exyled out of Englonde  
for euer. And soone after it was ordey  
ned by the Legate Octobone/& by other  
greate lordes/the wysest of Englonde/  
that all tho that had be ayenst the kyng  
and were dysheryted/sholde haue ayen  
theyr londes by greuous raions/after  
that it was ordeyned. And thus they we  
re accorded with the kyng/& peas cryed  
thoroughout all Englonde/and thus the  
warre was ended. And whan it was do  
ne/the Legate toke his leue of the kyng  
& of the quene/& of the greate lordes of  
Englonde/& went tho to Rome the .lv.  
yere of kyng Henryes regne/and Ed  
warde kyng Johns lone of Brytayne  
Johan Bessy. Thomas of Clare. Roge  
re of Clyfforde. Dhes of Graunstone/

Robert le Brus. Johan of Berdon/and  
many other lordes of Englonde/& of be  
yonde the see tooke theyr waye towarde  
hys hooly londe. And hys kyng Henry deyd  
in the same tyme att Westmestre/whan  
he had regned .lv. yere & .xix. wekes/on  
saynt Edmonds daye the Archebysshop  
of Caüterbury. And he was enteryd on  
saynt Edmonds daye the kyng/in the  
yere of the Incarnacyon of our lorde Je  
su Cryste. M.CC.lxxij.

**P**rophecy of Merlyn of the kyng  
Henry the fyrste expounded / that was  
kyng Johans lone.

**A**nd of this Henry prophced  
Merlyn and sayd/that a lambe  
sholde come out of Wynchestre/in hys  
yere of the Incarnacyon of our lorde Jhes  
u Cryste. M.CC. and .xvi. with true  
lyppes & holynesse wyrtten in his herte/  
And he sayd sothe/for hys good Henry the  
kyng was borne in Wynchestre/in the  
yere abouesayd/& he spake good wordes  
& swete/& was an holy man & of good  
conscience. And Merlyn sayd/that this  
Henry sholde make the fayrest place of  
the worlde/that in his tyme sholde not  
be fully ended/& he sayd soth/for he ma  
de the newe werke of hys abbaye of saynt  
Peters chirche att Westmestre / that is  
fayrer of syght than any other place hys  
ony man knoweth thorough out all cry  
stendom . But kyng Henry deyd ere  
that werke were fully at an ende/& that  
was grette harme. And yet sayd Mer  
lyn / that this lambe sholde haue peas  
the moost parte of his regne. And he say  
de full soth/for he was neuer noyed tho  
rough warre/neyther dyspleased in no ma  
ner wyle/tyll a lyfell afore his deche/&  
Merlyn sayd in his prophcey more / &  
in the regne & ende of the foilsayd lam  
be/a wulf of a straunge londe shall doo  
hym moche harme thorough his warre/  
And that he sholde at hys laste be mayster

though helpe of a reed foxe / that sholde come forth of the North west & sholde hys ouercome. And that he sholde dryue hys out of the water / & hys prophete full well was knowne: for within a lytell tyme or the kynge deyed Symonde of Mountfordes erle of Leycetre / that was borne in Fraunce / began ayenst hym stronge warre / thurgh whiche doyng / many a good bachelour destroyed was & deyed / & dysheuyted. And whan kynge Henry had the victory at Eulham / & Symond the erle was slayne thourgh helpe & myght of Gilbert of Clare erle of Glocester / hys was in kepyng & warde of the forsayd Symonde / thurgh ordynauce of kynge Henry / that wente ayen vnto the kynge with moche power. Wherfor the forsayd Symonde was destroyed / and that was grete harme to the comyns of Englonde / that soo good a man was slayne for the trouthe / & deyed in charyte / & for the comyn profyete of the same folke / & therefore almyghty god for hym hath syns shewed many a fayre myracle to dyuers men & wyemen of the sphenesse & dysease that they haue had for the loue of hym.

And Merlyn also sayd in his prophete / that after that tyme / the lambe sholde be in straunge londe without ony pasture / and he sayd soch / for kynge Henry lyued no whyle after hys Symonde Mountfordes was slayne / that kynge Henry nedeyd anone after hym. And in the meane tyme syr Edward his sone / that was the best kynge of the worlde of honour / was tho in the holy londe / & gate there Acres. And in that countree he begate there vpon dame Elenore his wyf Johan of Acres his doughter / that afterwarde was countesse of Glocester / & made such a vpage in the holy londe / that alle the worlde spake of his knyghthode / & euery man dradde hym / hys & lowe thourgh out alle crystendome / as the stoye of hym telleth / as afterwarde ye shall

here more openly. And from the tyme that kynge Henry deyed / tyll that syr Edward was crowned kynge / all the grete lordes of Englonde were as faderles children without ony locoure / that they myght mayntene & gouerne / and defende ayenst theyr deedly enemyes.

**O** Regorius the .ix. was pope after Honorius / this man canonyled many sayntes / & defended myghtely the chirche ayenst Frederyk / therefore he toke he many prelates & two Cardynalles / the whiche wente to counseyll ayenst hym. This pope was segyd in the cyte of Rome by the Emperour / & he sawe the Romayns were corrupte by the moneye of the Emperour. Thence he toke in his honde the heedes of the appostles Peter & Poule / & went with processyon fro the chirche of saynt Johan Latranence / to saynt Peters chirche. And so he gate the hertys of the Romayns / & the Emperour went fayr awaye fro hys cyte. This pope made frere Janond to compyle the fyue bookes of Decretales / of many pylles & decrees. And after with many tribulacions of this tyraunt & other / he decessyd and wente to heuen.

Celestinus the fourth was pope after Gregorius almost a moneth / & he was in his lyfe & in his connyng laudable. And he was an olde man & a feble & decessyd / & there was no pope after hym almost a .xij. month.

Innocencius the fourth was pope after hym almost .xi. yere & .vi. monethes / this man canonyled many sayntes / & Frederyk the Emperour he deposyd & curtyd as enemye vnto god in the thyrde yere that he was made pope / & he was holpe by the Januents.

Thence was Henry the sixt chosen & Wyllyam / by the popes commaundement ayenst Frederyk that one after an other / but they preuayled not to ouercome his tyranie / for he was ouermyghty / ne these were not crowned / for they decessyd anone.

**T**homas de Aquine an holy doctour  
 Albertus magnus the byshop of Ratis-  
 ponens. Eustacius. Bonaventure a de-  
 vouite doctour were this tyme / the whi-  
 che destroyed moche herelye enfected by  
 the Emperour. **A**lexander was pope  
 after Innocentius. viij. yere / & lytell of  
 hym is wyten. **U**rban<sup>9</sup> was after h<sup>y</sup>  
 thre yere & thre monethes / this man dro-  
 ue awaye the hoste of the Sarrafyne by  
 men marked with the crosse / the whiche  
 Maufred had sente apenst the chirche /  
 And the pope toke the kyngdom of Ce-  
 cyle to the kynges brother of fraunce /  
 that he sholde fyght with Maufrede / &  
 thenne he deceasyd. And Maufrede after  
 lost his lyf & his kyngdom by Karolus.  
**A**lphonlus the kyng of Castell Ry-  
 chardes brother to the kyng of Englon-  
 de erle of Cornewayle / were cholen Em-  
 perours after the longe vacacyon of the  
 Emppre / for y<sup>e</sup> chelers of the Emperour  
 were dypyd in londre / & there was gre-  
 te stryfe many yere. At the laste deceasyd  
 Rycharde / & Alphonlus came amye afo-  
 re Gregori<sup>9</sup> the. ix. by the spgne of peas /  
 & vicerly renounced all his cytle of the  
 Emppre / and he had ony / for he was a  
 very wytty man / & a noble astronomer /  
 and his tables ben very famous the whi-  
 che he made / for they be compendyous.  
**C**lemens the fourth was pope after  
 Urban<sup>9</sup>. iij. yere & ix. monethes / this Cle-  
 mens was an holy man / & sayd thurgh  
 the spryte of prophcy / that the enemyes  
 of the chirche sholde perysshe as the lino-  
 ke. And it is to be byleued / h<sup>y</sup> god sellyd  
 the trybulacyons of the chirche thourgh  
 his merytes. This man afore had a wyf  
 and childern / and whan he was prest /  
 & after byshop / he was sente in to Eng-  
 lond Legate / and he no thynge knowyn-  
 ge was cholen pope / and after deceasyd  
 bledlydly for his vertuous luyng /  
**G**regori<sup>9</sup> the. x. was pope after h<sup>y</sup>m  
 foure yere / after he was made pope for  
 the desyre that he had to the holy londre.

the whiche he entended to bylyte perlo-  
 nally / at Loduū in frauce he made a so-  
 lempne counseyll / in the whiche the cou-  
 seyll of the Giekes & the Tartars were  
 & there the Giekes promysed to be re-  
 formed by the vnyte of the chirche. And the  
 Tartars were but a lytell afore bapty-  
 sed / & promysed the same. And there we-  
 re gadred. vi. L. byshops & .M. prelates /  
 & therfore a certayne man sayd Grego-  
 rius gadred togyder all kynde of peo-  
 ple And there was decreed / that all persons  
 & bycaryes sholde be called prests / & no  
 prelates / & that no man sholde assygne  
 his tythes to what chirche he wolde / as  
 they dyde afore. But they sholde be pay-  
 de to his moder chirche. And he damp-  
 ned the pluralyte of benefyces / & deyd  
 a blesyd man. **I**nnoce<sup>9</sup> the. v. was  
 after hym. v. monethes / & lytell he dyde  
**A**drian<sup>9</sup> was after hym oo moneth / &  
 dyde lesse. **J**ohs the. xxi. was after h<sup>y</sup>  
 viij. monethes / & he was in dyuers scy-  
 ces a famous man / but in maners a sole  
 & deceasyd anone. **N**icholaus the thyr-  
 de was pope after John oo yere. This  
 man was in his dayes in buyldyng a no-  
 ble man. & well gouerned the cytle all his  
 dayes. & y<sup>e</sup> seconde yere he deceasyd. **R**a-  
 dulph<sup>9</sup> was Emperour. xvij. yere / this  
 man was erle of Hanebrugh / a wyle mā  
 in armes / noble & victoryous / & was cho-  
 len at Balyle. And he toke the crosse on  
 h<sup>y</sup> for the holy londre. Thimperial bles-  
 syng he had not / but y<sup>e</sup> pope allowed the  
 eleccon / for fauour of the holy londre.

**A**nno dñi .M. CC. lxxiij.

**M**artinus the. iij. was pope after  
 Nichola<sup>9</sup> iij. yere. this man was  
 a grete louer of relygyous men / & grete  
 attendynge to vertuous werkes. This  
 man curlyd the Emperour of Constanty-  
 nople / in so moche as he promysed for to  
 toine to the fayth in the generall coun-  
 seyll / & dyde not / for y<sup>e</sup> whiche he suffred

many passyons & all holy chirche. Also he curlyd the kyng of Aragon / for he expullyd the kyng of Cecyle fro his kyng dome. And after he had done many bataylles apenst men of mysbyleue & many trybulacōns suffred / he deceasyd & dyde many myracles. ¶ Nichola<sup>s</sup> de lyra a noble doctour of dyuynyte was this tyme at Paris / this man was a Jewe of nacyon / & he was conuerted & myghclep profyted in the ordre of frere Mynours. & he wrote ouer all the Byble. Or elles he was in y<sup>e</sup> yere of our lord. M. CCC. xxx. & some man saye he was a Briban & h<sup>is</sup> fader & his moder were crystned but for pouerte he vslyted y<sup>e</sup> scole of the Jewes / & so he lerned the Jewes langage / or elles this Nichola<sup>s</sup> was informed of the Jewes in his yonge aege. ¶ Honorius the fourth was pope after Martin<sup>us</sup> two yere / & lyfell of hym is wyrtē / but that he was a temperat man & a dyscrete. ¶ Nichola<sup>s</sup> the fourth was pope after hym foure yere / this man was a frere Mynor / & alle though he was a good man in h<sup>is</sup> self / yet many vnhappy thynges felle in his tyme to the chirche. For many a batayll was in the cyte thurgh his occasyon / for he drew to moche to y<sup>e</sup> one parte. And after hym there was no pope two yere & .vi. monethes.

¶ Of kyng Edward that was kyng Henryes sone.

**A**nd after this kyng Henry regned Edward his sone the worthyes knyght of the worlde in honour / for goddes grace was in hym / for he had the byctorye of his enemyes / & as soone as his fader was deed / he came to London with a noble company of prelates / erles & barons / and all men dyde hym moche honoure. For in euery place that syr Edward roode in London / the stretes were couered ouer his heed with sylke of capplery / & other ryche couerynges

And for Joye of his comynge / the burgys of the cyte caste out all theyr wyndowes golde and syluer hondes full / in tokenynge of loue and worthyp / seruyce and reuerence. And out of the condyte of Chepe ranne whyte wyne and reed / as stremes doth of the water / & euery man dranke therof that wolde at theyr owne wyl. And this kyng Edward was crowned and enoynted as ryght heyre of Englonde with moche honour. And after masse the kyng wente in to his place to holde a ryall fest amonge them that dyde hym honour. And whan he was sette to meete / the kyng Alexander of Scotlande came to do hym honour and reuerence / with a queyntelye / & an hondred knyghtes with hym well horsyd & arrayde. And whan they were alyght of theyr stedes / they lete theym goo whether they wolde / & who that myght take them toke at theyr owne wyl / without ony chalyenge. And after came syr Edmond knyng Edwardes brother a curteys knyght & a gentyll of renoune / and the erle of Cornewaylle / and the erle of Glocestre. and after thenne came the erle of Penbroke / & the erle of Garenne. And eche of them by themselves ladde in theyr hondes an hondred knyghtes gayly dysguyssed in theyr armes. And whan they were alyghted of theyr horses / they lete them go whether that they wolde / & who that myght them cathe / them to haue styll withoute ony chalyenge. And whan alle this was done / kyng Edward dyde his dyligence and his myght for to amende and dresse the wronges in the beste manere that he myght to the honour of god and holy chirche / and to mayntene his honour / and to amende the noyaunce of the comyn people.

¶ How Pdeyne that was Lewelyns doughter of Walys / prynce Aymer / that was the erles brother of Mounforde were taken in the see.

**T**he fyrste yere afterwarde þ hynge Edward was crowned Lewelyn prynce of wales sente into fraunce to the erle Mountforde/þ thorough counseyll of his frendes/the erle sholde wedde his doughter. And þ erle tho auyled hþ vpon this thynge/and sente vnto Lewelyn & layd. that he wolde sende after hys doughter. and so he sent Aymer his broder after the damoyzell. & Lewelyn arayed shypes for his doughter & for Syr Aymer. and for her sayre company that sholde goo with her. And this Lewelyn dyd grete wronge. for it was couenaūted that he sholde yeue his doughter to noo manere man/without counsell and consent of kynge Edwarde. And so it befel that a Burgeys of Brystow came in þ see with wyne laden: and mette them/ & toke them with myght and power. And anone the burgeys sente theym to the kyng. And whan Lewelyn herde this tydynges he was very wrothe/and also sorowfull. and gan to warre vpon kynge Edwarde/and dyd moche harme vnto Englyshmen/and bete downe the kynges castels/and began for to dystrope kyng Edwardes londe: And whan tydynges came vnto the kyng of this thynge/ he wente into walys and somoche he dydd thoroughe goddes grace and his grete power/that he drofe Lewelyn vnto grete myscheyf/that he fledde all maner of strench & came & yelded hym vnto kynge Edwarde. & paue hym. i. marke of syluer. to haue peas. And toke the damoyzell & all his herylage. & made an oblygaciō to kynge Edwarde to come to his parlemente two tymes of the yere. And in þ seconde yere after that kynge Edwarde was crowned/ he helde a generall parlement at westmestre/ & there he made the statutes for defaute of lawe by the comune assente of all his baronage/ And atte Ester nexte lewenge/ the kyng sente by his letter vnto Lewelyn prynce of wales that he sholde come too his parlemente

for his londe/ & for his holdynge in walles/as the strenthe of his letter oblygatory wytnessyd. Tho Lewelyn had scoone and dyspyte of the kynges commaundement/ And for pure wrathe apen began werre vpon kynge Edwarde. and dystrope his londes. And tho whanne kynge Edward herd of thyle tydynges. he wered wonder wrothe vnto Lewelyn and in hast assembled his people/ & wente hym toward walles/ And warred so vpon Lewelyn the prynce/ tyll that he broughte hym in moche sorowe and dysleafe. And Lewelyn sawe that his defence myghte hym notte auaylle/ and came apen/ and yelded hym to the kynges grace/ & cryed hym merce. and longe tyme kneled before the kynges fote. The kyng had of hym pyte/ and commaunded hym for to aryle. And for his mekenes forpaue hym his wrache/ and to hym layd/ that yf he trespassed to hym a nother tyme that he wold dystrope hym for euermore. **D**auid that was Lewelyns broder that same tyme dwelled with kynge Edwarde/ and was a felle man and a subtyll/ and enuyous/ and also ferre castynge/ & moche treason thoughte. and euermore made good semblaunt/ and semed so true þ no man myght perceyue his fallnes.

**H**ow Lewelyn thugh eggynge of his brocher Dauyd werryd agayn vpon kyng Edwarde.

**I**t was not longe after that tyme that kynge Edwarde gaf to Dauyd Lewelyns broder the lordshyppe of frodelham. & made hym a knyght & so moche honour dyd he neuer after to mā of walys bycause of hym. **R**ynge Edward helde his parlement atte London whan he hadde do in walys þ he wolde and chaunged his money/ that was full yll kyttē/ wherfore the people playned sore. so that the kyng enquired of the trespassours. And iii. hūdred were atteynted

of suche maner fallnes/wherfore some were hanged and some drawe and after hangyd. And afterwarde the kynge ordeyned/that the sterlynge halfpeny and ferchynge sholde go through out all his londe/And commaunded that no man fro that daye afterwarde paye ne feoffed hous of releygon with londe/tenement without speyall leue of þe kynge. & he þe dyde sholde be punysshed at the kynges wyll/and the yeste shall be for nought. And it was not longe after that Leweslyn prynce of wales thurgh the tycemēt of Dauyd his brother/and bothe theyr consent/they thought to dylcheryte kyng Edward/in almoche as they myghte/so that thourough them bothe the kynges peas was broken. And whan kynge Edwarde herde of this/anone he sent hys barons into Northumberlonde and the Sureys also/that they sholde go & take theyr vpage vpon the traytours Leweslyn and Dauyd.& wonder herd it was for to warre tho/for it is wynter in walys/whan in other countres is Somer. And Lewelyn lete ordeyne and well araye and vytapll his good castell of Swādon.and was therein an huge nombre of people/and plente of vytaplls so þe kynge Edward wyll not where for to entre. And whan the kynges men it percepued & also the strenche of walys/they lete come in the see barges & botes.and grete plankys as many as they myght ordeyne and haue:for to go to the sayd castel of Swandon.with men on fote & alloo on hors. But þe wallshmen had so moche people/& were so stronge. þe they draue þe Englyshmen apen.so þe ther was some chepyelle of people at þe toynynge apen þe the charge & the burden of men made þe barges & the botes to synke.& there was drowned many a good knyghte/þe is to saye. Lyr Robert Clyfford/Lyr wylliam of Lyndeleye. þe was Lyr Johnis lone fitz Robert.& Lyr Rycharde Tanny/and an huge nōbre of othe/& all was thurgh

ther owne foly. for yf they had had gode elpyes/they had not be harmyd. whā kynge Edwarde herde tell þe his people were so drowned.he made sorowe inouygh.but tho came Lyr John of Bessy fro þe kynge of Arago.& brought with hym moche people of bachelers & of Galscones/& were souldyours.and dwelled wth the sayd John of Bessy/and receyued of hym wages and with hym were witholde.& noble men they were for to fyght & biente many townes/and slewe moche people of wallshmen.all þe they myght take. And all tho with strenche and myght made assawte vnto þe castell of Swādon and gate the castell/And whan dauyd the prynce brother herde of this tycynge:he ordeyned hym to flyght and Lewelyn the prynce saw that his broder was fledde/then he was sore abalshedde for he hadde no powet to his warre for to mayntene. And so Lewelyn gan for to flee/and wende welle for to haue scapedde. But in a morowe Lyr Roger mortymer mette with hym oonly w. r. knyghtes.& sette hym rounde aboute. And to hym went/& smote of his heed/and presentyd þe same heed vnto kynge Edwarde. And in this manere Lewelyn the pryce of walys was taken/& his hede smyten of/and also all his heyres dylcheryted for euermore thurgh ryghtfull dome of all the lordes of the reame.

**T**hus dauyd þe was Lewelyns broder prynce of walys was putte to deche.

**D**Auyd that was þe prynces broder of walys/thrughe pryde wende too haue be prynce of walys/after hys brothers deche/and vppon this he sente after Wallshemen to his parlement at Dynbygh and folyshely made Walys too arple apenste the kynge and began too meue warre ayenste kynge Edward and dyd all the sorowe and displease that he myght by his power. whanne kynge



Edwarde herde of this thinge / he ordey  
ned men to purswe vpon hym. and Da  
uyd fyrstly hym defended / tyll that he  
came to the towne of Saynt Morice / and  
there was Dauid take as he fledde. and  
ladde to the kynge. And the kynge com  
maūded h̄ he holde behangyd & draw  
en / & smyte of his heed / & quarter hym /  
and send his hede to London & the four  
quarters sende to the four chyet townes  
of walys. for they sholde take ensample  
therof & beware. And afterwarde kyng  
Edwarde lete crye his peas thugh oute  
all wales & sealed all the londe into his  
honde / & all the grete lordes h̄ were leste  
alpye came / to do feautee & homage to h̄  
kyng Edwarde / as to theyr kynde lor  
de / And tho lete kyng Edwarde amen  
de the lawes of walys h̄ were defectyue  
And he sent to all h̄ lordes of Walys by  
letter patentes / h̄ they sholde come al to  
parlemente. And whan they were come  
the kyng sayd to them full curteysly lor  
dynge ye be welcome / & me behouethe  
your couleyll & your helpe for to go into  
Galcoyne for to amende h̄ trespasse h̄ to  
me was done whan I was there. & for to  
entreate of peas bytwene h̄ kyng of A  
ragon & h̄ prynce of Mourey / & all h̄ h̄  
geslyege men erles & barans consented  
& graunted thereto. And tho made hym  
kyng Edwarde redy & went into Gal  
coyne. & lete amende all the trespasse h̄  
hym was doon in Galcoyne. And of h̄  
debate h̄ was bytwene the kyng of Ara  
gon and the prynce of Mourey he lesled  
and made theym accorded. And whyle  
good kyng Edwarde and Elynore his  
wyfe were in Galcoyne. The gode erle  
of Cornewayll was made Wardeyn of  
Englonde tyll that kyng Edwarde ca  
me ayen. And tho enquired he of his trait  
ours that coniected fallnesse agaynste  
hym And eche of them all receyued ther  
dome after that they had deserued. But  
in the meane tyme that the good kyng  
Edwarde was beyonde the see / too doo /

them for to make amendes that ayenste  
hym had trespasse ther was a false the  
yf / a traytoure that was called Rylap  
Meridok / begā for to make werre ayen  
ste kyng Edward. and h̄ was for cause  
of syr Dayne Tiptot. wrongfully gre  
ued and dyleased the foilsayd Rylap me  
rydok. And whan kyng Edwarde her  
de all this matere & it well vnderstode a  
none he sente by his letter pryue seale to  
the foilsayd Rebellon Rylap Meridok  
h̄ he sholde begynne in no manere wyse  
for to make & reple werre but h̄ he shol  
de be in peas for his loue / & whan he ca  
me ayen into Englonde he wolde vnder  
take the quarell & amende all that was  
mysdon. This foilsayd Rylap Meridok  
dylpysed the kynges comaūdemēt and  
spared not to doo all the sorowe that he  
myght to the kynges men of Englonde  
But anone after he was take & ladde to  
Porke / and there he was drawn & han  
gyd for his felonye.

**O**f dressynge h̄ kyng Edward ma  
de of his Justices and of his clerkes h̄ they  
had doon for ther fallnes & how he dra  
ue the Jewes out of Englonde for ther  
vlury and myspleue.

**A**S kyng Edwarde hadde dwel  
led thre yere in Galcoyne a deli  
re came to hym for to goo into Englon  
de ayen. And whanne he was come ayē  
he founde so many playntes made to h̄  
of his Justices and of his clerkes / that  
hadde done so many wronges and falls  
nesse that wonder it was to here. and for  
whiche fallnesse syr Thomas waylond  
the kynges Justice / foilsayd Englonde  
at the toure of London / for fallnesse that  
men put vpon hym / wherfore he was at  
teynt / and proued fals. And anone after  
whan h̄ kyng had done his wyll of the  
Justices tho lete he enquire & clippe how  
the Jewes dylcepyued & begyled his peo  
ple / thorough the synne of fallnesse and

of blury. And lete ordeyne a preuy parlement amonge his lordes. And they ordeyned amonge theym /<sup>h</sup> all the Jewes. Sholde voyde out of Englonde for theyr mysbyleue /<sup>&</sup> also for theyr fals blurpe that they dyd vnto crysten men. And for to spede. and make an ende of this thynge / all the compynalte of Englonde paue vnto the kynge the .xv. peny of all theyr goodes meuable /<sup>&</sup> soo were the Jewes dryuen out of Englonde. And tho went <sup>h</sup> Jewes into fraunce. <sup>&</sup> there they dwelld / thurgh leue of kynge Phylpp <sup>h</sup> tho. was kynge of fraunce.

**H**ow kynge Edward was sealed in all the londe of Scotlonde / thurgh consente <sup>&</sup> graūt of all <sup>h</sup> lordes of Scotlode

**I**t was not longe after that alexandre kynge of Scotlonde was dede / and Dauid the erle of Huntynghden that was the kynges brother of Scotlonde after that hys brother was dede / for cause that he was ryghtfulle heire / But many grete lordes sayd nay. wherefore grete debate arose bytwene theym and ther frēdes / for almoche as they wolde not consente to his coronacyon /<sup>&</sup> the meane tyme the forsayd Dauid dede / And so it befell that <sup>h</sup> sayd Dauid had thre doughters / that worthly were maryed / The fyrste doughter was maryed to Bailol / the seconde to Brus / and the thyrde to Hallynges. The forsayd Bailol <sup>&</sup> Brus chalenged <sup>h</sup> londe of Scotlonde /<sup>&</sup> grete debate <sup>&</sup> stryf arose bytwene <sup>h</sup>ē. by cause eche of thē wolde haue be kynge. And whan the lordes of Scotlonde saw <sup>h</sup> debate bytwene thē / came to <sup>h</sup> kynge Edward of Englonde. <sup>&</sup> sealed <sup>h</sup> in all <sup>h</sup> lond of Scotlonde as chyef lord / And whan the kynge was sealed of the forsayd lordes / the forsayd Bailol <sup>Br</sup> and Hallynges came to the kynges courte / and axyd of the kynge whiche of thē

sholde be kynge of Scotlonde / And kynge Edward that was full gentyll and true / lete enquire by <sup>h</sup> Cronycles of Scotlonde / and of the grettest lordes of Scotlonde / whiche of them was of the eldest blood. And it was founde that Bailol was the eldest. and <sup>h</sup> the kynge of Scotlonde sholde holde of the kynge of Englonde / and do hym feaute and homage. And after this was done Bailol wente into Scotlonde /<sup>&</sup> there was crowned kynge of Scotlonde. And the same tyme was vpon the see grete warre bytwene the Englyshmen and the Normans / But vpon a tyme. the Normans arrayued all at Douer. <sup>&</sup> there they martyred an holy man that was called Thomas of Douer / And afterward were the Normans slayne. <sup>h</sup> there elcaped not one of them. And so afterwarde kynge Edward sholde lete the duchye of Galcoyne thurgh kynge philpp of fraunce thurgh the his fals castynge of the Doulepers of the londe / wherefore syr Edmonde <sup>h</sup> was kynge Edwardis brother paue vp his homage vnto the kynge of fraunce. And in that tyme the clerkes of Englonde graunted to kynge Edward halfe deale of holy chirche goodes / in helpynge soo recouer his londe agayne in Galcoyne. And the kynge sent thither a noble company of his bachelers. And hymself wolde haue gone to portel mouthe / but he was let thurgh one Maddok of walys that hadde sealed the castell of Swandon into his honde / and for that cause the kynge comed to walys at Cristmasse / And bycause that the noble lordes of Englonde that were sent into Galcoyne hadde no comforth of ther lorde <sup>h</sup> kynge they were take of syr Charlys of fraunce / that is to say / syr John of brytayne / syr Roberte Tiptot / syr Raufe Tanny / syr Hughe Bardolfe / and syr Adam of Cretynge / And yet at the Alcentyon was Maddok take in Walys / and a nother that was called Morgan.

and they were sent to the tour of Londo  
and there they were byheded.

How Syr Johñ Baylol kynge of Scot  
londe with sayd his homage.

**A**nd whan Syr Johñ Baylol ky  
nge of Scotlonde vnderstode that  
kynge Edward was werred in Gal  
coyne/to whome þ reame of Scotlonde  
was delpuerd/fallylly tho apenst his oth  
w sayd his homage thurgh procurynge  
of his folke & sent vnto þ courte of Ro  
me thurgh a fals suggestyon to be allo  
pylled of. þ othe þ he swore vnto þ kynge  
of Englode & so he was by letter enbul  
led. Tho chole they of Scotlonde dou  
lepers/for to benyme Edward of hys  
ryght. And in þ tyme came two Car  
dynalles from þ courte of Rome. fro the  
pope Celestine/to trete of a corde bytwe  
ne the kynge of fraunce & the kynge of  
Englonde. And as tho cardynalles spa  
ke of a corde. Thomas turbeluyll was ta  
ken at Lyos & made homage to þ warde  
of Parys & putt his lones in hostage/&  
thought to go into Englonde to alpye þ  
countre/and tell them whan he came to  
Englonde that he had broken the kyn  
ges pylon of fraunce by nyght & sayd  
þ he wolde do that all Englysshmen &  
walshmen sholde abowte the kynge of  
frauce. And this thyng for to bynge to  
the ende he swore/& vpon this couenaüt  
dedes were made bytweene them/and þ  
he sholde haue by yere a thousand poun  
des worth of londe. to bynge this thyn  
ge too an ende. This fals traytoure toke  
his leue/& wente thens and came intoo  
Englonde vnto the kynge & sayd. þ he  
was broke out of pylon & þ he had put  
hym in suche peryll for his loue wherfor  
the kyng cowde hym moche thanke and  
full gladd was of his compynge. And  
the fals traytoure fro that dape/alpyed  
all the doyng of the kynge and also his  
counsell/for the kynge loued hym full

well and was with hym full preuy But  
a clerke of Englonde/þ was in the kyn  
ges hous of fraunce/herde of this trea  
son/and of the fallnesse/& wrote to ano  
ther clerke þ tho was dwellynge w Ed  
ward kynge of Englonde. all how tho  
mas Turbeluyll had done his fals con  
iectynge/and all the counsell of Englo  
de was wryte for to haue sende vnto the  
kynge of frauce. And thurgh þ forsayd  
letter þ the clerke had sente fro frauce  
it was foude vpon hym. wherfor he was  
led to London & hangyd & drawe there  
for his treason. And his two lones that  
he had put in fraunce for hostage. were  
thenne beheeded.

Of the Conquest of Berwyke.

**S**D whan the twoo Cardynalles  
were gone agayne into Fraunce  
for to trete of the peas of Lambroy the  
kynge sent thether of his Erles and ba  
rons. That is to saye Syr Edmonde his  
broder erle of Lancastre & of Leicester/Syr  
Henry Lacy erle of Nicholl/& Wyllyam  
Belly Baron/and of other baronettes.  
abowte. viii. of the best and wylst of en  
glonde. And in the same tyme the ky  
ge Edward toke his vyage to Scotlon  
de/for to werre vpon Johñ Baylol kyn  
ge of Scotlonde. And Syr Robert Ro  
os of Berewyk fledde fro the Englyssh  
men. And wente to the Scottes. And ky  
ge Edward wente hym towarde Bar  
wyk/and belegyd the towne. And thoo  
that were within/manly them defended  
and sette a fyre and brente two of kyn  
ge Edwardes shyppes/and sayd in dyl  
pyte and repley of hym(wenpyth kynge  
Edward with his longe shankys/too  
haue gete Berewyk all our vnthankes  
gas pykes hym/and whan he has doon  
gas dykes hym)whan kynge Edward  
herde this lcome/anone thurgh his my  
ghtynesse/he passed ouer the dyches and  
assaylled the towne/and came to the pa

tes/and gate and conquered the towne/  
 and thrughe his gratpous power slewe  
 xxv. thousand & vij. hondred scottes. & kyng  
 Edward lost no man of renoun lauf  
 fyr Rychard of Cornewayle. & hym kyl  
 led a Flemynge out of the redde halle w<sup>th</sup>  
 a quarell as the forslayde Rycharde dyd  
 of his helme. and commaunded theym  
 for to yelde them/ & put them in the kynges  
 grace. and the Scottes wolde notte  
 wherfore that halle was brent and caste  
 downe. & all tho that were therin were  
 bient and kyng Edward lost no moo  
 men at that vpage of symple estate but.  
 xxvii. englyshmen. And the wardern of  
 the castell yave vp the keyes of the castel  
 wythout ony assawte. And there was ta  
 ken fyr wylliam Douglas & Symond  
 Frysell and the erle patryk yeldyd them  
 to the peas. But Ingham of humirel  
 mylle & Robert the Brus h were wyth.  
 kyng Edward forloke kyng Edward  
 & helde wyth the Scottes. And after  
 warde they were taken & put into pryson  
 And thoo lete kyng Edward close in  
 Berewyk wyth walles & wyth dyches/ &  
 after Robert Ro<sup>g</sup> went to Tyndale/ &  
 set wuyerbrydge a fyre & Erham/ & La  
 merstok and slew & robbyd h folke of h  
 coultre. And after h he went fro thens to  
 Dunbarre. And the fyrst weneldaye of  
 Marche the kyng sent the erle of Ga  
 renne. fyr Hugh Percy and fyre Hughe  
 Spenser wyth a fayre company for too  
 belege the castell. But one that was cal  
 led fyr Rycharde Sywarde a traytoure  
 and a fals man/ ymagyned for to begy  
 le the Englyshemen/ And sente too the  
 Englyshmen theym for to delceyue/ &  
 layd/ That he wolde yelde to theym the  
 castell. yf they wolde graunte them. viii.  
 dayes of respyte/ that he myght sende &  
 telle too Syr Johan Bayl<sup>l</sup> that was  
 kyng of Scotlonde/ howe his men fa  
 red that were within the castell/ And  
 sende hym worde but/ yf he wolde reme  
 ue the lege of the Englyshe men/ that

they wolde yelde the castell vntoo the en  
 glyshe men. ¶ The messenger thoo ca  
 me to fyr Joh<sup>n</sup> Bayl<sup>l</sup> that thoo was  
 kyng of Scotlonde/ where that he was  
 wyth his hooke/ and the messengre told  
 hym alle the caas/ And fyre Joh<sup>n</sup> toke  
 his hoste and came on the morowe erly  
 towarde the castell. and fyr Rycharde sy  
 ward e sawe hym come that was may<sup>s</sup>  
 ter of the counsell & heper of the castell  
 & layd vntoo the Englyshmen I layd  
 he. nowe I se a fayre company & well ap  
 parcyllled I woll go ayenste theym/ and  
 wyth them too nycte/ and theym assaylle  
 And fyr Hugh Spenser sawe the fall  
 nesse of hym and the treason. and layde  
 to hym I traytoure take and proue your  
 falsnesse shall not auaylle you. And hu  
 ghe Spenser comaunded anone to byn  
 de hym. and all in hast went ayenst ther  
 cnytes/ & slewe of h Scottes. xxii. thou  
 sande. for the Scottes had h tyme noo  
 man wyth them of honour lauf Patryk  
 Graham that manly foughte/ & longe  
 and at the last he was slayne. And thoo  
 layd the Englyshmen in vreyf of the  
 Scottes/ Thysle scaterande Scottes hol  
 de I for lottes of wrenches vnto ware. Et  
 ly in a mornynge in an euyll tymynge/  
 wente ye fro Dunbare. ¶ As tho h was  
 re within the castell sawe h scomfyture  
 they yelded vp the castell vnto h Englysh  
 men. and bounde theyr bodyes godes  
 and castels to kyng Edward. And so  
 there were take in that castell thre erles  
 vii. barons. and. xxxviii. knyghtes & xi.  
 clerkes/ and. vii. pycardys & all were pre  
 sentyd to kyng Edward. And he sent  
 them to h towre of Lond<sup>o</sup> to be kept.

¶ Howe kyng Edward of his greate  
 grace deluyerede ayen the Scottes outs  
 of pryson that were cheyfkayns of that  
 londe/ and they drew them to the french  
 shemen thugh couleyll of wylliam wa  
 leys.

**A**S kynge Edward had made  
 tho an ende of the werre. & take  
 the chepfeyns of Scotlonde. thoo came  
 syr Johā Baylol & yelded hym vnto ky  
 ge Edwarde. & put hym in his grace &  
 he was ledde to London. & whan kynge  
 Edwarde was come thether. they were  
 brought before hym. And the kynge ar  
 yd how they wolde make amendes. of þ  
 trelpaas and losse þ they hadde doon to  
 hym. & they put heym in his mercy. For  
 dynge layd þ kynge I wyll not of your  
 londes ne your goodes. but I wyll þ ye  
 make to me an othe vpon goddys body  
 to be true te me. & neuer after this tyme  
 apenst me here armys. And all they con  
 sentyd to the kynges wyll. & sware vpon  
 goddys body. That is to save syr Johā  
 of Comyn. þ erle of þ Strathorn. þ Er  
 le of Carrph. & also four bysshops vn  
 dertoke for all þ clergye. & so þ kynge de  
 lyuerd them. & paue them lauf conduyt  
 to go into ther owne londe. And it was  
 not longe afterward þ they ne aryle apē  
 kynge Edwarde. for cause þ they wylte  
 well þ kynge Edwarde folke was take/  
 in Galcoyne. as befoie is layd. But syr  
 Johā Baylol kynge of Scotlonde wylt  
 well. þ his londe sholde haue sorow and  
 shame. for theyr fallnesse. And in haste  
 went hym ouer see. to his owne londes &  
 there he helde hym and came neuer apē  
 wherfore the Scottes chole onto theyre  
 kynge wyllyam waleys. a rybaude and  
 an harlot comen vþ of nought. and mo  
 che harme dyd to the Englysshmen and  
 kynge Edward thought how he myght  
 haue delyueraunce of his people þ were  
 take in Galcoyne. And in hast went hþ  
 ouer thele in flaundes for to werre vþ  
 pon the kynge of fraunce. And the erle  
 of flaundes receyued hym with moch  
 honoure & graūtyd hym alle his londys  
 at his owne wyll. And whan þ kynge of  
 fraūce herde tell þ the kynge of Englō  
 de was arpyued in flaundes and came  
 with a grete power hym for to dystrope.

he prayed hym of trowes for two yere/  
 so that the Englysshe marchautes and  
 also fienche myghte laufly go & come  
 in bothe sydes. The kynge Edward gra  
 unted it. so that he muste haue his ment  
 out of pylson þ were in Galcoyne & the  
 kynge of fraūce anone graūted and so  
 they were delyuerd. ¶ And in þ same ty  
 me þ Scottes sent by the bysshop of la  
 ynt andrewes in to fraunce to þ kynge  
 & to syr Charles his brother. þ syr Char  
 les sholde come with his power & they of  
 Scotlonde wolde come with theyr pow  
 er. & so they sholde go into Englonde. þ  
 londe to dystrope from Scotlonde vnto  
 they came to Kent. And þ Scottes trul  
 tyd moche vpon þ fiensshmen. but of þ  
 thynge they had no manere graunte. &  
 netheles the Scottes began to robbe and  
 kyll in Northūberlonde. & dydd moche  
 harme.

**T**How wyllyam waleys lete reyle the  
 londe of Scotlonde as chepfe lord. And  
 syr Hughe of Cressynham. & of the bas  
 taylle of fonkyrke.

**A**S tydynge was come to kynge  
 Edward þ wyllyam waleys had  
 ordeyned suche a stronge power. and als  
 so that all Scotlonde to hym was atten  
 daunt and redy for to flee Englysshmē  
 and to dystrope the londe. he was sore a  
 noped. and sente anone by letter to ther  
 le of Garienne. to syr Henry Percy. & to  
 wyllyam Latomer. and so syr Hughe  
 of Cressynham his tresorer. þ they shol  
 de take power. & go into Northumber/  
 londe. & so forth into Scotlonde. for too  
 hepe þ cōūtrees and whan wyllyam wa  
 leys herde of theyr comyge. he began to  
 flee & the Englysshmen hym folowed &  
 droue hym tyll he came to Struyelyn &  
 there he helde hym in the castell. And  
 þ wallshmen cuery dape them elaved &  
 menacyd. and dyd all the dylppte that  
 they myght soo that the Englysshmen

vpon a tyme in a moynynge wente oute  
 fro the castell/the mouïtenaunce of .x. mi  
 les/and passed ouer a bydge/and wyl/  
 lyam waleys came with a stronge pow  
 er/and droue theym abak/for the En/  
 glyshmen had ayenst hym no power/cho  
 but fledde.and they that myght take the  
 bydge scaped.but syr Hugh the kynges  
 tresorer there was slayne/and many o/  
 ther also/wherfore was made moche so  
 rowe. ¶ Tho had kynge Edward sped  
 all his maters in flaundes/ & was co/  
 me ayen into Englonde/ & in hast toke  
 his way into Scotlonde/ & came theder  
 at þ Alcençon tpe. & all þ he foude he  
 lette a fyre & brennt/ But the poore peo/  
 ple of Scotlonde came too hym wonder  
 thych & prayed hym for goddys loue/ þ  
 he wolde on them haue Mercy and pyte  
 wherfore tho the kynge commaunded þ no  
 man sholde do them harme þ were pol/  
 den to hym/ ne to no man of ordrene to  
 no hous of relygion/ ne no manere chir  
 che. But lete elpye all þ he myght wher  
 þ he myght fynde ony of his enemyes tho  
 came a spye vnto þ kynge & tolde where  
 þ the Scottes were assembled too abyde  
 bataylle. And on saynt Mary Hawde/  
 leyns dape/ the kynge came to fonkyrk  
 and yauē bataylle to the Scottes and at  
 that bataylle were slayn .xxx. thousande  
 Scottes/ and of Englyshemen .xviii. &  
 no mo. Of þ whiche was a worthy kny  
 ght slayne þ was a knyght holpytler  
 þ was callyd frery brian Jay. for whan  
 wyllyam waleys fledde from þ batayll  
 þ same frery brian hym pursewed fierl  
 ly/ & as his hors ranne it stert in a myre  
 of a marys by to the bely. and wyllyam  
 waleys tored tho agayne and there sle/  
 we the forsayd brian. and that was mo  
 che harme. ¶ And that whyle kynge Ed  
 warde wente thorough Scotlonde/ for  
 to enquire yf he myght fynde ony of his  
 enemyes. And in that londe he dwelled/  
 as longe as hym lyked/ And there was  
 no enemye that durst hym abyde. ¶ And

loone after kynge Edward wente too  
 Southampton for he wolde not abyde/  
 in Scotlonde in wynter season/ for ele/  
 ment of his people. And whan he came  
 to London/ he lete amende many mysde  
 dys þ were done ayenst his peas & law/  
 es he beyng in flaundes.

¶ Of the laste maryage of kynge Ed/  
 warde/ and how he wente the thyrde ty  
 me into Scotlonde.

¶ And after it was ordeyned thru/  
 ghe the court of Rome/ þ kynge  
 Edward sholde wedde dame Margare  
 rete/ þ was kynge Phylip syster of fraū  
 ce. And the archebysshop Robert of wy  
 chelle spoulyd them togyders/ thurgh þ  
 whiche maryage there was made peas/  
 bytwene kynge Edward of Englonde  
 & kynge Philyp of fraūce. ¶ Kynge Ed  
 warde went tho þ thyrde tyme into Scot  
 lond & tho within þ fyrst yere he had en  
 famyned þ londe/ so that he lete not one  
 that he ne came to his mercye. lauf luch  
 as were in the castell of Breuelyn that  
 well were bytaylled & stored for .vii. yere

¶ How the castell of Breuelyn was be  
 leged and wonne.

¶ Kynge Edward came to the cal/  
 tell of Breuelyn w a huge pow  
 er and belegyd the castell/ but it lytill a  
 uapyled. for he myght do þ Scottes no/  
 ne harme/ for þ castell was so stronge &  
 well kept. & kynge Edward sawe þ &  
 bethought hym vpon a queyntely. & lete  
 make anone two payr of hygh galowes  
 before þ tour of þ castell. & made his o/  
 the that as many as were within þ cal  
 tell. Norwichstandynge were he Erle or  
 Baron/ and he were take with strengch  
 but yf he wolde the rather hym yelde/ he  
 sholde be hangyd vpon þ same galow  
 es. And whan tho that were within the  
 castell herde this. they came & yelde them

all to the kynges grace and mercy / & the kynge forpaaf them all his male talent and there were all þ̄ grete lordes of Scotlonde swore to kynge Edwarde / þ̄ they shold come to London to euery parlemēt and sholde stonde to his ordynauce.

### How Troylebastō was fyrst ordened

**T**he kynge Edwarde went thens to London / and wende to haue had reste and peas of his warre in whiche werre he was occupped .xx. yere. that is to laye in Galcoyne in Walys and in Scotlonde / and thought how he myght recouer his trelour that he had spended abowte his werre / & lete enquire thurgh the reame of all the tyme that he hadde be out of his reame þ̄ men called Troilebaston and ordeyned therto Justices / and in this manere he recouered trelour without nombie : And his purpose was for to haue goon into the holy londe / to haue wretred vppon goddes enemyes / by cause he was crossyd longe tyme before And netheles the law þ̄ he had ordeyned dyd moche good thurgh out all Englonde. to them þ̄ were mysbode . for thoo þ̄ trelpassed were well chastyled. and after more meke & better / & the pooire compyns were in reste and peas. And the same tyme kynge Edwarde pyloned his owne lone Edwarde / by cause that walter of Lanton bysshop of Chestre / þ̄ was þ̄ kynges trelorer had complayned on hym & layd þ̄ forsayd Edwarde thurgh coulsell & entylunge of one Ganaston a squyre of Galcoyne had broke þ̄ parkes of the forsayd bysshop. & this pers coulselyd & lad þ̄ same Edwarde & for þ̄ cause þ̄ kyng expyled his lone out of Englonde.

**O**f the dethe of wyllyam waleys the fals traytoure.

**A**nd whan this kynge Edwarde hadde his enemyes ouercome in

Walys / Galcoyne and Scotlonde and dystroyed his traytours / all but only that traybaude wyllyam waleys / that neuer to the kynge wolde hym yelde / and att the towne of saynt Domynyk. in the yere of kynge Edward regne. xxxiii. þ̄ fals traytour was take & presentyd to the kynge But the kynge wolde not see hym / but sent hym to London to recepue his Jugement : and vpon saynt Barthylmewes eue was he hangyd and drawe / & his he de smyte of & his bowelles take oute of his body and hient / & his body quartered and sent vnto foure of the best townes of Scotlonde / & his heed put vpon a speere. and sette vpon London byrdege. in ensample that the Scottes sholde haue in mynde for to do a mysse ayenst ther kynges lorde eskones.

**H**ow the Scottes came to kynge Edwarde for to amende theyr trelpasse þ̄ they had done ayenst hym.

**A**nd at Myghelmas tho next comynge / kynge Edwarde helde his parlemēt at westmiestre / & thyder came þ̄ Scottes / þ̄ is to laye þ̄ bysshop of saynt andrewes : Robert þ̄ Br̄ erle of Caryk. Symonde frysell / John þ̄ erle of Acheil & they were accorded w̄ þ̄ kynge & boude & by othe swore / þ̄ they afterwarde ys of ony of them mysbare them ayenst kynge Edwarde þ̄ they sholde be dyscheryted for euermore. And whan theyr peas was thus made they toke theyr leue pryuely / & went home into Scotlonde.

**H**owe Robert Brus chalenged Scotlonde.

**S**o after this Roberte the Brus Erle of Caryk sente by hys letters to the Erles and barons of Scotlonde that they sholde come to hym to Scone in the morowe after the Conception of our lady for grete nedis of þ̄ lōde

And the lordes came at the day assygned  
 And the same day syr Robert the Brus  
 sayd fayne lordes full well ye knowe/þ  
 in my persone dwellyd the ryght of the  
 reame of Scotlonde/ & as ye wote well  
 I am ryghtfull heyre. lyth þ syr Johñ ba  
 plol that was oure kynge vs hath forsa  
 ke/ & lefte his londe. And though it so be  
 that kynge Edward of Englonde w  
 wronfull power hath made me too hym  
 assent ayenst my wyll/ yf þ ye wyl graū  
 te þ I may be kynge of Scotlode I shal  
 kepe you ayenst kynge Edward of eng  
 glonde/ & ayenste all manere jmen/ & w  
 that worde þ abbot of Scon/ arose by/  
 & before them all sayde/ þ it was reason  
 for to helpe hþ & þ londe to kepe & defen  
 de. And tho sayd in presence of them al  
 þ he wolde geue hym a thousand pouēde  
 for to mayntene þ londe. & all the othere  
 graūted þ londe to hym/ & w ther pow  
 er hym for to helpe/ & defred kynge Ed  
 warde of Englonde. & sayd that Robert  
 Brus/ sholde be kynge of Englonde.

How syr Johñ of Comyn ayenst sayd  
 the crownynge of syr Robert Brus.

**U** Didynge sayd syr Johñ of com  
 ynn. thynke on þ truch & othe ye  
 made to kynge Edward of Englonde  
 & touchynge myselte I wyll nott biehe  
 myn othe for no man/ & so he wente frō  
 þ company at þ tyme. wherfore Robert  
 þ Brus & all tho þ to hym consented we  
 re wrothe/ & menaced syr Johñ of comyn  
 Tho ordened they another counsell att  
 Dumfris too whiche came þ forsayd syr  
 Johñ of Comyn/ for he dwelled but two  
 myle fro Dumfris. ther he was wont to  
 loiourne and abyde.

How syr Johñ was traytonelly slayn.

**S**o whan Robert the Brus wyllt  
 that all the greate lordes were co  
 me of Scotlonde to Scone/ laufe Syr

Johñ Comyn þ loiourned tho nygh scon  
 he sent specyally after the sayd syr Johñ  
 to come and speke with hym/ And vpo  
 that he came & spake w hym at þ gray  
 freres in Dumfris & that was þ thurs  
 day after Candelmasse day. & syr Johñ  
 graunted to go with hym. And whanne  
 he had herde masse/ he toke a loppe and  
 dranke & afterwarde he bestrode his pal  
 froy & rode to Dumfris/ whan Robert  
 the Brus sawe hym come at a wyndow  
 as he was in his chambie made Joy in  
 ough/ & came ayenst hym/ & collyd hym  
 aboute the necke/ & made with hym go  
 de semblaūt. And whan all the erles &  
 barons of Scotlonde were there present  
 Robert the Brus sayd syrs ye wote wel  
 the cause of this comynge & wherfore it  
 is. yf ye wyll graunt þ I be kynge of Scot  
 londe as ryght heyre of the londe. And  
 all the lordes that were there sayd with  
 on voys. that he sholde be crowned hþg  
 of Scotlonde. & þ they wolde hym helpe  
 & mayntene ayenst all maner men on li  
 ue/ & for hym yf it were nede to depe/ þ  
 gentyll knyght tho Johñ of Comyn an  
 swerd Certes neuer for me. ne for to ha  
 ue of me almoche helpe as the value of  
 a boton. for that othe that I haue ma  
 de vnto kynge Edward of Englonde  
 I shal holde while my lyfe woll laste.  
 And with that worde he went from þ co  
 pany & wolde alyght vpon his palfroy.  
 & Robert the Brus pursewed hym with  
 a drawen swerde/ & bare hym thrygh þ  
 body & syr Johñ Comyn fell downe vn  
 to þ erthe. But whan Roger þ was syr  
 Johñ Comyns broder. saw þ fallnesse.  
 he stert to syr Robert the Brus & smote  
 hym with a knyfe. but the fals traytour  
 was arnyd vnder. so that þ stroke mys  
 ght do hym no harme. and somoche hel  
 pe came about syr Robert þ Br<sup>s</sup> so þ ro  
 bert Comyn was ther slayn & all to hew  
 en in to peces. & Robert þ Brus torned  
 ayen there that syr Johñ Comyn the  
 noble baron lay wounded. and pyned to



warde his dethe. besyde the hygh awter in the chyrche of the gray freves/ and layd vnto syr Johā Comyn. O traytoure thou shalt be dede/ and neuer after lette myn auancement/ and shoke his swerde at the hygh awter. and smote hym on his heed/ that the braync felle downe vpon the grounde/ and the blood sterte on hygh vpon the walles/ and yet vnto this dape is that blood seen there/ that no water may washe it awaye. And so deyed that noble knyght in holy chyrche.

**A**nd whan this traytour Robert the Brus sawe. þ̄ no man wolde lette his coronacyon/ he comaunded all them þ̄ were of power sholde come vnto his crownyng to saynt Johans towne in Scotlonde. And so it befell vpon our lady dape the Annūciatōn. the bysshopp of Glaston & the bysshopp of saynt Andrewes crowned for ther kynge this Robert þ̄ Brus in saynt Johans towne/ & made hym kynge. And anone after he droue all thenglyshmen out of Scotlonde. And they fled. & came & compleyned them vnto kynge Edwarde/ how þ̄ Robert the Brus had dryue them out of þ̄ londe/ and dyshercyted theym.

**H**owe that kynge Edwarde dubbyd at westmestre. xxiiij. score knyghtes.

**A**nd whan kynge Edwarde herde of this myscheyf/ he swore þ̄ he sholde be auenged therof/ and sayde/ That all the traytours of Scotlonde sholde be hangyd and drawen/ and that they sholde neuer be raunsonned. ¶ And kynge Edward thought vpon this fallnesse that the Scottes hadde to hym done. And sente after alle the bachelers of Englonde/ that theye sholde come vnto London at wyntontyde/ & he dubbyd at westmestre. xxiiij. score knyghtes. ¶ The ordyned þ̄ noble kynge Edwarde for to go into scotlande/ to werre vpon Robert/ þ̄

Brus/ And sent before hym into Scotlonde syr Aymer the valaunce erle of Penbroge. & syr Henry Percy baron with a fayre company/ þ̄ purslewed the Scottes & brente townes & castels. and afterwarde came the kynge hymself with erles/ and barons a fayre company.

**H**ow Robert Brus was dyscōfyted/ in bataylle/ & how Symonde frysell was slayne.

**T**he fryday next before the Allūcyon of our lady kynge Edwarde mette Robert Brus besyde saynt Johans towne in Scotlonde & with his company/ of the whiche company kynge Edwarde slewe. viij. thousande/ whan Robert Brus sawe this myscheyf he begā to flicke/ & hydde hym þ̄ no man myghte hym fynde/ But syr Symonde frysell purslewed hym sore/ so þ̄ he tomed ayen & aboode bataylle/ for he was a worthy knyghte and a bolde of body. And then glyshmen purslewed euery sore in euery syde & slewe the stede that syr Symonde rode vpon/ & they toke hym/ & lad hym vnto the holste. And syr Symonde begā for to flatre & speke fayre/ and sayd lordes I shall yue you four thousand marke of syluer/ myn hors/ harneys and all myn armour/ & become a begger. ¶ Tho answered Theobaude of Peuenes þ̄ was the kynges archere. Now so god me helpe it is for noughte þ̄ thou spekest. for all the golde in Englonde I wolde not lete þ̄ go w̄ oute comaūdemēt of kynge Edwarde/ & tho was he had vnto kynge Edward & the kynge wolde not se hym but comaūded to lede hym away/ to haue his dome atte London. & on our ladies eue Natūite he was hangyd & drawe & his heed lmyte of. & hangyd ayen with cheynes of yren vpon the galowes. And his heede was set vpon London brydge vpon a spere/ & ayenst Crystemasse the bodye was brente bycause that the men/

that kepte h̄ body by nyght they saw so many deuyls rampyng with grete p̄re hokes/rennyng vpon h̄ galowes & horrible tormēted h̄ body. & many h̄ the lawe anone after they deyed for drede/ & some wexed mad/ or sore syknēs they had. and in that batayll was take the bysshop of Biston & the bysshop of saynt Andrewes/ and the abbot of Sconne all armyd with yren as men of armes. as fals traytours and fals prelates ayenste theyr othe. And they were brought to the kyng and the kyng sente them vnto the pope of Rome. that he sholde do with theym what his wyll were.

How John therle of Alethes was taken. and put to dethe.

And at that bataylle fled syr Johan erle of Alethes/ & wente to a chyrche/ and there hydde hym for drede/ but he myght haue there noo refute for cause that the chyrche was enterdyed thrugh a generall sentence/ and in h̄ same chyrche he was taken. And this syr John went well too haue scaped fro the dethe/ for cause that he claymed kynred of kyng Edward. And the kyng wolde no lēger be bytrayed of his traytours but sent hym to london in haste. & there was hangyd and his heed smyt of/ and his body brent all to ashes. But at the prayer of the quene Margarete/ for cause that he claymed of kyng Edwarde kynrede/ his drawyng was foryene h̄.

How John that was wylliam waleys brother was put to dethe.

As the gretteste maysters of Scotlonde were thus doon to euyll dethe/ and destroyed for theyr falsnesse. Johan. that was wylliam waleys brother was take and doon vnto dethe. as syr Johan erle of Alethes was.

How Robert the Brus fled from Scotlonde to Northway.

And at that same tyme was Robert h̄ Brus moche hated amonge the people of Scotlonde/ soo that he wyste not what he was beste to do/ and for to hyde hym he went to Norway to the kyng that had spoulyd his sylster. & there helde hym locour for to haue. and Robert the Brus myght not be founde in Scotlonde. So kyng Edwarde tholete crye his peas thrugh out all the londe/ and his lawes were vlyd/ & his mynystrys serued thrugh out all the londe.

Howe kyng Edwarde deyed.

So as kyng Edwarde had abastyd his enemyes turned southwarde. and sykned at Burgh vpon lande in the marche of Scotlonde. and callyd too hym Henry Lacy erle of Nichol. syr gup erle of warwyk. syr Aylmer erle of Penbroke/ and syr Robert of Clyfforde baron and prayed theym vpon the fayth h̄ they hym ought/ that they sholde make Edwarde of Carnaruan kyng of Englonde allone as they myghte. And that they sholde not suffre Peers of Ganalton come agayne into Englonde/ for to make his lone to ryot/ and they graunted hym with good wyll. And the kyng toke his sacrament of holy chyrche as a good Cryten man sholde. and deyed in repentaunce/ and whan he had ben kyngge. xxxv. yere he deyed: and was buryed at westmestre with moche solempnyte/ vpon whole soule god haue mercy.

Of Merlyns prophecyes that were declared of kyng Edwarde. h̄ was kyng Henryes lone.

Of this kyng Edwarde prophecied Merlyn/ and called hym a dragon the seconde of h̄. vi. kynges h̄ sholde

regne in Englonde and sayde that he sholde be medled with mercy and also with strenght and sternesse. that sholde kepe Englonde from colde and hete. And that he sholde opene his mouthe toward walys and that he sholde sette his foote in wyk & that he sholde close with walwes that sholde do moche harme to his seide. And he sayd sothe for the good kyng Edward was medled with mercye and with spersnesse with mercy apenste his enemyes of walys & after of Scotlonde with spersnesse whan he put them to deathe for ther fallnesse & traytoursly as they had deserued. And well kept he englonde from colde & heet lyth he kept it from all maner of enemyes that ran vpon hym to do hym ony wronge. ¶ And well he opened his mouth toward walys & made it quake thurgh the hydour of his mouthe whan he conqueryd it thurgh the dynt of swerd. for the prynce Lewelyn & Dauid his brother. Ris and Morgan. were put to deeth thurgh theyr fallnesse and theyr foly. And he sette his foote into wyk & conquered Berwyk at the whiche conquest were slayn. xlv. thousand & vii. hondred out take luche as were brent in the redde hall. ¶ And the walles þ he lete make shall be noyous vnto his seide. as men shall here after in þ lyf of syr Edward of Carnaruan his sone. And yet sayd merlyn þ he shold make ryuers ren in blood & wharyne. & þ semyd well in his werres ther as he had þ maystry. And yet merlyn sayd þ ther sholde come a people out of þ north west durynge þ regne of þ forsayd dragon þ shold be lad by an. pll greghoude. þ shold the dragon crowne kyng. þ after ward shold fle ouer þ se for drede of þ dragō without compynge ayen. & þ was proued by syr Johā Baylō þ kyng Edward made to be kyng of Scotlonde. þ fallly arole apenst hym. & after he fled to his owne londz of fraunce & neuer he came ayen in to Scotlonde for drede of kyng

Edward. And yet sayd merlyn: þ people that sholde lede the sayd greghoude sholde be faderles vnto a certayne tyme soth he sayd. for þ people of Scotlonde gretly were dyspleyd after syr Johā baylō was fled. And merlyn sayd the sone sholde become in his tyme as redde as ony blood in tokenynge of grete mortalyte of people. And that was knowe well whan þ Scottes were slayn. And lyth sayd merlyn þ same dragon shold nouryssh a fox. þ sholde meue grete werre apenst hym þ sholde not in his tyme be ended. & that seemed well by Robert the Brus. that kyng Edward nourysshed in his chambic that lythen stale a way & meued grete werre apenst hym whiche werre was nott ended in his tyme. And yet sayd merlyn þ the dragon shold dey in þ marche of an ocher londe & that his londe sholde be longe withoute a goode keper. And þ men sholde wepe for his deeth from the yle of Shephey vnto þ yle of Mercyl wherfore alas shall be theyr longe amonge the comyn people faderles in the lond walcyd. And that prophecy was knowe ouer all full well. for þ good kyng Edward deyd at Burgh vpon sandys that is vpon the Marche of Scotlonde where the Englyshmen were dyscomforted and sorowed in Northumberland for cause that kyng Edwardes sone set by the Scottes no force. for the ryot of peers of Ganaston wherfore alas was the longe thurgh the oute all Englonde for defawte of theyr goode wardyne from þ yle of Shephey vnto the yle of Martill the people mad moche sorowe for good kyng Edwardes deeth. ¶ For they wend that gode kyng Edward sholde haue gone into the holy londe for þ was hooly his purpoos. ¶ vpon whoos soule god for his hygh & Jngynpte grace haue mercy.

**C**lestin<sup>9</sup> was pope after Nicho-  
las fyue monthes/and nothyng  
noble of hym is writen/ but that he was  
a vertuons man. **B**onifaci<sup>9</sup> p<sup>r</sup> eghte  
was pope after hym. viii. yere. This bo-  
nifacius was a man in those thynges p<sup>r</sup>  
whiche perceynerth to court/ for he was  
very experte in suche matres/ And bys  
cause he had no p<sup>r</sup>er/ he put noo mesure  
to his p<sup>r</sup>uidence. And toke so grete pryde  
vpon hym/ p<sup>r</sup> he sayd/ he was lord of al  
p<sup>r</sup> worlde. & many thynges he dyd with  
his myght & power. p<sup>r</sup> which sayled wret  
thydly in p<sup>r</sup> ende/ He gaue an ensample  
to all prelats p<sup>r</sup> they sholde not behaulf  
ne proude. but vnder p<sup>r</sup> fourme of a very  
shepherde of god. they sholde more stu-  
dy for to be louyd of ther subgettes/ than  
dradde/ This man is he/ of whome it is  
sayd/ p<sup>r</sup> he entred as a fox. he lyued as a  
lyon/ & deyed as a dogge. **T**his tyme  
the yere of grace was ordeyned from an  
hūdred yere to an hūdred yere. And the  
fyrst Jubyle was in the yere of our lord  
Jhū Crīst a thousand thre hundred.

**B**enedictus the enleuēth was after  
Bonifacius enleuēth monthes. this mā  
was an holy man/ of the ordre of the fre-  
re prechers/ & lypyll whyle lyued/ but dyl-  
lesyd anone.

**A**dulphus was Emperoure. vi.  
yeres/ This man was p<sup>r</sup> erle of  
Anorone/ And this Adulphus was not  
crowned by the pope/ for he was slayne  
in batayll. **A**lbertus was Emperoure  
after hym. x. yere. This man was the  
Duke of Astrye and fyrst was repreued  
of the pope/ and after was confermed bi  
the same pope/ for the malyses of the ky-  
ng of fraunce/ the whiche was an enny  
vnto the chyrche. And to that Alberte the  
same pope gaue the kyngdome of fraū-  
ce/ as he dyd other kyngdoms. but it prof-  
fyted not/ for at the laste he was slayne  
of his newwe. **C**lemens was pope af-  
ter Benedictus almooste. ix. yere/ and he

was a grete buylder of castels and other  
thynges. And he dampnyd the ordre of  
Templaryes/ & he ordeyned p<sup>r</sup>. viii. boke  
of p<sup>r</sup> Decretales/ the whiche he callyd p<sup>r</sup>  
questyons of Clementyns. And anone  
after in a counseyll the whiche he helde  
at Dyenna he reuokyd the same boke p<sup>r</sup>  
whiche his successary Johā callyd apen  
& in incorporyd it & publyshyd it. This  
Clement fyrste of all popes translatyd  
the popes sete fro Rome to Auinion/ &  
whether it was doon by the mocion of  
god. or by the boldenes of man/ dyuers  
men meruaylle. **J**ohā the. xii. was po-  
pe after hym. viii. yere. This man was  
all glorious/ as for those thynges p<sup>r</sup> we-  
re to be vlyd thurgh he p<sup>r</sup> actyd lyfe. And  
he publyshyd the Constitucions of p<sup>r</sup> cle-  
mentyns/ & sent them to all p<sup>r</sup> vniuersi-  
tees. And many sayntes he canonysed &  
chyle fatte byshopryches he deuydyd &  
he ordeyned many thynges apenst p<sup>r</sup> plu-  
ralyte of benefyces/ & many heretykes  
he dampned/ but whether he was saued  
or not our lord wolde not shewe to tho-  
se he louyd very well. **H**enry the. vii.  
was emperour after Albert. v. yere/ this  
Henry was a noble man in werre. and  
he coueytyd too haue peas by londe and  
water. He was a glorious man in bata-  
yll. And neuer ouercome with ennyes/  
And atte the laste he was poysoned of a  
fiere whan that he houselyd hym by re-  
ceyuyng of the sacrament.

**O**f kyng Edwarde that was kyng  
Edwardes lone.

**A**nd after this kyng Edwarde  
regned Edward his lone/ that  
was borne at Carnatiuan/ and this Ed-  
warde wente hym into fraunce. and the-  
re he spousyd Isabell the kynges dought-  
ter of fraunce. the. xv. daye of Januari  
atte the chyrche of oure Lady atte Bos-  
loync in p<sup>r</sup> yere of oure lord Jhū Crīste  
M. CCC. vii. And the. xx. daye of feue

rer the next yere that came after / he was crownd solemply at westmestre of the Archebpyshop of Caunterbury. And there was so grete presse of people. that syr Johñ Bakwell was slayne & murdered And anone as the good kynge Edward was deed. syr Edward his lone hēge of Englonde. sent after pers Ganalton into Galcoyne / and somoche louyd hym / & he callyd hym brother. And anone after he paue vnto hym þ lordshyp of walpyngforde. & it was not longe after þ he ne paue hym therldom of Cornewall pll ayenst all þ lordes wyll of Englonde. ¶ And tho brought syr Walter of lāgeton byshop of Chestre into pylon & durawice. in þ toure of London. with two knaues alonely hym to serue. for þ kynge was wroche with hym / for bycause þ syr water made complaynt on hym too his fader / wherfore he was put in pylō in þ tyme of Troplebaston & þ forlaid pers of Ganalton made so grete mayl tryes. þ he went into þ kynges tresoyr in þ abbay of westmestre / & toke þ table of golde w þ trestyls of þ same / & many o ther ryche Jewels / þ lōtyme were þ no / & gode kynge Arthurs / & toke them too a marchaut þ was callyd ameri of fril cōbande / for he sholde bere them ouer þ see into Galcoyne. and so he went thēs and they came neuer ayen after. wherfore it was a grete losse to this londe. And whan this Peers was so rychely auauuntyd / he became so proude and so stowte. wherfore all the greate lordes of the reame hadde hym in dyspyte for his grete berynge / wherfore syr Henry Lacy erle of Nicholl. & syr Guy erle of warwyk the whiche grete lordes / the good kynge Edward syr Edwardes fader kyng of Englonde / chargyd that Peers of Ganalton sholde not come into Englonde for to byrynge his lone Edward into ryot. And all the lordes of Englonde assēbled them a certayn day at the frere prechers at London / And there they spake /

of the dyslonour that kynge Edward. dyd to his reame and to his crowne and so they assentyd all / bothe erles and barons / and all the comyns that the forlaid Peers of Ganalton sholde be exyled oute of Englonde for ever more / and so it was doon / for he forlwoie Englonde and went into Irlande / and there the hēgemade hym chepfteyne / and gouernoure of the londe by his commyscion. And there this Peers was chepfteyne of alle the londe / And dyd there all that hym lihyd / and had power what he wolde and that tyme were the templers explyd thru all cristiantee. for bycause that men put vpon theym / that they shold do thynges ayenst the fayth and good bylcue. Kyng Edward louyd Peers of Ganalton somoche / that he myght not forbere his cōpany. And somoche the kynge paue and behyghte too the people of Englonde / þ the explynge of the forlaid Peers sholde be reuokyd at Stamford / thruh them that hym had exyled / wherfore Peers of Ganalton came ayen into Englonde / And whan he was come ayen into his lōde he dyspyled the grettel lordes of this londe / And callyd syr Robert Clare Erle of Glouestre horesone. And the Erle of Nicholl syr Henry Lacy brustenbely / and syr Guy Erle of Warwyk the blake hounde of Arderne / And also he callyd the noble Erle Thomas of Lancastre churle. and many other scornes and Chamys them sayd / and many other grete lordes of Englonde / wherfore they were towarde hym full angry and wroche and ryght sore anoyed. And in the same tyme deyd the Erle of Nicholl. But he chargyd or that he was deed / Thomas of Lancastre Erle that was his lone in law that he sholde mayntene his quarel ayenst this same Peers of Ganalton / vpon his blesyng / ¶ And soo it befell thoroughe helpe of the erle Thomas of Lancastre and also of the Erle of Warwyk þ the forlaid syr Peers was heeded

at gauerlich beside warwyk in þ̄ xix. day of June. in the were of grace. M. CCC. and. xii. wherfore the kynge was sore annoyed/and prayed god that he myght se that day to be auenged/vpon the deeth of of the forsayd perrs/ And so it befell afterwarde as ye shall here Alas the tyme. for the forsayd erle of Lancastre/ & many other grete barons. were putte to pyteuous deeth. and martred for cause of þ̄ forsayd quarell. The kynge was tho at London. & helde a parlement & ordeyned þ̄ lawes of Symonde Mouforde/ wherfore þ̄ erle of Lancastre/ & the erles & all clergye of Englonde. made an oth thrugh counseyle of Robert of wynchelle for to mayntene þ̄ ordynaūces for euer/

**H**ow Roberte Brus came apen intoo Scotlonde & gadryd a grete power of men for werre vpon kynge Edwarde.

**A**nd whan syr Robert the Brus that made hym kynge of Scotlonde/that before was fledde into Norway for drede of dethe of the good kynge Edwarde. And allo he herde of þ̄ debate that tho was in Englonde bytweene the kynge and his lordys. he ordeyned an hoste and came into Englonde in to Northumberlonde/and clene dystroyed the countr. And whan kynge Edwarde herde this tydnynges he lete assemble his hoste & met þ̄ Scottes at Edstreue/lyn in þ̄ day of þ̄ Natiuite of saynt Johñ Baptist in þ̄ thirde yere of his regne/ & in þ̄ yere of our lorde. M. CCC. &. xiiij. Alas þ̄ sorowe & losse þ̄ there was doon for there was slayne þ̄ noble erle Gylbert of clare syr Robert Clyfforde barō & the kynge Edwarde was scomfytyd & Edmond of maule þ̄ kynge's Steward for drede went & drowned hymself in a tresshe ryuer þ̄ is callyd Bānokylborne wherfore they sayd in repreyf of kynge Edwarde for almoche as he louyd to go by water/ & allo for he was dylcomfyted

at Bānokylborne/therfore the maydc's made a longe therof in þ̄ cōtree. of kyge Edwarde. & in this manere they sōge Maydens of England sore may ye more/for tyst haue lost your lēmans at bānokylborne/ w̄ heuelogh. what wenyth þ̄ kynge of Englonde to haue gote Scotlonde/with rombylogh)

**A**s kynge Edwarde was dylcoz tpyced/wonder sore & fast he fled with his folke þ̄ were left alpyue & went vnto Berwyk/ & there helde hym. & after he toke hostages two chylde of the rychele of þ̄ towne. And þ̄ kynge went to London. & toke counseyll of thynge's þ̄ were nedeful to þ̄ reame of Englonde. And in the same tyme it befell/þ̄ tho was in Englonde a rybaude. þ̄ was callyd Johñ Tanner. And he yede & layd þ̄ he was þ̄ good kynge Edwardes lone & lete hym call Edward of Carnaruā And therfore he was take at Oxfoide/ And there he chalenged frere Carmes/ chirche þ̄ kynge Edwarde had yeuē thē whiche was þ̄ kynge's halle. And afterwarde was this Johñ lad to Northampton/ & drawen & hangyd for his fallnesse & or þ̄ he was deed he cōfessyd & layd before all tho þ̄ were there. þ̄ þ̄ deuyll behyght hym þ̄ he sholde be kynge of Englonde & þ̄ he had serued þ̄ deuyll thre yere.

**H**ow þ̄ towne of Berewyke was take thrugh treason/ & how two Cardynales were robbyd in Englonde.

**A**nd on myddyll lent sandape. in the yere of our lorde. M. ccc. xvi. Berwyk was losse thrugh false treason of one perr of Spaldynge. þ̄ whiche perrs þ̄ kynge had put there. for to kepe þ̄ same towne w̄ many burgeyles of þ̄ same towne/ wherfor þ̄ childrē þ̄ were put in hostage thrugh þ̄ burgeyles of Berewyke folowed þ̄ kynge's marchalle many dayes fettered in strōge yrens. And after

that tyme came two Cardynalles intoo Englonde/as the pope had theym sente for to make peas bytwene Englonde & Scotlonde. And as they wente towarde Durhā/for to haue sacred mapster Lowys of Beaumont bysshoppe of Durham they were take & robbyd vpon the moore of wyngleldom/Of whiche robbery Syr Gilbert of mytton was atteynt & take and hangyd & drawen at London & his heed smytte of. & put vpon a spere/& set vpon newe gate/& the foure quarters se to foure cytes of Englonde. & y same tyme befell many mylscheues in Englonde/for the pore people deyed in Englonde for hungre/and lomoche and so faste deved/that vneche men myght bury the for a quarter of whete was at. xl. shelyn ges. and two yeres and an halfe a quarter of whete was worth. x. mark. and oft tyme the poore people stole chyl dren and ete them/and ete also the houndes that they myght take: and also hors & cattes And after there fell a greafe murreyne amonge bestes in dyuers couñtres of Englonde. durynge kynge Edwardes tyues tyme.

**C**how the Scottes robbyd Northumberlonde.

**A**nd in the same tyme came the Scottes apen into Englonde & dystroyed Northumberlonde/and brent that londe/and robbyd it/and slew men wyymen and chyl dren that laye in their cradyls/and brent also holy chyrche/and dystroyed cristendome/and toke and bare Englyshe mēnys godes/as they had ben saralyns/or paynemys. And of y wickydnesse that they dydde/all the worlde spake of it.

**C**how the Scottes wolde not amende theyr trespasse. and therefore Scotlonde was enterdycted.

**S**D pope John y. xxi. after sayne Petr herde of the grete sorowe and mylscheyt that y Scottes wrought he was wonder loyfe/that crystendome was so dystroyed thugh the Scottes/& namely they dystroyed so holy chyrches wherfore the pope sente a generall sentence vnder his bulles of lced vnto y archbysshop of Caüterbury. & to tharchbysshopp of Yorke y yf Robert y Brus of Scotlonde wolde not be Justifyed & make amēdes vnto y kynge of Englonde Edwarde theyr lord/& make amēdes of his losse/& of his harmes y they had doon in Englonde. & also to restore y goodes y they had taken of holy chyrche. y the sentence sholde be pronouncyd through out all Englonde. And whan y Scottes herde this/they wolde not leue theyr malyce/for y popys comaūdemēt wherfore Robert y Brus. Jamys Douglas & Thomas Radulf erle of Worcester & all tho y with them compned or them helpe in worde or dede/ were accusyd in euery chyrche thugh oute all Englonde euery day at masse thre tymes. & noo masse shold be sōge in holy chyrche thugh oute all Scotlonde but yf the Scottes wold make restitucyō of the harmes that they hadd made vnto holy chyrche wherfore many agoodde preste and holy men therfore were slayne thugh the reame of Scotlode/bycause they wolde not synge masse apenst the popys comaūdemēt and apenst his wyll/& to do & fulfyll the tyrauntes wyll.

**C**how syre Hughe Spensers sone was made the kynges chamberlayne. and of the batayle of Mitone.

**A**nd it was not longe afterwarde/that the kynge ne ordeyned a parlement at Yorke/And there was syre Spensers sone made Chamberlayne. And the meane tyme while the werrre lasted/the kyng went apen into Scot

londe that it was wonder for to wytte & beleyed þ̄ towne of Berwyk / but þ̄ Scottes wente ouer þ̄ water at Sole wach. þ̄ was thre myle from þ̄ kynges holte and pryuelly they stele away by nyght / & came into Englode / & robbyd & dystroyed all þ̄ they myght / & spared no manere thyng till þ̄ they came vnto Yorke / & whan þ̄ Englyshmen that were left at home herde thys tydynge / all tho that myght traueyll / as well monks / prestes / freres / chanons / & seculers came & met with the Scottes at Myton by Swale þ̄ xii. day of Octobre. Alas for sorowe / for the Englysh husbande men þ̄ coude no thyng of the werre þ̄ there were kylld & drowned in an arme of þ̄ sec. And þ̄ cheyfeynes lre wlliam of Melton Archebysshop of Yorke & the abbot of Selby with ther stedes fledde / & came to Yorke / and that was their owne fol / þ̄ they had that mylchaunce. for they passed þ̄ water of Swale. & the Scottes lette a fire the staches of hey / & the smoke therof was so huge / þ̄ the Englyshmen myght not se the Scottes / And whann the Englyshmen were goon ouer þ̄ water tho came the Scottes with theyr wynges in maner of a shelde / and came towarde þ̄ Englyshmen in araye. And the Englyshmen fled. for vnto they had ony me of armys. for þ̄ kyng had them almost lost at the syege of Berwyk / and the Scottes hobylers wente bytwene þ̄ bridge and thenglyshmen / And whan þ̄ grete host them mette / the Englyshmen fled bytwene the hobylers and the grete host. And the Englyshmen almost were there slayne / and he that myght go ouer the water were saued / but many were drowned. Alas for there were slayne / many men of relygion / seculers prestes and clerkes / with moche sorowe thar che byshop escaped. and therfore the Scottes callyd that batayll the white batayll

How kyng Edward dyd all mane re thyng þ̄ lre Hugh Spenser wolde.

**N**Owe as kyng Edward herde this tydynge he remeued his sege from Berwyk & came agayn into englonde. But lre Hugh Spenser þ̄ was the kynges Chamberlayne. kepte so the kynges chambrie. þ̄ no man myzte speke with þ̄ kyng. But he had made w̄ h̄ a fret for to do all his nede: & þ̄ ouer mesure. And this Hugh bare hym so stowte þ̄ all men had of hym sorne & dysppte. & the kyng hymselfe wolde not be gouerned / ne rulyd by no manere of man but oonly by his fader & by hym. And if ony knyghte of Englonde had wodes maneyrs or londes þ̄ they wolde coueyte none þ̄ kyng must yeue it them. or elles þ̄ man þ̄ ought it. sholde be fallly endyted of forseyt or felony / And thurgh the suche doynge they dysherpyed many a bachelere / and somoche londe he gate that it was grete wonder / And whā the lordes of Englonde sawe the greate coueyt & fallnesse of lre Hugh Spenser the fader / and of lre Hugh the sone. they came to the gentyll Erie of Lancastre / and arpyd hym of counseyll of the dysese. that was in the reame / though lre Hugh Spenser & his sone. & in halt by one assente they made a pryue assemble. at Shirburne in Elmede & they made there an othe / for to breke & dystrouble þ̄ doynge bytwene the kyng & lre Hugh Spenser & his sone vpon theyr power. And they wente in to the marche of walys. & dystroyed the londe of the foilayd lre Hughes.

Howe lre Hugh Spenser and his fader were exyled out of Englonde.

**S**O whan kyng Edward sawe the grete harme & distruction þ̄ þ̄ barons of Englonde dyd vnto lre Hugh Spensers londe. & too his sone in eury place þ̄ they came vpon þ̄ kyng tho thurgh his counseyll exyled lre Donbraye.



Syr Roger Clyfforde/and Syr Gosselyn  
 Daupll. & many other lordes þ were to  
 theym consente/wherfore þ barons dyd  
 cho more harme than they dyde before &  
 whan þ kyng saw þ the barons wolde  
 not lesse of theyr cruelte/þ kyng was so  
 re adradde lest they wolde dystrope hym  
 & his reame for his mayntenaunce/but if  
 he assented to them. And so he sente for  
 them by his letters þ they shold come to  
 London to his parlement at a certayne  
 dape as in his lctters were conteyned/&  
 they came with thre bataylles/well ar/  
 myd at all poyntes. & euery batayll had  
 cotarmours of grene clothe. & therof the  
 ryghte quarter was yelow. with whyte  
 bendes/wherfore þ parlement was cal/  
 lyd þ parlemente of the whyte bende. &  
 in þ company was syre Humfrey de bo  
 hounne erle of herford & syr Roger Clif  
 forde. syr Johñ Monbray. syr Gosselyn  
 Daupll. syr Roger Mortimer vncle of  
 syr Roger Mortimer of wygmore. syre  
 Henry of Trays syr Johñ Gyffarde &  
 syr Barthilmew of Badellemore that  
 was þ kynges steward. þ the kyng had  
 sente to Shirborne in Elmede to þ erle  
 of Lancastre/& to all þ with hym were  
 for to trete of accorde/þ hym alyed to þ  
 barons/& came with þ company:& syre  
 Roger Dammoiry & syr Hugh Dandale  
 þ had spousyd the kynges neeces lyster. &  
 syr Gilbert of clare. erle of Gloucetre  
 þ was slayne in Scotlonde/as before is  
 sayd: And tho two lordes hadde tho two  
 partyes of þ erldom of Gloucetre. & syr  
 Hugh Spenser had þ chyrd party in his  
 wpues halfe/the tyyrde lyster and thoo  
 two lordes wente to the barons with al  
 theyr power ayenst syr Hugh theyr bro/  
 there in lawe. And soo there came with  
 them syr Robert Clyfforde syr Johñ mō  
 bray. syr Gosselyn Daupll. syre Rogere  
 Mortimer of werk. syr Rogere Morty/  
 mer of wykmore his neuewe. syr Henry  
 Trais syr Johñ Gyffarde. syr Barthil  
 mewe of Badelmore. with all theyr cō

pany. and many other/that to them we  
 re consente. all þ grcte lordes came vnto  
 westmestre to þ kynges parlement. And  
 so they spake & dyde. þ boche syr Hugh  
 Spenser þ fader & also þ lone/were onc  
 lawed of Englonde for euermore. And  
 so syr Hugh þ fader went vnto Douere  
 & made moche sorowe/& fell downe vp  
 pon the grounde by þ see banke. a crosse  
 with his armes/and sore weppynge sayd  
 Now sayr Englonde & good Englonde  
 to almyghty god I the betake. And thri  
 es kysled þ ground & vnyd neuer to ha  
 ue come ayen. & weppynge cursyd þ tyme  
 þ euer he begate syr Hugh his lone. and  
 sayd for hym he had lost all Englorde  
 And tho in presence of them all þ were  
 abowte hym paue hym his curse/& went  
 ouer see to his londes. But Hugh þ lone  
 wolde not go out of Englonde/but hel  
 de hym in þ see. & he & his company rob  
 byd two dromedores belyde Sandwich  
 & toke & bare away all þ godes þ was in  
 them to the value of. lx. M. li.

**H**ow þ kyng cpyled erle Thomas of  
 Lancastre & all þ helde with hym & how  
 the Mortimer came & yelded hym to the  
 kyng/and of all the lordes.

**I**T was not longe after þ the kyng  
 ge nemade syr Hugh Spenser the  
 fader/& syr Hugh þ lone/come ayen in  
 to Englonde ayenst þ lordes wyll of the  
 reame. And lone after the kyng with a  
 stronge power came and beleged the cal/  
 tell of Ledis. and in the castell was þ la  
 dy of Bladellemore/for cause þ she wol  
 de nocte graunte that castell to the que/  
 ne Isabellyn kynges Edwardes wyfe/but  
 the pryncypall cause was/for syre Ber  
 thilmewe was ayenste þ kyng/and hel  
 de with þ lordes of Englonde. & neuer the  
 les the kyng by helpe & socoure of men  
 of London/and also of helpe of southe  
 ren men gace the castell maugre of they

all that were within/and toke with the  
all that they myght fynde. And whan þ  
barons of Englonde herde thyle tydyn-  
ges/syr Roger Mortimer & many other  
lordes toke the towne of Burggeworth  
with strength. wherfore þ kyng was wo-  
der wrothe/and lete oulawe Thomas  
of Lancastre/& Dmfroy de Bohouner  
le of Herford & all tho þ were assentýge  
to þ same quarrell. And þ kynge assem-  
bled an huge hoste/& came ayenst þ lor-  
des of Englonde/wherfor þ Mortimers  
put them in the kynges grace. And ano-  
ne they were sente to þ toure of London  
& there kept in pylson. And whan þ ba-  
rons herde this thyng/they came to pouit  
fret there þ the erle Thomas sojourned  
& tolde hym how þ Mortimers both had  
yelde them to þ kyng. & put them in his  
grace.

### Of the syege of Tykhyll.

**S**D whan Thomas erle of Lan-  
castre herde this/he was wonder  
wrothe & all that were of ther company  
& greatly they were dyscomfyted/and or-  
deryned ther power togyder. & besyegyd þ  
castell of Tykhyll/but tho þ were with-  
in manly defended them/þ the barons  
myghte not gete the castell. & whan the  
kyng herd þ his castell was besygyd he  
swore by god & by his names. þ the sege  
shold be remicud. & assembled an huge  
power of people/& went thederward to  
relcowe the castell. & his power encresyd  
fro day to day. whan the erle of Lancal-  
tre & the Erle of Herforde & the barons  
of ther cõpany herd of this thyng they  
assëbled all theyr power & went the too  
Burtõ vpon trent & kepte the bydge þ  
the kyng sholde not passe ouer. but it be-  
fel so on the tenth dave of Marche in  
the yere of grace. M. CCC. xxi. the kyng  
and the Spencers. syr Aymer Balaunce

erle of Penbroke/& John erle of Arun-  
dell & theyr power/went ouer the water  
and dyscomfyted therle Thomas and  
his company. And they fled to the castel  
of Tetbury/& from thens they went to  
pountfret. and in that byage deyed sire  
Roger Daumore in thabbay of Tetbu-  
ry. And in þ same tyme the erle thomas  
had a traytour w hym that was callyd  
Robert Holonde a knyght. þ the erle had  
brought vp of nought/& had nourysshed  
hym in his butrye. & had yere hþ ahou-  
land marke of londe by yere And lomo-  
che the erle lonyd hym that he myghte  
do in the erles courte all that hym lyked  
bothe amonge them hyghe and lowe/&  
so craftly the theyf bare hym ayenst his  
lorde. þ he trustyd more vpon hym than  
ony man on lyue. and the erle had ordey-  
ned by his letters for to go into the erle  
dome of Lancastre/to make men aryle  
to helpe hym in that byage/That is to  
saye. v. hundred men of arm ys. But the  
fals traytour came not there: noo mane-  
re men for to warne ne for to make ar-  
yle to helpe his lorde. And whan that the  
fals traytour herde tell þ hys lorde was  
dyscomfyted at Burtõ vpon Trent.  
as a fals traytour theyf. stele away/and  
robbyd in Rauensdele his lordes men þ  
came fro the scõpture. And toke of thez  
hors and harneys/and all that they had  
and slewe of them all that they myght  
take/and came and yeldyd hym to the  
kyng. ¶ whan the good erle Thomas  
wyft that he was so bytrayed. he was so  
aballhed/& layd to hymself/Ð almygh-  
ty god how myght robert Holonde fynde  
in his hert me to betray/lyth þ I louyd  
hym so moche Ð god well maye now a  
man se by hym þ no man may dyscepeue  
a nocher/rather thã he þ he trustyth mo-  
ost vpo. he hath full euyll yeldyd me mi-  
goodnes & the worshyp þ I haue to hym  
done. & thugh my kyndnesse haue hym  
auauncyd and made hym hyghe wher-  
that he was low. And he makyth me go

from hyghe vnto lowe/ but yett shall he  
deye an euill dethe.

**O**f the scomfyture of Brurbruggc.

**T**he good erle Thomas of Lan-  
castre. Hūfroy de Bohoune erle  
of Herford/ & the barons þ with theym  
were toke couſell bytwene thē at þ fire  
prechers in Pouſtret. tho thought Tho-  
mas vpon þ trayfour Robert Holonde.  
& layd in repiepf/ Alas Robert Holond  
hathe me betrayed/ aye is þ red of some  
euill thred. And by þ comyn assent they  
holde all go to þ castell of Dunstanbru-  
ghe/ þ whi. he perſeyned to the lordom of  
Lancastre/ & þ they hold abyde ther tyl  
þ the kynge had foryeue them his male  
talent. **B**ut whan þ good erle Tho-  
mas this herde. he answered in this ma-  
nere & layd. Lordes layd he/ yf we go to  
warde þ North/ þ Northen men woll sa-  
ye þ we go towarde þ Scottes/ & so we  
shall be holden trayfours/ for cause of  
dystaūce that is bytwene kynge Edwar-  
de and Robert the Brus that made him  
kynge of Scotlonde. And therfore I say  
as touchyng myselke/ that I wylle not  
go no farder into the North/ than to my  
owne castell at Pouſtret. **A**nd whan/  
syr Roger Clyfford herde this he arole  
vp anone in wrethe. & drewe his swerde  
on hygh/ & swore by god almyghty and  
by his holy names/ but yf þ he wolde go  
with them/ he sholde hym llee there. the  
noble & gentyll erle Thomas of Lācas-  
tre was loze afterde & layd. Fayr syres I  
wyl go with you whether some euere.  
ye me bydde. Tho went they togpder in  
to the north/ and with them they hadde  
vii. C. mē of armys/ & came to Burbrig  
And whan syr Andrew of Herkela that  
was in the north coustree/ thrygh ordy-  
naūce of þ kynge. for to kepe þ countree  
of Scotlonde/ herde tell. howe that Tho-  
mas of Lancastre was scōfyted and his  
company at Burton vpon trent/ he ordy-

dened hym a stronge power/ and syr sy-  
monde warde also/ that was tho the chy-  
ref of Yorke/ and met the barons at bur-  
brugge. & anone they brake the brydge  
that was made of tree. **A**nd whan syr  
Thomas of Lancastre. herde þ syr An-  
drew of Herkela had broughte w hym  
lucht a power he was loze adrad. & sent  
for syr Andrew of Herkela/ & with hþ  
spake. & layd to hym in this manere syr  
Andrew layd he. ye may well vndersto-  
de þ our lord & kynge. is ladd & myl-  
gouerned by moche fals couſell. thrygh  
syr Hugh Spenser þ fad & syr Hugh his  
sone: syr John erle of Arūdell/ & thrygh  
mayster Robert Baldok a fals pyllyd  
clerke. þ now is in þ kynges court dwel-  
lyng/ wherfore I praye you þ ye wylle  
come with vs with all your power that  
ye haue ordeyned/ and helpe to dystroye  
the venym of Englonde. & the trayfours  
that beu therin/ & we wyl yeue vnto you  
all the best parte of syue Erldoms/ þ we  
haue & holde. & we wyl make vnto you  
an othe. that we wyl neuer do thynge w-  
out your counsell/ & so ye shall be eft as  
well w vs as euer was Robert Holonde  
Tho answered syr Andrew of Herkela &  
layd syr Thomas þ wolde not I do ne  
consent therto for no manere thynge w-  
out the wyl & cōmaūdemēt of our lord  
þ kynge/ for thē shold I be holden a tra-  
four for euer more. And whan þ þ noble  
erle Thomas of Lācastre saw þ he wol-  
de not consent to hþ for no maner thynge  
syr Andrew he layd wyl ye not cōsente  
to dystroye the venymme of the reame  
as we be consente atte one worde Syr  
Andrew I tell the that are this yere be  
goon/ that ye shall be take and holde for  
a trayfour. & more than ony of you hol-  
de vs now/ and in worse dethe ye shall  
deye than ener dyd ony knyghte of En-  
glonde. And vnderstonde welle / that ye  
dyde neuer thynge/ That loze ye shall  
you repente. And now go and doo what

you good lyketh/and I wyll put me in-  
to the mercy of god. And so went þ fals  
trayfour tyraūt as a fals forsworn man  
for thurgh the noble Erle Thomas of  
Lancastre/he receyued þ armys of chy/  
ualtre/ & thurgh hym he was made a  
knyghte. Tho myghte men see archers  
draw them in þ one syde & in that other  
& knyghtes also. and fought tho togyder  
wonder sore. And also amonge al other  
Humfroy de Boughon erle of Herforde  
a worthy knyght of renoune thurgh out  
all cristendome/stode & fought with his  
enmyes vppon þ byrdege. and as þ noble  
lorde stode & fought vpon the byrdege a  
theyf rybaude sculkyd vnder þ byrdege/  
and slyly with a spere. smote the noble  
knyght into þ fūdemēt/so þ his bow/  
ellys came out aboute his fete ther. Alas  
for sorow & pyte. for there was slayne  
the floure of solace & of comforth/ & als  
so of curteylse. ¶ And syr Roger Clyf/  
forde a noble & a worthy knyghte stode  
euer & fought/ & well and worthly hym  
defended as a noble baron. But atte the  
laste he was sore woundyd in his heed/  
And syr wylliam of Sullayande. & syr  
Roger of Benefelde were slayne at that  
batayll. whan syr Andrewe of Herkela  
law þ syr Thomas men of Lancastre/  
lashed and slahyd. anone he and his com-  
pany came vnto the gentyll knyght syr  
Thomas & layd vnto hym in an hygh  
voyce yelde the trayfour yelde the. The  
gentyll erle Thomas of Lancastre an/  
swerd thenne and sayd. Nay lordes trai-  
tours we ben none. and to you we wyll  
neuer vs yelde whyle that our lyues last  
But leuer we hadde to be slayne in our  
truch/ than yelde vs vnto you. And syre  
Andrewe ayen gardyd vppon syr Tho-  
mas and his company/ pellynge and cri-  
enge lyke a wode wulf. yelde you tray-  
tours taken yelde you/ and sayd with an  
hyghe voyce Beware syres that none of  
you be so hardy vppon lyfe and lymme  
to mylde Thomas body of Lancastre/

And with that worde the good erle tho-  
mas yede into the castell/ and layd kne  
lynge vpon his knees and tomed his by-  
lage towarde the crosse & sayd almygh-  
ty god to the I yeide/ & holy I putte me  
vnto thy mercy. and with that the vylai-  
nes and rybaudes lept abowte hym on  
euery syde as tyrautes and wood tomed  
tours/ & dyspoyled hym of his armoure  
and clothed hym in a robe of ray/ þ was  
of his squyres lycray/ and forthe ladde  
hym vnto Porke by water. Tho myght  
men see moche sorowe and care for the  
gentyll knyghtes fledde on euery syde &  
the rybaudes and the vyllayns egerlye.  
them dyscryed/ & cryed on hygh yelde you  
traytours yelde you. & whan they were  
yelden they were robbyd and bouiden as  
cheups. Alas þ shame and dyspyte that  
the gentyll ordre of knyghthode had the-  
re at that batayll. And the lode was tho  
without lawe/ for holy chirche had tho  
nomore euerence than it had be a bur-  
dell hous/ And in that batayll was the  
fader ayenst the sone/ and þ vnclē ayenst  
the neuewe. for somoche vnkynndelle/  
was neuer seen before in Englonde/ as  
was that tyme amonge folkes of one na-  
cyon. for one kynred had no more pyte  
of that other. than an hungry wulf hath  
of a shepe/ And it was no wonder. for  
the greate lordes of Englonde were not  
all of one nacyon/ but were medlyd with  
othere nacjons/ That is for to saye so-  
me/ Brytons/ some Saxons/ some Da-  
nys/ some Pehypes/ some frenshemen  
some/ Normans/ some: Spanyardes/ so-  
me/ Romayns / some/ Henaude / soom  
flemynges and othere dyuers nacjons  
the whyche nacjons accordyd notte too  
the kynde bloode of Englonde. And yf  
so greate lordes had be oonly weddyd to  
Englyshe people. Thenne sholde peas  
haue ben and reste amonge theym wich-  
out ony enuye. And at þ batayll was ro-  
ger Clyfforde take. syr Johā Hombray  
syr wylliam Tuchi. syr wylliam fitz

Wylliam and many other worthy knyghtes there were take at that batayle & Syr Hugh Dandell nexte daye after was taken and put into pryson / & holde haue be doon to deche yf he had not spoulyd yf kynges nece / yf was erle Gylbertes systre of Gloucestre / & anone after was Syr Berthylmewe of Baderlesmore take at Stow parke / a maneyr of yf byshop of Lyncoln / yf was his neuewe / & many other barons & baronettes. wherfor was made noche sorowe.

How Thomas of Lancastre was hee dyd at Pounsfret / & v. barons hangyd / and drawen there.

And now I shall telle you of the noble erle Thomas of Lancastre. whan he was take & brought to portke / many of yf cyte were full gladde and vpon hym cryed with an hygh voyce. O syre traytoure / ye be welcome. blessyd be god for now ye shall haue yf rewarde / yf longe ye haue deserued. And cast vpon hym many snowe balles / & many other repreneues they dyd hym. But the gentyll erle al suffred / & sayd nother o word nor other. And at the same tyme yf kyng herde of this scomfyture / & was ful glad & Joyous / & in grete haste came to Pounsfret. & Syr Hughe Spenser. & Syr Hughe his sone / and Syr John erle of Arundell and Syr Edmonde of wodesstoke the kynges brother erle of Kent. & Syr Aymer of Halaunce erle of Penbroke and mayster Robert Baldoke. a fals pyllyd clerke / yf was pryue / and dwelled in the kynges court / & all came theder with the kyng. And the kyng entryd into the castell / & Syr andrew of Herkela a fals tyraunte through the kynges comaundement. toke with hym the gentyll erle. Thomas too Pounsfret and ther he was prysoned in his owne castell that he had newe made

that stode ayenst the abbaye of kyngedwarde. And Syr Hugh Spenser yf fast and the sone caste and thought howe & in what manere the good erle Thomas of Lancastre holde be deed / without Jgement of his perys. wherfore it was ordeyned through the kynges Justicyes that the kyng holde put vpon hym poyntes of treason. And so it befell that he was ledde to barre before the kynges Justices bareheed as a theyf / in a fayre halle in his owne castell yf he hadd made therein many a fayre feste. bothe to ryche & too poore. And these were his Justices / Syr Hughe Spenser the fader. & Aymer of Halaunce erle of Penbroke. Syr Edmonde of wodstok erle of Kent. Syr John of Brytayne erle of Rychemonde / & Syr Robert Halemethrop Justyce & Syr Robert hym acoulypd in this manere. Tho / mas court excludeth you of all manere answer. Thomas our lord the kyng / puttyth vpon you. yf ye haue in his lond ryden with baner dysplayed ayenst hys peas. as a traytoure. And with yf word the gentyll erle Thomas with an hygh voyce sayd / Nay lordes forsooth & by la / ynt Thomas / I was neuer traytoure / The Justice sayd ayen tho. Thomas our lord the kyng puttythe vpon you that ye haue robbyd his folke / and murdered his people as a theyf. Thomas also the kyng puttythe vpon you that he dyscomfyted you and your people with his folke / in his owne reame / wherfore. ye went and fledde to the woode as an outlaw. and Thomas as a traytoure ye shall be hangyd by reason. but the kyng hath foryeuen you yf Jugemente / for loue of quene Alabell. And Thomas re son wolde yf holde be hangyd / but yf kyng hath foryeue you yf Jugement for by cause and loue of your lynnage. But for almoche. Thomas as ye were taken fleenge / and as an outlawe. the kynges will that your heed shall be smyten of / Anone haue hym out of pries & bynge

hym to hys Jugement. ¶ Whan the gentyll knyght Thomas had herde all thys le wordes/with an hygh voyce he cryed loze weppynge and layd alas laynt Thomas fayr fader. alas shall I be deed th<sup>o</sup> ¶ Graunte me nowe bleffydfull god an swere. But all auayled hym no thyng for þe curlyd Galscopns put hym hyther & thither/ & on hym cryed w<sup>th</sup> an hyghe/voys. ¶ The kynge Arthur moost terryble & drededfull/well knowen & shewed nowe is thyne open traytour. And an euyll de the shalt thou ryghte anone deye. Hast thou not ryghte well deserued it. ¶ And thenne thys cruell folke sette vpon þe gode knyght Thomas for very lcome an olde chaplet that was all to rent/þ was not worth an halfe peny: And after that they sette hym vpon a white palfroy ful vnlemely/and also all bara/with an olde byrdell/And with an horryble noyse they draue hym out of the castell toward his dethe/and they cast vpon hym many balles of snow in dyspyte. and as the traytours lad hym out of the castell tho sayd he these pyteous wordes. & hys hondes helde vp on hygh toward heuē ¶ Now the kynge of heuen yeue vs merci for the erthly kynge hath vs forsaken & a frere precher went with hym out of þe castell tyll he came to the place that he ended his lyfe. vnto whome he shroue hym all his lyfe. And the gentyll erle helde þe frere wonder faste by the clothes & layd to hym fayr fader abyde with vs tyll þe I be deed. for my fleshe quaketh for drede of dethe. ¶ And the lothe for to laye/ The gentyll erle set hym vpon his knees/and corned hym toward the east: but a rybaude þe was called Hygone of moltoon sette honde vpon the gentyll Erle & layd in dyspyte of hym Syr traytour torne the toward the Scottes/ thy fowle dethe to receyue/ & corned toward the North. The noble erle Thomas answered tho with a mylde voys/ & sayd nowe fayr lordes I shall do your wyll. & with

that worde the frere went from hym loze weppynge. And anone a rybaude went to hym/ & smote of his heed/ the .xii. kalendas of Aucrell. in þe pere of grace. M. CCC. xxi. ¶ Alas that euer luche a gentyll blood sholde be don to dethe withouten cause and reason. And traytoursly þe kynge was coulepyll/whan he thugh the fals counseylle of the Spensers suffered syr Thomas his vnclen lone to be put to luche a dethe/and so be beheeded ayenst all manere of reason/ And greate pyte it was also/ that luche a noble kynge sholde be dysceyued and mylgouerned thugh counseyll of the fals Spensers/ the whiche tho he mayntened thugh the losely ayenst his honour and also his proffyte. for afterwarde ther fell grete vengauce in Englonde. for bycause of the forsayd Thomas dethe. ¶ Whane the gentyll erle of his lyfe was passyd. þe pryour and the monyys of Pounfret gate the body of syr Thomas of the kynge & buryed it before the hyghe awter on þe ryghte syde. ¶ That same day that thys gentyll knyght was dede/ were hangyd & drawen/ for the same quarell at Pounfret syr wylliam Tucher. syr wylliam Fitz wylliam. syr werreyn of Iuell. Syr Henry Bradborn/ & syr wylliam Cheyne barons all/ & John page elquyer. and lone after at Porke were drawen & hangyd syr Roger Clyfforde/ syre John of Hambray barons. & syr Goseline Desuyll knyght. ¶ And at Brystowe were drawen and hangyd/ syr Henry of weymington/ & syr Henry Mountforde barons. ¶ And at Gloucetre were drawen and hangyd. syr John Gaffarde and syr wylliam of Elmbrugge barons/ & at London were gangyd & drawen Syr Henry Tyes baron. ¶ And at wyndhel se sye Thomas Clepepyr knyght. And ferthermore to tell of this cruell occyon at wyndloze was drawe & hangyd Syr frauncys waldenham baron/ & at Laüterbury was drawen and hangyd Syr

Berthylmew Badelesmore and Syr barthylmew of Althe bourncham barons & at Cardyf in walys syr wyllyam flemmyng baron.

How kynge Edward went into Scotland with an hundred thousande men of armys & myght not spede.

So whanne kynge Edward of Englonde had brought the floure of cheualry vnto theyr dethe. thurgh the counsell & consent of syr Hugh Spenser the fader & syr Hugh the sone/ he became as woode d as ony lyon. and what looeuer the sones wold haue it was done. so well the kynge louyd them/ the they myght do with hym all thynge the they liked/ wherfore the kynge gaaf vnto syr Hugh Spenser the fader the erldom of wycheestre & vnto syr Andrew of Herkela the erldom of Cardoill/ in preiudycie and in harmynge of his crowne. And kynge Edward tho thurgh counsell of the Spensers dysherpyted all them the they had be ayenst hym in ony quarell w Thomas of Lancaster. And many other were dysherpyted also/ bycause that the Spensers coueyted for to haue theyr lodes. And so they had all that they wold delyre with wroge & ayenste all reason. Tho made the kyng Robert Baldok a false pylled clerke Chaunceler of Englonde. thurgh counsell of the forsayd Spensers. And he was a false rhybaude/ And a coueytouse And so they counseyllled the kynge moche/ that the kyng lete take to his owne warde all the goodes of the lordes that were put wrongfully to the dethe into his owne honde. And as well they toke the goodes that were within holy chirche/ as the goodes the they were without/ & lete them be put into his tresoury in London/ & lete them calle his forseytes. And by ther counsell the kynge wroughte/ for euer more he dysherpyted them the goodes oughte/ & thurgh ther counsell lete axer a talegge

of all the goodes of Englonde/ wherfore he was the rycheest kynge the euer was in Englonde. after wyllyam Bastarde the conqueror Englonde. And yet thurgh the counsell of them hym lemyd that he had notte ynough. But made yet encyroune of Englonde for to fynde a man of armys vpon theyr owne costes/ for to go & werre vpon the Scottes the they were hymnemyes/ wherfore the kynge wente into Scotland with an hundred thousande men of armys at wyntontyde in the yere of oure lordes ihesu criste. M. CCC. xxii. But the Scottes wente/ & had them in moucyens and in wodes and taryed the Englyshmen fro day to day/ that the kynge myght for no manere thynge fynde them in playne felde/ wherfore many Englyshmen that had lypyll vntaylles deyed there for hungre wonder faste and sodenly in goynge and comynge and namely tho that had ben ayenst Thomas of Lancaster & robbyd his men vpon his londes. whan kynge Edward saw that vntaylles fayled hym/ he was wonder sore dyscomfited. bycause also the his men deyed. & for he myght not spede of his enemyes. So at the laste he came ayen into Englonde/ & anone after came James Douglas and also Thomas Radulph with an huge hoolte into Englonde into Northumberlonde/ & with them the Englyshmen that were dryuen out of Englonde/ and came and robbyd the countrey/ and slewe the people/ and also brent the towne the was callyd Northallerton & many other townes to Parke. And whan the kynge herde this tydynge he lete somone all manere men that myght traueyllec. And so the Englyshmen mette the Scottes at the abbay of Beryghelonde the xv. daye after Myghelmas. in the same yere aboue sayd/ and the Englyshmen were there dyscomfited. And atte that scomfytur was take Syr Johan of Brytayne Erle of Rychemonde that helde the countrey and the erldom of Lan

castre and after he payed an huge raun-  
sonne and was lete goo. And after that  
he wente into fraunce & came neuer af-  
ter agayne.

How syr Andrew of herkelay was ta-  
ke & put to dethe. ¶ was erle of Cardoill

When at þ tyme was syr Andrew  
of herkelay new was made er-  
le of Cardoill for cause þ he had taken þ  
good Erle Thomas of Lancastre. ¶ He  
had ordeyned thurgh þ kynges cōmaun-  
dement of Englonde. for to bynngē hē  
all the power that he myght. for to helpe  
ayenst þ Scottes at þ abbaye of Berygh-  
lande. And whan the fals traytour had  
gadred all the people that he myght and  
sholde haue come to the kyngē vnto the  
abbaye of Beryghlande. the fals tray-  
tour ladde them by a nother cōltre thru-  
ghe Copelonde. & thurgh the erldome of  
Lancastre. & wente thurgh the countre &  
robbyd & slew the folke all þ he myght  
And ferthermore the fals traytour had  
take a grete somme of golde & syluer of  
syr Jamys Douglas for to be ayenst þ  
kyngē of Englonde. & to be helppynge &  
holdynge with the Scottes thurgh who-  
le treason the kyngē of Englonde was  
scōmpted at Beryghlande or þ he came  
thyder. wherfore the kyngē was toward  
hym wonder wrothe. & lete pryuelly en-  
quere by þ cōltre abowte how þ it was  
And some men enquered & alpyd. so at  
the laste þ trougħ was foude & fougħte.  
And he attepynte & take as a fals tray-  
tour. as þ gode erle Thomas of lancas-  
tre hym tolde or þ he was put vnto dethe  
at his takynge at Burbrugge. & to him  
sayd. Or þ yere were doon he sholde be  
take & holde a traytour. And so it was  
as the holy man sayd. ¶ wherfore þ ky-  
ngē sente pryuelly too syr Anthoyn of Lu-  
cy. a knyghte of the countre of Cardoill.  
þ he shold take syr Andrew of herkelay  
& put hym vnto the dethe. And to bypge

this thyngē vnto the ende. the kyngē sen-  
te his Commysyon so þ this lame An-  
drew was take at Cardoill & ladde vnto  
the barre in þ manere of an erle worthy-  
ly arayed. & with a swerde gyrdē about  
hym. & holyd and spoyd. ¶ Tho spake  
syr Anthoyn in this maner syr Andrew  
sayd he the kyngē puttyth vpon the for-  
almoche as thou hast beorpyd in thy de-  
dys. he dyd to the moche honoure. & ma-  
de the erle of Cardoill. & thou as a tray-  
tour to thy lorde. laddest the peple of his  
countre that sholde haue holpe hym att  
the bataylle of Beryghlande. and thou  
laddest them away by the countre of co-  
pelonde. and thurgh the erldome of Lan-  
castre wherfor our lorde the kyngē was  
discomfytid there of the Scottes thurgh  
thy treason & falsnesse and yf þ haddest  
come bi tymes he had had the batayll &  
treason thou didest for the gret some of  
gold & syluer that thou receyued of Ja-  
mys Douglas. a Scot the kyngs enemye  
And our lorde the kyngē wpll. that þ or-  
dre of knyghthode. by þ whiche thou re-  
ceyued all thyne honoure and worthyp-  
pon thy body be all brought to nought  
and thyn estate vndoyne. that other kny-  
ghtes of lower degree mowe after bewa-  
re. whiche lorde hath the auanced huge-  
ly in dyuers countres of Englonde and  
that all mawe take entample by the lor-  
de afterwarde. truly for to serue. ¶ Tho  
commaunded he anore a knaue. to hew  
of his spores on his helps. and after he  
lete breke the swerde ouer his heed. þ whi-  
che the kyngē gaue hym for too kepe &  
defende his londe therwith whanne he  
made hym Erle of Cardoill. And after  
he lete hym be vnclothed of his furred  
taberd and of his hode. and of his fur-  
ryd cotes. and of his gyrdyll. And whā-  
ne this was done. syr Anthoyn sayd the-  
ne vnto hym. Andrewe sayd he Nowe  
art thou no knyght but a knaue. & for  
thy treason þ kyngē wpll that thou shal  
be hangyd and drawn & thy heed smye



of/and thy bowels take out of thy body  
 & brent before the/ & thy body quartryd  
 & thy heed sente to Londō/ & there it shal  
 stonde vpon London bydgc/ & the foure  
 quarters shall be sent to foure townes of  
 Englonde/ & all other may beware and  
 chastised by the/ And as Anthony sayd/  
 so it was done all manere of thyng in &  
 laste dape of Octobre, in ȳ yere of grace  
 M. iij. C. xxii. yere And ȳ sonne toined in  
 to blood as ȳ people it sawe/ & ȳ durcd  
 from ȳ moine tyll. xi. of ȳ clocke.

¶ Of the miracles ȳ god wroughte for  
 saynt Thomas of Lancastre wherfore  
 the kyng lete close in ȳ chirche dores of  
 the priory of Pountfret/ & no man shold  
 come therin for to offre.

**A**nd lone after that the good erle  
 Thomas of Lancastre was  
 martyrd there was a preest ȳ longetyme  
 had be blynde, dreamed in his slepe/ & he  
 sholde go to the hyll there the good erle  
 Thomas of Lancastre was doon vnto  
 dethe/ & he sholde haue his syght ayen &  
 so he dreamed thre nyghtes sewynge, and  
 the preest lete lede hym to the same hyll  
 and whan he came to that place that he  
 was martyrd on/ full deuowtly he ma/  
 de there his prayers/ And prayed god &  
 saynt Thomas/ that he myght haue his  
 syghte ayen/ And as he was in his pra/  
 yers he layed his ryght honde vpon the  
 same place that the gode man was mar/  
 tryd on/ and a drope of drye blood and  
 smale sonde cleuyd on his honde/ & ther  
 with stryked his eyen. And anone thru/  
 ghe the myght of god and saynt Tho/  
 mas of Lancastre/ he hadde his syghte.  
 ayen. And thankyd tho almyghtye god  
 and saynt Thomas And whanne this  
 miracle was knowen amonge men/ the  
 people came thither on euery syde/ and  
 knelyd and made theyr prayers atte hys  
 tombe that is in the priory of Pountfret  
 and prayed that holy martyr of locour

& of helpe/ and god herde ther prayer

¶ Also there was a ponge chylde drow/  
 ned in a well in the towne of Pountfret  
 and was deed thre dayes and thre nygh  
 tes. And men came and layed the deed  
 chylde vpon sayd Thomas tombe & ho  
 ly martyr/ and the chylde arole from de  
 the to lyfe. as many a man it sawe.

¶ And also moche people were oute of  
 ther mynde/ & god sent them theyr myn  
 de ayen. thorough vertuc of ȳ holy man  
 ¶ And god hath yene there also to cryp  
 pylis theyr goynge/ & to crokyd thyr hon  
 des and ther fete/ & to blynde also theyr  
 syght. & to manyleke folke ther helth of  
 dyuers maladyes for the loue of this go  
 de martyr.

¶ Also there was a ryche man in Cou/  
 dom in Galcoyne and luche a malady  
 he had/ that all his ryghte syde rottyd &  
 fell awaye from hym/ that men myghte  
 see his lyur & his herte/ and so he stans  
 ke/ that vnneth they myght come nyghe  
 hym. wherfore his frendes were for him  
 wonder soyr. But at the last as god wol  
 de. they prayed to saynt Thomas of Lan  
 castre/ that he wold pray almyghty god  
 for that pyloner/ and behyght for to go  
 to Pountfret for to do theyr pylgryma/  
 ge/ he thoughte that the Martyr saynt  
 Thomas came to hym/ and anoynted  
 all hys syke body/ and therwith the go/  
 de man awoke and was all hoole/ and  
 his flesshe was restored ayen that before  
 was rottyd and fallen away. for whiche  
 myracle the good man and his frendes  
 louyd god and saynt Thomas euermo  
 re after. And this good man came into  
 Englonde. And toke with hym foure fe  
 lowes/ & came to Pountfret to ȳ holy mar  
 tyr. & dyd theyr pylgrymage. & the gode  
 man that was syke came thither all na  
 hpd/ sauf his preuye clothes. And whan  
 they had done. they toined home ayen in  
 to theyr owne countre. and tolde of the  
 miracle where so euer ȳ they came.

¶ And also two men haue been heelyd

there of the mormale thurgh helpe of þ  
 holy martyre/though þ euill be holde in  
 curable. And whan the Spensers herde  
 þ god dyd suche Miracles for this holy  
 man/they nolde byleue it in no manere  
 wyle/but sayd openly/þ it was gret he  
 relpe/suche vertue of hym to byleue.and  
 whan syr Hugh Spenser þ lone sawe al  
 this doynge/anone he sent his messager  
 from Pouñfret there þ he dwelled to hþ  
 Edwarde þ tho was at Grauen at scyp  
 ton/for cause þ the kyng sholde vndo þ  
 pylgrymage/And as the rybaude þ mel  
 lager went towarde the kyng for to do  
 his message/he came by the hylle there þ  
 good martyre was doon to dethe. & in the  
 same place he made his ordure/& whan  
 he had done.he rode towarde þ kyng &  
 a stronge flyre came vpon hym or that  
 he came to Porke/& tho he shed all hys  
 bowelles at his fūdment. And whan syr  
 Hugh Spenser herde this tydynges/so  
 dele he was adradde/& thoughte for to  
 vndo this pylgrymage yf he myghte by  
 ony manere a waye/& anone he went to  
 the kyng/& sayd þ they shold be in gre  
 te shklaūdre thurgh out all crystendome/  
 for þ dech of Thomas of Lancastre if þ  
 he suffred þ ppeople to do ther pylgryma  
 ge at Pouñfret & so he couleled þ kyng  
 þ he cōmaūded to hys þ chirche doores of  
 Pouñfret/in þ which chirche þ holy mar  
 tyr was enterid.& thus they dyd apenste  
 all fraūchyles of holy chirche so þ foure  
 yere after myght no pylgryme come to þ  
 holy bodye.& bycause þ monkes suffred  
 men to come & honoure þ holy bodye of  
 saynt Thomas þ martyre.thurgh couñ  
 sell of syr Hugh Spenser þ lone/& thru  
 ghe couñsell of mayster Robert Baldok  
 þ fals pylled clerke. þ was þ kyngs chaū  
 celer. þ kyng consented þ they shold be  
 sette to theyr wages/& lete make warde  
 yns ouer ther owne good longe tyme/&  
 thorough commaundement of the for  
 sayd syr Hughe Spenser. xiiii. Galcops  
 nes well armyd kept the hylle ther that

the good man saynt Thomas was don  
 vnto his dech so that no pylgrym myght  
 come by that way/full well went he to  
 haue take cristis myght and hys power  
 and the grete boos of miracles/that he  
 shewed for his martyre saynt Thomas  
 thurgh al crystendome. And þ same tyme  
 þ kyng made Robert of Baldok þ fals  
 se pylled clerke.thurgh prayer of syr  
 Hugh Spenser lone.was made Chaūse  
 ler of Englonde. And in that same ty  
 me was the castell of walpyngforde hol  
 den apenste the kyng thurgh pylsoners  
 that wren within the castell for saynt  
 Thomas loue of Lancastre / wherfore  
 the people of the couñtre came & toke the  
 castell of the pylsoners/wherfore syr Jo  
 han of Goldyngton knyght and syr Ed  
 monde of Becche pylsoners were taken  
 and sent vnto the kyng to Pouñfret.&  
 there they were done in pylson.and þ for  
 sayd Roger was sent vnto Porke/& the  
 re he was drawen & hangyd. And anone  
 after syr Roger Mortimer of wygmoñ  
 brake out of þ toure of London in this  
 manere. The forsayd Roger herde that  
 he sholde be drawe and hangyd atte Lō  
 don in þ morow after saynt Laurence dai  
 & on the daye before he helde a fayre fet  
 te in þ toure of London & there was syr  
 Stephen Segraue conestable of þ tour  
 & many grete men w them.& whan thei  
 sholde soupe/þ forsayd Stephen lete for  
 all þ officers of þ tour.& they came & sou  
 ped w hym/And whan they sholde ta  
 ke ther leue of hþ.a lquyre þ was callyd  
 Stephē. þ was full pryuy with þ forsaid  
 Rogere thurgh his couñsell.yaue them al  
 suche a drynke þ the leest of the all slept  
 two dayes & two nyghtes.& in þ meane  
 tyme he escaped awaye by water/by the  
 ramps/& went ouer the see & helde hym  
 in fraunce.wherfore the kyng was los  
 re anoyed/& put the same Stephen out  
 of his Constabelery.

How the queene Isbell wente in

to fraunce/for to treate of peas bytwene  
ne her lord the kynge of Englonde and  
the kynge of fraunce her broder.

**T**he kynge wente cho vnto Londō  
and there thurgh counsell of syr  
Hugh Spenser the fader. & of his sone/  
& of mayster Robert Baldok a fals pyl  
led clerke his Chaunceler. lete seale thoo  
all þ quenes londes into his hondes. and  
also all þ londes þ were syr Edwardes  
his sone. & were so put to theyr wagys/  
apenst all maner of reison. & þ was thru  
ghe the fallnesse of þ Spensers. And  
whan þ kynge of fraunce þ was quene  
Isabelles brocher herde of this fallnesse  
he was sore anoyed apenst þ kynge of en  
glonde & his fals counsellers. wherfore  
he sent a letter to kynge Edwarde vn  
der his seale. þ he sholde come at a certai  
ne daye to do his homage/ & therfo he so  
moned hym. & els he shold lese all Gal  
coyne. And so it was ordeyned in Englō  
de thurgh the kynge & his coull. þ que  
ne Isabell sholde goo into fraunce/for  
to treate of peas bytwene her lord and  
her broder. & þ Olyuer of Engham shol  
de go into Galcoyne/ & haue with hym  
viij. M. men of armys & moo/ to be Sc/  
nelchall & wardayne of Galcoyne. and  
so it was ordeyned þ quene Isabell/ ca/  
me into fraunce & with her wente syr ap  
mer of Balaunce erle of Penbroke. that  
was there murdered sodenly in a pryce  
ge/ but þ was thurgh goddes vengauce  
for he was one of the Justicyz þ consen  
ted to laynt Thomas deeth of Lancastre  
& wolde neuer after repent hym of that  
wyckyd dede. & at þ tyme syr Olyuer of  
Engham went ouer into Galcoyne/ &  
dyd moche harme to the kynge of fraunce  
& thoo he gate apen þ kynge Edwarde.  
had lost. & moche more therto.

**T**how kynge Edwarde sent syr Edwar  
de his sone the eldest into fraunce.

**T**he quene Isabell had but a quar  
ter of a yere dwelled in fraunce  
whan syr Edwarde her eldest sone aryd  
leue tho for to go into fraunce/for to spe  
ke with his moder/ Isabell the quene/ &  
his fader þ kynge graūtyd hym with a  
good wyll/ & sayd to hym go my fayre lo  
ne in goddys blessinge & myn/ & thynke  
for to come apen as hastily as þ maye/  
And he wente ouer the see into fraunce  
& þ kynge of fraunce his vncle receyued  
hym with moche honoure/ & sayd vnto  
hym/ fayre sone ye be welcome/ & for by  
cause þ your fader come not to do his ho  
mage. for þ duchye of Guyon/ as his aū  
cetours were want for to do. I pveue you  
þ lordshyp to holde it of me in herpage  
as all maner aūcetours dyde befor you  
wherfore he was callyd duke of Guyon

**T**howe the kynge exyled his quene Vla  
bell & Edwarde her eldest sone.

**A**s kynge Edwarde of Englon  
de herd tell how þ kyng of fraū  
ce/ had pveue þ duchye of Guyon vnto sir  
Edwarde his sone/ without consent and  
wyll of hym & þ his sone had receyued  
the duchye he became wonder wrothe. &  
sent to his sone by letter/ that they shold  
come apen into Englonde in all þ haste  
that they myghte/ And the quene Isabel  
and syr Edward her sone were wonder  
sore adradde of þ kynges menaced. & of  
his wrathe/ & pynnyppally for þ fallnesse  
of þ Spensers/ both of þ fader/ & alloo  
the sone. & at his cōmaūdemēt they wol  
de not come. wherfore kynge Edwarde  
was full sore anoyed/ & lete make a crye  
at Londō/ þ þ quene Isabell & Edwar  
de his eldest sone/ came not in Englonde  
that they sholde be holde as oute enmy  
es/ bothe to the reame / and also to the  
crowne of Englonde/ & for þ they nol  
de come into Englonde/ but bothe were

exyled the moder and her sone. ¶ When the quene herde thyle tydynge. she was sore adradde to be dystroyed / through the fals coniectynge of þe Spencers / & went with the knyghtes þe were exyled out of Englonde / for saynt Thomas cause of Lancaster / þis to save / syr Roger of wigmore. syr william Trussell / syr hobn of Cromwell / & many other good knyghtes. wherfore they toke theyr counsell and ordeyned amonge them / for to make a marriage bytwene þe duke of Guyhenne the kynges sone of Englonde / & þe erles doughter of Henaude / that was a noble knyght of name. & a doughty in his tyme. & yf þe thyng myghte be broughte a bowte / then stode they trowynge with þe helpe of god & with his helpe to recouer theyr herytage in Englonde. wherfore they were put out through þe fals coniectynge of the Spencers.

¶ How kyng Edward through counsell of the Spencers sent to þe Douzopers of fraunce. that they sholde helpe that the quene Isabell & her sone syre Edward were exyled out of fraunce.

**A**S kyng Edward & the Spencers herde how þe quene Isabell & syr Edward her sone had alyed they to þe erle of Henaude / & too them þe were exyled out of Englonde for cause of thomas of Lancaster they were so loy that they wylt not what for to do. wherfor sir Hugh Spenser þe sone sayd to syr hughe þe fader in this manere wyse. fader curyd be þe tyme & þe counsell þe ever ye consented þe the quene Isabell sholde go in to fraunce for to treate of accorde betwene þe kyng of Englonde & her broder the kyng of fraunce. for þe was youre counsell. for at þe tyme forsooth your wyf sayled / for I drede me sore / lest through her & her sone / we shall be dystroyed. but yf we take the better counseyle.

¶ Now sayre syres vnderstonde / howe

merueylous felony and falschede þe Spencers ymagyned & caste. for pryuelly they lete fyll fyue banelles ferroures with syluer / þe lme amoutyd. v. M. pounde. and they sent those banelles ouer see pryuelly by an alpaunte / that was callyd Arnold of Spayne / þe was a broker of London That he sholde go to the Douzopers of fraunce / that they sholde procure / and speke to the kyng of fraunce / that quene Isabell & her sone Edward were driuen & exyled out of fraunce. And amonge all othere thynges. þe they were brougth to the deth as pryuelly as they myght but almyghty god wold not so / for whā this Arnold was in the hyghe see / he was take with Selanders that mette hym in the hyghe see / and toke hym and ladde hym to the erle of Henaude theyre lorde & moche Joy was made for that takynge. And at the laste this Arnold pryuelly stele away from thens. & came to London And of this takynge & of othere thynges the erle of Henaude sayd to þe quene Isabell. Dame make you mery & be of gode chere / for ye be rycher than ye wened for to be / & take thyle fyue banelles full of syluer. that were sent to the douzopers of fraunce for to see you and your sone Edward. and thynke you hastely for to goo into Englonde / and take with you syre John of Henaude my brother / and v. hundred men of armys. for many of them of fraunce in whome ye haue had greate truste done you for to come. and almyghty god graunte you that grace / your enemyes to ouercome. ¶ The quene Isabell sente tho through Henaude and Flaundres for her souldyours / and ordeined her euery daye for to go into Englonde ayen / And so she had in her company syr Edmonde of wodstok. that was erle of Kent. that was syr Edwardes broder of Englonde.

*Edmonde of Woodstock*  
*brother of Edward*

How kynge Edwarde lete kepe þ coltes by þ see. & lete trye all þ pryce men of armys & fote men through Englonde.

**A**S kynge Edwarde herde telle þ quene Isabel & Edwarde her sone. wolde come into Englonde/with a grete power of alpautes. & with them þ were outlawed out of Englonde for ther rebellyousnesse. he was sore adradde to be put downe/ & for to lese his kyngdom wherfore he ordeyned to kepe his castels in walys as well as in Englonde/ wyth vptaylles and theyre appareylles / and lete kepe his ryuers/ & also the see. And at the feste of Decolation of saynt Johan Baptist the Cytezens of London sent to þ kyng to porchester an. L. men of armys. And also he comaunded by his letters ordeyned/ þ every hundred & wespentake of Englonde/ too trye as well men of armys as men on foote. & þ they sholde be put in. xx. some. and in an hundred some/ And commaüded þ alle tho men were redy whan ony shoute or crye were made/ for to purpose & take þ alpauntis þ came to Englonde for to benome hym þ londe for to put hym out of his kyngdom/ And more ouer he lete cry thorough his patent in euery sayre & in euery market of Englonde/ þ the quene Isabel & syr Edwarde his eldest sone. & the erle of Kent. that they were take. & lawfully kept wythout ony manere harme vnto them doyng. & all other manere people that come w them. anone lmyte of thcr hedys. withoute ony maner ransom takynge of them. And what man myght brynge syr Rogeres Mortymer heed of wygmore. shold haue an hūdred pounde of money for his trauapl. And ferthermore he ordeyned by his patent/ & comaüded to make/ a fyre vpon euery byll/ belyde þ ryuers and in lowe costrees/ for too make hygge bekenesse of tymbre. That yf it so were that the alpauntis came vnto londe by nyght tyme

þ then the Inhabytaūts there abowte sholde endeuoyr them self in goodly haste/ to lyght & fyre þ bekenes/ þ the counstre maye be warned and come and mette ther ennemys. And in the tyme deyed syr Roger Mortymer his vncle in þ toure of London.

How the quene Isabel & syr Edwarde duke of Guyenne her sone came in to London at her wich/ & how they dyde.

**A**S quene Isabel & syr Edwarde her sone duke of Guyenne syr Edwarde of wodstok erle of kente/ & syr John the erles brother of Henaude & ther company. dradde not the menace of þ kyng. ne of his traytours/ for they trusted all in goddis grace/ and came to Herewich in Southfolke þ. xxiii. day of Septembre/ & in þ yere of grace. M. CCC. xxvi. And the quene & syr Edwarde her sone sente letters to the Mayre & comynalte of London/ requyrnge them/ that they sholde be helypnge in þ quarell and cause that they had/ that is to say to dystrope the traytours of the reame. But none answers were sent apen: Wherfore the quene and syr Edwarde her sone leute a nother patent letter vnder ther seales the tenour of whiche letter here followyth in this maner. Isabel by the grace of god quene of Englonde/ lady of Irlande/ & countesse of Pountif/ and we Edwarde the eldest sone of the kyng of Englod. duke of guyon/ erle of Chestre of Paūtyf/ & of moustroill. to þ Mayre and to all the comynalte of the cyte of London sendyth gretynge/ for almoche as we haue before the tyme/ sent to you by our letters/ how we be come into this londe in good arrape/ and in good manere/ for the honour and profyte of holy chirche and of our dere lorde the kyng & all the reame with all oure myght and power/ to kepe/ and mayntene/ as we/ &

all þ̄ gode folk of the foislayd reame are holden to doo / And vpon þ̄ we pray you that ye woll be helppynge to vs in as moche as ye maye in this quarell þ̄ is for þ̄ comune profyte of the foislayd reame / & we haue had to this tyme none answere of þ̄ foislayd letters / ne knowe not your mynde in þ̄ party. wherfore we lende to you ayen & praye & charge you / þ̄ ye besse you so ayenst vs / þ̄ we haue no cause to greue you / but þ̄ ye ben vnto vs helpynge by all the wayes þ̄ ye maye / or maye knowe / for wytte ye well in certen / that we & all þ̄ be come with vs into this reame / thynke not to doo ony thyng. but þ̄ thyng that shall be for the comyn profyte of all the reame / but oonly to dystrope Hugh Spenser our enemye / & enemye too all þ̄ reame / as ye it well knowe / wherfore ye praye you / & charge you in þ̄ faith that ye owe vnto our lyege lord & kyng & to vs / & vpon all þ̄ ye shall moue for fayte ayen vs. þ̄ yf þ̄ sayd Spenser oure enemye come withyn your power / þ̄ ye do hym hastely to be take / and lausly keppe vntyll ye haue ordeyned of hym our wil and þ̄ ye leue it notte in no manere wyse as ye desyre honoure & profyte of vs all and of al the reame. Vnderstondynge ye ryght well that yf ye do this our prayer and streyght comaundement / we thynke vs somoche þ̄ more beholdynge vnto you. And also ye shall gete you worlhypp & allo profyte. yf ye lende vs hastely answer of all youre wyll ayen at Baldok the xvjte dape of Octobre. whiche letter in the dawnyng of þ̄ dape of saynt Denys / was tackyd vpon the newe crosse in Chepe / and many coppes of þ̄ same letter were tackyd vpon wyndowes & doores and vpon other places in the cyte of london / that all men passynge by the waye myght them rede and se / And in the same tyme kyng Edward was at London in the toure at his mete / And a messenger came into the hall and sayde / that the quene Isabel was come to londe at

herewiche. and hath broughte in her company syr John of Henaude. & with him men of armes withoute nombre. And wth that worde syr Hugh Spenser the fader spake / & thus vnto the kyng sayd. My moost worlhyppfull lord & kyng of Englonde now make good chere / for certenly they been all oures. The kyng saue this worde comfortable. yet he was full sorowfull & penylyt in his herte. And the kyng had not fully eten / but there came into the halle a nother messenger / & sayd that the quene Isabel was arryued atte herewich besyde pylwytche in Southfolke / syr Hugh Spenser þ̄ fader spake to the messenger & sayd / Tell sothe in gode fayth my fayr frende / is she come wth a grete strength. Now certes þ̄ sothe for too lare syr sayd the messagere. she ne hathe in her companie but. vii. hundred men of armys. And with þ̄ worde syr Hugh Spenser the fader cryed with an hyghe voyce & sayd / Alas alas we ben all betrayed. for certes with soo lypyll powere she had neuer come to londe / but yf folke of this londe were vnto her consente. & therfor after ther mete they toke counsell. & went towarde waips / for to arere the wallshmen ayenst the quene Isabel & Edward her sone / all for to fyghte & so they were in purposc euerychone.

¶ How mayster water Stapilton byshop of Exetre þ̄ was the kynges tresorer / was heedyd at London.

¶ And in þ̄ same tyme kyng Edward was sore adradde / leest þ̄ men of London wolde yelde theym vnto the quene Isabel / And too her sone Edward / wherfore he set mayster water Stapilton his tresorer / for to be warden / and heper of the Lyce. of London / with the Mayre / And so came too the Gyldehalle of London / and aryd þ̄ hertes of the rates of the Lyce / thughe

vertue and strength of his commission/ & wolde haue had the keepinge of the cyte And the comuners answered: & sayd that they wolde kepe the cyte to the honoure of kynge Edward & of Isabell the queene/ & of the duke the kynges sone wpythoute ony more. The bysshop tho was sore annoyed/ & swore othes/ y they all shold abyte it anone as the kynge Edward were come oute of walys. And the comuners all anone of y cyte toke the bysshop & lad hym anone amyddes of y. Thepe/ & there they smote of his heed/ & set hys heed in his ryghte honde. & forth with y same compus of the cytee of London by hedyd two of his squyres y helde with y bysshop/ & one of them was callyd wyllyam of wape/ y was y bysshops newe son. And y other was callyd Johñ of Padinton. And also they toke a burgerys of London y was callyd Johñ Merthall. y was syr Hugh Spenser elpye y fader/ & smote of his heed also/ And in y same tyme y bysshop had in London a fayr tour in makynge in his close/ vpon y ryuer Tēte y was withoute temple barre/ and he layed stone to make therof an ende and he comaunded his men to go to y frere Carnes/ & ther they toke stone to make therwith y toure/ & intoche londe & mortar & olde robous y was lefte. And for y dyspyte y the bysshop had done vnto holy churche/ he & his two squyres were buryed in that londe. as though they had ben houndes/ & there they laye. xi. wekes tyll that the queene Isabell sente her letters to the comuners/ & prayed them that they wolde suffre & graunt. that the bysshop myght be take out of that place/ & be buryed at Exetre at his owne churche And so he was/ & his two squyres were buryed at saynt Clementes churche withoute temple barre. And it was no wonder though that bysshop deyed an euill dethe. for he was a coueytous man and had with hym no mercye/ & euill counseyled y kynge. And sone after was Ar

nold of Spayne take. that assentyd too lede y. v. M. li. of syluer in fyue barcelles fetters vnto the douzopers of fraunce/ for to helpe & halt y queene Isabell to her dethe. & Edward her sone/ also. & thys Arnold was put to dethe wout y cyte.

How kynge Edward and syr Hugh Spenser and the erle of Arundell were taken.

**A**S kynge Edward hadde sent mayster walter Stapilton/ his tresorer into London/ for to kepe the cyte vnto hym ayenst the queene Isabell his wyf/ & ayenst Edward his sone/ anone hymself toke with hym syr Hugh Spenser the sone. & syr Johñ of Arundell and mayster Robert Baldok his Chaunceller a fals pylled clerke & toke ther waye towarde Brystow/ And there the kyng abode a lityll tyme/ and made syr Hugh Spenser y fader as Conestable & keeper of the castell. And the kynge and that other Spenser went to shyppe/ and sayled towarde walys/ and toke no leue of the kynges Steward/ ne of none of the kyngys houlholde/ and went ouer into walys for to arere the wallshmen ayenst the dame Isabell the queene and the duke her sone. And the erle of Kent/ and syr Johñ of Henaude/ And they wente and pursued after them/ And ther power encreacyd euery daye/ Soo at the laste the kynge was taken vpon an hylle in walys/ and syr Hugh Spenser the sone in that othere syde of the same hylle/ & the false pylled clerke mayster Robert Baldok there faste belyde theym/ And were broughte ayen in to Englonde/ as almyghety god wolde/ And the kynge hys selfe was put in lauf keepynge in y castell of Kenylworth/ & hym kept syr Henry y was saynt Thomns brother of Lancastre/ and syr Hugh the fader came & put hym in the queenes grace/ and Edward her sone duke of Guyon/ But syr Hugh

Spenser after the tyme that he was taken. wolde neuer etc no manere meete ne drynke no manere drynke/for he wylte to haue no merce/lauf only too be deed

**A**nd the quene & her couſell had ordeyned/that he ſholde haue be doon to deſth at London. But he was ſo feble for his moche faſtyng. & he was nyghe deed/ & therfore it was ordeyned. & he ſholde haue his Jugement at Herforde. & at a place of the toure his heed was take frome his body. & alloo fro Roberte Baldok & he was a fals pylled clerk & & hyngeſ chaunceler. And men ſette vpon theyr heedys chaplettys of ſharpe nettles/ & two ſquyres blewe in ther ecrys/ with two greete bugle hornes/ vpon the two pylſoners. & men myghe here ther. blowen oute with hornes more than a myle. & one Symond of Rydyng & hyngeſ Marshall bare be fore them vpon a ſpere ther armys reuerſyd/ in token. & they ſholde be vndon for euermore. And vpon & morowe was ſyr Hugh Speler & lone dampned to deſth & was drawen hangyd & hedyd. & hys bowels taken out of his body. & brent. & after that he was quartred/ & his foure quarters were ſente to the foure townes of Englonde/ & his heed ſente to London byrge/ And this Symond for cauſe & he dylſpyed quene Plabell/ he was drawen and hangyd in a ſtage made. a myddes & forſayd ſyr Hughes galowes And & ſame daye a lptyll fro thens was ſyr John of Arundell behedyd/ bycauſe he was one of ſyr Hugh Spenſers couſelers. And anone after was ſyr Hughe Spenſer fader hangyd and drawen/ & hedyd at Bryſtow/ & after hangyd apē by the armys with two ſtronge ropes. & the fourth daye after he was hewen all to pecys/ & houndes ete hym. And bycauſe & the hynge had yeuen hym & erldom of Wyncheſtre his heed was ſent thether & put vpon a ſpere/ And & fals Baldok was ſente to London & ther he deyed in pylſon amonge the cures/ for men dyd hē

nomore reuerence/ than they wolde doo vnto an hounde. And ſo deyed the traytours of Englonde bleſſyd be almyghti god. And it was no wonder. for thurgh the ther couſell & good erlc Thomas of Lancaſtre was doon vnto deſth & all & held with Thomas of Lancaſtre thurgh the traſours were vndon & all theyr hepres dylherpyed.

**H**owe hynge Edward was put downe/ & his dygnyte take from hym.

**A**nd andne after as all this was doon. the quene Plabell and Edward her lone & all the greete lordes of Englonde at one aſſente/ ſent to hynge Edward to the caſtell of Kenylworthe/ there as he was in keepynge vnder & warde of ſyr John Bachin. that was the bylshop of Ely. and of ſyr John of Dereye a baron/ for bycauſe that he ſholde ordeine his parlement at a certayne place in Englonde/ for to redreſſe and amende & ſtate of the reame. And hynge Edward de them anſwerde and ſayd Lordes ſaid he ye ſe full well how it is. Loo here my ſeale/ and I gyue to you all my power for to calle & ordeyne a parlement where that ye wylle. And thurue they tooke theyr leue of hym and came apen to the barons of Englonde/ And whanne they hadde the hyngeſ Patent of this thynge/ they ſhewed it to the lordes. And tho was ordeyned/ that the parlement ſholde be at weſtmestre. at & Hous of ſaynt hylari/ And all the greete lordes of Englonde lette ordeyned theym there apenſt that tyme that the parlement ſholde. be. And after whiche daye the parlement was the hynge wolde not come there for no manere of thynge/ as he had ſet hymſelf & aſſygned. And netheles the barons ſent vnto hym oo tyme & other. And he ſwoie by goddys ſouie. & he wolde not come ther oo foſe. wherfor it was ordeyned by all the greete lordes. of Englonde/ that



he sholde no lenger be kyng / but he deposed And sayd / þ they wolde crowne Edwarde his sone / þ elder / þ was the duke of Guyenne. And sente tydynge vnto the kyng there þ he was in warder vnder lye Johñ erle of Garen. & lye Johñ of Bochun. þ was bysshop of Ely / and lye henry Percy a bazon / & lye wyllyam Trussell a knyghte / þ was with þ Erle lye Thomas of Lancastre / for too yelde vp ther homages vnto hym for all the of Englonde. And lye wyllyam Trussell sayd thyle wordes. ¶ Syr Edward for cause þ ye haue trayed youre people of Englonde / & haue vndone many grete lordes of Englonde withoute ony cause / ye shall be deposed / & now ye be with stand thankyd be god / And also for cause þ ye wold not come to the parlement as ye ordeyned at westmestre / as in your letter patente is conteyned / for to treat with youre owne lyege men as a kyng sholde And therfor thurgh all the comys assente / & all the lordes of Englonde / I tell vnto you these wordes. Ye shall vnderstande lye / þ the barons of Englonde at one assente / wille that ye be no more kyng of Englonde but viceroy haue put you o use of youre ryalte foreuer more And the bysshop of Ely sayd tho to the kyng Syr Edward I yelde vp feaute & homage for all þ archebysshops & bysshops of Englonde & for all þ clergy Tho sayd lye Johñ erle of Garenne. Syr Edward I yelde vp here vnto you feaute & homage for me and for all the erles of Englonde. And lye henry Percy yaued vp also his homage for hym & for all þ barons of Englonde. And tho sayd lye wyllyam Trussell / I yelde vp nowe vnto you myn homage for me & also for all the knyghtes of Englonde / & for all them that holde by seruaunte. or by ony other thyng of you / so þ from this day after ye shall not be clamyd kyng nother for kyng be holde / but from this tyme afterwarde ye shall be holde for a sp

guler man of all the people. ¶ And soo they wente thens too London there that the lordes of Englonde them abode / & lye Edward abode in pryson in good kepyng / And this was on the daye of þ Conuersion of saynt Poule. in the .xx. yere of his regne.

¶ Of the prophecy of Merlyn declared of kyng Edward the sone of kyng Edward the fyrste.

**O**f this kyng Edward prophecy of Merlyn & sayd / þ there sholde come a gose out of Carre. þ sholde haue hornes of syluer / & a berde as white as snowe. And a drope sholde come out of his nolethrylles / that shold betoken mache harme hungre / and dethe of people & grete losse of his londe / And þ in the begynnynge of his regne sholde be haüted moche lechery. And he sayd sothe. alas þ tyme for kyng Edward þ was kyng Edwardes sone was borne at Carnaryuaun in walys / forsothe he had hornes of syluer / and a berde as white as snowe Whan he was made prynce of walys to moche he yaued hym to ryot. and too foly And sothe sayd Merlyn in his prophecy þ there sholde come out of his nose a drope. for in his tyme was grete hungre amonge the poore people / & stronge dethe amonge the ryche / þ deyed in straunge / londe with moche sorowe / & in werre in Scotlonde. And after he lost Scotlonde and Galcoyne / & whyle that hymselfe was kyng there was mache lechery haütyd. ¶ And also Merlyn tolde and sayd that this gose sholde leke the floure of lye & of dethe & he sayd sothe. for he spoulyd flabell the kyngs syster of fraunce And in his tyme Merlyn sayd / that there sholde be made brydges of folke vpon dyches of the see / and that was wel seen att Bannockburn in Scotlonde whan he was dyscofyt there of þ Scottes / And Merlyn tolde also / that stones

holde fall from castels. and many tow-  
 nes holde be made playne. And he layd  
 sothe. For whan kynge Edward was  
 dyscomfyted in Slouclonde & came thoo  
 southwarde. the Scottes besegyde tho cal-  
 tels. & dyd them moche harme & brente  
 townes into the herd erthe. And after  
 warde Merlin tolde that an Eggle shold  
 come out of Cornewayle. that shold ha-  
 ue feders of golde. & of pryde shold haue  
 no pere and he sholde dyspyle lordes of  
 blood & after he sholde dey through a beer  
 at Gauerlich & that prophecye was full  
 wel knowe & funde loth for by the eggle  
 vnderstonde syr Pers of Banaston that  
 tho was erle of Cornewayle that was  
 a wonder proude man that dyspyled the  
 baronage of Englonde. but afterwarde  
 he was heeded at Gauerlych through the  
 erle of Lancastre & through the erle of war-  
 wyk. And Merlin tolde. that in his ty-  
 me it sholde seme that the beer shold bre-  
 ne and that bataylle sholde be vpon an  
 arme of the see in a felde arayed lyke a  
 sheld. where sholde deye many white he-  
 des. And he layd sothe. for by the byr-  
 nyng of the beer it betokenyd grete dre-  
 de thughe kyttynge of swerdes at þe bat-  
 tayle of Mison. for there came the Scot-  
 tes in manere of a felle. in manere of a  
 wyng and slewe men of relegyon pri-  
 sters and seculers. wherfore the Scottes  
 callyd that batayll in dysppte of the En-  
 glyshmen. the white batayll. And after  
 Merlin layd the forsayd beer sholde do  
 the gode moche harme. & þe sholde be vpon  
 the southwelle. & also vpon his blo-  
 de. And layd also. that the gode sholde le-  
 se moche deale of his londe. tyll the tyme  
 that shame sholde hym ouercome. & the  
 he sholde clothe hym in a lyons skynne  
 and sholde wyne ayen that he had lost  
 and more thughe people that sholde co-  
 me out of the Northwell. that sholde ma-  
 ke hym to be a ferde. & hym auenge vpon  
 his cunyes thugh counsell of two  
 owles. that syt sholde be in paryll too.

be vndon. And that tho two owles shol-  
 de go ouer see into straunge londe. and  
 there they sholde dwell vnto a certayne  
 tyme. and then they sholde come into en-  
 glonde ayen. And tho two owles sholde  
 do moche harme vnto many one. & that  
 they sholde couell the gode to meue wer-  
 re ayenst the forsayd beer. And the gode  
 and the owles sholde come to an arme  
 of the see at Burton vpon trent. & shol-  
 de go ouer. & that for drede the beer shol-  
 de flece with a swanne in his companye  
 to Bury towarde the North. thugh an  
 vnkynde outpulter. & that the swanne  
 thenne shall be slayne with sorowe. and  
 the beer sholde be slayne full nyghe hys  
 owne nest. that sholde stonde vpon poit-  
 fref. vpon whome the sonne shall shede  
 his beemes. And many folke hym shall  
 seke for vertue. And he layd sothe. for þe  
 good Erie Thomas of Lancastre was  
 borne in the Northwell. and colyn to the  
 kynge. & his vncles lone. And by law he  
 made the kynge lese moche londe. & whi-  
 che he had purchacyd wylfully. tyll at þe  
 last the kynge toke therof shame. & him  
 selfe slew with cruclte. And after he ga-  
 te ayen that he had lost. and moche mo-  
 re thugh folke that he lete assemble out  
 of the northwell. that made hym too be  
 adradde. And auengyd hym on his ba-  
 rons. thugh counsell of syr Hugh spen-  
 ser the fader. and of syr Hughe the lone  
 that before were outlawed for theyr wy-  
 kydness. But afterwarde they came a-  
 yen into Englonde. syr Hugh Spenser  
 the fader came out of fraunce. & somoche  
 counseled the kynge. that he sholde wer-  
 re vpon Thomas of Lancastre. So that  
 the kynge and the Spensers and the er-  
 le of Arundell and theyr power mette w-  
 Thomas of Lancastre at Burton vpon  
 trent. and hym there dyscomfyted and  
 syr Humfroy erle of herforde was in his  
 company. And after fledde the forsayd  
 Thomas and Humfroy with theyr com-  
 pany to burbrugge metynge with syr

Andrew of Herkela that is callyd þ vn kynde outpuler/ & also lpre Symonde warde erle of Porke came & mette with Thomas of Lancastre w an huge power/ & them dyscomfyted/ & in þ scomfyture the erle of Herforde was slayne vpon the brydge towardly with a spere i the fūdement. & the erle Thomas was take & lad vnto Pouffret. & tho was he dyd belyde his owne castell. But after warde many hym sought for miracles þ god dyd for hym. ¶ And in þ tyme merlyn sayd. for sorow & harme sholde depe a people of his londe/ wherfore many lōdes sholde be vpon hym þ more bolder/ & he sayd sothe for bycause of his barōs þ were doon to dethe for saynt thomas quarell of Lancastre. people of many lōdes became þ bolder/ for to mene werre vpon þ kyng/ for their blood was forned to many nacyns. ¶ And after warde Merlyn tolde & sayd þ þ forlapyd owles sholde do moche harme vnto þ flour of lye & deth/ & they sholde brynge her to moche dyslese. so þ she sholde go ouer see in to fraunce/ for to make peas to þ flour de lye. & there sholde abyde tyll a tyme her seide sholde come & fetche her/ & tho they sholde abyde bothe tyll þ tyme/ þ they sholde clothe them with grace/ & tho two owles she sholde seke. & put the to pyeuous dethe. & þ prophecy was full well know. & was full sothe/ for lpre hughe Spenser þ fader. & lpre hughe the lone/ dyde moche sorow & perlecucōn vnto þ quene Isabell thugh theyr procurement to her lorde þ kyng/ so they ordeined amonge them. þ she was put vnto her wagys. That is to saye. xx. shelpngs in þ daye. wherfore þ kyng of fraunce her brother was sore anoyed. & sent in englonde by his letters vnto kyng Edward to come vnto his parlement to Parys in fraunce. But kyng Edward was sore adrad to come there/ for he wend to haue be arestyd tyll that he had made amendes for þ trespase þ lpre Hugh Spen

ser the fader and the lone had done and for the harme that they had done vnto quene Isabell his lyster/ wherfore thugh his ordynance and consent of the Spensers. the quene Isabell went ouer see into fraunce for to make accorde betwene kyng Edward and the kyng of fraunce her brother. And there dwellyd she in fraunce/ tyll Edward her eldest lone came her for to seke/ and so they dwellyd there both tyll that alpaunce was made bytwene them and the gētyll erle of Henaude/ that yf they wyth ther vertue myght dystroye and ouercome the venym and the fallnesse of the Spensers/ that lpre Edward shold spowle dame Phylip the worlhyppfull lady/ & the erles doughter of Henaude/ wherfore the quene Isabell and Edward her lone/ and lpre Edward of woddstok the kynges brother of Englonde/ and lpre Johan of Henaude/ and lpre Rogere Mortimer of wygmore/ and lpre Thomas Rocelyn/ and lpre John of Cromwelle and lpre wylliam Trussell/ and manye other of the alpaunce of the gentyll erle Thomas of Lancastre/ that were exyled out of Englonde for his quarell/ and were dysherited of theyr londes/ ordeyned/ them a grete power/ and arryued at Herewich in Southfolke/ And lone aftere they purlewed þ Spensers tyll þ they were taken & put to piteous deth. as before is sayd. & ther cōpany also/ for þ grete fallnes þ they dyd to kyng Edward. & to his peple. And Merly sayd also more þ the gote shold be put in grete dystresse & in grete anguysh & in grete sorow he sholde lede his lyfe/ And he sayd sothe/ for after the tyme that kyng Edward was take he was put into warde tyll þ the Spensers were put to dethe/ and also bycause that he wolde not come vnto his parlemente at London as he hadde ordeyned and assygned hymself vnto his baronage/ and also wold not gouerne/ & rule his people/ ne his reame as a kyng

ge sholde doo. wherfore some of the barons of Englonde came & yelde vp ther homages vnto hym / for theym & all the other of þe reame. in the dape of þe conuer syon of saynt Poule / in þe yere of his regne. xx. And they put hym out of his ryaltee for euermore / And cur lyued afterwarde in moche sorowe & anguyllhe.

**U** Ddowicus was emperour after Henry foure yere. this Lodewyc was duke of Barare / & he dyspleed the coronacion of the pope / wherfor the pope depolpd hym / and moche labour & many perylls he had after And he trowbled gretly the vnyte of holy chirche. And the was cholyn ayenst hym frederph the duke of Dstryche. & he overcame the duke and abade a rebelyon to his ende. and in grete peryll to his soule / And at the last Barolus was cholen ayenst hym / þe whiche preuaylled / and sodenly Lodewic fel downe of his hors and dyscessyd.

**J**ohñ Handcuyll a douctour of physyk & a knyght borne was in Englonde abowte this tyme. And he made a merueylous pylgrymage. for he went almost abowte all the world. & he wrote his dedys in thre langages. & decessyd. & was buried at saynt Albons.

**B**enedictus the. xxi. was pope after Johñ. vii. yeres & more / this man was a monke / & in all his yongthe he was of good couerlacyon / & a doctour of diuinite. And whan he was made pope / he resfourmed thordre of saynt Benet in that thynge þe was necessary / & he was a hard man to graunte benifyces / lest he had graūtyd it to an vncunmyng man / he made a decretall / þe whiche began (Benedictus de<sup>o</sup> in donis suis) And he was very cruell in his sayth / & for that of lōmen lypyll loupd / he was so stoute a mā that almost he wolde not know his owne colpys.

**A**nno dñi. M. CCC. xxi.

**O**f kynge Edward the thyrde after the Conqueste.

**A**nd after this kynge Edward Carnariuan regned syr Edward of wyndlore his sone / þe whiche was crowned kynge / & anoynted at westmestre / thurgh coulell & consent of all þe grette lordes of þe reame. þe Sondaye in Candelmasse eue. in þe yere of grace. M. CCC. L. xvi. þe was of aege at that tyme but xv. yere / And for cause þe his fader was in warde in þe castell of Kenilworth and also was put downe of his ryaltee / the reame of Englonde was without kynge from þe feest of saynt Kacheryn frome þe yere aboue sayd to the feest of Candelmasse. And tho were all maner pleses of the kynges bynyche assente. And tho was comaunded to all þe Shyrefs of Englonde thurgh the wrytte. to warne the partys to defend aūtys / thurgh somnyng ayen And also ferthermore / that al pylsoners that were in the kynges gayolles / that were attachid thurgh the Shyrefs / sholde be lese goo quyte. **T**he kynge Edward after his coronacion / at the prayer / & besechynge of his lyege of the reame. graūtyd them a chartre of stedfast peas to all them that wolde it axe / And syr Johan of Henaude. and his company toke his leue of the kynge and of the lordes of the reame. and tomyd home to theyre owne coultre ayen: And eche of them had full ryche yeftes. euery man as he was of value & estate. **A**nd tho was Englonde in rest & peas / & grette loue bytwene þe kynge and his lordes. And comynly Englyshmen sayd amonges them that the deuyll was dede / but the innumerable tresoure of the kynge his fader / and the tresour of the Spencers / bothe of the fader and of the sone / and of the erle of Arundell / & of mayster Robert Baldok þe was þe kyngs chaūceler was departyd after þe quene Isabelles ordynaūce & sir Rogere Mortymers of wygmore. so that

the kynge had no thynge there of. but at her wyll and her delyueraunce / me of their londes / as afterwarde ye shall here.

How kynge Edward went vnto Scotland for to mete the Scottes.

**A**nd yet in the same tyme was the kynge in the castell of Kenylworth vnder the keppynge of syr Henri / the first was erle Thomas of Lancasters broder. that tho was erle of Leycestre. And the kynge graūtyd hym the first erldome of Lancastre / the first kynge his fader had sealyd into his hōde / and put out Thomas of Lancastres broder. / and soo was he erle of Lancastre / and of Leycestre / and also Stywarde of Englōde as his broder was in his tyme. But syr Edward the first was kynge Edwardes fader made sorowe withoute ende / bycause he myght not speke with his wyf. ne wyth his sone / wherfore he was in moche myche / for though it was so the first he was ledde and rulyd by fals coulell / yet he was kynge Edwardes sone callyd Edward the first with the longe shankys / and came out of the worthpest blood of the worlde. / and they to whome he was wonte to geue grete payntys / and large. were moost prey with the first he geue his owne sone / And they were his enemyes bothe by nyght / and by daye / and procured to make debate / and contake bytwene hym and his sone / and Iabell his wyf / But the frere prechers were to hym good frendes euer more / and cast both by nyght and by day. how they myght brynge hym oute of pylon. And amonge theyr company the freres had pryuely brought / there was a frere that was callyd / Dunhened and he had ordeyned / and gathered a grete cōpany of folke to kepe at the nede / but the first frere was taken / and put in the castell of Pountfret / and there he deyed in pylon / and syr Henry erle of Lancastre / the first had the first kynges fader in keppynge / through cōmaudemēt of the kynge. delyuerd Edward the first the first kynges fader by endenture to

syr Thomas of Berkeley. And soo syr John Hatreuas / and they lad hym fro the castell of Kenylworth to the castell of Berkeley / and kept hym there sauely. / And at Ester next after his coronacion / the first kynge ordeyned a grete huge hoste / for to fyght ayenst the first Scottes / And syr John the first erles brother of Henaude came from beyonde the see / for to helpe the first kynge Edward / and brought with hym. vij. C. men of armys / and arryued at Douer / and they had leue for to go forth tyll they came to Porke. ther the first kynge them abode / and the first Scottes came thider to the first kynge / for to make peas / and accorde / but the first accordement lasted not bytwene them but a lytyll tyme / And at the first tyme the Englyshmen were clothed all in cotes / and hodes paynted with letters / and with floures full semely / with longe berdes and therfor the first Scottes made a byll. the first was fast nyd vpon the first chirche dores of saynt Petir towarde Stangate. / and thus sayd the first scrypture in dyspyte of Englyshmen / Longe berdes hercles / payntyd hodes wyteles gaye cotes graceles / makyth Englōd thristeles

**S**o in the first Trinity daye nexte after began the first contake in the first cyte of Porke bytwene the first Englyshmen / and the first Henaudes / and in the first debate were slayne of the first erldō of Nicholl / and murdered. lxxx. men. / and after they were buryed in saynt clemētis chirche in folgate. / and for cause the first Henaudes came to helpe the first kynge. ther peas was cryed vpon payne of lye / and lyme. / and in the first other half it was founde by an enquest of the first cite the first Englyshmen began the first debate.

Howe the Englyshmen stoppyd the Scottes in the parke of Stanope / and how they turned ayen into Scotlonde.

**T**his tyme the Scottes hadde assembled all theyr power / and came into Englonde / and slewe / and robbyd all that they myght take / and also brente / and

dystroyed all the north countre thurgh  
 oute/tyll þ they came vnto the parke of  
 Stanhope in weridale/ & there þ Scot  
 tes helde theym in a bullshment/ but whā  
 the kynge had herde thurgh spyes wher  
 re þ scottes were/ anone ryght w̄ his hol  
 te belegyd them within þ forlaid parke  
 so þ the scottes wist not where to go oute  
 but oonly vnto ther harmes. And they a  
 bode in the park: xv. dayes/ & bytapples  
 faylled them in euery syde. so þ they we  
 re greatly pepred of bodies/ & lyth that  
 Brute came fyfte into Brytayne vnto  
 this tyme/ there was neuer seen so fayre  
 an host/ what of Englyshmen/ & of aly  
 ūtes & of men of fote/ þ whiche ordeined  
 theym for to fyght with þ Scottes/ thru  
 ghe eggynge of syr Henry of Lancastre  
 & of syr John Henaude/ þ wold haue go  
 ne ouer þ water of wyth for to haue fou  
 ght with þ scottes. But syr Roger Mor  
 timer consentyd not thereto/ for he hadd  
 pryuelly taken mede of þ scottes them to  
 helpe/ þ they myght go awaye into their  
 owne coūtree. ¶ And this lame Morty  
 mer coūsepylled somoch Thomas of bro  
 cherton þ erle Marshall that was kynge  
 Edwardes vnclē. þ þ forlaid Thomas  
 sholde not asssemble at that tyme vnto þ  
 Scottes. And he assentyd. but he wylte  
 not the doyngge bytwene þ Scottes & the  
 forlaid Mortimer/ And bycause that he  
 was Marshall of Englonde/ as to hys  
 perteyned euer þ vaūtwarde. he sent hal  
 tely to þ erle of Lancastre/ & to syr John  
 of Henaude/ þ they sholde not fyght w̄  
 the Scottes/ in preiudycē & harmynge of  
 hym & his see/ & yf they dyd þ thei shold  
 stonde to theyr owne paryll. And the for  
 laid erle Marshall was all arayed w̄  
 his batayll. at þ reredoos of the erle of  
 Lancastre/ for to haue fought with him  
 & with his folke yf he had go to fyghte  
 w̄ the scottes/ & in this manere he was  
 dysceyued & wist nothyngge of þ treason  
 And thus was þ kynge pryncypally dis

ceuyed. And whan it was nyght Morty  
 mer/ þ had the watche for to kepe of the  
 host/ þ nyght dystrobled þ watche þ noo  
 thyngge myght be doon. And in þ meane  
 while þ Scottes stele by nyght towarde  
 theyr owne coūtre as fast as they myght  
 ¶ And so was the kynge fallly betrayed  
 þ wenyd þ all the traytours of his londe  
 had ben broughte to an ende as it was  
 layd before. ¶ Now here you lordes how  
 traytoursly kynge Edward was dyscei  
 ued. & howe meruayllously & boldly the  
 Scottes dyd of werre/ for Jamys dou  
 glas with two hundred men of armys  
 rode thurgh out all þ host of kynge Ed  
 warde/ þ same nyght þ Scottes elcaped  
 towarde theyr owne coūtree as is aboue  
 sayd/ tyll þ they came to þ kyngis pau  
 lyon/ & slewe there many men in theyr  
 beddes/ and cryed Naward naward/ &  
 a nother tyme a Douglas a Douglas/  
 wherfore þ kynge þ was in his pauplyō  
 & moche other folke/ were wonder sore a  
 frayed / But blyssyd be almyghty god þ  
 kynge was not taken/ and in greate pe  
 ryll was tho the reame of Englonde. &  
 that nyght the moone shone full clere/  
 and bryght. And for all the kynges men  
 the Scottes scapyd harmeles. ¶ And on  
 the morowe whan the kynge wylte that  
 the Scottes were elcapyd into theyr ow  
 ne countrey he was wonder loy/ & fulle  
 hertely wepte with his ponge eyen/ and  
 yet wylt he notte who hadde hym done  
 that treason. But that fals treason was  
 full welle I knowen a good while after  
 as the storpe maybth mencyon/ ¶ Tho  
 kynge Edward came apen vnto Porke  
 full sorowfull/ And his host departyd/ &  
 euery man went into his owne countre  
 with full heuy chere and moynge sem  
 blaunt/ And the Henaundes toke theyr  
 leue and went into theyr owne countree  
 And the kynge for theyr trauaylle/ huge  
 ly rewarded the/ ¶ And for bycause of  
 þ vpage/ þ kynge had dyspended moche

of his tresoure and wastyd. And in that tyme were seen two moones in þe fyrmaiment/þe one was clere/ & that oþer was derke/as men myght see thurgh þe worlde. ¶ And a grete debate was þe same tyme agaynst pope Johñ þe xxii. after laste Petyr. & þe emperour of Almayn tho made hym emperoure apenst þe popys wyll þe tho helde his see at Auinion. wherfore the emperoure made his crye at Rome & ordeyned another pope/þe hyght Nicholas/þe was a frere Minor/ & that was a yente þe ryght of holy chirche. wherfore he was cursyd. & the power of þe oþere pope soon layed. And for cause that such merueylles were seen/men sayd that the worlde was nygh at an ende.

¶ Of the dethe of kynge Edward of Carnariuan.

**A**nd now go we apen to syr Edward of Carnariuan that was kynge Edwards fader/ somtyme kynge of Englonde. & put downe of his dygnite. Alas for his trybulacõ & sorow that hym befell thurgh fals counsell. þe he louid & trustyd vpon tomoche. þe after ward were dystroyed thurgh ther falsnesse as god wolde. ¶ And this Edward of Carnariuan was in þe castell of Berkelay vnder þe ward & heppinge of syr Hoysce of Berkelay/ & also of syr Johñ Matreues and to them he made his complaynte of his sorowe and of his dilese. And ofte tymes aryd of his wardeyns. what he had trespassed apenst dame Isabell his wyfe and syr Edward his sone. that was made newe kynge/ that they wolde not vilit hym. ¶ And tho answerde one of his wardeyns & sayd. My worthy lorde dysplese you not that I shall telle you the cause is. for it is doon them to vnderstõde/ that yf my lady your wyfe came ony thynge nygh you. that ye wold her stragle and see/ and also that ye wold doo

to my lorde your sone in the same wyse  
 ¶ Tho answerde he with symple chere  
 Alas alas am not I in pylson/ & all at  
 youre owne wyll/ now god it wote I thou  
 ght it neuer/ and nowe I wolde that I  
 were dede/ so wolde god that I were. for  
 thenne were all my sorowe passyd/ ¶ It  
 was not longe after. that the kynge thru  
 ghe counsell of Roger Mortimer/ graun  
 tyd þe ward & heppinge of syr Edward  
 his fader vnto syr Thomas Couourty  
 & to þe forlaid syr Johñ Matreues thru  
 ghe þe kynges letter/ & put out hooly the  
 forlaid syr Hoysce of þe ward of þe kin  
 ge. And they toke and ladde the kynge  
 vnto the castell of Corf. þe whiche castell  
 the kynge hatyd as ony dethe/ And they  
 kept hym there tyll it came vnto saynt/  
 Mathewes daye in Septembre in the ye  
 re of grace. M. CCC. xxvii. that the for  
 laid syr Roger Mortimer sent the man  
 nere of þe dethe/ how & in what wyse he  
 sholde be done to dethe/ And anone as þe  
 forlaid Thomas & Johñ had see the let  
 ter/ & comaũdemente/ they made kyng  
 Edward Carnariuan good chere/ and  
 good solace/ as they myght at that sou  
 pere/ & nothynge þe kynge wylt of þe tray  
 toiry. And whan tyme was for to go too  
 bed the kynge went to his bedde & laye &  
 slept fast. And as the kynge laye & slept  
 the traytours fals forlaid apenst ther  
 homage & feute/ came pryuely into the  
 kynges chambre/ & theyr company with  
 them/ & layed an huge table vpon his  
 wombe/ & with men prestyd & helde fast  
 downe the foure corners of the table on  
 his body/ wherwith the good man awo  
 ke/ and was wonder sore adradde to be  
 deed and there slayne/ and corned his bo  
 dy vpon the so downe. Tho toke the fals  
 traytours/ & tyrautes an horne. & put it  
 into his fundement as depe as they my  
 ght/ & toke a spyt of copie biennynge/ &  
 putte it thurgh the horne into his bodye  
 & oft tymes therwith thyrled his bowels  
 & so they slewe ther lorde/ that no thyn

ge was perceyued/ And after he was enteryd at Gloucestre.

**H**ow kynge Edwarde spowlyd Phyllyp the erles doughter of Henaude at porke

**A**nd after Cristmasse the nexte lewynge/ Lyr Johñ of Henaude broughte with hym Phyllyp his brothers doughter/ þ he was erle of Henaude his nece into Englonde/ & the kynge spowlyd her at Porke. with moche honoure. And Lyr Johñ of Bothum bysshop of Ely/ & Lyr wylliam of Melton Archebysshopp of Porke/ lange þ masse þ Sondaye on the euen of þ Conuerlyon of saynt Poule/ In the yere of grace. M. CCC. xxvii. But bycause þ the kynge was but yonge & tendre of aeye whan he was crowned full many wronges were doon whyle þ his fader lyued/ by cause þ he trowed/ þ couñseyllers þ were fals a abowte hym/ þ couñseyllid hym to do otherwyle than reason wolde/ wherfore greate harme was done to þ reame and to the kynge/ & all men dyrected it the kynges dede/ and it was not so/ almyghty god it wote/ wherfore it was ordeyned at the kynges crownyng. þ the kynge for his tendre aeye/ sholde be gouerned by. xii. of the grettell lordes of Englonde/ without whome no thyng sholde be doon. That is to saye tharchebysshop of Caüterbury/ tharchebysshop of Porke/ þ bysshop of wyndesore/ & the bysshop of Herforde/ the erle of Lancastre/ the erle Marschall/ & the Erle of Kent/ þ were the kynges vncler and the erle of Garence/ Lyr Thomas warke. Lyr Henry Percy. Lyr Dlyuer yngham and Johñ Rous barons/ all thyle were sworn truely for to counseyll the kynge. and they shold answer euery yere in parlement/ of that that sholde be done in þ tyme of theyr gouernall/ but that ordynauce was sone vndoone/ and that was moche harme to all Englonde/ For the kynge & all the lordes þ sholde gouerne

hym were gouerned & rulyd after þ queene his moder dame Isabel. & by Lyr Roger Mortimer: & as they wolde all thyng was done/ boch amonge hygh & lowe And they toke vnto theym castels townes londres/ & rents in greate harme. and losse to þ crowne. & of the kynges estate oute of all melure.

**H**ow the peas was made bytwene the Englyshmen & the Scottes and alsoo of Justifyenge of Troyllebaston.

**B**yngge Edwarde at wyntontyde in the seconde yere of his regne throughte the counseyll of his moder/ & Lyr Roger Mortimer/ ordeyned a parlement at Northampton. And at þ parlement the kynge throughte his couñsell/ & none ocher of þ londres/ w in aeye graũtyd to be accordyd w the Scottes in this manere. þ al þ feautees & homages. þ the Scottes sholde doo to þ crowne of Englonde/ foryauetheym for euer more/ by his chartre ensealed. And ferdermore an endenture was made of þ Scottes vnto kynge Edwarde/ þ was kynge Henryes sone/ whiche endenture they calle it ragman. in þ whiche were conteyned all þ homages & feautees/ fyrste of þ kynge of Scotlonde & of þ prelates/ erles barons of þ reame of Scotloyde/ w theyr seales set theron & other chartres & remēbrauncys þ kynge Edwarde & his barons had of theyr tyght in þ forlayd reame of Scotlonde/ it was foryue ayen holy chirche/ And also with þ blacke crosse of Scotlonde the whiche þ good kynge Edwarde conquered in Scotlonde & brought it out of the abbaye of Scone/ þ is a full precyousrelyque/ And also ferthermore/ he releacyd & fully forgaue all the londres þ þ noble barons had before þ tyme in þ reame of Scotlonde/ by olde conquest. And ferthermore þ this peas for to be holden & continually laste þ Scottes were bounde vnto the kynge in. xxx. thousande pounde of sil



uer to be payed within thre yere/that is euery yere.x.thoulande pounde by euen porcyons. ¶ And ferthermore aboue all this/they spake bytwene the partyes aboue layd.that Dauid Dronautier that was kynge Robert Brus sone/the fals tyraunt/ & fals forsworn ayenst his othe that arose ayenst his lyege lord. the noble and good kynge Edward. and fallly made hym kynge of Scotlonde/that was of aege. v. yere. And so this curlyd counseyll Dauid spoused at Berwyk dame Johā of the Toure/that was kynge Edwardes wyf/ as the gestes telleth vpon Mary Hawdeleyns daie. in þe yere of grace. M. C. C. xxviii. too greates harme and empayryng of all þe kynges blode/ wherof þe gentyll lady came. alas the tyme/ for wonder moche that fayre damoyzell dysperagyd/ lpth þe she was marped ayenst all the comyns wyll & assent of Englonde. And frome the tyme that Brute had conquered Albion/ and named the londe after his owne name. Brytayne: that now is callyd Englonde after the name of Engist. And so the reame of Scotlonde was holde of þe reame of Englonde/ & of the crowne by feaute and homage. for Brute conquered that londe/ & gaue it to Albanah/ þe was hys seconde sone/ And he callyd that londe Albayn/ after his owne name/ so þe hys heyres þe came after hym. sholde holde of Brute & of his heyres/ þe is to saye of the kynges of Brytayne/ by feaute & homage: And from þe tyme vnto this tyme of kynge Edward. þe reame of Scotlonde was holde of the reame of Englonde by feaute & seruyse/ as aboue is layd in the Cronycles of Englonde & of Scotlonde & beythe wytnesse more pynarely. And accursyd be þe tyme that this parlement was holden at Northampton. for there by fals counseyll. þe kynge was there fallly dysherpyed & yet he was within aege. ¶ And yet whan that kynge Edward was put oute of his ryaltee of Englonde

yet men put not hym out of the feautes and seruyse of Scotlonde. ne of the fraunchyles dysherpyed hym for euer more ¶ And neuertheles the greates lordes of Englonde were ayenst to conferme the peas and the tcewes aboue layd/ sauf only quene Isabell/ that tho was the kynges moder Edward/ and the bysshopp of Ely/ and the lord Mortimer. But reason and lawe woldenot that a fynalle peas sholde be made bytwene the wout the comyn assent of Englonde.

¶ Of the debate that was bytwene quene Isabell and syr Henry erle of Lancaster and of Leicester/ and of the rydynge of Bedforde.

¶ When as the forsayd Dauid had spowlyd dame Johāne of þe toure in the towne of Berwyk as before is layd/ The Scottes in dyspyte of the Englyshemen callyd dame Johanne þe counsell make peas/ for the cowardly peas þe tho was ordeyned. But the kynges person bare all þe wyte & blame w wronge of the makynge of the accorde/ And all was done thrughe the quene/ & Rogere Mortimer. And it was not longe after that the quene Isabell ne toke intoo her hondes all þe lordshipp of Poūtfret almost all the londes that were of ony value that apperteyned to the crowne of Englonde/ Soo the kynge had not to dyspende/ but of his vles and of his elcher/ for the quene Isabell and the Mortimer had greates mayne of the retene we þe folowed the kynges court euer more & went and toke the kynges pyces for her peny worthes/ thatte good chepe. Wherfore the countree that they came in were/ fulle sore adradde/ and almooste dystroyed of theym. ¶ Tho began þe comynalte of Englonde for to haue enuye to Isabell the quene. þe somoche louyd her be

foze whann she came ayen for to pursue the fals traytours/ & Spensers fro fraunce. And in þe same tyme the fals traytour Robert of Holonde/ þe bytrayed hys lordesyr Thomas of Lancastre. was tho delyuerde out of pryson/ & was wonderpreuy with þe quene Ilabell/ & also with Roger Mortymet. but þe auaylled hym but lityll. for he was taken at Hyghelmasse þe tho came next after/ as he rode to warde quene Ilabell to London/ and sir Thomas whiche smote of his heed be sydes the towne of saynt Albons. And this syr Thomas dwelled with syr Henry erle of Lancastre/ & he put hym asyde for drede of the quene/ for the quene loved hym wondermoche. And prayed vnto þe kyng for hym þe same Thomas myght be crylled out of Englonde. And þe noble erle syr Henry of Lancastre had often tymes herde the comyn claymoure of the Englyshmen/ of þe dysleale þe were doon in Englonde/ & also for dyuers wronges þe were doon to the comyn people. of þe whiche the kyng bare þe blame with wronge/ for he was but full yonge & tender of aeger. And thought as a gode man/ for to do awaye/ & slake the sk'aunder of the kynges persone. yf þe he might in ony manere a wyle/ so as þe hysge was therof nothyng gylty/ wherfore he was in peryll of lye & lyme: ¶ And so he allebled all his reteneue & went & spake wthem of the kynges honoure/ and also for to amende his astate. And syr Thomas Brotherton erle of Marchall/ and syr Edmonde wodstok/ that were the kyngs vncler/ and also men of Londone made theyr othe hym for to mayntene in that same quarell. And theyr cause was this/ that the kyng sholde holde his house and his meyne/ as a kyng ought for to do/ and haue all his ryalte. And that the quene Ilabell sholde delyuer oute of her hondes in too the kynges honde alle manere of lordshyps rentys/ townes and castels that apperteyneth vnto the crow

ne of Englonde as othere quenes haue done here before/ and medle with none other thyng. ¶ And also that syr Roger Mortimer sholde abyde and dwelle vpon his owne londes/ for the whyche londes he hadde holpe too dysheryte moche people/ In too moche that the comyn people were dystroyed and gretlye domaged/ thoroughe suche wrongfull takynge. ¶ And also too enquire how and by whome that the kyng was bytrayed and falsly dysceyued at Stanhope/ and thurgh whole counseyll that the Scottes went awaye by nyght from the kyng/ And also how and thurgh whos counseyll the ordynauce that were made attc the kynges coronacyon/ was putte downe. That is to saye/ that þe hysge for amendement and helpynge of his reame/ and in honoure of hym shold be gouerned and rulyd by. xii. of the grettest and wylest lordes of the reame/ & without them. sholde no thyng be grauntyd ne done/ as befoze is layd/ whiche conuantes were malpouusly put downe fro the kyng/ where many harmes. shamis and repreues haue falle to the kyng & his reame/ and that is too vnderstonde for almoche as Edwarde kyng of Englonde/ somtyme/ was ordeyned by assēt in playne parlemēt/ for to be vnder warde & gouernaunce of Henry erle of Lancastre his colyn/ for saluacōn of his bodi he was take out of þe castel of Kenilworth/ there þe he was in warde. & thurgh colour of quene Ilabell/ & of þe Mortimer wout cōsent of ony parlement thei toke & ladd hym there that neuer after none of his kynred/ myght with hym spekene sec. and after traytoursly toke and mordered hym/ for whose deche arole a sklaudre thurgh all cristēdom/ whan it was done. And also þe treloure þe syr Edwarde of Bernaiuan lefte in manye places in Englonde and in walys was wastyd & borne awaye/ without þe wyl of kynged warde his lone/ in dystruccyon of hym

and of all his folke. ¶ Also thurgh whose counseyll that the kyng yave by the kyngdom of Scotlonde for the whiche came. þ̄ kyngys auctours had full sore traueyled/ & so dyd many a noble man for theyr ryght/ & was deliuerd vnto dauid þ̄ was Robert Brus lone all þ̄ ryght/ þ̄ no ryght had to þ̄ reame. as all þ̄ worlde it wylt. And also by whome the chartres & remembraunces þ̄ they had of þ̄ ryght of Scotlonde were take oute of þ̄ tresour/ & taken to þ̄ Scottes þ̄ kyngys ennys/ to dysherityng of hym & of his successours/ & to grete harme of his lyes/ & grete repress to all Englyshmen for euer more. ¶ Also wherfore dame Johan of þ̄ toure þ̄ kynges syster Edward was dysperagid & married vnto Dauid þ̄ was Robert Brus lone. þ̄ was a trayfour & ennyer vnto Englonde. and thurgh whoos counseyll she was take in to oure ennys hondes out of Englonde. ¶ And in this meane while. þ̄ goode erle Henry of Lancastre & his companie toke counseyll how those payntes aboue/ sayd myght be amended to þ̄ worshipp of þ̄ kyng & to his profyte & to þ̄ profyte of his lyes. And þ̄ quene Isabel thurgh connectyng & also of þ̄ Mortimers lette ordeyne a parlement at Salisburie. And at þ̄ same parlement. þ̄ Mortimer was made erle of March apenste all the barons wyl of Englonde in preiudice of the kyng & of his crowne. And syr John of Blitham the kynges brother. was gived with a swerde of Comewaylle. And tho. was callid erle of Comewaylle. and euer more quene Isabel procuryd so moche apenst her lone the kyng. þ̄ she had the warde of the foilsayd syr Edward and of his londes. And atte that parlement the erle of Lancastre wolde not come. But ordeyned all his power apenst quene Isabelle and the Mortimer. And men of London ordeyned them with fyue hundred men of armys. ¶ Whanne quene Isabel wylte of the doynge. she

swore by god and by his names/ full angrily that in an euyl tyme he thoughte vpon tho payntes/ Tho sent þ̄ quene Isabel & þ̄ Mortimer after theyr reteneue & after the kyngys reteneue/ soo þ̄ they had ordeyned amonge the an huge hoste. And they coulepled þ̄ kyng/ so that vpon a nyght/ they rode. xxiii. myles too Bedford/ there þ̄ erle of Lancastre was wyth his company/ and thought to haue hym dystroyed/ and that nyght she rode belyde the kyng her lone as a knyghte for drede of dethe. And it was done the kyng to vnderstonde/ that the erle Henry of Lancastre and his company wold haue dystroyed the kyng and his counseyll for euer more/ wherfore the kyng was londele towarde hym heuy & anoyed. ¶ Whan therle Marchall and therle of Bense the kyngys brother herde of this tydynge/ they rode soo in message bytwene them/ that the kyng grauntyd hym his peas to therle Henry of Lancastre. for a certayn raunsome of a. xi thousand pounde. But that was neuer payed afterwarde. And thyle werethe lordes þ̄ helde with syr Henry of Lancastre. syr Beaumont/ syr Fouke Fitzwaren. syr Thomas Rocelyn/ syr Wyllyam Trussell/ sir Thomas Whycher/ and abowte an hundred knyghtes moo that were too hym consented/ & all those were exyled thurgh the counseyll of quene Isabel & of Mortimer. for the Mortimer wayted to haue theyr londes/ yf that he myght thurgh the ony maner connectyng/ for he was to roueytous and had to moche his wyl and that was grete pyte.

¶ How kyng Edward wente ouer the see for to doo his homage vnto the kyng of fraunce/ for þ̄ durye of Guyenne.

¶ It was notte longe after that the kyng of fraunce thurgh the counseyll of his douzepers/ sent to kyng Ed

warde of Englonde that he holde cometo Parys & doo his homage / as reason it wolde / for þe duchye of Guyon / & so thurgh counsell of þe lordes of Englonde kyng Edward went ouer see. And at þe Alencyon tyme / he came vnto Parys / þe thyrde yere of his regne / for to do his homage vnto þe kyng of fraunce. & þe kyng receyued his homage / & made of hym moche Joy & worshipp / But whan kyng Edward had done his homage hastily he was sent for into Englonde thurgh þe quene Isabell his moder and anon hastily he came aye into Englonde / vpon wyllonday without ony takinge leue of þe kyng of fraunce. wherfore he was wonder woche.

**How** Syr Roger Mortymer bare him proudly and so hygh.

**A**ND now shall ye here of Syr Roger Mortymer of wygmore that despyred and coueted to be at an hygh estate / so that the kyng graūtyd hym to be calld erle of Marche / thurgh oute all his lordshipp. And he became so proude & haughty / þe he wold lese & foislake the name þe his elds had euer before / & for þe cause he let hym call erle of marche. And none of þe comyns of Englonde durste calle hym by othere name / for he was calld so by þe kyngys crye. that men holde calle hym erle of Marche. & Mortymer bare hym so haughty & so proude that wonder it was for to wyte. & also dysguyled hym with wonder ryche docthes oute of all manere of reason / both of happynge & of weyng. wherof the Englyshmen had grete wonder / howe and in what manere he myght contriue or fynde such manere pryde. And they sayd amonge them comynly / þe his pryde holde nott longe endure. And the same tyme Syr Geoffrey Mortymer the yonge / That was Mortymers sone. lete calle hym kyng of foly / and so it befell

afterwarde in dede / for he was so fulle of pryde and of wretchydnesse / that he helde a rounde table in walys / to all mē that theder came / & counterfeted the doynge and the manere of kyng Arthurs table / but openly he fayled / for the noble kyng Arthur was the moost noble lord of renomme / that was in all þe world in his tyme & yet came neuer none such after / for all þe noble knyghtes in all cristendom of dedys of armys assayed / dwellyd with kyng Arthur / and helde hym for ther lord and souerayne / And that was well seen / for he conquerde in a batayll a Romayn that was calld Jroll. and gate of hym the reame of fraunce / and slewe hym with his owne houndes / and also he faught with a graunte that was calld Dynabus / & slewe hym that had rauyned fayr Blayne þe was kynges howels nece / kyng of lycyl Brytain & after he slew in batayll þe emperoure of Rome / þe was calld Lucie / þe had assembled ayenst Arthur / for to fyght with hym so moche people of Romayns and Pehites & Saracyns / þe noo man cowde nombre them / & he dyscomfyted them all as the story tellyth. And in that same tyme comyn voyce spronge in Englonde thurgh coniectynge & ordynaūce of the frere prechers / þe Syr Edward of Carnaruian / þe was kynges Edwardes fader of whome the geste tellyth / sayd þe he was alpye in þe castell of Corst / wherof all the comyns of Englonde almoste were in sorowe & drede / whether þe it were so or not for they wylt not how traytoursly mortymer had hym done murthered.

**Howe** Edmonde of wodstok that was erle of kente and þe kynges brother Edward of Carnaruian / was heedyd atte wynchestre.

**A**ND vpon a tyme it befell soo / that Syr Edmonde of wodstok Erle of kente / spake vnto pope John

the. xxiij. at Auinion / and sayd þ̄ almygh  
 ty god had ofte tymes done for Thomas  
 loue of Lancastre many greate miracles  
 to many men & w̄ymen / that were thru  
 ghe dpuers maladyes vndoon. as vnto þ̄  
 worlde / & thru ghe his prayere they were  
 brought vnto ther helth. & so syr Edmo  
 de prayed þ̄ pope hertely þ̄ he wolde gra  
 unte hym grace / þ̄ forsayd Thomas mi  
 ght be traunslatyd. But þ̄ pope layd nai  
 that he sholde not be traunslatyd / vnto þ̄  
 tyme that he were better certifped of þ̄  
 clergye of Englonde & seen by ther obes  
 dyence what thyng god had doon for  
 the loue of saynt Thomas of Lancastre  
 after the suggestion þ̄ the forsayd erle of  
 Kent had vnto hym made. And whan  
 this Edmond saw þ̄ he myght not spede  
 of his purpos: as touchynge þ̄ traunsla  
 cō. he prayed hym of coucell. as touchy  
 ge syr Edward of Carnariuan his bro  
 ther / & layd. þ̄ not longe agon he was ky  
 ge of Englonde / what thyng myghte  
 best be doon as touchynge his delyueraū  
 ce / sythe þ̄ a comune fame was thru ghe  
 Englōd þ̄ he is alyue. hole & lauf whan  
 þ̄ pope herd hym tell þ̄ syr Edward was  
 alyue. he cōmaūded þ̄ erle vpon his blif  
 syng. þ̄ he sholde helpe w̄ all þ̄ power þ̄  
 he myght / that he were delyuerde out of  
 pryson / & laue his body in all manere þ̄  
 he myght. And to byynge this thyng to  
 an ende he allopled hym & his company  
 a pena & culpa / & all that halpe to his de  
 lyueraunce. Tho toke Edmond of wod  
 stok his leue of the pope / & came ayen in  
 to Englonde / & whan syr Edmond was  
 come / some of the frere prechers came &  
 sayd that syr Edward his broder yette  
 was alyue in þ̄ castell of Corz / vnder the  
 kepyng of syr Thomas Gurnay / tho  
 sped hym þ̄ forsayd Edmond as fast as  
 he myghte / tyll he came to the castell of  
 Corz / & acquaynted hym & spake so fair  
 to John Daueryll / þ̄ was conestable of  
 the same castell / & gaue hym ryche yettes  
 for to haue acqeyntaūce of hym and to

knowe of his counsell. And thus it befel  
 that the forsayd Edmonde prayed spect  
 ally to tell hym pryuely of his lorde hys  
 brother syr Edward / yf þ̄ he lyued or we  
 re deed / & yf he were alyue he prayed h̄  
 ones to haue a syght of h̄. And this syr  
 John Daueryll was a hyghe herted mā  
 & full of courage / & answerde shortly to  
 syr Edmond & layd / þ̄ syr Edward hys  
 brother was in helth. & vnder his keep  
 ge. & durst not shewe hym vnto no man  
 tyth it was defended hym in þ̄ kyngs hal  
 fe Edward / þ̄ was Edwardes sone of  
 Carnariuan / & also by the cōmaūdemē  
 te of quene Alabell þ̄ kynges moder / &  
 of syr roger Mortymer. þ̄ he sholde shew  
 his body to no man of þ̄ worlde. sauf on  
 ly to them vpon lyf & tyme / & dyshery  
 tyng of his heyres for euer more. But  
 the fals traytour falsly lyed. for he was  
 not in his warde / but was take thens &  
 lad to þ̄ castell of Berkley by syr Tho  
 mas of Gurney / by the cōmaūdemēte  
 of Mortymer / tyll he was dede as before  
 is sayd. But syr Edmonde of wodstok  
 wyllt no thyng þ̄ syr Edward his bro  
 ther was deed / wherupon he toke a let  
 ter vnto kyng Edward his brother as  
 to his worthy lorde / & receyued þ̄ letter of  
 hym & behyght hym ryght faythfull to  
 do his message without fayll. And with  
 that syr Edmonde toke leue of þ̄ forsayd  
 John / and yede into his owne cōntre &  
 lordshyp in Kent that he had there. And  
 none as this same John wyllt. that syr Ed  
 monde was gone into Kent his owne lor  
 delshyp / anone he went in all the haste þ̄  
 he myghte / fro the Castell of Corz and  
 came vnto syre Rogere Mortymer and  
 toke hym the letter that syre Edmonde  
 of wodstok erle of Kent had taken hym  
 closed and ensealed with his owne seale  
 And whan syre Rogere Mortymer hadd  
 receyued the letter / he vncloyled it / and  
 sawe þ̄ was cōteyned therein / & began it  
 to rede. wherof the begynnyng was thys  
 ¶ Worshyppes and reuerence with bro

cher alpegaunce & subieccyon / Syr knyzt  
 worthypfull and dere broder / yf it youe  
 please I praye you hertely that ye be in  
 gode comfort / for I shall so ordeyn for  
 you / that ye shall come out of pryson & be  
 delyuerd of that dyslese that ye been in /  
 And vnderstondyth of your grete lord  
 shyp / that I haue to myn assentynge al  
 moost all the grete lordes of Englonde /  
 with all theyr appareyll / that is to saye  
 with armour / with tresour without nō  
 bre / for to mayntene your quarell so fer  
 forth / that ye shall be kynge agayn as  
 ye were before / and that they haue swor  
 ne to me vpon a boke / and as well prela  
 tes as erles and barons. ¶ Whanne syre  
 Roger Mortimer saw and vnderstode /  
 the myghte and the strength of the letter  
 anone his herte for wrache began to boll  
 and euyll herte bare toward syr Edmō  
 de of wodstok / that was erle of Kent / &  
 with all the hast that he myght / he wen  
 te vnto dame Isabel the quene / that was  
 the kynges moder / and shewed her syre  
 Edmonds letter / his wyll and his pur  
 pose / and how that he hadde coniected &  
 ordeyned to put downe kyng Edward  
 de of wyndsoze her sone / of his ryalte &  
 of his kyngdom / Now certes syr Roger  
 sayd she / hath syr Edmōd done lo nowe  
 by my faders soule sayd she / I wyll be  
 therof auenged / yf that god graūt me ly  
 fe / and that in a short tyme. And wyth  
 that quene Isabel went vnto kyng Ed  
 warde her sone / there he was at the par  
 lement at wynchestre / too haue amende  
 the wrongys and the trespases that we  
 re done amonge the people of his reame  
 And thoo she toke and shewed hym the  
 letter that syr Edmond of wodstok had  
 made / and ensealed with his owne seale  
 and bad hym vpon her blessinge / that he  
 sholde be auengyd vpon syr Edmonde  
 as vpon his dedely enemye. Tho was the  
 quene sore wrothe towarde syr Edmon  
 de erle of Kent / and sellyd neuer to praye  
 vntyll her sone / tyll that he had sente in

all the hast after hym. And vpon that s  
 kyng sent by his letters after syr Edmō  
 de of wodstok / that he sholde come and  
 speke with hym at wynchestre all mane  
 re thynges left. And whan syr Edmond  
 saw that the kyng sent after hym with  
 his letters ensealed / he halted hym in al  
 that he myght tyll that he came to wyn  
 chestre. ¶ But whan the quene wyll that  
 syr Edmonde was come to wynchestre  
 tho anone she prayed / and so fast wende  
 vnto kyng Edward her sone / that the  
 good erle was arested anone / and ladde  
 vnto the barre before Robert of Hamō  
 de / that was Coroner of s kynges hou  
 holde. And he associed vnto hym syr Ro  
 ger Mortimer. And tho spake s forlaid  
 Roger and sayd / syre Edmonde erle of  
 Kent / ye shall vnderstode that it is do  
 ne vs to wyte / and pryncypally vnto our  
 lyege lord the kyng Edward of En  
 glonde almyghty god hym saue and ke  
 pe / s ye be his deedly enemye / and a tray  
 toure / and also a comune enemye too the  
 reame / and that ye haue ben aboute ma  
 ny a day / for to make pryue delyueraūce  
 of syr Edward somtyme kyng of En  
 glonde your broder / the which somtyme  
 was put downe of his ryalte by the co  
 myn assent of the lordes of Englonde /  
 in pealynge of our lord the kynges esta  
 te / & also of his reame. ¶ Tho answerd  
 the good man and sayd / forsooth syr vn  
 derstode well that I was neuer tray  
 tourt to my kyng / ne to the reame / and  
 that I doo me on god / and on all s worl  
 de / & therfore by my kynges leue / I shal  
 it preue & defende as a man ought / for to  
 do. ¶ Tho sayd Mortimer / syr Edmon  
 de / it is lo ferforth knowe / that it maye  
 not be well gaynsayd / and that in pryse  
 ce of all s here been / it shall be well pro  
 ued. Now had this fals Mortimer the sa  
 me letter that syr Edmond had take to  
 syr Johā Daueryll in the castell of Corf  
 for to take to kyng Edward his brother  
 s syr Edmonde wyll not of ne supposed

no thynge that syr Johā Daueryll had be so fals to delyuer his letter in such wise vnto Mortimer. & thought no manere of thynge of þe letter. Then Mortimer layd to syr Edmonde/ & shewed a letter sealed. & axid hym yf þe knewe þe lett and the seale. This syr Edmond lohyd theron/ & auyled hym longe tyme on the pynthe of þe seale/ for he myght not see þe letter within. and wylt well þe it was his seale/ & thoughte þe it had be some letter that had bore no greate charge/ & thought no thynge of þe other letter. And sayd openly in herynge of them all/ ye forsothe this is my seale. & I wylt it not forsake. ¶ So sayd the Mortimer/ syres ye here all what he hath sayd/ & þe he knowlegyth hym þe this is his letter & his seale. And now ye shall here what is conteined therein/ And then this Mortimer openyd the letter þe he had folde tofore togyder. & redde it openly worde by worde in herynge of theym all/ & whan the letter was redde/ he sayd/ Loo syres / ye haue herde all þe herin is wyrtten/ & þe he hath knowlegyd þe this is hys letter & his seale. & he maye not go therfro/ And then they cryed & yaued dome/ þe he sholde be hangyd & drawen/ & his heed smyten of in a manere of a traytour & he & his heyres dysherited for euer more/ & so he was ladde forth and put into pryson. & whan this was done/ & the quene wylt that he was dampned by way of lawe/ bothe of lye and of lyme/ & his heyres dysherited for euer more. thrugh open knowlegynge in playn court/ where them thought þe it were good/ that the forsayd syr Edmond were hastily clayne/ wythoute wyrtfynge of þe kyng/ or elles the kyng wolde lyghly forpeue hym his dethe/ & then it sholde tome theym to moche sorowe/ so as he was empechid/ And anone the quene thrugh counseyll of þe Mortimer/ and without ony other counseyll sent in hast to the Baylyf of wynchestre that they shold smyte of syr Edmonds

heed erle of Kent without ony manere a bydynge or relpyte vpon payne of lye & lyme/ And that he he sholde haue none other exculyon/ by cause of taryng notwithstondynge the Jugement. Tho toke the baylyfs syr Edmond out of pryson/ and ladde hym belyde the castell of wynchestre/ and there they made a gonfermer smyte of his heed/ for none other durst it do/ and soo he deyed there/ alas the while. That is to say the tenth day of Octobre/ the thyrde yere of kyng Edwards regne. ¶ And whan þe kyng wylt therof/ he was wonder soz/ and lete entpere hym at the frere Dynors at wynchestre.

¶ Of the dethe of syr Roger Mortimer erle of Marche.

**A**nd so it befell at that tyme that syr Roger Mortimer erle of the Marche/ was so prowde and so haufeine that he helde noo lorde of the reame his pere. And tho became he so coueytous/ þe he folowed dame Flabell þe quenes court that was kyng Edwards moder and belet his penyworth with the offycers of the quenes householde/ in the same manere that the kynges offycers dyd. And so he made his takynge/ as touchynge of vntayle and also of carpages/ and all hedyd for bycause of expencys/ and too gadre tresoure/ And so he dyd without nombre in all that he myghte. ¶ Thoo hadde he made hym wonder preuy with the quene Flabell/ And so moche lorde shyppe and retene we had/ þe all the grete lordes of Englonde of hys were adrad wherfor the kyng and his counseyll/ towarde hym were agreued/ and ordeyned amonge them to vndo hym thorowghe pure reason & lawe for cause þe king Edward þe kynges fader traytourly thrugh hym was murdered in the castell of Corf/ as before is layd moore playnly in some parte of this booke/ of

his deche. ¶ And some that were of the kynges counseyll louyd Mortymer, and tolde hym in preuyte how þ the kyng & his counseyll were abowte frome dawe to dawe/hym for to dystrope and vndoo wherfore mortymer was sore anoyed & angry as the deuyll apenst them of the kynges counseyll/ & sayd he wolde of thē be auenged/ how so euer he toke on. ¶ It was not longe afterwarde/ þ kyng Edwarde & dame Phyllyp his wyf/ & dame Isabel þ kynges moder. & syre Rogere Mortimer/ ne went vnto Notyngham there for to sojourne/ And so it befell/ þ quene Isabel thurgh the couleyll of Mortymer/ toke to her þ keyes of þ pates of the castell of Notyngham. so þ no man myghte come nother in ne out/ but thurgh the comaūdemēt of Mortimer/ ne the kyng/ ne none of his couleyll. ¶ And þ tyme it fell/ þ the Mortimer as a deuyll for wrath bolled/ & also for wrathe that he had apenst þ kynges men Edwarde/ & pryncypally apenst theym þ had hym acculyd to þ kyng/ of þ deche of sir Edwarde his fader. ¶ And pryuely a counseyll was take bytwene quene Isabel & the Mortymer/ & the byshop of Lyncoln & syre Symonde of Bedford/ & syre Hugh of Trompyngton/ & other preuy of theyr counseyll/ for to vndoo theym al þ the Mortimer hadde acculyd vnto þ kyng of his faders deche/ of treason and of felonye. ¶ Wherfore all tho that were of the kynges counseyll/ whan they wist of the Mortimers castynge/ pryuely came to kyng Edwarde & sayd/ that Mortymer wolde theym dystrope/ bycause that they hadde hym acculyd of kyng Edwardes deche. his fader/ And prayed hē that he wold mayntene them in theyr ryght/ ¶ And thysle were the lordes that pursued this quarell/ Syre Wyllyam of Mountagu/ syre Wyllyam de Bohun/ syre Wyllyam his broder/ syre Rauf Staforde. syre Robert of Herforde/ syre Wyllyam of Clynton/ syre Johā Neuell of

Hornbyand in any ocher of theyr consent And all thysle swore vpon a booke to mayntene þ quarelle/ in as moche as they myght. And it befell so after. þ syre Wyllyam Mountagu/ ne none of þ kyngs frēdes muste not be herberowed in þ castell for þ Mortimer/ but went & toke theyre herberowe in dyuerse place of þ towne of Notyngham. And tho were they sore a ferde/ leest þ Mortimer sholde theym dystrope. And in hast they came vnto kyng Edwarde syre Wyllyam of Mountagu/ & ocher þ were in þ castell. And pryuely hē tolde/ þ he ne none of his company. sholde not take þ Mortymer. without counseyll & helpe of Wyllyam of Glauce. constable of þ same castell. ¶ Now truely sayd þ kyng I loue you well. & therfore I couleyll you þ ye go to the foilayd constable/ and commaunde hym in my name/ that he be your frende and youre helpe/ for to take the Mortimer/ all thyrge yleft/ vpon peryll of lyl and lymme ¶ Tho sayd Mountagu Syre my lord graunt mercy. ¶ Tho went forth þ foilayd Mountagu/ and came to the Constable of the castell/ & tolde hym þ kyngs wyll. ¶ And he answered & sayd. the kynges wyll sholde be done in as moche as he myghte. and that he wolde notte spare for no manere of deche/ And that he swore and made his othe ¶ Tho sayde syre Wyllyam of Mountagu to the Constable/ in herynge of them all. that were helpynge to the same quarell. Now certes dere frende/ vs behouyth to werke & do by your aduys for to take the Mortymer/ syth that ye be keper of the castell. & hath the keyes in your ward. ¶ Syre sayd the Constable/ wyll ye vnderstonde/ that the castell pates ben lockyd w þ keyes that dame Isabel sente hether. & by nyght she hath the keyes therof: and layeth them vnder þ luesell of the bedde vnto þ morowe. & so ye maye not come into the castell by the pates/ by no manere of wyle/ But I knowe an aleye that



Stretchyth out of the warde vnder the er  
 the into the forsayd castell that gothe in  
 to the west. whiche aleye dame Isabel  
 the quene/ne none of her men ne þ moztimer/  
 ne none of his company knowith it not  
 And so I shall lede you through þ aley/  
 & so ye shall come into þ castell w  
 out alpyenge of ony man þ are your en  
 myes. ¶ And þ same nyght syr wyllyaz  
 Mountagu/& all the lordes of his qua  
 vell/& the same Conestable also wente  
 theym to hors/& made semblaunt as it  
 were for to go oute of Mortimers syght  
 But anone as Mortimer herd thys ty  
 dynges/he wende þ they wolde haue go  
 ne ouer see for fere of hym. ¶ And ano  
 ne ryght he & his company toke a coun  
 seyll amonge theym for to lete theyr pas  
 sage/& sent letters anone to the porters  
 soo þ none of the greate lordes shold go  
 home to theyr owne couñrees. but þf thei  
 were arested & take. And amonge other  
 chynges wyllyam Bland Conestable of  
 the forsayd castell. pryuelly ladde syr wil  
 lyam of Mountagu & his company by þ  
 forsayd waye vnder the erthe. tyll they  
 came into the castell & went vp into the  
 toure there þ Mortimer was in. But sir  
 Hugh of Crompynton theym ascryed  
 hydously:& sayd a traytours it is all for  
 nought. þ ye ben comyn into this castell  
 ye shall depe yet an euill dethe euerichone.  
 And anone one of theym that was in  
 Mountagues companye vp with a ma  
 ce/and smote the same Hughe vpon the  
 heed that the brayne bialte out and fel  
 on the grounde/and soo was he deed of  
 an euill dethe. ¶ Tho toke they Morty  
 mer as he armyd hym at the toures do  
 re/whan he herde the noyle of theym for  
 drede. ¶ And whanne the quene Isabel  
 sawe that the Mortimer was taken she  
 made moche sorowe in herte/and thyle  
 wordes vnto theym she sayd/ Nowe fay  
 re syres/I praye you that ye do no har  
 me too his body a worthy knyghte oure  
 welbeloued frende and oure dere colyn

¶ Tho went they thens/and came and  
 brought Mortimer/& presentyd hym vn  
 to kynge Edwarde/& he comaunded to  
 bynge hym in lauewarde. ¶ But ano  
 ne as they þ were consentynge vnto mor  
 timers doynges/herde tell þ he was take  
 they went & hydde theym/& pryuelly by  
 nyghte went out of þ towne eche one his  
 way/with heuy herte & morninge chere  
 & liued vpon theyr londes as well as thei  
 myghte. ¶ And þ same yere that Mort  
 mer was take.he hadde. ix. score knygh  
 tes without squyers & sergauntes of ar  
 mys/& fote men/And thenne was Mor  
 timer ladde to London/& syr Edmonde  
 of Bedforde was ladde with hym/and  
 was taken to the conestable of þ tour to  
 kepe. ¶ But after warde was þ Morty  
 mers lyf examined at westmestre before  
 the kynge/& before all the greate lordes  
 of Englonde/for peryll that myght fal  
 to the reame/And to enquerè also which  
 were consentynge to sir Edwardes dethe  
 the kynges fader./and also through who  
 me the Scottes escaped fro Stanhope  
 in Scotlonde/without leue of kyng Ed  
 warde. ¶ And also how þ chartre of rag  
 man was delyuered vntoo the Scottes  
 therin the homages and feautees of the  
 lordes of Scotlonde were confeyned/þ  
 the Scottes sholde do euer more too the  
 Engyllthe kynge for the reame of Scot  
 lond/wherfore he was Jugyd to be dra  
 wen and hangyd for his treason/And  
 this myscheyf came vnto hym on saynt  
 Andrewes euen. In the yere of the Incar  
 cyon of our lorde Jhesu crist. M. CCC.  
 xxx.

¶ How kynge Edwarde gate apen  
 vnto hym graciously the homages and  
 feautees of Scotlonde/wherof he was  
 putte oute thrughe falle counseylle of þ  
 quene Isabel his moder/and syr Ro  
 ger Mortimer. that was newly made  
 erle of Marche.

**N**ow haue ye herde how Johane Bayllol in the tyme of peas was cholen to be kynge of Scotlonde for cause that he came of the eldest doughter of the Erle Daupd of Huntynghton/that was kynge Alysanderts broder of Scotlonde/that deyed without heyre of hys body begoten/And how this Johñ made his feaucte & homage to kynge Edwarde/Henryes sone þ thyrde. for his londes of Scotlonde/And how he afterwarde withsayd his homage/thrughe coulepyll of the Scottes/in the yere of our lordes M.C.lxxiiii. & sent vnto þ pope thrughe. a fals suggestyon þ he made his oth vnto þ foilsayd kynge Edward ouer his astate & his wyll/of þ whiche othe þ pope hym allopyed thrughe his bullys to hysylent. ¶ And anone as kynge Edward wyll therof. he ordeyne anone his barōs & came vnto Berewyk/ & conquered the towne/at the whiche conquest there wereslaync. xxv. thosand. & vii. hundred. & Bayllol that was kynge of Scotlonde came and yeldyd hym to gode kynge Edwarde/ & the kynge deluyerd hym out of the tour of London. and all þ grete lordes with hym þ tho were taken at Berewyk & yaued theym laufconduyte/ to go into Scotlonde. And the Scottes lythe thrughe theyr fallnesse/werred vpon the good kynge Edwarde. And whan lre Johñ Bayllol kynge of Scotlonde saw all this/ he went ouer see vnto Dunpier & lyued there vpon his londes as well as he myght. tyll that the Scottes wolde amende theym of theyr myldeoyes & trelpaas/ and ladde with hym lre Edward his sone. wherfore the Scottes in dyspyte of hym callyd hym lre Johñ Turnlabard/ for bycause that he wolde notte offende ne trelpaas apenste the good hysge Edwarde of Englund. And so he forloke his reame of Scotlonde/ and lette therof but lptyll pyce. And this lre Johanne dwelled longe tyme in fraunce/ tyll þ he deyed there & lre Edwarde his

sone recepued his herpylge/ and dyd homage to þ kynge of frauce/ for his londes of Dunpier/ And so it befell afterwarde/ þ Edwarde þ was Johñ Bayllols sone/ hadd w hym a squyre of Englund þ was borne in Porke thyre/ that was callyd Johñ of Barnaby/ & this Edwarde Bayllol louyd hym moche/ and was nyghe hys & full preuy. And so this Johñ of Barnaby was in debate with a frenche man in þ towne of Dāpiet/ & so he slewe hym & went his way in all the haste þ he myght into the castell. for too haue socoure & helpe of his lorde/ And a none came the offycers of the towne. to take Johñ of Barnaby as a felon. and lre Edwarde his lorde holpe hym/ and rescowed hym/ & by nyght made hym go out of the castell/ & so he went his waye and came into Englonde withoute ony harme. ¶ And whan þ kynge of frauce sawe þ lre Edwarde had rescowed hys felon. he became wonder wrothe apenste lre Edwarde. & anone lete hym areltyd & toke into his hondes all his londes/ Tho dwellyd lre Edwarde in pylson/ vnto þ tyme þ lre Henry of Beaumont came into frauce/ þ whiche Henry lout tyme was erle of Anguyllhe in Scotlonde and was put out therof whan thacordement was bytwene Englonde & Scotlonde thrughe þ quene Isabell & lre Roger Mortimer & their cōpany for þ marriage þ she made bytwene Daupd/ that was Roberte Brus sone & dame Johan of Tour kynge Edwards sylster of Englonde/ & well vnderstode this/ that at þ ende he sholde come to his ryght/ but þ if it were lre Edwarde Bayllol/ that was ryghte heyre of the reame of Scotlonde ¶ And the kynge of fraunce lowys louyd moche this lre Henry/ And he was with hym full preuy/ and thought for to make a deluyeraunce of lre Edwarde Bayllol/ yf he myght in ony manere of wyse/ ¶ Tho prayed he the kynge that he wolde of his grace graunte hym lre

Edwarde Bayllols body/vnto the next  
parlement. þ he myght lye with his ow  
nerentes in þ meane tyme/ & þ he myght  
stonde to be Jugyd with his perys at the  
parlement. And þ kynge graūtyd hym  
his prayer/ & made þ forsayd Edwarde  
to be delpyered out of pylson/ in þ mane  
re aboute sayd. & anone as he was out of  
pylson lye Henry toke hym forth with  
hym & ladde hym into Englonde/ & ma  
de hym dwelle pryuelly at the maner of  
Sandhall vpon Dule in yorke shyre. w  
the lady Welcy. And so he ordeyned him  
there an huge retene of Englyshmen  
and also of alyantes/ for too conuere  
apen his herytage/ and so he pauc moche  
lyluer vnto þ souldyours and alyantes  
for to helpe hym/ And they behyght for  
to helpe hym in þ they myghte/ but they  
faylled hym at his moost nede. ¶ And at  
þ tyme Dauid erle of Moryst herde telle  
how that lye Edwarde Bayllol was pri  
uely come in to Englonde. And came to  
hym/ and made with hym greate Joy of  
his comynge & sayd vnto hym & behy  
ght hym/ that all þ greate lordes of En  
glonde/ sholde be to hym entendaūte/ &  
shold hym holde for kynge as ryght hey  
re of Scotlonde/ and dyd to hym feau  
te. ¶ Tho came lye Henry of Beaumō  
te to kynge Edward of Englonde. and  
prayed hym in þ way of charytee/ that  
he wolde graūt of his grace vnto lye ed  
warde Bayllol þ he myghte lausly goo  
by londe from Sandhall/ vnto Scotlō  
de/ to conuere his ryght & herytance in  
scotlonde. ¶ The kynge answerde and  
sayd yf that I suffre Bayllol. go thru  
ghe my londe into Scotlonde. then the  
people wolde lye/ þ I sholde be assent  
ge vnto þ company. ¶ Now lye I praie  
you þ ye wolde yeue hym leue to take w  
hym souldyours of Englyshmen that  
they myght lausly lede hym thurgh your  
londe to Scotlonde/ And lye vpon thys  
couenaunt þ yf it so befall/ as god it for  
bydde that he be dyscomfyted in batayll

thurgh the Scottes/ that I and also all  
the lordes that holde with Bayllol/ ben  
for euer more out of our rentes þ we ha  
ue in Englonde. And there the kynge vp  
pon this couenaunt/ graūtyd theyr bo  
ne/ as to wchynge hym/ & tho that were  
of the same quarell/ the whiche claymed  
for to haue londes and rentes in the rea  
me of Englonde/ And thyle were þ na  
mes of thole lordes that pursued this for  
sayd matere and quarell. ¶ That is to  
saye/ Syre Edwarde Bayllol/ the whi  
che chalengyd the reame of Scotlonde.  
lye Henry Beaumont erle of Angulst  
the lye Dauid of Stroboly erle of athe  
les/ lye Geffray of Hombriay/ walter  
Comyn/ and many other that were put  
out of theyr herytage in scotlonde whan  
the peas was made bytwene Englonde  
and Scotlonde. as before is sayd/ And  
ye shall vnderstonde that thyle lordes to  
ke with theym spue hundred men of ar  
mes. and two thoulande archers and of  
foote men. and tho went into shyppe atte  
Rauenpore/ & sayled by the see/ tyl that  
they came vnto Scotlonde. & came to lō  
de at Kynkehome. xii. myle fro saynt Jo  
hannes towne/ And anone sent out ther  
shyppes agayne/ for that they sholde not  
be hurte/ ne empeyred/ neyther that noo  
man sholde go in to the shyppes agayn  
though that they had nede/ but abyde al  
perylls/ & not flee but stonde/ & rather  
suffre dethe than flee for too mayntene  
theyr true quarell. whan þ erle of fyffe.  
a fyers man & a sterne/ herde þ Bayllol  
was come/ for to take þ londe of scotlō  
de/ he came in hast to Kynkehome/ with  
xii. thoulande Scottes/ for to dystrope  
hym/ that he sholde not come to londe/  
But lye Edwarde Bayllol and his cō  
pany there hym dyscomfyted/ at the whi  
che dyscomfyture lye Alylander Seton  
was there slayne/ and many other. The  
erle of fyffe/ was tho sore and full euyl  
alshampd/ that so lye tyll a company had  
hym dyscomfyted/ and shamefully putt

hym & all his company that were at yue  
 for too flce. ¶ Tho came syr Edwarde  
 Bailloll / & toke the countree all aboute  
 hym. tyll he came vnto the abbay of Dū  
 fermyn. & there he founde vitaylles for  
 hym and for his folke / and amonge all  
 othe thyng he fonde in a chambre abou  
 te fyue hūdered of grete stauces of fyne oke  
 with longe pryckes of yren. and of stele  
 And he toke them and delyuerd them to  
 þ moste strongest men of his companye.  
 And anone after he yede fro thens. and  
 lodged hym in a felde. ii. myles from la  
 ynt Johannes towne. And whan the bur  
 gers of the towne herde how the erle of  
 fyffe was dyscomfytred thurgh the Bayl  
 loll. brake the brydges that they had ma  
 de ouer the water of Erne. so that Bail  
 loll myght not go ouer / wherfore he lod  
 ged hym there all that nyght / but lypyll  
 hede he toke of reste. and sayde vnto his  
 people / Nowe dre lordes ye knowe full  
 well. þ we ben now lodged bytwene our  
 enemyes / and they may vs hampre / there  
 is no bote but deeth. wherfore yf we aby  
 de styll all this nyght. I wene it shal tor  
 ne vs to moche harme. for the power of  
 Scotlonde may euery were and encrece  
 and we may not so do. And we ben but  
 lypyll people as ayenst theym. Wherfore  
 I pray you for the loue of almyghty god  
 make we vs bolde and hardy / and that  
 we may myghtely take the Scottes thil  
 nyghte / and holdy werte vppon theym.  
 and lete vs pursue theyme this nyghte.  
 And yf they be traueylled thourghe vs.  
 and see our hardynesse. othe Scottes þ  
 se them so traueylled and wery: the soer  
 woll they be adradde with vs too syghte  
 and fyrstly thenne shall we syght wyth  
 them. and on them pursue. so that thru  
 ghe the grace of god / all the worlde shal  
 speke of the doughtynes of our chyual  
 ry. ¶ And syres vnderstonde well that  
 alle the companye that came wyth syr  
 Robert Bailloll / graunted well vnto þ  
 counsell / & were therof ryght glad. and

anone pursued vppon the Scottes. that  
 they became wonder wery. And Bailloll  
 & his company sore folowd them / & dy  
 de them moche harme & sorowe / thurgh  
 the r assente. so that they myght not for  
 feblynesse them helpe / and for lypyll peo  
 ple. ¶ But tho sayd the Scottes among  
 ge them / what is now befall that so lyp  
 tyll a people as Bailloll hath in wyng  
 dooth vs so moche traueyll and sorowe /  
 Now certes it lemyth vs that he werkeþ  
 by grace / for he is wonder gracypous in  
 his quarell and we certes shall be dede  
 or that we may come to him. vs for too  
 yelde. lypth that his fader set of vs no pri  
 ce. ¶ And among al othe thynges Bail  
 loll and his people passed the water of  
 Erne so that Robert Swynerton the so  
 ne was fyers and angrye / & went forth  
 and they sawe people of armes full wel  
 atayed. and forth they went vnto them  
 and with them faught. and slewe & toke  
 as many as wolde abyde: And netheles  
 at that assaute they wende it had be the  
 grete hoste of Scotlonde. And whan it  
 came to the morow. they gadred theym  
 togyder / & restyd theym a whyle. ¶ And  
 whyle þ Englyshmen rested. the þ no  
 ble baron Thomas Welcy / & þ noble ba  
 ron / Stafforde / pryckyd their hors vpp  
 & downe by þ hylles / for to kepe þ estrees  
 of þ couēte / And as they pryckyd vpp  
 & doune. thei sawe a grete hoste of gode ara  
 ye ordeyned in theyr wynges / whelmes  
 & sheldes thynnyng / compynge vpon thē  
 And thenne came tho two barons ayen  
 vnto Bayllolls folk / & sayd. Nowe for þ  
 loue of god almyghty be of gode cōforth  
 for ye shall haue batayll anone ryghte /  
 ¶ And tho spake syr fouk the lone of  
 Garenne. a baron of greate renowne &  
 of dedys of armys / Syres vnderstonde  
 what I wyl saye / I haue seen many dy  
 uers wynges / as well amonge sarrasins  
 and Jewes / as amonge the Scottes / &  
 yet saw I neuer the fourthe parte of the  
 wynges syght. & therfore yf ye wyl abyde

our ennyses/ we ben ynough for the. But  
 yf we be not of gode herte and of gode  
 courage we ben but lost. And therfor for  
 the loue of god. take to vs gode herte/ &  
 lete vs be holde/ & thynke we neuer of  
 our wyues ne of our chylde/ but onli to  
 conquere our ennyses in batayll. & thru  
 ghe þ helpe of our lord we shall the ouer  
 come. And with þ came þ host of þ Scot  
 tes towarde theym full serely/ & apenste  
 syr Edward Bayllol in thre batayles  
 well araped in armoure. ¶ And wonder  
 fersly they came towarde the Bayllos  
 company. But whan syr Donald Erle  
 of Marcell that was with the Scottes/  
 sawe all this/ he sayd vnto Robert Br<sup>r</sup>  
 the lone of Robert the Brus thyle wor  
 des/ Syre Roberte sayd he/ fulle lore me  
 forthynkth atte my herte/ that thyle pe  
 ple that Bayllol haþe broughþe wþ  
 hym sholde depe wþ dynt of Scottes  
 swerdes/ syth that they ben crysten men  
 as we ben. And therfore me thynkth þ  
 it were grete charyte/ for to sende vn  
 to theym/ for to yelde theym / vnto oure  
 mercy/ and raunsonne theym vnto gre  
 uous raunsonne/ for as moche as they  
 haue taken our londes & done yll. Now  
 certes sayd syr Robert þ Brus/ I haue  
 well percepued/ that thou arte an enny  
 and a traytour vnto Scotlonde/ syth þ  
 thou wylte consent to saue our dedeli en  
 nyses/ þ haue done vs moche sorow & cha  
 me/ & now it semyth well þ þe be of ther  
 assent. Nowe certes Robert sayd syr do  
 nald/ falsly þe lye. I am not of theyr cō  
 pany ne of theyr consent/ & þ halþly þe  
 shall se/ for I wyl fyzte wþ them rather  
 than ony of this cōpany/ and certes syre  
 Robert sayd he I chal in maugre of thy  
 hede assayll theym or þ. And with þ thei  
 pryched theyr stedys fersly vpon Gal  
 kemore/ and their wynges theym folowed  
 on a venge. And tho came they & mette  
 with Bayllol and his company atte an  
 hangynge bough of the moore in a strai  
 te passage. and so faste they halþd the

vnto the Englyshmen that thousand  
 felle vnto the grounde echone ouer vpon  
 other into an hepe bathe hors and mar  
 Bayllol and his men myghtlye stode  
 apenste theym/ and faste slewe the Scot  
 tes too the grounde/ and many they sore  
 wounded/ so longe/ tyll that they stode  
 vpon theym/ and forned theym wþ  
 theyr swerdes and speres thughe theyr  
 bodys/ and full sore they were trauayl  
 led vpon theym/ tyll that they became  
 wonder wery/ and wylte notte what for  
 to doo/ And the Scottes that were lefte  
 alyue/ fledde awaye/ for to saue theym/  
 selfe in the best manere that they myght  
 And thoo pursued theym syr Edward  
 Bayllol and his men/ & slewe of theym  
 tyll it was nyghte. And froo thens they  
 wente too saynt Johannes towne/ and  
 toke it/ & helde the there/ & vitayllled the  
 self at ther owne wyl/ for thei founde yn  
 ough where w to make mercy. Tho ma  
 de Bayllol his men þ were woüded go  
 to ship/ to sayll into englode/ to hele ther  
 woüdes. & in þ tyme there was a flēmit  
 ge in þ see. a stronge theyf. & a robber þ  
 was callyd crab. & this flēmyge was dri  
 uen out of flaüdes for his wickidnesse  
 & therfore he came into scotlode. to holde  
 w þ Scottes/ and dyd as moche harme to  
 the Englyshmen as he myghte doo/  
 And this Crabbe mette Bayllois men  
 in þ see þ were woüded before in batayll  
 þ were sent apen into Englode. for to he  
 le their woüdes. and this crabbe paaf to  
 theym a grete assawte. & wold haue sla  
 yne theym euerychone. But the Englysh  
 men defended them well & manli and  
 discomfyted Crabbe and his companye  
 & tho gan he fle into Scotlonde. ¶ And  
 as he came towarde saynt Johannes tow  
 ne/ he founde a grete company of Scot  
 tes/ þ were come apen togyder after the  
 dyscomfyture at Galkemore. þ whiche by  
 seyged Bayllol and his men in þ same  
 towne of saynt John. And anone tol  
 de the Scottes how that he was discom  
 fyt

ftyed of the Englyshmen / & were wou  
 dyd at Galkemore / that went towarde  
 Englonde / for to heele theyr woundes /  
 And sayd to the Scottes / & they sholde  
 haue nother power ne myghte ne grace  
 apenst Edwarde Bayllol / by cause that  
 he scomfyted / & empeyred all & chualti  
 of Scotlonde with a handfull of men as  
 to compte apenst & Scottes & were slay  
 ne. wherfore he counseilled to remeue the  
 sege from saynt Johannes towne / and  
 hepe theym in & best manere that they  
 myght. ¶ The Scottes vnderstode that  
 Erab layd lothe / forloke the sege & wēt  
 thens by nyght. ¶ Whan this thyng was  
 knowe thugh Scotlonde how that the  
 lordes & knyghtes were dyscomfyted at  
 Galkemore of Scotlonde thugh syre  
 Edwarde Bayllol / ye shall vnderstode  
 & the lordes & ladyes / & ygentyls of Scot  
 londe came wonder faste to saynt Johā  
 nes towne / & yeldyd theym vnto Bayl  
 lol. & to hym dyd homage & feautee for  
 theyr londes & yelde theym to his peas  
 & he theym receyued frely / And fro thēs  
 he went to the abbaye of Stone. & there  
 he was crowned kynge of Scotlonde / &  
 after he lete crye his peas thughe oute /  
 all the londe. ¶ And at that same tyme  
 it befell that kynge Edwarde helde his  
 parlemente amonge his lyege atte the  
 newe castell vpon Tyne / for to amende  
 the trespaces and the wronges / that had  
 ben done in his londe. And syre Edwar  
 de Bayllol kynge of Scotlonde came  
 to hym thither / and dyd to hym homa  
 ge and feautee / for the reame of Scot  
 londe. And in this manere kyng Edwar  
 de of Englonde gadred ayen his homa  
 ges and feautees of Scotlonde / where  
 of he was put out / thugh counseyll and  
 assent of dame Flabell his moder / and  
 of syre Roge Mortimer erle of Marche /  
 Tho toke Bayllol kynge of Scotlonde  
 his leue of kynge Edwarde of Englon  
 de / & went thens into his owne londe of  
 Scotlonde & sette but lypyll by luche as

had counseilled hym / and holpen hym  
 in his quarell / wherfore they went from  
 hym / & went & lyued by theyr owne lon  
 des and tentes in Scotlonde. ¶ And so it  
 befell afterwarde not longe / & the kynge  
 of Scotlonde ne remeued & came to the  
 toure of Anande & there toke his dwel  
 lyng / and thyder came to hym a compa  
 ny of knyghtes. Stronge men & worthy /  
 & yelded them vnto the kynge. And bare  
 theym so fayre in dede and in couētaū  
 ce / so that he trustyd moche vpon theym  
 And anone as the traytours sawe / that  
 he trustyd moche vpon theym / they or  
 deynd amonge theym fyfty in a com  
 pany / and wolde haue slayne theyr lord  
 the kynge / But thragh the grace of al  
 myghty god / he brake thugh a wall an  
 hole in his chambre / & as god wolde sca  
 pyd theyr trechery / & all his men were  
 slayne / & he escaped with moche drede  
 vnto the towne of Cardoyll / And there  
 he helde hym sore anoyed. And this be  
 fell vpon our ladyes euen the concepyō  
 ¶ Tho sent kynge Edwarde Bayllol  
 to kynge Edwarde of Englonde / howe  
 falsly & traytoursly he was in lypyll ty  
 me / put to shame and sorowe thugh his  
 lyege men / vpon whome he trustyd won  
 der moche. & prayed hym for the loue of  
 god & he wolde mayntene hē & helpe hē  
 ayenst his ennies. The kynge of Englō  
 had of hym grete pyte / & behyghē to hel  
 pe hym & socour hym. And sent hē wor  
 de / & he sholde holde hym in peas styl in  
 & forsayd cyte of Cardoyll / tyll & he had  
 gadred his powere. ¶ Thoo ordeyned  
 kynge Edwarde of Englonde a coun  
 seyll at Lond on / and lete gadre his men  
 in dyuers shyres of Englonde. & whan  
 he was all redy / he went toward & tow  
 of Berwyk vppon Twede / and theder  
 came to hym kynge Edwarde Bayllol  
 of Scotlonde with his powere / & beleged  
 & towne / And made without the towne  
 a fayre towne of pauplyons / and diche  
 theym all abowte / so that they had noo

drede of the Scottes/and made manye  
 allawte with gonnes and with other en  
 gynnes to þ town. wherwith they dyl/  
 troped many fayr houses/ & churches al  
 so were beten downe to þ erthe w grete  
 stoncs/ þ spytoullly came out of gonnes  
 & other engynes. And netheles þ Scottes  
 kept ryght well þ town/ þ tho two kin  
 ges myght not come therin longe tyme  
 And netheles þ kynges abade there soo  
 long/ tyll tho þ were within þ town fai  
 led vntaylles & also they were so wery of  
 wakynge. þ they wyfte not what for to  
 doo. ¶ And ye shall vnderstonde þ tho  
 Scottes that were within the town of  
 Berwyk/ thrughe comyn counseyll and  
 theyr assent/ lete crye vpon the walles of  
 the town/ that they myghte haue peas  
 of the Englyshmen & therof they pra  
 yed the kyng of his grace & mercy/ And  
 prayed hym of trewes for viii. dayes. vp  
 pon this couenaunt. þ yf they were nott  
 relcowed in that lyde of þ town to war  
 de Scotlonde of þ Scottes within: viii  
 dayes/ that they wolde yelde theym vnto  
 the kyng/ & the town also/ And to hol  
 de this couenaüt/ they prouffred too the  
 kyng. xii. hostages out of the town of  
 Berwyk. ¶ Whan þ hostages were dely  
 uerde vnto þ kyng/ anone tho of þ tow  
 ne sent vnto þ Scottes/ & tolde theym of  
 theyr sorow and myscheyf/ And þ Scot  
 tes tho came pryuerly ouer the water of  
 Tweede to þ bought of þ abbaye. & syre  
 Wyllyam Dyket þ was tho Steward  
 of Scotlonde. and many other that cam  
 with hym/ put theym there in grete  
 peryll of themself at that tyme & of ther  
 lyfe/ for they came ouer a brydge þ was  
 to broke and the stonys awaye/ & many  
 of theyr company were there drowned/  
 But the forsayd wyllyam went ouer/ &  
 other of his company/ and came by the  
 thypes of Englonde/ & llewe in a bar  
 ge of Hull. xvi. men. and after they went  
 into the town of Berwyk by the water  
 lyde/ wherfore the Scottes helde tho the

towne relcowed/ and alkyd theyr hosta  
 ges ayen of the kyng of Englonde/ &  
 the kyng leute theym worde ayen that  
 they axyd theyr hostages with wronge  
 lyth þ they came into þ town of En  
 glonde lyde/ for couenaüt was bytwene  
 theym/ þ the town shold be relcowed by  
 þ halfe of Scotlonde/ & anone tho com  
 maüded kyng Edward to yelde the  
 town/ or he wolde haue þ hostages and  
 the Scottes layd þ town was relcowed  
 well prouge & therto the wolde theym  
 holde/ whan kyng Edward sawe the  
 Scottes bieke theyr couenaütes þ they  
 made/ he was wonder wrothe/ and ano  
 ne lete syr Thomas. fyrst wyllyam and  
 syr Alyxander of feson warden of Ber  
 wyk the whiche Thomas was persone  
 of Dunbarre. & lete them be take fyrste  
 afore that otheyr hostages/ for cause þ  
 syr Alyxanders fader was keper of the  
 town. ¶ And tho commaüded euerye  
 daye two hostages of the town/ tyll þ  
 they were all doo to deeth. but yf they pel  
 ded the town/ & so he sholde teche them  
 for to bieke theyr couenaütes. And whā  
 they of þ town herde thise tidyngs they  
 became wonder loy & lent to þ kyng þ  
 he wold graüt thē other viii. dayes of rel  
 pite. so þ bytwene two hūdre men of ar  
 mys & .xx. mē of armes. myght by strēthe  
 go bytwene thē to þ town of Berwyk  
 theym for to vntaylle/ þ þ town muste  
 be holde for relcowed. And yf so were þ  
 xxi. or. xxli. or more were slayne of thoo  
 two hūdre before layd. þ þ town shol  
 de not be holde for relcowed. And this co  
 uenaüt to be hold. they sent to hym other  
 xii. of the forsayd town in hostage/ the  
 kyng of Englonde grauntyd theym  
 theyr prayer/ & toke the hostages: on sa  
 ynt margarets eue. in þ yere of grace. M  
 CCC. xxxii. the Scottes came spherlye  
 well arayed in foure wynges/ for to me  
 te. kyng Edward of Englonde. & Ed  
 warde the kyng of Scotlonde/ wyth

ther power / and came faste and sharply  
ayenst euenlonge tyme / And the same ty  
me was flood at Berwyk in the water  
of Tweede / þ no man myght go ouer on  
his hors / nor on fote / & the water was bi  
twene tho two kynges and the reame of  
Englonde. And þ tyme abode the scottz  
in þ other syde for cause þ the Englysh  
shmen shold haue be drowned.

¶ This was the arape of the Scottes /  
how that they came in batayll ayenst þ  
two kynges of Englonde and of Scot  
londe. In the vaunt warde of Scotlonz  
de were thyle lordes.

**T**herle of Morp / Jamys frysell  
Symond frysell / walter Stew  
arde. Reynolde Cheyn. Patryk of Gre  
ham. Johñ le graūt. Jamys of Lordoil  
Patryk Parheys. Robert Caldecottes  
Phyllyp of Melledrū / Thomz Gylbert  
Rauf wyleman. Adam gurdon / Jamis  
Gramat. Robert Boid. Hugh Park. W  
xl. knyghtz newe dubbyd. & vi. C. mē of ar  
mes. & iii. M. of compyns / In þ fyrst par  
te of schalfe batayll were thyle lordes / þ  
Steward of Scotlonde / þ erle of Morp  
Jamys his vnclē / wyllyā Douglas Da  
uyd of Lyndeley. Marcolpn flemynge /  
wyllyam of Keth. Dūken Canbok with  
xxx. bachelers newe dubbyd. ¶ In the se  
conde parte of þ batayll were thyle lor  
des. Jamis Steward of Lorden. Alein  
Steward / wyllyam Abbrehin / wyllyā  
Morps / Jamys fytz wyllyam. Adam le  
mole. walter fytz. Gylbert. Johñ of cer  
leton. Robert wallam. W. vii. C. men of  
armes / & xvii. M. compyns. ¶ In þ thirde  
parte of þ batayll of Scotlonde were thi  
le lordes. The erle of Mores. the erle of  
Ruf. therle of Strabern. þ erle of Soth  
erlond. wyllyam of Kyrkkelay. Johñ cā  
bron / Gylbert of Hey / Wyllyam ram  
ley / wyllyam Prendegest. Kyrtton Har  
de / Wyllyam Gurde / Arnolde Garde  
Thomas Dolphyn / with. xl. knyghtes

newe dubbyd. ix. C. men of armys. & xv  
M. of compyns. ¶ In the fourth warde of  
þ batayll of Scotlonde were thyle lordz  
Archbalde Douglas / þ erle of Leneuar  
Alylander le Brus. þ erle of fyff. Johñ  
Canbell erle of Atheles. Roberte Lawe  
ther. wyllyam of Hppount / wyllyam of  
Lonskō. Johñ de Labels / Croos de She  
renlaw / Johñ de Lyndeley Alylander de  
Gray. Ingram de Dmfreulle. patryk  
de Poleworthe / Dauyd de wymes. My  
chell Scot. wyllyam Landy / Thomas  
de Boys. Roger Mortimer / W. xx. bach  
lers newe dubbyd. ix. C. men of armys /  
xviii. M. & iii. C. of compyns. The Erle  
of Dunbar keper of þ castell of Bere  
wyk. halpe the Scottes with. l. men of  
armys. ¶ And syr Alylander of Ceton  
keper of þ forlaid towne of Berewyk  
with an. C. men of armys. And also the  
compyns of the towne with. iiii. C. men  
of armys / and with. viii. C. of fote men  
¶ The sōme of therles & lordes aboue  
sayd / amounteth. lxxvi. ¶ The sōme of  
bachelers newe dubbyd amounteth to an  
C. lx. ¶ The sōme of men of armys a  
mounteth. iiii. M. C. ¶ The sōme of the  
compyns amounteth liii. M. & iii. C. ¶ The  
sōme totalle of the people abouelayd a  
mounteth. lxxv. M. vii. C. lxx. And thyle  
lx. & vi. greate lordes / adde all the other  
greate lordes abouelayd. in foure batayll  
les / as it is tolde befoen all on fote. and  
kyng Edwarde of Englonde / and Ed  
warde Baylloall kyng of Scotlonde /  
hadde well appareylded theyre folke in  
foure bataylles / for too fyght on fote a  
yenst the Scottes theyr enemyes. ¶ And  
the Englysh mystrrels blewe theyr trū  
pets and theyr clarpons / and hydously  
ascryed the Scottes. And tho had euery  
Englysh batayll two wynges of pice  
archers. The which at that batayll shot  
arowes so fast & so sore: that þ Scottes  
myght not helpe themself. And thei smō  
te the Scottes thoulandes vnto he grou  
de. And they began for to flee fro the en



glysshmen for too saue theyr lynes. And whane the Scottes knaues saw þ̄ scomfytur & the Scottes fall falte to þ̄ groude/they pryckyd fast theyr maysters horse with þ̄ spors for to hepe them from peryll/ & sette theyr maysters at no force. And whan thenglysshmen sawe þ̄ they lept on theyr horses/ & faste pursued the Scottes/ & all that abode they slewe downe ryghte. ¶ There men myghte see the doughtynesse of þ̄ noble kynge Edward & of his men/ how manly they pursued þ̄ Scottes/ þ̄ flow for drede. And the men myghte see many a Scottysshman caste downe vnto þ̄ groude/ & the baners displayed hackyd into peces/ & many a gode haberyoyne of stele in þ̄ blode bath. And many a tyme þ̄ Scottes were gathered into companyes/ but euer more they were dyscomfyted. ¶ And so it befell as god almyghty wolde. that the Scottes had that daye nomore foyson ne myghte ayenst the Englysshmen than. xx. shepe amonge. v. bulues. And so were þ̄ Scottes dyscomfyted/ & yet the Scottes was wel v. men ayenst one Englysshman: And þ̄ batayll was done on Halidoune hylle byde þ̄ towne of Berwyk. atte þ̄ whiche batayll were slayne of the Scottes. xxxv. thousande/ &. vii. hundred and. xii. And of þ̄ Englysshmen. but only. xiii. And thys vyctory befell too the Englysshmen on saynt Margaretes euen þ̄ holy vyrgyn & martyr in the yere of oure lord Ihesu Crist. M. CCC. xxxii. ¶ And while this doynge lastyd the Englyssh pages toke the pyltre of the Scottes that were slayne/ euery man that he myghte take: with out ony chalengynge of. ony man. And so after this gracypous vyctory. the kynge comyd hym agayne vnto the same tyege of Berwyk. ¶ And whanne they besyged sawe and herde howe kynge Edward hadde spedde/ they yelded to him the towne with the castell/ on þ̄ morow after saynt Margaretes daye. ¶ And thenne the kynge dydde ordeyne syr Ed-

warde Bayllo/ with othere noble and worshipfull men/ too be keepers and gouernours of all Scotlonde in his absence. And hymselfe turned ayen and came into Englonde after this vyctorye/ with moche Joy and also worshipp and in the nexte yere folowynge after/ that is for to saye in the yere of the Incarnacyon of oure lord Ihesu Crist. M. CCC. xxxiii. And of kynge Edward. vii. he wente ayen into Scotlonde/ in wynter tyme. Atte the whiche vyage the castell of hylbrigge in Scotlonde/ for hym and for his men that were with hym he recouered and hadde ayenst the Scottes. alle atte his owne luste. ¶ And in that same yere. syre Edward Bayllo kynge of Scotlonde/ helde his parlement in Scotlonde with many noble lordes of Englonde that were atte that same parlement/ bycause of theyr lordes and also lordshypps that they had in the reame of Scotlonde. ¶ And helde alle of the same Bayllo. ¶ And in the. viii. yere of his regne/ abowte the feest of saynt Johan Baptist syr Edward Bayllo the veri and true kynge of Scotlonde/ as by herytage & ryghte lynes/ made his homage & feaute vnto kynge Edward of Englonde for þ̄ reame of Scotlonde at new castell vpon Tyne. in þ̄ presence of many a worthy man and also of comyns bothe of the reame of Englonde/ and also of Scotlonde. ¶ And anone after in the same yere kynge Edward of Englonde/ receyued of the duke of Brytayne his homage/ for the erldom and lordshyp of Rychemonde. And so folowynge in the. ix. yere of his regne after Wyghelmas rode into Scotlonde/ and there was faste by saynt Johannes towne almoste all the wynter tyme/ And soo he helde his Cristemas atte the castell of Rokelburgh. ¶ And in the same yere thurgh out all Englonde/ abowte saynt Clementys tyde in wynter / ¶ There arose

suche a spryngynge and wellynge vpon waters/and also flodes/bothe of the see & alsoo of the freshe ryuers and sprynges/that the see bankes/walles and coltes/brake vpon/that mennys bestes and housys in many places and namely in lowe countrees/violently and sodaynly were drowned/& fruytes dryuen awaye of the erthe/through contynuaunce and abundaunce of waters of the see/euer more afterwarde were turned into more salt nesse and sourenesse of sauoure. ¶ The x. yere of kynge Edwardes regne.kynge Edwarde entred the Scottes see after Mydsomer.And to many of the Scottes he paue batayll/and ouercame them and many he treatyd and bowed vntoo his peas/thrughe his doughtynesse and hardynesse. ¶ And after the feest of saint Myghell/then next folowynge was the erle of Moray had & taken at Edenburgh and brought into Englonde and put into prylon. ¶ And in the monethes of June and Julii than next folowynge in the.xi.yere of his regne was seen and appyered in þe fyrment a benedictre the whiche clerkes calle stella Cometa and that sterre was seen in dyuers partes of þe fyrment/ ¶ Where after anon there folowed in Englonde gode chepe and wonder greate plente of all chafare bytaylles and marchaundysse/and there ayenst hunger scarlyte mylcheyf & nede of money. ¶ In soo moche that a quartre of whete atte London was solde for two shellynge/and a good fatte oxe at a noble/and fyue gode douues byrdes for a peny/In whiche yere deyed sir Johñ of Elham erle of Cornewayle that was kynge Edwardes brother and lye the atte westmestre.

¶ How kynge Edwarde made a duchie of the erldom of Cornewayle and alsoo of lyxe othere erles that were newe made/and of the fyrste chalenge of the kyngedome of fraunce.

**I**n the yere of our lorde a thousande.CCC.xxxvii.and of kynge Edwarde.xii.in the moneth of Marche durynge the parlement at westmestre in leste tyme kynge Edwarde made of the erldome of Cornewayle a duchye & lete it calle the duchye of Cornewayle/þe whiche duchye he gaf vnto Edward his firste sone with the erldome of Chestre.and also kynge Edwarde made at that same tyme lyxe other erles/that is for too saye syr Henry the erle of Lancastres sone/erle of Leycestre/wylliam of Boghū erle of Northampton/wylliam of Montagu/erle of Salysbury/Hugh of Audell erle of Gloucestre/Robert of Hfforde erle of Southfolke/And wylliam of Clyton erle of Huntyngeton. ¶ And in that same yere it was ordeyned in the same parlement that no man sholde were no clothe that was wrought out of Englonde/as clothe of golde ne of sylke or veluet or damaske or latyn baudkyn ne none suche other ne none wylde ware ne fures of beyonde the see.But suche as myght speude an hondred ponde of reete by yere. But this ordynaunce and statute was but of lypyll effect/for it was no thynge holden. ¶ In the xiii.yere of his regne kynge Edwarde went ouer see in to Braban with quene Philipp his wyf there berynge a chyldre at Andwerpe there he dwellyd more than a yere for to treate with the duke of Braban and other alyed vnto hym of the chalengynge of the kyngdome of fraunce.to kynge Edwarde of Englonde by ryght and by herytage after the dethe of Karoll the greate kynge of fraunce brother Germayne of quene Isabell kynge Edwardes moder/the whiche was holden and occupied vnyghthfull by Phylpp of Waloys the emes sone of kynge Karoll/þe whiche duke and all his in the forsayd thynge & all other longynge there to wiche all his men and goodes kynge Edwarde founde redy vnto hym and made & behygh

hym succre by good fayth & truste/and after þ the kynge hasted hym ayen into Englonde & left there the quene styll be hynde hym in Braban. Than in þ. xiiii yere of his regne whan all þ lordes of his reame and other that oughten to be at his parlemēt were called & assembled togyder in þ same parlement holden at London after þ fcest of saynt hylarye/ The kynges nedes were put forth & promothed as touchyng þ kyngdō of fraūce. for whiche nedes to be spedde þ kynge axed þ fyfte parte of all the meuable goodes of Englonde & þ wulles & þ. ix. sheep of euery come/ And all þ lordes of euery towne where suche thynges shold betaryd & gadryd sholde answer too the kynge therof/ & had it and held it at his owne lust & wyll. wherfore yt sholde knowleche the very trouthe. the ynnert loue of þ people was tomed in too hate/ & the comyn prayers into cursyng/ for cause that the comune people were so strongly greued. ¶ Also the forsayd Phylpp Dalops of frauce had gadred vnto him a greate holte & destroyed in his parties & kyngdom many of the kynges fren/ des of Englonde wih townes & castels many other of theyr lordshyppes & many harmes shamys & dystytes dōd vnto the quene/ wherfore kyng Edward whā he herde this tydynges strongly meued therwith and an angred. & sente dyuers letters ouer see to the quene & to other þ were his frendes. gladyng the. n. certefienge them that he wolde be there hym/ self in all the hast þ he myghte. ¶ And anone after Ester whan he had sped of all thynges þ hym neded to haue/ he wēt ouer see ayen. Of whole comynge þ quene & all his frendes were wonder gladd and made moche Joy And all that were his ennyes and helde apenst hym made as moche sorowe. ¶ In the same tyme the kynge thurgh counseyll of his trewe lyegees and counseyll of his lordes that there were present w hym write the kyn

ge of fraunces name/ & toke & medled the kynges armes of fraunce quartered wih tharmes of Englonde/ & cōmaunded forth w his copen of gold vnder dis crypcon & writyng of þ name of En/ glonde & of fraūce to be made beste that myghte bee/ & þ is too saye þ floreyne þ was callyd þ nobell pryce of. vi. shell yge vii. pens sterlyng/ & þ halfe nobell þ value. iii. shell yng & iii. pens/ & þ farthin ges the value of. xx. pens.

¶ How kynge Edward come vnto the scluys and dyscomfyted all the powere of fraunce in the hauen.

¶ And in the next yere after that is to saye the. xv. yere of his regne he commaūded & lete wryte in his chartres wryttes and other letters the date of the regne of fraunce the fyrst. And why le that he was thus doynge and trauayl yng in fraunce thurgh his counseyll he wrote to all the prelates dukes erles & barons and the noble lordes of the countre/ and also too dyuerse of the comune people dyuers letters and maūd mentes beryng date at Gandaue the. viii. dape of february. And anone after wih in a lytll tyme he came ayen into England wih the quene & her chyldren. ¶ And in the same yere on mydsomer euen he began to saylle towarde fraunce ayen/ & manly & fyrstly he fell vpon Phylpp of Dalops the whiche longe tyme laye and had gadryd to hy a full lōge & boystous meny of dyuers nacpons in þ hauen of Scluys/ and there they foughten togy/ der þ kyng of fraūce & he w their hostes fro myddape to thre of þ clocke in the moine/ in the which batayll were slayne xxx. thoulande men of the kynges company of fraunce/ and many shyppes and cogges were taken. And so thurgh gods helpe he had there þ vyctorye. & bere thens a glorypous chyualrye/ ¶ And in the same yere abowte saynt James tye

de without the pates of saynt Omersrobert of Arthoys with men of Englonde & flaudres faught apenst the duke of Burgon & the frenshmen / at whiche batayll were slayne & take of y frenshmen .xv. barons & .lxxx. knyghts / & shypes & barges were take vnto y nombre of .L. & .xxx. ¶ The lame yere y kynge makynge & abydynge vpon the lege of tornay y erle of Henaude w Englysh the archers made assaute vnto y towne of saynt Amande where they slewe .l. knyghtes & many other & also destroyed the towne. ¶ And in y .xvi. yere of his regne folowynge in y wynter tyme the kynge dwelled styll vpon the foilsayd leyge & sent of tyme into Englonde vnto his trelozer & other purueyours for golde and moneye y sholde be sente vnto hym there in his nede / but his proctours & messyngers curledly & full slouly serued hy at his nede & deceyued hym / on whoos defaute & latches the kynge toke trewes bytwene hym & the kynge of fraunce / And then kynge Edward full of thame and sorowe in his hert withdrew hy fro the lege & come into Brytayne & there was so grete stryue of batayll y he lost many of his people. And wha he had done there that he come for he dressyd hy ouer see into Englonde warde. ¶ And as he saylled towarde Englonde in the hygh see the moost myshappes stormes and tempestes thondre and lychtynge felle to hym in the see / the whiche was sayd that it was done and araplyd thurgh the euyll spyrytees made by sojcery and nygromancye of the of fraunce / wherfore the kynges herte was full of sorowe / & anguillhe well yge & syghynge & layd vnto our lady in this wyle. ¶ O blessed lady saynt Mary what is y cause y euer more goynge into fraunce all thynges & wethers fallen to me Joyfull & lykynge & as I wolde haue them / but alway fornyng into Englonde warde all thyngs fallen vnprofytable and very harmful

neuertheles he scapyd all perylles of the see as god wolde / & came to the tour of London by nyght. ¶ And the same yere the kynge helde his Crystmas at Meneves & sent worde to the Scottes by hys messyngers y he was redy and wolde do fyghte with theym / but the Scottes wolde not abyde y but fledde ouer the Scottes le & hyd them as well as they might. ¶ And in y .xvii. yere of his regne about the feest of the Couerlyon of saynt poull kynge Edward whan he hadde ben in Scotlonde & sawe y the Scottes were fledde tho he come apen into Englonde. ¶ And a ytell before lent was the turnement at Dunstable / to the whiche turnement come all the ponge bachelary and chualry of Englonde with many other erles and lordes. Atte the whiche turnement kynge Edward hymself was there present. ¶ And the next yere folowynge in the .xviii. yere of his regne atte his parlement holden at westmynster the auzeme of Palke kynge Edward y thirde made Edward his fyrste lone prynce of walys. ¶ And in the .xix. yere of his regne anone after in Janpuer before lete the same kynge Edward let make full noble Justes & grete feestes in the place of his byrthe at Wyndesore y there was neuer none suchelcen ther afore. At whiche feest & ryalte were two kynges and two quenes y prynce of walys / the duke of Cornewayle .x. Erles .ix. Countesses barons and many burgeys the whyche myght not lyghtly be nombred / and of dyuerse londes beyonde the see were many straungers. And atte the same tyme whan y Justes were done. kynge Edward made a grete souper in y whiche he ordered & began his roude table & ordered & stedfasted the dape of the rounde table to be holden there at Wyndesore in y Wyllone weke euer more yere. And in this tyme Englyshmen so moche haunted and cleuyd to the woodnes & foly of the straungers / y from tyme of comyn

ge of Henaudees. xviii. yere passed they ordeyned & chaunged theym euery yere dyuerse shappes & dylguylyng of clothe of longe large and wyde clothes destitute & dyserte frome all olde honest & gode vlage. And an other tyme shorte clothes & strait wastyd dagged & kyt & on euery syde clafered & botomed with sleues & tapytis of surcotes & hodes ouer longe & ouermoch hangyng / þy f the sothe shall laye they were more lyke toozmentours & deupls in theyr clothyng & thopyng & other araye than to men & the wymen more nyceley yet passed þy me in araye and curpoulllyer / for they were soo strait clothed þ they lete hange fore tayles sewed byneth within ther clothes for to fele and hyde theyr arles / the why the dylguylynges & pryde parauenture / afterwarde brought forth & caused many mysshappes & myscheyf in þy rcame of Englonde. ¶ The. xx. yere of kyngge Edward he went ouer into Brytayne & Galcoyne. in whos cōpany wente the erle of warwyk / þy erle of Suffolke. the erle of Huntynghton & the erle of Arundell / & many other lordes & comune people in a greate multytude with a greate Nauye of. CC. & xl. shyppes / anone after mysdomer for to auenge hym of many wronges & harmes too hym done by Philyp of Valoys kyngge of fraunce apenste the trewes before honde graūtyd / the whiche trewes he falsly & vntrewely by cauelacōns loled & disquatte.

¶ Howc kyngge Edwarde saylled intoo Normandye and arryued at Hogges w a greate hoste.

**I**n þy. xxi. yere of his regne kyngge Edward thurgh coulepyll of all þy grete lordes of Englonde callyd & gadryd togider in his parlemēt at westmestre before Ester ordeyned hym for too passe ouer þy see agayne for to diseale & distroble the rebelles of fraunce. & whan hys

Nauye was come togyder & made redy he went with a greate host þy. xii. day of Julii. & saylled into Normandye and arryued at hogges. ¶ And whan he hadde rested hym there / vi. dayes for by cause of trauaylyng of the see and for to haue out all his men with all theyr necessaryes out of theyr shyppes / he went toward Cadomun brennyng wastpyng and delstroyng all the townes that he founde in his waye. ¶ And the. xxvi. daye of July at the brydge of Cadony manly and nobly strengthed and defended with normans he had there a stronge batayll & a longe duryng / thurgh whiche a grete multytude of peoble were slayne / And there were taken of prysoners the erle of Fwe / the lorde of Tankeruyll / and an hundred of other knyghtes and men of armes / and. vi. hondred of footmen nobred and the towne and the subbarbes / vnto the bare walle / and of all chynges that they myght bere & caryen out was robbyd & dylpoyled. After þy kyngge passed forth by þy cōtre about þy brede of. xx. myle he wastyd all manere chyngge that he founde. whan Philyp of Valoys perceyued this / all though he were faste by hym with a stronge host / yet he wold not come nygh hym but breke all the brydges beyonde þy water of Seyn fro Royn too Parys / & hymself fledde vnto þy lame cyte of Parys with all þy host þ he myght. ¶ Forsothe the noble kyngge Edward whan he come to Parys brydge & found it broken / within two dayes he lete make it agayne / And in the morowe after þy Assumpcyon of our lady kyngge Edwarde passed ouer the water of Seyn goynge towarde Treley and dystroyed by the waye townes with the people dwellyng therein / And in the feste of Saynt Bartholomewe he passed ouer the water of some vn hurt w all his host there as neuer before honde ony manere wayne passage. where two thousand were slayne of them þ letted theyre passage ouer

¶ Therefore the .xxvi. daye of Auguste / kynge Edwarde in felde fast by Crescy haupnge thre batayls of Englyshmen encountred & mette w<sup>th</sup> Philyp of Dalops haupnge w<sup>th</sup> hym .iiii. batayls of whiche y<sup>e</sup> leest passed grete y<sup>e</sup> nombre of Englishe people. And whan these two hostes mette togyder / there fell vpon hym the kynge of Beme / y<sup>e</sup> duke of Loreyn. & erles also of flaunders / Dalaunson / Bloys / Harecourt / Aumarle & Neours / & many other erles barons lordes & knyghts and men of armes y<sup>e</sup> nombre of a .M. v. C. xlii. w<sup>th</sup> out footmen & other men armed that were no thynge reckened. And for all this y<sup>e</sup> vnglorious Philyp withdrewe hym w<sup>th</sup> the resydue of his people. wherfore it was sayd in comune amonge his owne people. Ne rebeall soy retireyt. h<sup>is</sup> to save oure sayre withdraweth hym. ¶ Than kynge Edward & our Englyshmen thā ked almyghty god for suche a vycory after theyr greate labour taken to theym all thynge nedefull to theyr sustynauce / & sauyng of theyr lyues / & for drede of theyr enmyes rested them there. And ful erly in y<sup>e</sup> mornynge after y<sup>e</sup> frenshmen w<sup>th</sup> a grete passynge hoste come ayen for to gyue batayll & fyght w<sup>th</sup> y<sup>e</sup> Englyshmen / w<sup>th</sup> whome mette & encountred the erle of warwyk Northampton & Northfolke w<sup>th</sup> theyr company & slewe two thousande & toke many prysoners of the gentyls of thē. And y<sup>e</sup> remenaūt of y<sup>e</sup> same host fled thre myle thens. And y<sup>e</sup> thirde daye after y<sup>e</sup> batayll y<sup>e</sup> kynge went to Calays ward destropenge all y<sup>e</sup> townes as he rode thyder / whan y<sup>e</sup> he was comē h<sup>is</sup> to save y<sup>e</sup> thyrde daye of Septēbre he began to belege y<sup>e</sup> towne w<sup>th</sup> y<sup>e</sup> castell & cōtynued his sege fro y<sup>e</sup> forlapyd thyrde day of Septēbre to the thyrde daye of August y<sup>e</sup> next yere after. And in y<sup>e</sup> same yere durynge y<sup>e</sup> syege of Calays y<sup>e</sup> kyng of Scotlande w<sup>th</sup> a greate multytude of scottys came into Englonde to Neuples crosse / aboute saynt Lucas daye y<sup>e</sup> Euangelyst

hopynge and trustynge for to haue found all y<sup>e</sup> londe voyde of people for as moche as the kynge of Englonde was beyōde the see / lauf only prestes and men of holy chyrche and women & chylde / & plowmen & suche other labourers / & there they come & robbyd & dyd moche prey up sorowe. But yet founde they ynough that theym withstode by the grace of almyghty god / And so a daye of bataylle was assygned bytwene theym & certayn lordes & men of holy chyrche y<sup>e</sup> were of that countre w<sup>th</sup> other comune people faste by the cyte of Duresme. atte which daye thugh the grace and helpe of god almyghty the scottes were ouercomen & yet were there thre tymes so many of thē as of Englyshmen. And there was slayne all the chyualrye and knyghthode of the reame of Scotlande. And ther was taken as they wolde haue fledde thens Dauid the kynge of Scotlande hymself & the erle of mentyf syr wyllyam Douglas and many other greate men of Scotlande. ¶ And after that our Englyshmen whan they had rested theym a few dayes and hadde ordeyned theyr kepers of the north cōtree. they came to London and brought w<sup>th</sup> them syre Dauid y<sup>e</sup> kynge of Scotlande and all the other lordes that were taken prysoners vnto y<sup>e</sup> toure of London w<sup>th</sup> all the haste that they myghte. and left them there in lauf keepynge vnto the kynges comynge and went home ayen into theyr owne cōtree And afterwarde was the kynges ransom of Scotlande taxed too an hondred thousande marke of syluer too be payed w<sup>th</sup> in .x. yere. that is to save euery yere. x. thousande marke.

¶ How kynge Edwarde besyged Calays and how it was wonne and yolden vnto hym.

**I**n the .xxi. yere of kynge Edwardes regne he wente ouer the see in

the wynter tyme and laye all the wynter at the syege of Calays/the whiche yere while the syege lasted & endured Phylipp the kyng of fraunce caste & purposed traytoureously & with fraude to put awaye the syege & came þ. xxvii. daye of Julij in þ same yere with a greate host and a stronge power & neyghed to þ legc of Calays. The whiche Phylip þ last daye of Julij. sent to þ kyng Edwarde wordes þ he wolde gyue hym playne batayll the thyrdē daye after þ about euenlonge tyme yf he durste come fro the syege & abide. And whan kyng Edwarde herde þ withoute ony longe tarpengc or longe ayment accept gladly þ daye & houre of batayll þ Phylip had assygned. And whan þ kyng of fraunce herde þ the next nyght after he set his tentys a fyre & remeued & wente his waye thens cowardely. Then they þ were in þ towne & in the castell besyged sawe all this that they had none other helpe ne locour of þ kyng of fraunce ne of his men. And also þ theyr vytayls within the werelended & wastyd & for faute of vytayls & of refresshyng they eten horses houndes cattes and myle for to kepe theyr trowth as longe as they myghte. And whan they sawe and was founde amonge them at the last that they had no thyng among them for to ete ne lyue by ne no locoure ne relcoue of the frenshmen/of þ other syde they wylt well þ they muste nedes depe for defaute or els yelde þ towne/& anone they went & toke downe þ baners & the armes of fraunce on euery syde þ were hangen out & went on the walles of þ forsayd towne on dyuerse places as naked as euer they were borne sauf only theyr shertes & theyr preyv clothes/& helde theyr swerdes naked & the poynte donwarde in theyr hondes/& putten ropes & halters about ther neckes & yelded by the keyes of þ towne & of the castell to kyng Edwarde of Englonde wyth greate fere & drede of theyr lyues & gods

and drede of herte/And whan kyng Edwarde sawe all this as a mercyable kyng and lord receyued them to grace/& a fewe of þ gretttest pyloners of estate & of gouernaunce of þ towne he sent into Englonde there for to abyde theyr raiison and the kynges grace. And all the commynalte of the towne the kyng lete goo wheder they wolde in peas and without ony harme/and lete them bere with them all theyr thynges that they myght bere and carye awaye/kepyng the towne and the castell to hymselfe. Thenne thurgh meditacyon of Cardynales that were sent frome the pope/trewes was take there bytwene fraunce and Englonde for. ix. monethes than next folowynge And about Myghelmas kyng Edwarde come ayen into Englonde with a glourious vyctory. ¶ And in the. xxiii. yere of his regne. in the Best partyes of þ world there arose and began a pestylence & dethe of Saralyns and paynyms that to greate a dethe was neuer herde of afore/and that wasted awaye the people so that vnneth the tenth persone was lefte alpye. ¶ And the same yere abowte the southe countrees and also in the west countrees there fell so moche raynie and so grete waters þ from Crystmas to mid somer there was vnnethes noo daye ne nyght but þ it rayned somewhat/thurgh whiche waters þ pestylence was so encreased & so habūdante in all countrees:& namely acout þ court of Rome.& other places & see costes þ vnneth there were lefte lyuyng folke for to burye theym þ were dede honestly. But made greate dyches & pyttis þ were wonder biode & depe and therein buryed the/& made a renge of dede bodyes & caste a lptell erthe to fele the aboue/& than caste in a nother renge of bede bodyes/and an other renge aboue theym/and thus were they buryed & none other wyle/but yf it were so that they were men of greate estate soo that they were buryed as honestly as they myght.

¶ And after all this in the .xxiii. yere of kynge Edwardes regne it was done by to wete & vnderstande of a treason that was begon at Calays & ordeyned for to sell þe towne for a greate somme of florens vnto kynge Phylip of fraunce thurgh þe fallnesse & ordynaunce of a knight that was called Syr Geffrey of Cherney was wonder preuy with kynge Phylip of fraunce. And whan kynge Edwarde herde this he toke w<sup>th</sup> hym þe noblest & getyllest lordes & many otheer worthymen of armes þe were there presente w<sup>th</sup> hym for the solempnyte of þe hygh fest. And well & wisely in all þe hast þe he myghte / & as pryuely as he myght he went ouer se to warde Calays. And þe same yere þe gode kynge Edwarde helde his Crystmas at Hauerynge. & þe more after newe yeres dawe þe kynge was in þe castell of Calais with his men of armes that none of the alpens wist therof. And that fals conspiratour & traytoure Geffrey of Cherney syth that he myght not openly haue his purpose of the castell, pryuely and selyly he come in & held þe towne w<sup>th</sup> a grete host. And whan he w<sup>th</sup> his men were comen in / he payed þe forladyd some of florens as couenaunt was to a Geneweye in the towne that was keper of þe castell and contentynge to the same Geffreye in all his fallnesse and trechorpe & bounden the Englysh mynstrels and seruantes that were in the castell þe they myght not helpe themselfe ne lette the of theyr purpos. And than wenyng þe they had ben sure ynough / thenne they spoken all theyr wyckednesse and fallnesse openly on hygh that all men myght here. And now shall ye here how they were deceyued / for they came in by a pryuy posterne ouer a lytyll brydge of tree / & whan they were comen in subtlyly & pryuely þe brydge was drawen vp and kept that none of the that came in myght go out ne no mo myght come to the / & anone oure Englyshmen went out at preuy holes &

wyndowes & ouer þe walles of the towne & of the castell & wente & faught manly with þe frenshmen þe were w<sup>th</sup> out & had the better of the / þe whiche whan they were occupped by the self on theyr syde / the kynge þe was w<sup>th</sup> in þe towne haupng scarcely but .xxx. men of armes drew out his swerde & with a loude voyce he cryed on hygh. O laynt Edwarde. A laynt George. And whan þe people herde þe / they come rennyng to hym & gaaf there to the prenymes so greate assaute þe there were mo than two hondred men of armes & many mo otheer slayne and many fledde away. And so by þe grace of god almighty the vycory fell vnto the Englyshmen. Thenne the kynge toke with him this Geffrey þe was synder of this trechorp / and also many otheer frensh pryncers / and thenne within a whyle after he come agayne into Englonde. and in this same yere and in the yere afore and alloo in the yere nexte folowynge was so greate a pestylence of men frome the east in to the weste and namely thourughe botches / that thoo that lykened / as on this dawe deped on the thyrd dawe after / to the whiche men that so deped in this pestylence hadde but lytell respyte of lyggynge. ¶ The pope Clemente of his goodnesse and grace gaaf theym fulle remysyon and forgyuenesse of all theyr synnes that they were shryuen of / and this pestylence lasted in London fro Myghelmas vnto August. next folowynge almoost an hole yere. ¶ And these dawes was dethe withoute sorowe / weddynges without frendshyp / wylfull penaunce / and derth without charlyte. & fleynge without refute or locour. for many fledde frome place to place bycause of þe pestylence / but they were enfecte & myght not escape the dethe / after that the prophete Iay sayth / who that fleeth fro the face of drede he shall falle into the dyche / And he that wyndethe hym oute of the dyche he shall be holden and tyed with a



grenne/but whanne this pestylence was celled as god wolde/vnneches the tenth parte of y people was left on lyue. And in the same yere began a wonder thynge that all þe euer were borne after þe pestylence hadde two cheketeþ in theyr heed lasse than they hadde afore.

**H**ow kynge Edward hadde a greate batayll with Spanyarde in these fast by wynchellee.

**A**nd in the .xxx. yere of his regne about saynt Johñs dape in harvest in þe see fast by wynchellee kynge Edward hadde a greate bataylle with men of Spayne where þe theyr shyppes and nauye laye chayne togyder/þe other they muste fyght or be drenched. & soo whan all our worthy men of armes & of þe coltes fast by wynchellee & romeny were gathered togyder / & our nauye & shypps al redy to þe warre / þe Englyshmen mette manly & strongly with theyr enemyes comynge fyrstly ayenst them. ¶ And whā the Spayns vessels & nauye were closed all about / there men myghte see stronge batayll on both sydes & longe duryng in þe whiche batayll was but fewe þe slaught but they were pytously hurte. And after þe batayll there were .xxiii. shyppes taken & so þe Englyshmen had þe better. And in þe next yere folowynge of his regne. þe is to saye þe .xxvi. yere þe kynge thurgh his counseyll let ordeyne & make his new money þe is to saye þe peny þe grote value of .iiii. pens & the half grote of .ii. pens. but it was of lesse weyght than þe olde sterlynge was be. v. shellynge in þe pounde. ¶ And in þe .xxvii. yere of his regne was the greate derth of vytayls þe which was called þe dere somer. And the .xxviii. yere of his regne in þe parlement holden atte westmestre after Ester. lxx Henry erle of Lancastre was made duke of Lancastre & in this yere was so greate a drought þe frome the monethe of Marche to þe Mo

nethe of Jupll there fell no rayn on thet the/wherfore all fruytes sedes & herbes/for the moost parte were losse in defauct wherfore come so greate dysleale of men & beestes & derthe of vytayls in Englonde þe this londe þe euer afore had ben pleteuous had nede þe tyme to seke vytayls and refresshyng at other out ples & countres. And the .xxix. yere of kynge Edward it was accorded graunted and sworne bytwene þe kynge of fraunce & kynge Edward of Englonde þe he sholde haue a pen all his londs & lordshyppes þe longed to þe duchye of Guyen of olde tyme / þe whiche had ben wdrawen & wrongfully occupied by dyuerse kyngs of fraunce before honde to haue & to holde to kynge Edward & to his heyres & successours for euer more. frely pealybly & in goode quyetē vpon this couenaunt þe the kyng of Englonde sholde leue of & releasen all his ryght & clayme that he had claymed of þe kyngdom of fraunce & of þe tyle þe he toke therof / vpon whiche speche and couenautes it was sent to þe court of Rome on bothe sydes of þe kynges. that the forsayd couenaunt shold be enbulled. but god ordeyned better for the kynges worshipp of Englonde. for what thurgh fraude & dyscepte of the frenschmen & what thurgh the lettynge of the pope and of the courte of Rome the forsayd couenautes were dysquate and left of. ¶ And in the same yere the kynge reuoked by his wyse and dyscrete counseyll / the staple of wulles out of flaundes into Englonde wyth all the lybertees fraunches. and fre customes that longed therto and ordeyned it in Englonde in dyuerse places / þe is for to saye at westmystre / Caunterbury. Chychestre. Brystowe. Lyncoln. and Hulle with all the forsayd thynge that longen therto. And þe thys thynge that sholde thus be done the kynge swore hymself therto / & prynce Edward his sone with other many grete wyttulles þe there were presente. ¶ And the .xxx. yere of

his regne anone after wytlontpde in the parlemeute ordeyned at westmenstre it was tolde & certefyed to þ kyng þ Phylyp þ helde þ kyngdome of fraunce was deed. and þ John his sone was crowned kyng. and þ this John had gyuen karroll his sone þ duchye of Guyen. of þ whiche thynge kyng Edward whan he wyll therof/ he had greute Indygnacōn vnto hym & was wonder wrothe & strōgly meued. And therefore afore all þ worlthy lordes þ there were assembled at that parlement/ callyd Edward his sone vnto hym/ to whome þ duchye of Guyen by ryght herytage sholde longe to/ & gaf ic hym there byddynge and strenthynge hym/ þ he sholde ordeyne hym for to defende hym & auenge hþ vpon his enemyes & laue & mayntene his ryght. And afterwarde kyng Edward hymselfe/ & his eldest sone Edward went to dyuers places & sayntes in Englonde on pilgrimage for too haue þ more helpe & grace of god and of his sayntes. And.ii.kal of Jupll: whan all thynge was redy to that vyage & batayll & all his retenue & power assembled & his nauye also redy he toke with hym þ erle of warwyk þ erle of Suffolk þ erle of Salebury & the erle of Oxford & a thousand men of armes & as many archers/ and in the Natyuite of our lady/ toke theyr shyppes at plūmouthe & began to sayll. And whan he come & was arryued in Guyon/ he was there worshyppfully aken & receyued of þ moost noblest men & lordes of that countree. ¶ And anone after kyng Edward toke with hym his two sones. that is to saye. Syr Lyonell erle of Dilton and sir John his brocher erle of Rychemonde & Syr Henry duke of Lancastre with many erles and lordes and men of armes & two thousand archers & saylled towarde fraunce & rested hym a whyle at Calays & after þ kyng went with his hoste aforlaid & with other souldpours of beyonde þ see þ there abode þ kyngs comf

ge the seconde daye of Nouembre & toke his Journey toward kyng John of fraunce there as he crowed too haue founde hym fast by Odomar as his letters and couenaūt made mencyon þ he wolde abyde hym there with his host. And whā kyng John of fraunce herde telle of the kynges comynge of Englonde/ he went awaye with his men & carpage toward ly & Chamfully fleyng & waltynge all vntayls þ Englyshmen sholde not haue therof. ¶ And whan kyng Edward/ herde telle þ he fledde he pursued hym wth all his hoste tyll henede/ & than he beholdynge þ scarlyte and wantynge of vntayls & also þ towardyle of þ kyng of fraunce he turned apen waltynge all the countree. ¶ And whyle all thyle thynge were a doynge/ þ Scotts piuely and by nyghte. toke þ towne of Berwyk fleyng theym þ withstode theym & no man els. but blesyd be god þ castell was saued & kept by Englyshmen that were therein whan the kyng perceyued all this/ he turned apen into Englonde as wrothe as he myghte be/ wherfore in the parlement at westmynster was grauntyd to the kyng of euery lacke of wulle. i. shilling durynge the terme of. vi. yere that he myghte myghtlyer fyght and defende the reame ayenst the Scottes and othere myldoers. And so whan all thynge were redy the kyng hastid hym towarde the Iyege.

¶ How kyng Edward was crowned kyng of Scotlonde/ and howe prynce Edward toke the kyng of fraunce & Syr Phyllyp his yonger sone at þ batayll of Pepters.

**A**ND in the. xxxi. yere of his regne the. xiii. daye of Januarye the kyng beyng in the castell of Berwyke with a fewe men/ but he haupnge. there faste by a grete host. The towne was yolden vnto hym without ony ma

ner defence or dyfficulte. Than the kin-  
ge of Scotlande that is for to save sir Jo-  
hanne Bapoll considerynge how that  
god dyd many meruaples & gracypous  
thynges for kynge Edwarde at his ow-  
ne wyll fro dape to dape/ he toke & gaaf  
by þe reame of Scotlande & þe crowne of  
Scotlande at Rokelburgh in þe kynges  
hondes of Englode vnder his patent let-  
ter there made. ¶ And anone after kyn-  
ge Edwarde in presence of all þe prelatz  
& other worthy men & lordes þe were the-  
re lette hym crowne kynge of Scotlande  
And whan all thynges were done & or-  
dred in þe countrees at his wyll/ he to-  
red apen into Englonde w a grete wor-  
shyp. ¶ And whyle this byage was in do-  
ynge in Scotlande/ syr Edwarde prynce  
of wales as a man enlpyred in god was  
in Guyhen in þe cyte of Burdeux treaty-  
ge & spekyng of the chalenge & of the  
kynges ryght of Englonde þe he had to  
the reame of fraunce/ & þe he wolde be a-  
uenged with stronge honde/ & the prela-  
tes peres & myghy men of þe countree con-  
lented well to hym. Than syr Edwarde  
the prynce with a greate hoste gadred to  
hym the. vi. dape of Juyll wente frome  
Burdeux goynge & traueplynge by ma-  
ny dyuerse countrees/ & he toke many pry-  
soners mo than. vi. thousand men of ar-  
mes by the countree as he went & toke þe  
towne of Remozantyn in Saloygne &  
besyged the castell. vi. dapes. And at the  
vi. dapes ende they polde the castell vnto  
hym/ & there was taken þe florde of crow-  
ne & sir Burlygand & many other kny-  
ghes and men of armes moo than. lxxx.  
And fro thens by Tozen & Deten faste  
by Chyneney his noble men þe were with  
hym had a stronge batayll with frenche  
men/ & an hundred of theyr men of armes  
were slayne. & þe erle of Daunce & the stew-  
arde of fraunce were taken with an hon-  
dred men of armes. In þe whiche yere þe  
xix. dape of Septebrie fast by Peyters the  
lame prynce with a thousande &. ix. hon-

dred men of armes and archers ordeined  
a batayll to kynge Johñ of fraunce co-  
mynge to the pryce warde with. vii. M.  
cholen men of armes & moche other peo-  
ple a greate nombre/ of the whiche were  
slayne the duke of Burbon & the duke  
of Athenes & many other noble men & of  
þe prynces men of armes a. M. & of other  
the trewe accompte & rekenynge. viii. C.  
And there the kynge of fraunce was ta-  
ken & syr Philyp his yonger sone & ma-  
ny dukes & noble men & worthy knygh-  
tes & men of armes aboute two. M. and  
so the byctory fell there to the prynce/ &  
to the people of Englonde by the grace  
of god. And many that were taken pry-  
soners were lette at theyr raunson and  
vpon theyr trowth and knyghthode were  
charged and hadde leue to go. But the  
prynce toke with hym the kynge of fra-  
unce and Philyp his sone with all the re-  
uerence that he myghte and went apen  
to Burdeux with a glourous byctory/ þe  
somme of the men that there were take  
prysoners and of theym that were slayn  
the dape of batayll. liii. M. liii. C. xl. and  
in the. xxxii. yere of kynge Edwarde the  
v. dape of May prynce Edwarde wyth  
kynge Johñ of fraunce and Philyp his  
sone and many other worthy prysoners  
arpyued gracypously in þe hauē of Plūmou-  
the/ & the. xxiiii. dape of þe same moneth  
aboute thre after none they came to Lō-  
don by London byrdege & so went forthe  
to the kynges palays at westmynstre/ &  
there came soo greate a multytude and  
presse of people abowte theym to behold  
and see that wonder and ryall syghte þe  
vnnethes fro mydday tyll nyght myght  
they not come to westmyster. And þe kyn-  
ges raunson of fraunce was tared & set  
to thre myllpons of scutes/ of whom two  
sholde be worth a nobell. And ye shal vn-  
derstande that a myllpon is a thousande/  
de thousande/ and after some men his  
raunson was set at thre thousande thou-  
sande flozeyns and all is one effect. and

this same yere were made Justs solempne in Smytfeelde beyng present the kinge of Englonde/þ kyng of fraunce/ & the kyng of Scotlonde/ & many other worthy & noble lordes/ ¶ The .xxxiij. yere of his regne þ same kyng Edward at wyndelore as well for loue of knyght hode as for his owne worthyp & atreuerence of þ kyng of fraunce & of other lordes þ were there at þ tyme/ he helde a wonder ryall & costly feest of saynt George passyng ouy þ euer was holden afore. wherfore þ kyng of fraunce in scornynge sayd þ he sawe neuer ne herde suche a solempne festes ne ryalties holden ne done with taylles withoute payenge of golde or syluer. ¶ And in þ .xxxiij. yere of his regne the .xiiij. kal of Julij syre John erle of Rychemond kyng Edwardes sone wedded dame Blaunche duke Henryes doughter of Lancastre colyn to the same John by dyspencyon of þ pope And in the meane tyme were ordeyned Justes at London thre dayes of rogatyons/ þ is for to save þ Mayer of Londō with his .xxiiij. aldermen ayenst all that wolde come in whos name & stede the kyng pryuelly with his four sones Edward/ Lyonell/ John & Edmonde and other .xix. greate lordes helden the felde. with worthyp. ¶ And this same yere as it was tolde and sayd of theym that saw it there come blood oute of the tombe of Thomas somtyme erle of Lancastre as fresh as that daye that he was done to dethe. ¶ And in the same yere kyng Edward chole his sepulture and his lyggynge at westmestre fast by þ shyp of saynt Edward: And anone after þ .xxvi. daye of Octobrie. he went ouer see to Calays makynge protestacōn þ he wolde neuer come ayen into Englōde tyll he had full ended the warre bytwene fraunce & hym. ¶ And so in þ .xxvi. yere of his regne in the wynter tyme kyng Edward was and trauaylled in the Ryne costes And abowte saynt Hyllarye tyde he de-

parted his hoste and wente to Bourgonwarde/ with whome than met pealpyly the duke of Bourgon behyghtynge him lxx. thoulante floreyens that he shold spare his men & his people/ & þ kyng graūtyd at his requeste. & dwelled there vnto the .xvii. daye of Marche/ the whiche tyme come to kynges Edwardes ere that stronge theues were on the see vnder the erle of saynt Poule the .xv. daye of Marche lyggynge a wayte vpon þ townes of Hallyng Rye and other places & vylages on the see cost hadden entred ascruyes into the towne of wynchelle/ and slewe all that euer withstode them and with sayd theyr comynge. wherfore the kyng was gretly mewed and wratched and he toined ayen toward Parys: and comaunded his hoste to dystrope & sle all with strength of swerde that he had before hond spared. And þ .xii. daye of april the kyng come to Parys & there departed his host in dyuers batayls with .iiii. C. knyghtes newe dubbyd on þ one syde of h̄. And syr Henry Duke of Lancastre vnder peas & trewes went vnto þ yates of þ cyte proferynge to th̄ þ wolde abyde a batayll in þ felde vnder suche cōdytion þ yf þ kyng of Englōde were ouercomen there/ as god forbed it shold/ þ th̄ he sholde neuer chalenge þ kyngdom of fraunce. And there he had of theym but short & scomfull answer & came & tolde it to þ kyng & his lordes what he hadde herde & what they sayd/ And then went forth þ newe knyghtes w̄ many othere makynge assawte to þ cyte & they dystroyed þ subbarbes of þ cyte. And while all these th̄ges were doynge þ Englyshm̄e made th̄ redy for to be auenged vpon the shame and dyspyte that was done þ yere at wynchelle and ordeyned a nauye of .lxxx. shyppes of men of London and of other marchauntes and .xiiij. thoulante men of armes and archers and went and serched and skūmed þ see & manly token and helde the ple of Laux. wher-

fore the frenshmen that is for to save  
 the abbot of Cluyn the erle of Tanker  
 upll & Butlygaude þ tho was stewarde  
 of frauce with many other men of the  
 same coultre by þ cōmune assent of þ loz  
 de Charles þ two was regent of frauce  
 they hastyd thē & went to þ kyng of En  
 glonde askynge & belechyng hyn sted  
 faste peas & everlastynge vpon certayne  
 condicions þ there were shewed wryten/  
 The whiche whan þ kyng & his coun  
 seyll had seen it/it pleased hyn neuer a  
 deale. but syth it wolde be none other wy  
 se þ tyme of better accorde & delyberacy  
 on/þ frenshmen besely & with greate  
 instaūce asked trewes for þ lee costes. & þ  
 kyng graūtyd thē. ¶ And in þ morow  
 after þ vtas of Pasche the kyng turned  
 hyn w his holte towarde Dilyaūce del  
 troyenge & wastynge all þ coultre by the  
 way. And as they went thederward ther  
 felle vpon them luche a storme & tēpest  
 that none of our nacyon neuer herde ne  
 sawe none luche. thrugh þ whiche thou  
 landes of our mē & theyr hoiles in their  
 Journey as it were thrugh vengeaunce  
 lodeynly were slayne & perpyshed. þ why  
 che tempests were full grete yet fered not  
 þ kyng ne moche of his people but they  
 went forth in theyr vyage þ they had be  
 gone/wherfore aboute þ fest of Philyp  
 and Jacob in May fast by in Carnocū  
 the forsayd lordes of fraunce metynge  
 there with the kyng of Englonde a pe  
 tyble accorde & a fynall vpon certayne  
 condicōs & graūtes artycularly gadred  
 & wryten togyder euermore for too laste  
 dyscretly made & to both þ kynges prof  
 fyttable & to both theyr reames of one as  
 sent of Charles þ regent & gouerneur  
 of frauce & of Parys of þ same reame  
 wryten & made vnder date of carnocū  
 the .xv. dape of May. they offred & prof  
 fered to þ kyng of Englonde requyryn  
 ge his grace in all thynges wryten that  
 he wolde benyngly admit thē & hold thē  
 ferme & stable to thē & to ther heyres for

euermore thens forth/the whiche thyngs  
 and articles whan kyng Edward had  
 seen thē he graūtyd them so þ both pars  
 tyes sholde be sworne on goddes body/&  
 on þ Euangelyst þ the forsayd couena  
 unte sholde be stablyshe & so they accoi  
 ded gracypouly. Therfor were oidepned  
 & dressed on euery syde two barons two  
 bāronetts & two knyghtes to admitte &  
 receyue þ othes of þ lozde Charles regēt  
 of frauce & of syr Edward þ fyrste so  
 ne & heyre of kynges Edward of En  
 glond. And þ .x. dape of May there was  
 longen a solempne masse at Parys. and  
 after þ thyrð Agn<sup>o</sup> dei layd W dona no  
 bis pacem / in presence of þ forsayd mē  
 that were oidepned to Admitte and res  
 ceyue the othes and of all other þ there  
 myght be. So Charles layd his ryghte  
 honde on the patent with goddes bodye  
 and his left honde on the myssall & said  
 We. M. I. weren on goddes bodye & þ holy  
 gospels þ we shal trewly & stedfastly hol  
 de towarde vs þ peas & þ accorde made  
 bytwene þ two kynges/& in no maner to  
 do þ contrary. & there among all his lor  
 des for more loue & strenthe of witnesse  
 he dealed & departed þ relyques of þ cro  
 wne of Croyt to þ knyghtes of Englon  
 de/& they token curtyously theyr leue/&  
 þ fryday next þ same othe in presence of  
 þ forsayd knyghts & of other worthi mē  
 prynce Edward made at Louers. After  
 warde both kynges & theyr sones & the  
 moost noble men of bothe reames. W in  
 the same yere made the same othe & for  
 to strength all thele thyngs afore layd þ  
 kyng of Englōde aryd þ grettest men  
 of frauce. & had his askyge þ is to save  
 vi. dukes. viii. erles & .xii. lordes all noble  
 barons & good knyghts. And whan the  
 place and tyme was allygned in whiche  
 both kynges w theyr coulepyll shold conti  
 togyder. all þ forsayd thynges bytwene  
 them spoken for to releyse & make ferme  
 and stable/the kyng of England a  
 none wete to warde the see and at houē

flet began to saylle leupnge to his hostes that were lefte behynde hym by cause of his absence made moche heynes and after the .xix. daye of Maye he came into Englonde and wente to his palays atte Westmynster of saynt Dunstons daye and the thyrde daye after he vslyted Johan kynge of fraunce that was in the toure of London and delyuerde hym frely frome all maner of pylson /lauf fyrst they were accorded of thre myllions of florepns for his raunlome /and the kynge comfortyd hym & cheryd hym in all places with all solace and myrthes that longen to a kynge in his goynge homeward. ¶ And the .ix. daye of Julii in the same yere this same Johā kynge of fraunce that afore laye here in hostage wente home ayen / into his owne londe too treat of tho thynge and other that longed & fallen to the gouernaunce of hys reame. ¶ And afterwarde mette & came togyder at Calays bothe two kynges w̄ bothe theyr counseyll abowte all halowen tyde. and there were shewed ſ̄ condycions & the poyntes of ſ̄ peas & of the accorde of bothe lydes wrytten / & there without ony withsayenge of bothe lydes graciously they were accorded. And there was done & longen a solempne masse and after the thyrd Agn<sup>o</sup> dei / vpon goddes body and also vpon the masse boke both the kynges and theyr lones and the gretteste lordes of bothe reames and of theyr counseyll that there were presente and had nott sworne before the forlaid othe that they had made and tyted bytwene theym they behyghten to kepe / & all other couenautes ſ̄ were bytwene the ordeyned. ¶ And in this same yere men beeites trees & houles with sodayne tempeste and stronge lyghtnyng were perpylhed / and the deuyll apperyd bodely in mānes lyknes to moche people as they went in dyuers places in the countrees / and spake to theym in that lyknes.

¶ How the greate company arose in fraunce / & the white cōpany in Lombardy / and of other meruaylles.

**R**ynge Edward in the .xxxvi. yere of his regne anone after crystenmasse in the feste of the conuersyon of saynt poule helde his parlemente atte westmestre / in ſ̄ whiche parlement was put forth and shewed the accorde and ſ̄ treates that was stablyshed and made bytwene the two kynges whiche accorde pleased to moche people. and therefore bi the kynges cōmaūdemēt / there were gathered and come togyder in westmynster chirche the fyrste londaye of lent. that is to saye ſ̄ .ii. kal<sup>o</sup> of february. the forlaid Englyshmen & frenshmen where was longe a solempne masse of the Trynyte of the Archbysshop of Caüterbury maister Symonde Ilepe. And whan Agn<sup>o</sup> dei was done the kynge beyng there w̄ his lones / and also the kynges lones of fraunce. and other noble and grete lordes / with candell lyght & crosses brought forth / all that were callyd therto / that were nott sworne afore swore that same othe that was wrytten vpon goddes body and on the masse booke in this wyse / we. N. and N. sweren vpon goddes body and on the holy gospels stedfastly for to holde and kepe towarde vs the peas & the accorde made bytwene the two kynnes and neuer for to do the contrary / & whan they hadde thus sworne they toke theyr scrowes that theyr othes were cōprehended into the notaryes. And this same yere in the Alccençons euen aboute myddaye / was seen the clyples of the sonne / And there folowed suche a drougght / that for defaute of rayne there was greate biennynge of corne fruyte & hey / ¶ And in the same monethe the .vi. kal<sup>o</sup> of June there fell a languyne rayne almoste lyke blode at Burgon. & a languine crosse from morne vnto pyrmc apctid and was seen at Boloyne in the heyre ſ̄

whiche many men lawe/ & after it me/  
ued and felle in the myddes of the see.  
¶ And in the same tyme in fraunce and  
Englonde & many other londes as they  
that were in playne countrees and deser-  
te/ baren witnesse sodeynly there appey-  
ryd two castels/ of the whiche went oute  
two hooftes of armed men. And that o-  
ne hooft was clofed in whyte and that  
other in blacke. and whan batayll bytwe-  
ne theym was begonne/ & whyte ouerca-  
me the blacke/ & anone after the blacke  
toke herte to theym/ & ouercome & white  
& after & they went ayen in to theyr cal-  
tels/ & than the castels & all & hooft va-  
nyshed away. ¶ And in this same yere  
was a greate & an huge pestylence of  
people & namely of men/ whos wyues as  
women out of gouernaunce toke hulbon-  
des as well straungers as other lewde &  
symple people. & whiche forgetyng the  
honoure & worship coupled and maryed  
theym with them that were of lowe de-  
gre and lytell reputacyon. ¶ In this sa-  
me yere deyed Henry duke of Lancastre  
¶ And also in this same yere Edward  
prynce of walys wedded the countesse of  
Kent that was lyre Thomas wyfe of  
Holonde the whiche was departed somti-  
me and deuorced fro the erle of Salysbu-  
ry for cause of the same knyght ¶ And  
about this tyme began & rose a grete cō-  
pany of dyuerse nacyons gadred togider  
of whome theyr leders & gouernours we-  
re Englyshe people/ & they were called  
a people without ony hede the whyche  
dyd moche harme in the partye of fraū-  
ce. ¶ And not alonge after there arose  
an other company of dyuerse nacyons. &  
was called & white cōpany/ the which in  
& partyes & countrees of Lombardy did  
moche sorowe. ¶ This same yere lyre  
John of Gaunt the sone of kynge Ed-  
warde the thyrde was made duke of Lan-  
castre by reason and cause of his wyfe &  
was the doughter & the heyre of Henry  
somytyme duke of Lancastre.

¶ Of the grete wynde/ and how prynce  
Edward toke the lordshyp of Guyhen  
of his fader and went theder.

¶ And in the xxxvii. yere of kynge  
Edward the. xv. daye of Jany-  
uer/ that is to saye on saynt Maryes da-  
ye about euenlonge tyme there arose &  
come suche a wynde out of the southe w-  
liche a sperlnes and strenght that it brat-  
ted and blewe downe to the grounde by  
ghe houles and stronge buyldynges tou-  
res chirches & steeles and other stronge  
places/ and all other strong werkes that  
stoden styll were shaken therwith & they  
ben yet and shall euermore be the febler  
and weyker whyle they stande. And this  
wynde lasted without ony cessyng. vii.  
dayes contynually. And anone after the-  
re folowed suche waters in the hey tyme  
and in & harvest tyme that all felde wer-  
kes were strongly lette and lette vndo-  
¶ And in the same yere prynce Edward  
toke & lordshyp of Guyhen & dyd to  
kynge Edward his fader homage and  
feaute therof/ & went ouer see into Gal-  
coyne w his wyf & chyldren. ¶ And ano-  
ne after kynge Edward made his sone  
Lyonell duke of Clarence. & lyre Edmon-  
de his other sone/ erle of Cambrydge/ &  
in the. xxxviii. yere of his regne it was or-  
deyned in & parlement & men of lawe  
bothe of & chirche & temporell lawe shol-  
de fro & tyme forth plete in theyr moder-  
tonge. ¶ And in the same yere come in  
to Englonde thre kynges & is to say the  
kynge of fraūce & kynge of Cypres & &  
kynge of scotlande/ bycause to vylte &  
for to speke with the kynge of Englon-  
de. And after & they had be here lōge ty-  
me two of the went home into theyr ow-  
ne couñtres & kyngdoms/ but & kynge of  
fraūce through grete sekencesse & malady  
& he had abode styll in Englonde. And  
in the. xxxix. yere of his regne. was a  
stronge and a grete frost & & lasted longe  
that is to saye fro saynt Andrewes ty-  
p i

de to the .xiii. hal' of Apryll / þ the tylthē  
 & lowynge of the erthe & oher luche feld  
 werkes & honde werkes were moche let  
 te & left vndoyne for colde & hardnes of  
 the erthe. And at orway in Brytayne was  
 ordeyned a greate dedely batayll bytwe-  
 ne lre Johñ of Moutforde duke of Bry-  
 tayne & lre Charles of Bloys / but vycto-  
 ry fell to þ forlaid lre Johñ thruh helpe  
 & locout of thenglyshmen. And ther we  
 re taken many knyghtes & squyres and  
 oher men þ were vnnombred / in þ whi-  
 che batayll was slayne Charles hymself  
 w all þ stode about hym & of thenglysh-  
 men were slayne but seuen. And in this  
 yere deyed at lauoy Johñ þ kyng of fra-  
 unce / whos seruyce & requyes kyng Ed-  
 warde lete ordeyne and dydde in dyuers  
 placz worshypfully to be done / & at Do-  
 uer of worshypful men ordeyned þ wor-  
 thely to be ledde wih his owne costes &  
 expences / & fro thens was broughte too  
 fraunce & buryed at saynt Denys. ¶ In  
 the .xl. yere of kyng Edward þ .vii. hal'  
 of februer was borne Edward prynce  
 Edwardes sone þ whiche whan he was  
 .vii. of aege he deyed. And in þ same ye-  
 re it was ordeyned þ saynt Peters pens  
 fro þ tyme forth sholde not be payed the  
 which kyng yuo somtyme kyng of En-  
 glonde of þ coultre of westsaxon þ began  
 to regne þ yere of oure lorde god .vi. hon-  
 dred .lxxix. fyrste graunted to Rome for þ  
 scole of Englonde ther to be contynued.  
 ¶ And in this same yere ther fell so gre-  
 te a rayne in hey tyme that it wasted &  
 destroyed both corn & hey. And there was  
 luche a debate & fyghtynge of sparowes  
 by dyuerse places in these dayes that mē  
 founde innumerabled dede in the feldes  
 as they went. And there fell also luche a  
 pestylence þ neuer was seen luche in no  
 mannes dayes þ than luyed / for men þ  
 went to bedde hole and in good poynt lo-  
 deynly they deyed. ¶ Also þ tyme a leke-  
 nes þ men calle þ pockes slewe both mē  
 and women thrughe theyr infectynge.

¶ And in the .xli. yere of kyng Edward  
 de was borne at Burdeux Rycharde the  
 seconde sone of prynce Edward of En-  
 glonde / the whiche Rycharde kyng Ry-  
 charde of Armoycan heueden at þ fount-  
 stone after whome he was called Ry-  
 charde. And this same Rycharde whan  
 his fader was deed and kyng Edward  
 allo / he was crowned kyng of Englon-  
 de the .xi. yere of his aege thrughe ryghte  
 lyne and heritage and also by the comu-  
 ne assent and desyre of the comynalte of  
 the reame. ¶ About this tyme at kyng  
 Edwardes comaundement of Englon-  
 de whan all the castels and townes were  
 yolden too hym þ longe were holden in  
 fraunce by a greate cōpany assembled to-  
 gyder lre Bartram Clayhyn a nobled  
 knyght and a good warrour went and  
 purposed hym to put out Pers kyng of  
 Spayne out of his kyngdom wih helpe  
 of the moost partye of the forlaid grete  
 company trustynge allo vpon helpe & fa-  
 uour of þ pope for as moche as it come  
 to his eeres þ the same Pers sholde lede  
 & ble a spntfull lyfe / þ whiche Pers lmy-  
 ten wih drede of this tydynge fled into  
 Galcoyne to pryce Edward for to haue  
 locoure of hym. And whan he was fled  
 out of Spayne Henry his broder þ was  
 a ballarde by assent of þ moost party of  
 Spayne & thrughe helpe of þ fererfull cō-  
 pany þ Alspake of fyrst was crowned ky-  
 ge of Spayne: & þ nōbre of þ same cōpani  
 was rekened & set at the nōbre of .xl. M.  
 fyghtynge men. ¶ This same yere in þ  
 moneth of June there come a grete cōpa-  
 ny & a nauye of þ Danes gadred them  
 togyder in the North see purposyng thē  
 to come into Englonde to reue and too-  
 robbe and allo to sle wih whome they  
 coultred & mette in the se. maryners and  
 oher gode fyghtynge men of þ countre  
 & dysperpled theym. And they alhamyd  
 went home ayen in too theyr owne cou-  
 tre / But amonge the other there was  
 a boystous vessell and a stronge of thre:



nauye that was ouer saylled by the Englyshmen & was peryllhed & drenched In the whiche þe Stewarde & other worthy & greate men of Denmarke were taken prysoners / & the kynge of Englōde & his couſeyll prysoned them. þe whiche lordes þe Danes afterwarde lought them all about for to haue had the ayen with theyr goodes þe they had losse / and they not well apayed ne pleased of the answer þe they had / & they turned homewardes ayen leuþge behynde the in ther Innes pryuely wyrtē in scrowes & on walles. yet shall Danes wast the wanes Thenne happed there an Englysh wri-ter & wrote ayenst þe Dane in this manere (here shall Danes sette theyr banys)

¶ And in this tyme pers the kynge of Spayne with other kynges that is too saye. the kynge of Nauerne and the kynge of Malogre beyngē meanes wenten bytwene and prayed couſeyll and helpe of kynge Edwarde the prynce whos counſeyll whan he had vnderstandyng ther artycles and delyre that he was requyred of of tho kynges / loth he was & ashamed to saye nay & contrary to the. But nethcles he was agast lest it shold be on preiudice ayenst þe pope & longe tyme tarped the or þe he wolde graūt or consente ther to tyll he had better couſeyll & amplement w good delyberatyō of kyng Edwarde his fader. But whan they were with hym euery daye & contynually beſechyngē of many noble men requyred & spoken to / & with many prayers sente & made bytwene the. than prynce Edwarde sent to his fader both by cōplaynyng letters & also by comfortable conteynyng all theyr suggestyōns & causes w all þe other kyngs epyttles & letters for to haue conforste & helpe of þe wronges not only done to þe kynge of Spayn / but also for suche thyngs as nyght fall to other kyngs. Also yf it were not þe loner holpe & amended thrughe þe dome & helpe of knyghthode to them þe it asked & desired

¶ The whiche letter whan the kynge & his wylc couſeyll had seen suche a kyng spoplyngē & robbynge with moche merueyll. And sent ayen comfortable letters to prynce Edwarde his sone & to þe other kyngs & warned them for to arme them & ordeyne them ayenst that mysdoer & to withstande them by þe helpe of god þe were suche enemyes to kynges. whan this noble prynce had receyued this letters / hymself with that other kynges before sayd all theyr couſeyll called togyder or þe he wolde vndertake the quarell he bound & knytte sore þe kynge þe was depoled w a greate othe / that is to saye þe he shold euer after mayntene þe ryght byleue and fayth of holy chyrche / and also with all theyr mynystrs ryghtes & lybertees too defende frome all theyr enemyes & all euylls. And all þe were ther ayenst bytterly to punysshē & destrōble & all þe ryghts lybertees preuyleges of holy chyrche encreace & mayntene / & amend all thyngs þe were wrongfully taken w drawn & bozen awaye by hym or by ony other by cause of hym / hastely to restore ayen & to dryue and put out sarasyns & all other / mysbyleued people out of his kyngdom with all his strength and his power / and suffre ne admittē none suche for no manere thyngē ne cause too dwelle therein / And that whan he had taken a crysten woman he sholdē neuer come in to none other womans bedde / ne none other māries wyfe too defoyle / ¶ All thyle for sayd thynges trewely for too kepe contynue & fulfyll as all his lyfe tyme he was boundē by othe afore notaryes in presence & wytnesse of tho kynges w other prynces / ¶ And thanne that gracypus prynce Edwarde vndertoke the cause & the quarell of the kynge that was depoled and behyght hym with the grace of almyghty god to restore hys ayen to hys kyngdom / & lete ordeyne & gadre togyrd forthwith in all haste his nauye with mē of armes for to warre and fyght in hys

for sayd cause. ¶ And in this same yere vpon the lande of þ̄ Scottes see þ̄ many a man sawe it thre dayes togyder there were seen two Egles/ of þ̄ which þ̄ one come out of þ̄ southe & þ̄ other out of the north/ & cruelly & strongly they foughte togyder & wrastled togyder/ & þ̄ southe Egle fyrst ouercome þ̄ north egle & all to rente hym w̄ his bylle & his clawes þ̄ he sholde not restene take no brethe and after þ̄ south egle fleyth home to his owne costes. ¶ And anone after there folowed & was seen in þ̄ moine after þ̄ son rylynge & after in þ̄ last daye of Octobrie saunge one many stertes gadred togysder on an hepe felle downe to þ̄ erthe leuyng behynde thē fyre bemes in maner of lyghtnyng/ whos flāmes brent & cōsumed mens clothes & mens heer walkyng on þ̄ erth as it was sene & knowen of many a man. ¶ And yet þ̄ northern wynde þ̄ is euer redy & destymate to all ylle fro saynt Katherynes eue tyll thre dayes after lost greate good withoute nombre. ¶ And in this same dayes there felle & come also such lyghtnyng thondre knowe & hayll þ̄ it wasted & destroyed men besydes houles & trees.

¶ Of the batayll of Spayne besyde the water of Nazers þ̄ was bytwene prynce Edward/ & syr Henry bastarde of Spaȳ.

**I**N þ̄ yere of our lord a. M. CCC. lxxvii. and of kynge Edward. xlii the thyrde daye of Apryll there was a stronge batayll and a greate in a large felde called Pryazers fast by the water of Nazers in Spayne bytwene syr Edward the prynce & syr Henry þ̄ bastarde of Spayne/ but the vycory fell to prynce Edward by the grace of god. ¶ And this same prynce Edward had w̄ hym syr Johñ duke of Lancastre his broder & other worthy men of armes about þ̄ nūbre of. xxx. thousande. ¶ And the kynge of Spayne had on his syde men of dy-

uers nacjons to the nombre of an hundred thousande & mo/ wherfore þ̄ charpenesse and fyerlnesse of his aduerlary with his full boystous & greate strenche made and dryue the ryghtfulle partye a backe a greate waye/ but thurgh the grace of almyghty god passynge ony mannes stienche that greate hoooste was dysparpled myghtfully by the noble duke of Lancastre and his hooost/ or that prynce Edward came nyghe hym. And whā Henry bastarde sawe that/ he comed w̄ his men in so greate hast and strenche for to flec/ that a greate company of thē in the forsayd floode and of the bydge therof fellen downe and perysshed. And also there were taken the erle of Dene & syr Bartram Clephyn þ̄ was cheyf maker & cauler of the warre & also cheyftayne of the vaūtwarde of þ̄ batayll w̄ many other greate lordes and knyghtes to the nombre of two thousande/ of whom two hondred were of fraūce & many also of Scotlande/ and there were kelled in the felde on our ennyes syde of lordes & knyghtes with other meyn people to the nombre of. vi. thousande and moo/ and of Englyshmen but a fewe. And after this the noble prynce Edward restored the same Peers to his kyngdom ayen/ þ̄ whiche Peers afterwarde thurgh trechery and fallenes of the forsayd bastarde of Spayne as he latte at his mete he was strangled and deped. But after this vycorye many noble men of Englonde/ & also hardy in Spayne thurgh the flyr and dyuers other lekenesses toke theyr dethe. ¶ And also in the same yere in þ̄ Marche was seen stella Cometa bytwene the north costes & þ̄ west whos bemes stretched towarde fraūce. ¶ And in the next yere folowynge of kynge Edward's regne. xliii. in Apryll syr Lyonell kynge Edwardes lone that was duke of Clarence wente towarde Melayne wyth a chosen meyne of the gentyls of Englonde for to wedde Galoys doughter & haue

hys to his wyf by whome he sholde haue halfe þ lordshyp of Melayne but after þ they were solēly wedded & about þ Na cyuyte of our lady þ same duke of Melayne deped. And in þ same yere þ frenshmen brake þ peas & þ trewes rydyng on þ kyngs groude & lordshyp of Englode in þ shyre & couētre of Pouētye/ & toke & helde castell & townes/ & bere þ Englyshmen on honde falsly & subtill þ they were cause of brekhyng of trewes. and in this same yere deped þ duches of Lancastre & is buryed worshypfully in saynt Poules chirche. ¶ The .xl. yere of kynged Edwarde regne was þ grettest pestylēce of men & of grete bestes & by þ grete fallynge of waters þ felle at þ tyme/ there fell grete hyndryng & destroyenge of corne in so moche þ þ next yere after a bulshell of whete was loide for .xl. pens. And in this same yere about þ last ende of May kyng Edwarde helde tho his parlement at westmyster in which parlement was treated & spoken of þ othe & trewes that was broken bytwene hys & the kyng of fraūce & how he myght best be auenged vpon his wronge. ¶ In this same yere in þ Assūpcyon of our lady deped quene Phylip of Englonde a full noble & gode lady/ & at westmyster full worshypfully is buryed & entered. And about mydsomer þ duke of Lancastre & the erle of Herforde with a grete cōpany of knyghtes went into fraūce where as they gate them but lytell worshyp & nanie/ for there was a grete hoolte of þ frenshmen vpon Calkhull bydye/ & an other hoolte of Englyshmen fast by þ same bydye þ longe tyme had lyued there. And many worthy & grete men of Englonde ordeined & gaf couēyll for to fyght & gaf batayll to þ frenshmen but þ forsayd lordes wolde not consent thereto for no maner thyng. ¶ And anone after it happened þ the erle of warwyk come thyder/ warde for to warre/ & whan þ frenshmen herde of his comynge or þ he came

fully to londe they left theyr tentes & paylyons w all theyr vntayls & fled & wēt awaye pryuelly. And whan þ erle was comen to londe w his men he went in all hast towarde Normandy & destroyed þ yle of Caux w strenth of swerde & thurgh the fyre. But alas in his retornynge to Englonde warde home ayen at Calays he was taken w lykenes of pestylence & deped not leuyng behynde hys after hys dayes so noble a knyght of armes. ¶ In whiche tyme regned & warted þ noble knyght syr John Hawkewod þ was an Englyshman borne/ hauynge w hys at his gouernaūce þ whyte cōpany þ is a forsayd. þ whiche o tyme ayenst holy chirche & an other tyme ayenst lordes warted & ordeyned grete batayls & there in þ same couētre he dydde many merueyllous thynges. ¶ And about þ conuercyon of saynt Poule þ kyng whan he had ended & done þ entrynge & exequyes w grete costes & ryaltees aboute þ sepulture of & buryenge of quene Phylip his wife he helde a parlement at westmyster in whiche parlement was axed of þ clergye a thre yeres dyme/ that is for to laye a grete dyme to be payed thre yere durynge/ And the clergye put it of and wolde not graunte it vnto Ester next comynge/ & thannt they graunted well that in thre yere by certayne termes þ dyme sholde be payed & also of the lay fee was a thre yere. .xv. graunted to the kyng.

¶ How sir Robert Knolles w other certayne lordes of þ reame went ouer se into fraūce & of theyr gouernaūce.

**A**ND in the .xlv. yere of kynged Edwarde in þ begynnyng kynged Edwarde w hys vnwysse couēyll and vndyscrete borrowed a grete some of golde of þ prelates marchātes & other rychemen of his reame saynge þ it sholde be spended in defendynge of holy chirche & of his reame Necheles it profyced no thys

ge/wherfore aboute mydolmer after he made a grete host of þ̄ worthyest men of his reame. Amonges whome were some lordz þ̄ is for to say þ̄ lord fytzwater & þ̄ lord graison & other worthy knyghts of whiche knyghts þ̄ kynge ordeyned syr Robert Knolles a proued knyzt & a well assayd in dedes of armes for to be gouernour/ & þ̄ thurgh his couleyl & gouernaunce all th̄yge sholde be gouerned & dresed. And whan they come into fraunce as longe as they dwelled & helde them hole togyder þ̄ frenschmen durst not fall vpon th̄e. And at the laste about the begynnyng of wynter for cnyte & couetyse þ̄ was amonge them/ & also dyscorde they sondred & parted th̄e into dyuerse copanyes vndowlely & solely. But syr Robert Knolles & his men went & heped theyn sauf within a castell in Brytayne. And whan þ̄ frenschmen sawe þ̄ our men & felauthyp were deuyded into dyuerse copanyes & places not holdyng ne strengthynge theyn togyders as they out for to do/ they fell speryly on our men/ & for þ̄ moost partye toke th̄e or slewe them. and tho þ̄ they myght take ledde with them prysoners. ¶ And in the same yere pope Urbane come fro Rome to Aynyon for this cause þ̄ he sholde accorde & make peas bytwene þ̄ kynge of fraunce & the kynge of Englonde for euermore. But alas or he began his treates he deyed w̄ sekenesse þ̄. xxi. daye of Decembre/ & was buryed as for þ̄ tyme in the cathedrall chirche of Aynyon fast by þ̄ hygh awter. & the next yere after whan he had lpen soo his bones were taken out of the erthe & buryed newe in the abbaye of saynt byctorpe fast by Marple/ of þ̄ whiche abbaye he was somtyme abbot hymself. And in bothe places þ̄ he was buryed in/ there be many grete miracles done & wrought thurgh the grace of almyghty god to many a mannes helpe & to the workyp of god almyghty. ¶ And after whome followed next and was made pope Grego

rye Cardynalle Deken that before was called pyers Roger. ¶ In this same yere the cyte of Lymoge rebelled and faught ayenst the prynce as other cytes dyd in Guyhen for grete taxes costages & ransons that they were put and lette to by prynce Edwarde/ whiche charges were importable & to chargeable/ wherfore they turned fro hym and fellen to þ̄ kynge of fraunce. And whan prynce Edwarde sawe this he was sore chafed and agreued/ and in his comynge homeward ayen into Englonde with sore scarvullthes and fyghtynge and grete slautes fought with theyn and toke the forlaid cyte and destroyed it almost to the grounde and slewe all that he found in the cyte. And than for to save the loth for dyuerse sekens & maladyes that he had and also for defaulte of money that he myght not withstande ne tary on his enmyes he hped hym ayen into Englonde with his wyfe and meny leuyng beynde in Galcoyne the duke of Lancastre and syr Edmonde erle of Cambridge with other worthy and noble men of armes. ¶ In the. xlii. yere of kynge Edwarde at the ordynauce and sendynge of kynge Edwarde/ the kynge of Navarre come to hym to Claryngdon to treat with hym of certayne thynge touchyng his warre in Normandye where kynge Edwarde had left certayn speges in his stede tyll he come ayen. But kynge Edwarde myght not spede of that that he asked hym. And so the kynge of Navarre with grete workyp & grete gyftes toke his leue & went home ayen. ¶ And about begynnyng of Marche whā þ̄ parliament at westmyster was begon þ̄ kynge asked of þ̄ clergye a subtyde of. l. poude þ̄ whiche by a good ayment & by a generall couocacō of þ̄ clergye it was graūted & ordeyned þ̄ it sholde be payed & repled of þ̄ lay fee. And in thys parliament at þ̄ request & askynge of the lordes in hatred of men of holy chirche.

the Chaunceler and the tresourer þ were byshopps & the clerke of the pryue sale. were remeued & put out of offyce and in theyr stede were seculer men put in. And whyle this parlement lasted there come solempne embassatours fro þ pope to trete w the kynge of peas & sayd þ the pope despyred to fulfyl his predecessours wil but for all theyr comynge they sped not.

**O**f the belyegynge of Rochell & how the erle of Penbroke & his company was taken in that haven with Spanperdes and all his shypes brente.

**T**he .ix. daye of June kynge Edwarde in þ .xlviij. yere of his regne helde his parlement at wyndchestre & it lasted but .viii. dayes / to þ whiche parlement were sompned by wyte of men of holy chirche .iiii. byshoppes & .iiii. abbottes without any moo. This parlemente was holdē for marchaūtes of Londō of Norwyche & of other dyuerse placē in dyuerse thynges & popntē of treason þ they were defamed of / þ is to say þ they were rebell & wolde aryse ayenst þ kynge this same yere þ duke of Lancastre & the erle of Cambrydge his brother come out of Gascoyne into Englonde & toke & wedded to theyr wyues Peters daughters sō tyme kynge of Spayne **O**f whiche two daughters þ duke had þ elder & the erle the yonger. And þ same tyme there were sent two Cardynals fro þ pope / þ is to saye an Englyshe Cardynall & a Cardynall of Parys to treate of peas bytwene these two reames / þ whiche whā they had ben both longe eche in his prouynce & cōūtrees fast by treatyng of þ forsayd peas / at the laste they toke with theym þ lēttes of procuracye & went ayen to Rome without ony effect of theyr purpose. **I**n this yere was there a stronge battayll in þ se bytwene Englyshmen and Flemynge & the Englyshmen had the vyctory & toke .xxv. shypps w salt & sle

yng and drenchyng all þ men þ were therin vnwetyng theym they were of þ cōuntre. And moche harme sholde haue fallen therof had not peas & accorde sone be made bytwene thē. **A**nd in thys same yere the frenshmen belyeged the towne of Rochell wherfore þ erle of Pēbroke was sent into Gascoyne w a grette company of men of armes for to dystroye þ lyege / whiche passed þ se & came laut to þ haven of Rochell / & whan they were there at þ haven mouthe or þ they myght entre / sodaynly come vpon them a stronge nauye of Spanperdes þ whyche ouercome þ Englyshmen in moche blemysshyng hurtynge & sleynge of many people for as moche as the Englyshmen were than not redy for to fyghte ne were ware of theym. And as the Spanperdes came vpon them all the Englyshmen other they were taken or slayne / and .x. of theym were sore wounded to the dethe and all theyr shypes brente / and there they toke the erle with a grette tresour of the reame of Englonde and many other noble men also on mydsomer euen þ whiche is saynt Edeldredes daye & ledde them with them into Spayne. And of this myscheyf was no grette wonder for this erle was a fulle ylle lyuer as an open lechoure. And also in a certayne parlement he stode and was ayenst theyr ryghtes and fraūchyle of holy chirche. And also he counseyllid the kynge and counseyllid that he sholde axemo of men of holy chirche thanne other persones of the laye men. And for the kynge and other men of his counseyll accepted and toke rather ylle opynyons and causes ayenste men of holy chirche than he dyde for too defende & mayntene the ryght of holy chirche / it was after seen many tymes for lacke of fortune and grace they had not ne bare alwaye so grette vyctory ne power ayenste theyr enemyes as they dyd before. **T**his same yere þ kynge with a grette hooste entred the se

to remeue the syege of Rochelle/ but the wynde was euer contrarpe vnto hym & suffred hym not a longe tyme to go fro p̄londe/ wherfore he abode a certayne tyme vpon p̄ see costes abydyng after a good wynde for them & yet come it not So at p̄ last he come thens with his mē to londwarde apen/ & anone as he was a londe p̄ wynde began for to come & was in an other colt than he was afore.

How p̄ duke of Lancastre with a grete hooft went into flaūdes & passed by parys through Burgon & through all fraunce tyll he come vnto Burdeux.

Done after in the .xlviii. yere of the regne of kynge Edwarde the duke of Lancastre with a grete power went into flaūdes & passed by parys through Burgon & through all fraunce til he come vnto Burdeux without ony manner withstandyng of p̄ frenschmen/ & he dyd them but lytell harme lauf he to ke & rauiloned many places & townes & many men & lette theym go after frely. The same yere p̄ kynge let certayne ambassatours to p̄ pope prayenge hym p̄ he sholde leue of & medle not in his court of the keepyng & reseruacyons of benefycs in Englonde. & that tho p̄ were chole to bysshoppes sees & dygnetees frely & w̄ ful myght Joy & haue & be confermed to p̄ same of theyr metropolytans & Archbysshops as they were wonte to be of olde tyme. Of these poyntes & of other touchyng the kynge and his reame/ whan they had theyr answer of p̄ pope/ the pope enioyned them p̄ they sholde certefy hym a yen by theyr letter of the kynges wyll & of his reame or they determyned oughte of the forsayd artycles. ¶ In this same yere deyed John the Archebysshop of yorke/ John bysshop of Ely/ wylliam bysshop of worcestre. In whos stedes folowed & were made bysshops by auctoryte of p̄ pope. mayster Alexander Neuyll to p̄

Archbysshopryche of yorke/ Thomas of Arūdell to the bysshopryche of Ely. and syr Henry wakfelde to the bysshopryche of worcestre. In the whiche tyme it was ordeyned in the parlemēt: p̄ all Cathedrall churches sholde Joy & haue theyr eleccōns hole & p̄ the kynge fro p̄ tyme afterwarde sholde not wrytte apenst them p̄ were cholen/ but rather helpe them by his letters to theyr confirmacōn/ & thys statute dyd moche profyte ¶ And in this parlemēt was graūted to the kynge a dyne of the clergye & a .xv. of lay see. ¶ In the .xlix. of p̄ regue of kynge Edwarde deyed mayster wylliam wytlesey Archebysshop of Caūterbury/ & the monkes of the same chirche alked & delyred a Cardynall of Englōde to be Archbysshop. & therfore p̄ kynge was agreued & ment & purposed to haue exyled p̄ monkes of p̄ same. And they spended moche good or they myghte haue the kynges grace apen and his loue/ but yet wolde p̄ kynge not consente ne graunte to theyr eleccyon of the Cardynalle ne of the pope alsoo ne hys Cardynales. ¶ And atte the begynnyng of Auguste it was treated and spoken atte Bruges of certayne poyntes/ and artycles hangyng bytwene the pope and the kynge of Englonde/ and this treates lasted almooſte tho yere. And at the laste it was accorded bytwene theym that the pope fro that tyme forth sholde not v̄le ne dele w̄ the reseruacōns of benefycs in Englonde/ and that the kynge sholde not graūt ne lette no benefycs by his wrytte that is called Quare impedit. But as touchyng the eleccyon a bouelayd/ there was no chynge touched ne done. And that was wyted and putte vpon certayne clerkes the whiche rather supposed and hoped to be auauūced and promoted to bysshopryches whiche they delyred and coueyted by the court of Rome rather than by ony other eleccyons/ ¶ This same yere about Landelmasse there mette togyde atte Bruges many

noble & worthy men of bothe sydes and reames to treate of peas bytwene tho two kynoges. And this tret lasted two yere w grete costes & large expenles of both partyes. And at the last they went & departed thens without ony accorde or effecte. The next yere after .i. yere of kyng Edward .i.iii. Moñ of May beyng yet boyde & vacaut þ Archbyshoppe of Caüterbury mayster Symonde Iudbery byshop of Londõ was made Archbyshop & mayster wylliam courtney þ was byshop of Herford was thã made byshop of London / & þ byshop of Bangor was made byshop of Herforde. ¶ And thys samie tyme in a certayne treate & spechinge of peas trewes was takẽ bytwene thẽ of fraunce & Englonde from mydolmer to mydolmer come apen an hole yere / & a bout þ begynnyng of Apryll þ duke of Brytayne with many erles barons and worthy lordes & men of Englonde went ouer see into Brytayne where he hathe had all his luste desyre & purople ne had the foisayd trewes be so lone taken the whiche letted thẽ. ¶ This same tyme þ yle of Constantyne where þ the castel of saynt Saueour is in. þ longe tyme was foughten at & besyged of þ frenshmen than yelde to þ frenshmen w all the apportenaūces into grete harme & hyndryge of þ reame of Englonde. And this same yere there were so grete & so passyng heles & therwith all a greate pestylence in Englonde & in other dyuerse partyes of þ wolde þ it destroyed & llewe dyolently & strongly both men & wpmen without nõbre. This same yere deyed sir Edward þ lorde Spencer a worthy knyght & a bolde & in þ mynster of Teukelbury worshipfully is buryed. And lastyng this pestilence þ pope at þ instaūce and prayer of an Englyshe Cardynale graunted to all people þ deyed in Englonde þ were lory & repentaūte for theyr synnes and also thryuen full remysyon by two bulles vnder lede. vi. monethes than

next to laste. ¶ In this same yere the erle of Penbroke was taken and rauiloned by Bartram Claphyn bytwene Parys & Calays as he come towarde Englode vpon saynt Atheldredes dape þ whiche saynt as it was sayd þ erle oftentymes had offended / & within a lypyll while after he deyed. ¶ And in Nouembre nexte after there mette at Bruges the duke of Lancastre and the duke of Angoy with many other lordes and prelates of bothe reames for to treate of peas.

¶ Of the dethe of prynce Edward and of the lorde Latymer and dame Alyce peres thugh whome and hyr maynteners the reame many a dape was mylsgouerned.

¶ Of longe after the .li. yere of kyng Edward's regne he lete ordeyne & holde at westmyster þ gretttest parlement þ was seen many a yere afore. In þ whiche parlement he asked of þ comynalte of þ reame as he had done afore a grete subspydie to be graūted for hym for defendyng of hym & of his reame / but the comunes answered þ they were so offdai by dape greued & charged with so many talages & subspydes þ they myght no lenger suffre no luche burthons & charges & that they knewe and wylt wel ynough þ the kyng had ynoughe for sauyng of hym and of his reame yf the reame were well and truly gouerned / but that it had be so longe euill gouerned by ylle offycers / that the reame myght nother be plenteuous of chaffre & marchaūdyne also with rycheffe. And in these thynges they profred themself yf the kyng wolde certaynly to preue it and stande by. & yf it were founden and preued afterwarde that the kyng had nede they wolde gladly euey man after his power and state hym helpe and lene. And after this were publlyshed and shewed in the parlement many playntes and defautes of

dyuers offycers of the reame and name-  
ly of the lorde Latymer þ kynges cham-  
berlayne bothe to the kyng & eke to the  
reame. ¶ And also at the laste there was  
spoken & treated of dame Alyce pers for  
the grete wronges & euyll governaunce þ  
was done by hyr couñsell in the reame.  
the whiche dame Alyce pers þ the kyng  
had holden longe tyme to his lemman  
wherfore it was the lasse wonder though  
thruhh þ frealte of the womans excyþ-  
ge and hyr sterynge he consented to hyr  
lewdenelle & euyll cūōseyll þ whiche da-  
me Alyce & also þ lorde Latymer & other  
suche that meued the kyng to euyll go-  
uernaunce ayenste his profyte and the re-  
me also/all the compynalte asked and de-  
syred that they sholde be remeued & put  
awaye and in theyr steddes wyle men and  
worthy that were trewe and well assayd  
and proued and of good gouernaunce.  
sholde be put in theyr steddes. So amon-  
ge all other there was one amonge the  
comuntes that was a wyle knyght and  
a trewe, and an eloquent man whoos na-  
me was pers delamare. And this same  
pers was cholen to be speker for the co-  
muntes in the parlement. And for this la-  
me pers tolde and publlyshed the trou-  
the and reherled the wronges ayenst the  
foresayd dame Alyce and other certayne  
persones of the kynges counseyll as he  
was bydden by þ compyns. And also trul-  
tynge moche to be supported and mayn-  
tened in this mater by helpe and fauour  
of þ pryce anone as þ pryce was dede at  
þ instaunce & requeste of þ foresayd dame  
alyce/this pers de amare was Jugyd to  
perpetuall prysō in þ castell of Notyngā  
¶ And in þ. vi. kal. of Jule lastyng þ la-  
me parlemēt deyd pryce Edward hýge  
Edwardes fyrst sone/þ is to saye in try-  
nyte londaye in worlhypp of whiche feste  
he was wonte euery yere where þ euer he  
were in the worlde to holde and made þ  
moost solemnyte þ he myght. whos na-  
me and fortune of knyghthode but yf it

had be of an other Escour all men both  
crysten & hethen while þ he lyued & was  
in good poynt wondred moche & dradd  
hym wonder sore/whos body is worlhip-  
fully buryed in Lychurche at Caüterbu-  
ry. And in this same yere þ men & þ er-  
les tenaūtes of warwyk atole malicy-  
ously ayenst þ abbot & couent of Euelhā  
& theyr tenaūtes/ & destroyed thabbaye.  
& the towne & wounded & bete theyr men  
and slee many of theym/and wente too  
theyr maners & places & dyd moche har-  
me/ & brake downe ther parkes & closes  
& slewe theyr wylde bestes & chaced them  
brekyng theyr fyssh ponds & hedes &  
lete the water of theyr ponds strewes &  
ryuers renne out & toke þ fyssh & bare  
it with them. and dyd theym all the so-  
rowe that they myght. in so ferforth that  
forsoth they had destroyed perpetuall þ  
abbay with all theyr membres & appor-  
tenaūces but yf the kyng the sone had  
not holpen it & taken hede therto. & ther-  
fore þ kyng lent his letters to þ erle of  
warwyk chargyng hym/ & cōmaūð þ ge-  
hym þ he sholde stynt redresse & amende  
tho euyll doers & brekers of his peas. and  
so by meanes of lordes & other frendes þ  
peas was made bytwene thē. & for this  
hurlynge as it is layd þ kyng wold not  
be gouerned at þ tyme by his lordes that  
there were in þ parlement. but he toke &  
made his sone þ duke of Lancastre hys  
gouernour of þ reame. þ whiche stode so  
styll as gouernoure tyll þ tyme þ he deied  
¶ The same yere after Landelmasse or  
þ parlement was done. þ kyng asked  
a subtyde of the clargy & of the lay fee &  
it was graunted him/ that is to say þ he  
sholde haue of euery persone of þ lay fee  
bothe man and woman that passed four-  
tene yere of aege four pens out taken po-  
re beggers that were knowen openly for  
nede poore beggers. ¶ And that he shol-  
de haue of euery man of the holy chyrche  
that was benefyced or promoted twelue  
pens/and all ocher that were not promo-



ted.iiii. pens out taken the.iiii. ordres of þ frere beggers. ¶ This same yere after Myghelmalle Rycharde prynce Edwardes son was made pryce of wales to whome þ kyng gaaf þ duchye of cornewayle w þ erldom of chestre. And about this tyme þ Cardynale of Englode þ.iiii. da ye before Mary Hawdalenes daye after dynner sodaynly was smyte with the pal sye and lost his speche / & on mary Haw dalenes daye deped.

¶ Of the dethe of kyng Edwarde and how syr John Monsterwarth knyghte was drawen & hanged for his fallnesse.

**R**yght anone after in the. lii. yere of kyng Edwarde in the begynnynge of Octobre pope Gregorpe þ. ix. broughte and remeued his courte with hym frome Aynyon to Rome. ¶ And þ. xii. daye of Apryll. John Monsterwarthe. knyght at London was drawen & han gyd & than quartred & sent to four cheif townes of Englonde & his heed smyren of & sette vpon London brydge for this same John was full vntrewe to þ kyng & to the reame & coueytous & vnkustable for he toke ofspymes greate somes of mo ney of þ kyng & his coulepyll for men of armes wages that he sholde haue payed the & toke it to his owne vble / & he dradd that at the last he shold be shent & accus ed for the same cause and fledde pryue ly to the kyng of fraunce & was swoi ne to hym and become his man & behy ght hym a greate nauye out of Spayn into confucyon and destroyng of En glonde. But þ ryghtfull god to whome no pryuyte is vnknewen suffred hþ fyr te to be shente & spylt or that he so tray/ tourly & fallly betrayed his lyege lorde þ kyng of Englonde & his people in his reame / in þ which groude this same Jo han was born. & wickpdy thrugh bata yll destroyed or he brought about his cur led purpose. In the feest of saynt Geor

ge tho next kyng Edwarde gaaf to Ry charde of Burdeux his heyr þ was pry ce Edwardes sone at wyndlore thordre of knyghthode & made hym knyght the whiche kyng Edward whan he had reg ned. li. yere the. xi. kal of June he deped at Shene & is buryed worlhyppfully at west myster on whos soule god haue mercye. ¶ This kyng Edward was forsothe of a passynge godenes & full gracysous a monge all þ worthy men of þ world for he passed & shone by vertue of grace gy uen to hym from god aboue all his pre deceffours þ were noble men & worthy & he was a well herted man & an hardy for he drad neuer no myshappes ne har mes ne euyl fortune þ myght falle a no ble warrpou & a fortunafe for both on londe & se & in all batayls & assables w a passynge glory & Joy he had þ vyctory he was meke & benygne homely sobre & soft to all men as well to straügers as to his owne subgettes & to other þ were vn der his gouernaüce. he was deuoute & ho ly both to god & holy chirche for he wor/ shypped holpe & mayntened holy chirch & theyr mynystrs w all maner reueren ce / he was treatable & well auyled in tē porall & worldly nedes. wylse in coulepyll & dyscrete and meke to speke with / in his dedes and maners gentyll and well caus ght / haupnge pyte of them that were in dysleas / plentuous in geuyng of bene/ faytes & almotes / bely & curysous in buyl dyng / & lyghly he bare & suffred wrot ges and harmes and whan he was gpe to ony occupacyon he lefte all other thþ ge for the tyme and tended therto / seme/ ly of bode and a meyne stature / haupn ge alwaye to hyghe and to lowe a goode chere. And there spröge & shone so moch grace of hþ þ what man had behold his face or had dremed of hþ he hoped þ day þ all thynge sholde hap to hym Joyfull and lykynge. And he gouerned his kþge dome gloriously vnto his aege / he was large in geuyng and wylse in spences / he

was fulfilled with all honeste of goode maners and vertues / vnder whome to lyue it was as for to regne. wherfore his fader and his loos spronge so ferre that it came into hechenes & Barbary shewynge and tellynge his worthynes & māhode in all londes / and that no londe vnder heuen had brought forth soo noble a kynge so gentyll & so blessyd or myghte reple luche an other whan he was dede. Neuertheles lechery and meynge of his fleithe hauntyd hym in his aege / wherfore the rather as it is to suppose for vnmelurable fulfillynge of his luste his lyfe shorted the soner. ¶ And here of take good hede lyke as his dedys berech wyfnesse for as in his begynnynge all thynge were Joyfull & lykynge to hym / & to all people. And in his myddell aege he passed all people in hygh Joy worlhypp and blessydones. Ryght so whan he drew into age drawynge donwarde through lechery and other synnes lytell and lytell all tho Joyfull and blessyd thynge and prosperyte decreased & myllhapped and vnfortunate thynge and vnprofytable harmes with many euyls began for to sprynge and the more harme is it contynued longe tyme after.

**C**lemens .v. was pope after Benedict .x. yere / this man in name and dede was vertuous / and many thynge that Benedict was rygous in / he made ealy / and certayn that he depriued he restored / and y rygoulenes of the fayth of Benedict was laudable / But moche more laudable was y mekenesse of Clement. This man was a noble prechour and many sermons he gadred / and lete no man passe frome hym but he gaaf hy good couleyll / & deslessyd a blessyd man ¶ Karolus the .iiii. was Emperour after Lodewyk .xxxi. yere. This man was kynge of Berne a wylse man and a myghty. And this man was cholen Emperour by the commaundement of Clemens

Lodewyk beyng a lyue in his contemacy / and bycause he asked mekely the popes blessing and to be crowned of hym as other goode kynge dyde. therfore he was protected of god and preueyled ouer all his ennyes. And many fauourable lawes he made to spyrytuall men / y whiche yet are called Karolma / at the last he decessed a ryche man in vertu & goodes. ¶ Innocent<sup>9</sup> the .vi. was pope after clement .x. yere / and he was a grete loucr of relygyous men and he founded a monestery in fraunce of the ordre of Cartulyens. and was a greate canonyst. ¶ Urbanus the .v. was pope after Innocent. this man was abbot of Myssolens of the ordre of saynt Benet a doctour and is taken for a saynt. he made the crosse to be preched apenst the Turkes / and he made a passage to the Turkes / And to hy saynt Bryggt was sent frome Crist for the confyrmacyon of theyr rule & thane. he was poplened and decessyd ¶ Grego<sup>ry</sup> the .vii. was pope after hym. viii. yere. This Grego<sup>ry</sup> dyd lytell. And after hy folowed the trybulacyon the which our lorde shewed to saynt Bryggt for y synne of the clargye. ¶ Henselaus lone too Karolus aforlayd was Emperour. xiiii. yere. And he was a chylde and was cholen whan his fader was on lyue / but he toke no kepe of the myprie / and whan he was warned many tymes for to take hede vnto it and wolde not. he was deposed / for he gaaf all his delyte and luste to lechery / and his ende was without honoure for he went greteley frome the maners and the vertues of his noble fader. And he was crowned with the mypripall dyademe. and the wylsdom of his fader passed into Sygylmonde his brocher as after it shall appyre. ¶ Urbanus was pope after Grego<sup>ry</sup> .vi. yere / this Urbanus was cholen in the cyte of Rome by y strength of the Romayns but the Cardynals dyd that for drede and not wyllyngly / wherfore they fledde vnto the Lyte of

fundoz. And they layd that he was not pope/and chose in his place syre Robert of Gebennys the same yere the whiche was called Clement y. vii. ¶ Nota. And here began the .xii. stryfe in the churche. And it was more woile than euer was on ny other before/for it was so subtyll/h the wyllest men that were and the best of conscyence coude not deserue with whome it was best to saye and to holde. And this stryfe dured .xl. yere with a greate sclaūdre vnto all the cleryge/and greate petyll vnto mennys soules for herelyes and other euyll thynges y whiche were brought in than. In so moch y ther was no doctryne in y churche for myldoyng. And therefore frome this Orbatic the. vi. vnto Martyne I knowe not whoo was pope. ¶ The fest of y vyltacyon of our lady was ordeyned by Urbane y. vi. aft the fourme of y sacramente of y awter for a peas & an vnyte to be had amonge them thurgh the merytees of our blessyd lady ¶ Bonifacius the. ix. was pope after Urbane. xv. yere. ¶ This Bonifacius was cholen at Rome in y stede of Urbane/ & the stryfe contynued/ for Benedictus was cholen in Aunyon in the place of Clement & was called Petrus de luna & he dured to the couleyll of Constantynus/ & then he wolde not obaye but euer abode obstynate. And at y last he decel sed in y kyngdome of Aragon. And he comaūded his Cardynals to chele an o ther pope y whiche they dyd anone. And they sette vp an ydoll & named hym Clement/ but they profyted not.

¶ Circa annū dñi. M. CCC. lxx.

¶ And after kynge Edward the thyrde that was borne in Wyndelore regned Rycharde of Burdeux that was prynce Edwardes sone of wales/ y whiche prynce Edward was kynge Edwardes sone

¶ And after the gode kynge Edward the thyrde that was borne at wyndelore regned Rycharde the seconde that was the good syr Edwardes sone/ prynce of wales. the whiche kynge Rycharde was borne in y cyte of Burdeux in Galscopne/ and was crowned at west mynster in the. xi. yere of his aegē. And in the seconde yere of his regne / for the debate that was bytwene the lord Latymer and syr Rauf feryers knyghte that was ayent Harwell and Shakell squyres for y pyloner that was take in spayne/ by thele two squyres / & the whiche pyloner the lord Latymer and syr Rauf feryers wolde haue hadde/ the whyche pyloner was the Erle of Dene that they toke in y batayll of Sparne/ wherfore thele two lordes come into the churche at westmyster and they founde this one squyre too herynge his masse belyde saynt Edwardes shryne and there they slew hym the whiche was called Hawell ¶ And Shakell was arested & put in to the Towre of London/ And there he was longe tyme for he wolde not delyuer the Erle of Dene his pyloner vnto thele two lordes/ by syr Aleyn Burchyll constable of the Towre/ and by syr Rauf feryers one of his aduerysaryes/ tyll the kynge had graunted hym grace ¶ In the thyrde yere of kynge Rycharde came the Galays of fraunce into Englonde vnto dyuerse portes and brente and robbed and slewe moche people of Englonde that is to saye/ atte wyndelore/ see/ Rye/ and Hastinge/ Portymouthe. and Hampton/ Stormore and Grauel ende/ and they dydde moche harme and wente homie ayen. ¶ And in this same yere was a parlemente holden at westmynster / And atte that same parlement was ordeyned y euery man/ womā & chyld that were at y aegē of. xiiii. yere and aboue thurghout all the reame pore folke and other sholde paye to the taslage/ foure pens/ wherfore came and be

felle afterwarde greate mylcheyf & moche dysleale to all the comynalte of there me. ¶ And in the.iiii.yere of kyng Rychardes regne the comynes arose vp in dyuerle partys of the reame and dyden moche harme/the whiche tyme they called þ hurlyng tyme. ¶ And they of Kente and of Estlex made them two cheftayns for to rule and for to gouerne the company of Kente and of Estlex. That one was called Jacke strawe/and that other Watte Tyler/and they come and assembled them vpon blacke heth in Kent. And on Corp<sup>s</sup> christi daye after. they camen downe into Southwerke/and braken vp the pylon hous/that is to saye the kynges bynche and the marshelsee and de:pyerde out all the pyloners/And so the same daye they came in to London and there they robbed the people/and slewe all the alpens that they myght fynde in the cyte/and about the cyte and dyspoyled all theyr godes and made auowe. And on the frydaye nexte followinge after that was on the morowe and than they came to the Toure of London and the kyng beyng therin/they fette out of the Toure the Archebysshop of Launterbury. Syr Symonde Sudbery/and ser Robert halys hospyteler pryoure and mayster of saynt Johans house/ & a whyte frere that was confessor vnto kyng Rycharde and brought thez vnto the Towre hylle and there they smote of theyr heedes and came agayne into London and slewe moche people of the Cyte. ¶ And thenne they wente vnto the dukes place of Lancastrre beyonde saynt Mary of the stronde that was called the Sauoy/and there they deuoured and destroyed all the goodes that they therin myght fynde & bare them awaye and than they brente vp the place. And than afterward they went to saynt Johñs out Smythfelde & destroyed the godes there and brent vp that hous to the hard grounde/and wente too westmynstre

and saynt Martyns the graunte & made them go out of the sentwary all that were within for ony manere of gylthe/ And than come vnto the Temple and to all other Innes of men of lawe and dyspoyled them and robbe them of theyr godes and also toke theyr boke of lawe & thenne they came to London and brake vp the pylon of Newgate & drofe oute all the pyloners felons and other /and of bothe countrees and all the people þ were within them and destroyed all the boke of the counters. And thus they continued both saterdaye and sondaye vnto the mondaye next after in all theyr malyce and wychydnes. ¶ And than on mondaye kyng Rycharde with his lordes þ were with hym that tyme and with the mayer of London wyllyam walworth þ that was that tyme come with the aldermen and the comunes of the cyte/ & they come into Southwerke too here and too knowe the entencion of these rebelles & mylgouerned people. And this Jacke strawe made thanne a crye in the felde that all the people of accorde tholde come nerer and here his claymours & his crye and his wyl. And the lordes and the mayer and the aldermen with the comynalte hauynge indygnacion of his couetyse & fallnes & his foule presumption/ Anone wyllyam walworth þ tyme beyng mayer drewe out his knyfte & slew iacke strawe/ & anone ryght smote of his hede & set it vpon a spere & so it was borne through London & set vpon London brydgc. Anone these rylers & mylgouerned people were banysshed as it had not be they/ & then þ kyng of his grete godenelle & by prayer of his lordes made there. vii knyghts of good & worthy men of þ cyte of London/ þ is to saye wyllyam walworth the þ at tyme mayer & slew iacke strawe and the seconde was Nicholas brembre/and the thyrde Johñ phylipot/ & the fourth Nicholas wyfforde/and þ fyfte Roberte laundes/and the syxte Roberte

gayton. And than þ kyng with his lordes and knyghtes returned ayen too the toure of London and there he rested hytill his people were better celled and set in rest and peas. And than by procelle of tyme as they myght take and gete these rebelles & rylers they honged theym vpon the next galowes thurgh out euery lordshipp in þ reume of Englode by .xl. by xxx. by .x. & by .xii. euery as they myght be gotten & taken in ony partes. ¶ And in the v. yere of kyng Rychardes regne was þ grete erthe quake & was generall thurgh the oute the worlde the wene daye after Wylfonsdaye in the yere of oure lord. M. CCCC. lxxxi. wherfore all maner people were loze agast and aferde longe tyme for drede of vengeaunge that our lord shewed and dyd. ¶ And in the .vi. yere of kyng Rycharde / thenn syr Henry spenser bysshop of Norwiche went with a greate company ouer se into Flaunders and there they gete the towne of Grauenynge & the towne of burbrughe Dunkerk & Newport and there they laded & fraughted .li. shippes with pelage for to haue comen in to Englonde with these shippes and goodes. And the bysshop of Norwyche and his counseyll lete brenne these shippes with all the pelage in the same haven all into harde allthes / and at Dunkerk was done a greate batayll betwene the Flemynge & the Englyshmen. And at þ batayll were slayne a grete multytude of the Flemynge & a grete nombre. And than wente the bysshop with his retinue to yppers & besyged it a longe tyme but it myght not be gotten. & so left that spege and come ayen into Englonde / for our Englyshmen were fouly destroyed & many deyed on þ flyx. and in this yere come quene Anne into Englode for to be spouled to kyng Rycharde & hir fader was Emperour of Almayne & kyng of Beme / & with hir come the duke of Tally hir vncle and many other worthy lordes & knyghtes of hir countre

of Beme and of other duche tonges to do hir reuerence & worlshipp. And syr Symonde beuerle a worthy knyght of þ garter and other knyghtes and squyres that were the kynges embassatours brought hir in to Englonde and so forth to London. And the people of þ cyte / that is to saye the mayer & the aldermen and all comyns rode ayenste hir to welcome hir / and euery man in goode arape and euery craft with his mynstrallie in the best maner wyle and mette with hir on the blacke heche in Kent and so brought hir vnto London thurgh the cyte and so forth vnto westmynster vnto the kynges palays. And there she was spouled vnto kyng Rycharde well and worthely in the abbaye of westmynster and there she was crowned quene of Englonde. And all hir frendes that came with hir had den grete gyftes & were well cheryshed & refreshed as longe tyme as they abode there. ¶ And in this same yere ther was a batayll done in the kynges palays at westmynster for certayn poyntes of treason betwene syr John Anslie knyght defendaunt / and Carton squyre the appelleant. But this syr John of Anslie ouer came this Carton and made hym to yelde hym within þ lyktes. And anone was this Carton dyspoyled of his harneys & drawen out of the lyktes and so forth vnto Tyburne and there he was hanged for his fallnesse. ¶ And in the .viii. yere / of the regne of kyng Rycharde the seconde / syr Edmonde of Langley the Erle of Cambrydge kyng Rychardes vncle wente in too Portyngale wyth a fayr companye of men of armes and archers in strengthynge and helpynge the kyng of Portyngale ayenst þ kyng of Spayne & his power / and there the kyng of Portyngale had the vctory of his enemyes thurgh the helpe and comforte of our Englyshmen. And whan that Journey was done þ erle of Cambrydge come home ayen with his people into

Englonde in hast blessed be god and his  
 bleſſyd gyftes. Amen. ¶ And this ſame  
 yere kyng Rycharde helde his Cryſtmas  
 in the maner of Eltham. ¶ And the ſa  
 me yere and tyme the kyng of Armony  
 fledde out of his owne londe and come  
 in to Englonde for to haue helpe and ſo  
 coure of oure kyng apenſt his enemyes  
 that hadde dryuen hym out of his owne  
 reame. And ſo he was brought vnto the  
 kyng to Eltham there as the kyng hel  
 de his ryall feſt of Cryſtmaſſe. ¶ And  
 there our kyng welcomed hym and did  
 hym moche reuerence & worſhyy & com  
 maunded all his lordes to make hym al  
 the chere that euer they coude. And than  
 he beſought the kyng of his grace and  
 of helpe & of his comfort in his nede/ &  
 y he myght be brought ayen to his king  
 dome and londe. for the Turkes hadde  
 deuoured and beſtroyed the moost parte  
 of his londe/ & how he fledde for drede/  
 and come hyder for ſocour & helpe. And  
 thenne the kyng hauynge on hym pyte  
 and compaſſyon of his greate myſcheif  
 and greuous dyſcale anonc he toke hys  
 couſeyll and alked what was beſte to do  
 And they answered and layd yf it lyked  
 hym to gyue hym ony good it were wel  
 done. And as touchynge his people for  
 to trauell ſo ferre into out londes it were  
 a greate Jeoperdye/ And ſoo the kyng  
 gaaf hym golde and ſyluer and many  
 ryche gyftes and Jewels and betaughte  
 hym to god/ and ſo he paſſed ayen oute  
 of Englonde. ¶ And in this ſame yere  
 kyng Rycharde with a ryall power we  
 te into Scotlonde for to warre vpon the  
 Scottes for the fallnes and deſtruccyon  
 that the Scottes had done vnto Englyſh  
 men in the Marches. And thanne the  
 Scottes come downe too the kyng for  
 to treate with hym and with his lordes  
 for trewes as for certayne yeres. And ſo  
 our kyng & his couſeyll graūted theym  
 trewes for certayne yeres/ and our kyng  
 tomed hym ayen into Englonde. And

whan he was comen vnto yorke there he  
 abode and reſted hym there. And there  
 ſyr Johā Holonde the erle of Kentes bro  
 der ſlewe the erles ſone of Stafforde &  
 his heyre with a dagger in y cyte of yor  
 ke/ wherfore the kyng was ſore anoyed  
 & greued & remeued thens & came to Lō  
 don/ And the mayer with y aldermen &  
 the compyns with all the ſolempnyte that  
 myght be done ryden apenſte y kyng &  
 brought hym ryally thugh the cyte and  
 ſoo forth vnto weſtmynſter to his owne  
 palays. ¶ And in the .ix. yere of kyng  
 Rychardes regne he helde a parlement  
 at weſtmynſter & there he made two du  
 kes & a marqueys & ſyue erles. The fyrſt  
 that was made duke was the kynges vn  
 cle ſyr Edmonde of Langle erle of Cam  
 brydge & hym he made duke of yorke/ &  
 his oſher vncler ſyr Thomas of woodſtok  
 that was erle of Bukyngham hym he  
 made duke of Glouceſtre. And ſyr Lyon  
 uer y was erle of Oxforde hym he made  
 marqueys of Deuelpne. And Henry of  
 Balyngbrok the dukes ſone of Lancal  
 tre hym he made erle of Derby. And ſir  
 Edwarde y dukes ſone of yorke hym he  
 made erle of Ruttelonde/ And ſyre Jo  
 han Holonde that was the Erle of Kent  
 es broder and hym he dyd make erle of  
 Huntynghdon / ¶ And ſyre Thomas  
 Mombraie/ hym he made Erle of Noſ  
 tyngham/ and the Erle Marſhalle of  
 Englōde. And ſir Mychel de la pole kny  
 ght hy he made erle of South folk and  
 Chaūceler of Englōde. And y erle of y  
 Marche at y ſame parlemēt holden at  
 weſtmynſter in playne parlemēt amon  
 ges all the lordes & compyns was procla  
 med erle of the Marche and heyre pa  
 rente to the crowne of Englonde aftere  
 kyng Rycharde/ the whiche erle of the  
 Marche wente ouer ſee in to Irlonde/  
 vnto his lordſhyppes and londes/ for the  
 erle of Marche is erle of Ulſter in Irlon  
 de and by ryght lynes and herpytage. And  
 there atte the caſtell of hys he laye that

tyme/and there came vpon hym a grete  
multytude inbusshmetes of wylde Jryl  
shmen for to take hym and destroye h<sup>y</sup>  
And he come out spherly of his castell w<sup>th</sup>  
his people and manly faught with th<sup>e</sup>  
and there he was taken & hewen all too  
pyeces and so he deyed vpon whos soule  
god hauc mercy. ¶ And in the .x. yere of  
kynge Rychardes regne the erle of Arū  
dell went to the see with a greate nauye  
of shyppes & armed with men of armes  
& good archers/And whan they come in  
the brode see they mette with the hole fle  
te h<sup>e</sup> come with wyne lade from Rochell  
the whiche wyne were encyptes goodes  
And there our nauye sette vpon theym &  
toke theym all and brought theym vnto  
dpuerle portes and hauens of Englonde  
& some to London/and there ye myghte  
haue had a tonne of Rochell wyne of h<sup>e</sup>  
beste for .xx. shellynge sterlynge/and soo  
we had greate chepe of wyne in Englon  
de h<sup>e</sup> tyme thanked be god almyghty.

¶ How the fyue lordes arosen at Rat  
tecote brydge.

**A**nd in the regne of kynge Richar  
de the .xi. yere thenne fyue lordes  
arosen at Rattecote brydge in h<sup>e</sup> destruc  
tyon of the rebelles h<sup>e</sup> were that tyme in  
all the reame. ¶ The fyrste of these fy  
ue lordes was syr Thomas of wodstok  
the kynges vnckle & duke of Gloucestre/  
and the seconde was syr Rycharde erle  
of Arundell/and the thyrde was syr Ry  
chardeerle of warwch the fourth was  
syr Henry Balynbrokerle of Derby/ h<sup>e</sup>  
fyfte was syr Thomas Mombriay erle  
of Notyngham. And these .v. lordes law  
the myschyef & mylgouernaunce and the  
fallnes of h<sup>e</sup> kynges counseyll/wherfore  
they h<sup>e</sup> were that tyme cheyf of h<sup>e</sup> kynges  
counseyll fledde out of this londe ouer le  
that is to saye syr Alysander Neuell the  
Archebysshop of porke/and syr Roberte  
Lewe marquepes of Deuelpne and erle.

of Oxfoide/and syr Mychell de la pole/  
erle of South folk & Chaunceler of En  
glonde. And these thre lordes went ouer  
lee and came neuer ayen for there they de  
yed. ¶ And than these fyue lordes aboue  
sayd made a parlemente at westmynster  
and there they toke syr Robert Tresily  
am the Justyce and syr Nicholl Brem  
bre knyght and cyteseyn of London and  
syr John Salesbury a knyghte of h<sup>e</sup> ky  
ges housholde & vke sergeaūt of armes  
and many moo of other people were ta  
ken and Juge d vnto the dethe by h<sup>e</sup> coun  
seyll of these .v. lordes in that parlement  
at westmynster for h<sup>e</sup> treason h<sup>e</sup> they putt  
vpon theym to be drawen frome h<sup>e</sup> toure  
of London thurgh out the cyte & so forth  
vnto Tyburne & there they sholde be hā  
ged and theyr throtes to be cutte & thus  
they were serued & deyed. And after that  
in this same parlement at westmynster  
was syr Symond Beuerle h<sup>e</sup> was a kny  
ght of the garter and syre John Beau  
champ knyght that was steward of h<sup>e</sup>  
kynges housholde/ & syr Jamys Ber  
ners were for Juge d vnto the dethe and  
than they were ledde on fote to the toure  
hulle & there were theyr hedes smyten of  
and many other moo by these .v. lordes  
¶ In this same parlement and in h<sup>e</sup> .xi  
yere of kynge Rycharde's regne he lete cry  
& ordeyne a generall Justes h<sup>e</sup> is called a  
turnement of lordes and knyghtes. And  
this Justes & turnement were holden at  
London in smythfelde of all manere of  
straūgers of what londe or coutree h<sup>e</sup> euer  
they were & thyder they were ryght wel  
come & to th<sup>e</sup> & to all other was holden  
open housholde & grete festes/ & also gre  
te gyftes were gyuen too all manere of  
straungers. And of the kynges syde we  
re all of one sute their cotes ther armure  
sheldes hors trappure and all was white  
herces with crownes about theyr neckes  
and chaynes of golde hangynge ther vp  
pon and the crowne hangynge lowe befo  
re the herces body/ the whiche herte was

the kynges leuerape that he gaaf to lordes and ladyes knyghtes and squyres for to knowe his housholde frome other people. And in this feest camen to þe Justes xxiiii. ladyes and ledde. xxiiii. lordes of þe garter with chapnes of golde and all þe same lutes of hertes as it is before sayd frome the toure on hors backe thurgh þe cyte of London in to Smythfelde there þe the Justes sholde be holden. And this feest and Justes was holden generalle for all tho that wolde come theder of what londe & nacyon þe euer they were. And this was holden duryng. xxiiii. dayes of the kynges costes/ and these. xxiiii. lordes to answer all manere people that wold come thyder. And theder came the erle of saynt poule of fraunce and many other worthy knyghtes with hym of dyuerse partyes full worthely arayed. And out of holande & henaude came the lorde/ Otreuaüt þe was the dukes lone of holand and many other worthy knyghtes with hym of holland & full well arayed. And whan this feest & Justyng was ended þe kyng thanked this straügers and gaaf them many ryche gyftes. And soo they token theyr leue of þe kyng and of other lordes & ladyes & wente home ayē into theyr owne couñtries with grete loue & moche thanke. ¶ And in þe. xiii. yere of kyng Rychardes regne there was a batayll done in the kynges palays at west mynster kytwene a squyer of Nauerne þe was with kyng Rycharde/ & an othere squyre þe was called Johñ walsh for poyntes of treason þe this Nauerne put vpon this walsh the man. but this Nauerne was ouercomen & yelde hym recreaunt to his aduersary. And anone he was dyspoyled of his armure & drawen out of the palays to Tyburne & there was hanged for his fallnes. ¶ And the. xiiii. yere of kyng Rychardes regne syr Johñ of Gaüt duke of Lancastre wente ouer see in too Spayne for to chalenge his ryght that he had by his wyfes tytyle vnto the crow

ne of Spayne with a greate host of people and men of armes and archers. and he had with hym the duchesse his wyfe & his thre doughters ouer see into Spayne/ & there they were a greate whyle/ & at the laste the kyng of Spayne began to treate with þe duke of Lancastre & they were accorded togyder thurgh theyr both couñsell in this manere/ þe the kyng of Spayne sholde wedde þe dukes doughter of Lancastre that was the ryght heyre of Spayne/ and he sholde gyue vnto þe duke of Lancastre golde and syluer þe were cast into greate wegges and many other Jewels as moche as. viii. charyctes myght carpe. And euery yere after duryng the dukes lyfe of Lancastre and of þe dukes his wyf. x. thousande marke of gold. Of whyche golde the auenture & charge sholde be to theym of Spayne & yerely byng vnto Bayon to the dukes assygnes by surete made. And also þe duke married an othere of his doughters vnto the kyng of portyngale the same tyme/ & whan he had done so he come home again in to Englonde and his goode lady his wyfe also/ but many worthy men departed vpon the flyx. ¶ In the. xv. yere of kyng Rychardes regne he helde his crist masse in the maner of wodstok and there the erle of Penbroke among lorde and tendre of aege wolde terne to Juste with a knyght that was called syr Johñ of saynt Johñ/ and rode togyder in þe parke of wodstoke/ and there this worthy erle of Penbroke was slayne with that othere knyghtes spere as he cast it frome hym whan þe they had coupled/ and thus the good erle made there his ende/ and therefore þe kyng & the quene made moche sorowe for his dethe. ¶ And in þe. xvi. yere of kyng Rychardes regne Johñ he de beyng that tyme mayer of London and Johñ walworth & Henry banner beyng shreues of London/ that same tyme a bakers man bare a basket of hors brede in too fletstrete towarde an hostre



and there came a yonge man of the byshop of Salysbury that was called Romayn and he toke a hors lose out of the basket of þe bakers/ & he alked hym why he dyd so/ and this Romayn toined ayē and brake the bakers heed/ And neygh/ hours came out and wolde haue arested this Romayn & he brake frome them & fledde to his lordes place and the Con/ stable wolde haue had hym oute/ but the byshops men chette fast the pates and kept þe place þe no man myght entre and than moche more people gadred thyder and sayd that they wolde haue hym oute or els they woldr brenne vþ þe place and all that were within/ And than came þe mayer and shreues with moche otheer peple & cellyd þe malyce of the compyns and made cuery man to go home to ther houses & kepe peas. And this Romayns lorde the byshop of Salesbury mayster Johan waltham þe at þe tyme was tresourer of Englonde went to syr Thomas Arūdell Archebyshop of porke & Chaūceler of Englonde/ & there þe byshop made his complaynt vnto þe Chaūceler on the peple of the cyte of London. And thā these two byshops of greate malyce & vengeaūce come vnto the kynge at wyndesore & made a greate cōplaynt vpon þe mayer & shreues. And anone all the cyte afterwarde came before the kynge and his cōsleyll/ & they caste vnto the cyte a greuous herte & a wonder grete malyce. And anone sodeynly the kyng sent after the mayer of London & for the two shreues/ & they came to hym vnto the castell of wyndesore. And the kyng rebuked the mayer and shreues full foule for the offence that they had done ayenst hym & his offycers in his chambie at London. Wherfore he depoled and putte oute the mayer and both shreues/ and this was done the. xiiii. dayes afore the feste of saynt Johan Baptyst. And thanne the kyng called to hym a knyght that was called syr Edward dalyngrygge & ma

de hym wardeyne & gouernoure of the cyte and chambie of London & ouer all his people therin. And so he kepte that offyce but foure weekes bycause that he was so gentyll & tendre too þe cytezens of London/ wherfore the kynge depoled hym & made syr Haudewyne radnyngtō knyght þe was Courtrouller of þe kynges houlhold wardeyne & gouernour of his chambie and of his people theryn/ and chose to hym two worthy men of the cyte to be shreues with hym too gouerne & kepe þe kynges lawes in þe cyte/ that one was called Sylbert mawefelde & thanother Thomas newenton shreues. And than the mayer & the two shreues and all the aldermen with all þe worthy craftes of London went on foot vnto the towre of London/ & there came out the Conestable of the towre & gaaf þe mayer and the shreues theyr othe and charge as thei sholde haue taken in þe Eschequer of westmynster in þe kynges court of his Justyces & Barons of þe Eschequer & thanne went they home ayen. And than the kyng & his cōsleyll for þe greate malyce & despyte þe they had to þe cyte of London remeued all his courtes frome westmynster vnto the cyte of porke/ þe is to saye þe Chauncelar þe Eschequer þe kynges byrche and the comune place/ & there they helde all these courtes of lawe fro myd/ somer/ that is to saye the feste of saynt Johan Baptyst vnto the feste of Cryste masse next comynge. And thanne þe kyng & his cōsleyll lawe it not so proffyttable there. as it was at London/ than anone he remeued it ayen to London & so to westmynster for grete ease of his officers & a vauntage to þe kyng & all þe comunnes of the reame. And whanne the peple of London sawe and knewe that thele courtes were comen ayen/ and þe kyng & his people also/ than þe mayer & the aldermen wyth the chyeft Comunes of the cyte lete gadre a grete somme of golde of all the Comunes of the Cyte/ and

ordeyned & made greate ryaltees apcns his compynge to London for to haue his grace & good lordshyp & also theyr lybertees and fraunchyses graūted vnto them apcn as they were wonte too haue afore tyme. And through greate instaūce & prayer of the quene & of other lordes & ladyes the kynge graūted them grace. And this was done at Shene in Sucherey. ¶ And than the kynge within two dayes after came to London. & the mayer of þe cyte with the shreues aldermen & al the worthy men of þe cyte afterwarde rode apenst hym in good araye vnto þe the on this syde of Shene þe mayer submyttinge them homely & mekely with all maner obeyssaūce vnto hym as they oughten to doo. And thus they broughte the kynge & þe quene to London. and whā the kynge came to þe piate of Londō byrdege there they presented hym with a mylke whyte stede sadled and bydled and trapped with clothe of golde and reed parcyed togyder. and þe quene a palfrey all whyte in the same araye trappyd w whyte & reed. and all the conduytes of London ranne with wyne both whyte & reed. for all maner peple to drynke who wolde. And bytwene saynt Poules and the crosse in thepe there was made a stage a ryal standyng vpon hygh and ther in were many angelles with dyuers melodyes and songes. And than an angelle came downe frome the stage on hygh by a vyce and set a crowne of golde pyght with ryche perles & precyous stones vpon the kynges heed and an other vpon the quenes heed. And soo the cytezeyns brought the kynge and the quene to west mynster in to theyr palays. And than on the morne after the mayer & the shreues and the aldermen of London camen vnto the kynge to his palays at westmynster & presentc hym with two balsyns of syluer and ouergylted full of coyned golde the somme of .xx. hondred pounde pryenge hym of his byghe mercye & grace

and lordshyp and speycally grace that they myght haue his good loue with the lybertees and fraunchyses lyke wyle as they were wonte for too haue before tymes and by his letters patentes and his chartre confermed. And the quene and other worthy lordes & ladyes fell on ther knees & belought the kynge of grace to conferme this. Than the kynge toke vpon the quene and graūted hir all hir askynge. And than they thanked the kynge & the quene & wente home apen. ¶ And in xvi yere of kynge Rychardes regne certayne lordes of Scotlonde came into Englonde for to gete worlshyp as by feet of armes. this were the perlones. The erle of Marre & he chalenged the erle of Arshall of Englonde to Juste with hym certayne poyntes on horsbak with sharpe speres. & they rode togyder as two worthy knyghtes & lordes certayne courles. but not the full chalenge þe Scottes erle made. for he was cast both hors and man & two of his rybbes broken with þe falle & so he was borne thens out of mythfelde home to his Inne. And within a lytell tyme after he was carped home in a hors lytter and at yorke he deped. And syre wylliam Darell knyghte and the kynges banerere of Scotlonde than made an other chalenge with syr pers courtayne knyght and the kynges banerere of Englonde of certayn courles yet on hors bache in the same felde. and whanne he hadde ryden certayne courles & assayed he myght not haue the better he gaaf it ouer and wolde nomore of his chalenge w syr pers courtayne knyght & þe kyngs banerere of Englonde and turned his hors and rode home vnto his owne Inn. And one Lockeborne a squyre of Scotlonde chalenged syr Rycholl Hawberke a knyghte of certayne courles yet wyth sharpe speres and roden fyue courles to gyder and at euery courle the Scot was caste downe bothe hors and man. and thus oure Englysh lordes thanked be

god had the felde. And in the .xvii. yere of kynges Rychardes regne deyed the good gracypous quene Anne that was wyfe to kynges Rycharde in the manere of Shene in the shyre of Surrey vpon wite sondaye/and than was she broughte to London and so to westmynstre and there was she buried and worthely entered helyde saynt Edwardes shyre/ on whose soule almyghty god haue pyte and in his mercy. Amen.

How kynges Rycharde spoused dame Blabell the kynges doughter of fraunce in the towne of Calays and brought hir into Englonde and lette hir be crowned quene in the abbaye of saynt Peters of westmynstre.

In the .xx. yere of kynges Rychardes regne he wente hymselfe ouer see vnto Calays with dukes erles lordes & barons and many other worthy squyres with greate araye and comune people of the reame in good araye/as longed to suche a kynges and prynce of his nobley & of his owne persone to do hym reuerence & obseruaunce as ought to be done too theyr lyege lorde & so myghty a kynges & Emperoure in his owne to abyde & receyue ther þe worthy & gracypous lady þe holde be his wyfe a yonge creature of .xix. yere of aege dame Blabell the kynges doughter of fraunce & other worthy lordes of greate name both barons & knyghtes with moche other people þe camen to the towne of Grauenynge & two dukes of fraunce þe one was the duke of Burgoyne and þe other the duke of Barre that wolde no further lesse than they had pledges. And than kynges Rycharde delyuerd two pledges for them for to go lauf & come lauf his two worthy vnckles the duke of Gloucestre & þe duke of York & these two went ouer þe water of grauenynge & abode there as for pledgys to the tyme þe the maryage was done/and that

these two dukes of fraunce were come ayen vnto Grauenynge water. And than these two worthy dukes came ouer þe water at Grauenynge & so to Calays with this worthypfull lady dame Blabell þe was the kynges doughter of fraunce & with hir came many a worthy lorde and che lady & knyghtes & squyres in þe best araye þe myght be & so brought hir into the towne of Calays. And there she was receyued with all the solempnyte & worthyp that myghte be done vnto suche a lady. And than they broughte hir vnto the kynges. and the kynges toke hir & welcomed hir and all hir fayre company & made there all the solempnyte þe myghte be done. And than the kynges & his counseill asked of the frenche lordes whether all the couenautes & forwardes wiche the compolycyon that were ordeyned & made on bothe partyes sholde be truly kepte and holde bytwene theym. And they sayd yea/ and there they swore and toke theyr charge vpon a booke and made theyr othe well and truly it to hold in all maner of poyntes and couenautes withoute contradycyon or delay in ony maner wyse. And than was she brought to saynt Nicholas chirche in Calays and there she was worthely wedded with the moost solempnyte þe ony kynges or quene myght be/ wiche Archebyschops & byschops & all the mynystrs of holy chirche. and than they were brought to þe castell & lett to mete. And were serued with all delycable of ryall metes & drynkes plentefouly to all maner of straungers & all other & no creature warned þe feest/ but al were welcomie/ for there were greate halles & tentes set vpon the grene without þe castell to receyue all manere of people. and euery offyce redy for to serue theym all. And thus this worthy maryage was so lemply done & ended with all ryalte. and thanne these two worthy dukes of fraunce with theyr people taken theyr leue of the kynges and of the quene and went

apen vnto Grauenynge water. And there the frensche lordes, that is to say the two dukes and all theyr menye were comen ouer the water to Grauenynge & they mette with our two dukes, and euerychone toke leue at other and so they departed, and our lordes camen apen vnto Calays, and the frensche lordes wenten ouer the water and so home into fraunce apen. ¶ And anone after the kyngge made hym redy with the quene and all his lordes and ladyes and all theyr people with theym and came ouer the see into Englonde and so vnto London. And the mayer and the shreues with all the aldermen and worthy comunes rode apenst them vnto the blacke heche in too Kente, and there they mette with þe kyngge and the quene and welcomed theym and that in good araye, and euery man in the clothyng of his craft and theyr mynstrels before them. And so they brought theym vnto saynt Georges barre in Southwarke & there they token theyr leue. And the kyngge and the quene rode to Kenyngton and than þe people of London toined home apen. And in comyng apen to London brydge there was soo greate presse of people both on hors & on foote that there were deed on þe brydge, xi. persones of men & women & children on whos soules almyghty god haue mercy & pyte amen. ¶ And than afterwarde the quene was brought to the towre of London, & there she was all nyght & on the mornynge she was brought thurgh the cyte of London and so forth vnto westminster and there she was crowned quene of Englonde, and than she was brought apen vnto the kynges palays and there was holden open, and a ryall feest at hir coronacyon of all maner people that theyder come, & this was done the sondaye nexte after the feest of saynt Clemente. in the .xx. yere of kyngge Rychardes regne. And than the .xxv. daye of Auguste, next after by euyll excytacyon and fals

couseyll & for grete wrathe & malyce þe kyngge had of olde tyme vnto his vnckle þe good duke of Gloucestre and to the erle nt Arūdell and too the erle of warwyk. Anone the kyngge by his euyll excytacyon and his euyll couseyll & malyce late in þe euenyng on the same daye aboute sayd made hym redy with his strengthe & rode into Estsex vnto the towne of Chelmsford and so come to Plasse sodenly there fyr Thomas of woodstok the good duke of Gloucestre laye, and the good duke came to welcome the kyngge anone. & the kyngge arested the good duke hymselfe with his owne body, & so he was ladde downe to the water and anone put into a shyp and anone had to Calays & brought into the Capytayns warde to be kepte in holde by the kynges commaundement of Englonde. And that tyme there le Marchall was Capytayne of Calays. And anone after by commaundement of the kyngge and by hys fals counseyll commaūded the capytayne to put hym to the dethe. And anone certayne yomen that had the good duke in keepynge toke theyr couseyll how that they sholde put hym vnto dethe. And this was theyr apoyntement that they sholde come vpon hym whanne he were in his bedde and a slepe on a fetheren bedde, and anone they bounde hym honde and fote & charged hym to lye styll. And whan that they hadde done thus they token two smale towelles and made on theym two rydyge knottes and caste the towelles about his necke, & than they toke þe fetheren bed þe laye vnder hym & cast it aboute hym & than they drewe theyr towelles eche wayes and some laye vpon the fetheren bed vpon hym vnto the tyme that he was dede bycause that he sholde make no noys and thus they strangled thys worthy duke vnto the dethe, vpon whos soule god for hys hygge pyte haue mercy. Amen. ¶ And whan the kyngge had rested thus this worthy duke and his vnckle & sente

hym to Calays he came ayen to London in all the hast with a wonder greate people/ And as sone as he was comen he set for the erle of Arundell/ and for the gode erle of warwyk / And anone as they came he arested theym hymselfe. and syr Johan Cobham and syr John Cheyne knyghtes he arested theym in the same maner tyll he made his parlemente. and anone they were putte into holde/ but the erle of Arundell wente at large vnto the parlemente tyme/ for he soude luffycient surete/ to abyde the lawe & to answere to all manere poyntes that the kyng & his counseyll wolde putte vpon hym/ ¶ And the .xxi. yere of kynges Rychardes regne he ordeyned hym a parlement at westmynster the whiche was called the greate parlemente/ And thys parlement was made for to Iuge thys three worthy lordes and other moo as they lyst at that tyme/ And for that Iugemente/ the kyng lete make in all the haste a longe hous and a large of tymbre the whiche was called an halle & couered wth tiles ouer & it was open all about on both sydes & at the endes that all maner of men myght se thurgh oute/ and there the doome was holden vpon these forsayd lordes and Iugement gyuen at this forsayd parlement. And for to come vnto this parlement the kyng sente his wryttes to euery lord baron knyghte & cuery squyre. in euery shyre thurgh out Englonde the euery lord shold gadre & brynge his reuenue with hym in as shorte & in the best araye that they myght gete in mayntenynge & in the strengthynge of the kynges ayenste theym that were his enemyes/ and that this were done in all the haste and come to hym in payne of dethe. And the kyngge hymselfe sent into Chelstreshyre to cheyfe sayns of the countree/ and they gadred and brought a greate & an huge company of people both of knyghtes & squyres and pyncypally of yomen of Chelstreshyre the whiche yomen and archers the kyng to

he to his owne court and gaf them bowge of court and good wages to be keepers of his owne body both by nyght and by daye aboue all other perlonas and moste loued and beste truste/ the whiche sone afterwarde toined the kyng to grete losse and shame byndynge and his vtterlye vndoyng & destruccyon as ye shall here afterwarde. And that tyme came sir Henry of Derby with a greate menyng of men of armes and archers/ and the Erle of Rutlonde come with a stronge power of peple bothe of men of armes and archers/ And the erle of Bente brought a greate power of men of armes and archers. the erle Marchall came in the same manere/ The erle of Northumberlonde and syr Henry Percy his sone/ and syr Thomas Percy the erles broder. And all the se worthy lordes brought a fayr menyng & a stronge power & eche man in his beste araye. And the duke of Lancastre & the duke of yorke came in the same manere wth men of armes and archers folowynge the kyng. And syr William Strop tresourer of Englonde came in the same manere/ And thus in this araye came all the worthy men of thislonde vnto our kyng & all these people came to London in one daye/ in soo moche that euery strete and lane in London and in the subarbes were full of theym lodged and .x. or .xii. myle abowte London on euery waye/ And these people brought the kyng to westmynster & went home ayen to theyr lodgyngs both hors and man/ and than on the mondaye the .xii. daye of Septembre the parlement began at westmynster the whiche was called the grete parlement ¶ And on the frydaye nexte afte the Erle of Arundell was broughte in too the parlement amonge all the lordes/ and the .vi. was on saynt Mathewes daye the apostle & euangelyst/ there he was for Iuged vnto the dethe in this halle the .vi. was made in the palays atte westmynster/ And

this was his Jugement/ he sholde go on foot with his hondes boude behynde hy frome the place that he was Juged in. & so forth thurgh the cyte of London vnto the Towre hylle and his heed to be smitten of and soo it was done in dede in the same place. And. vi. of the grettest lordes that late on his Jugemente roden with hym vnto the place there he was done to the dethe/ and so to se that the execucyon were done after the dome. And by þ kin ges cōmaundement/ with them went on foot men of armes and archers a greate multytude of Chestrelhyre men in strengethyng of the lordes that brought this erle to his dethe/ for they dredde lest the erle sholde be rescowed and taken from them whanne they come into London. Thus he passed forth thurgh the cyte vnto his dethe. and there he toke it full paciently/ on whos soule god haue mercye Amen. And than come the frere Austins and toke vp the body and the heede of this good erle and bare it home to theyr place and buryed hym in theyr quyre. & in the morne after was syr Rycharde erle of warwyk brought into the parlemēte there as the erle of Arundell was for Juged/ and they gaaf the erle of warwyk the same Jugement that the foilsayd erle had/ but the lordes had compassyon of hym bycause he was of more grette age and released hym into perpetuall pryson/ & put hym into the plonde of Man And thenne on the mondaye nexte after/ the lorde Johanne Cobham of Kente/ & syr Johan Cheyn knyghtes were alsoo brought into the same parlement in the same halle/ and there they were for Juged for too be hanged and drawen/ but thurgh the prayers and greate Instaunce of all the lordes that Jugement was foryeuen to them and released into perpetuall pryson. ¶ And in this same yere was Rycharde Wyttyngdon mayer of London/ and John wodecok & wyllpā Alkam shreues of London. ¶ And they

ordeyned at euery pate of London durys ge this same parlement stronge watche of men of armes and archers and thurgh out euery warde also. And the kyng made. v. dukes and one markeys & four erles/ and the fyrste of them was the erle of Derby & he was made duke of Herforde/ And the seconde also was the erle of Rutlonde and he was made duke of Awemarle. And the thyrde was the erle of Kent and he was made duke of Surre. And the fourth was the erle of Hunslyngdon and he was made duke of Excestre: And the fyfte was the erle of Northfolke. And the erle of Somerlete he was made markeys of Dorset. And the lord Spenser was made Erle of Gloucestre/ And the lorde Neuppl of raby was made erle of westmerlonde/ And syr Thomas Percy was made erle of worcestre. And syr wylliam Scrope that was tresourere of Englonde was made erle of wylteshyre. And syr John mōtagu erle of Salisbury. And whan the kyng had thus done he helde the parlemēte and ryalle fest vnto all his lordes and to all maner people that thyder wolde come. ¶ And this same yere deped syr John of Gaunt the kynges vncle and duke of Lancastre in þ byllshops inne in Holdorne. and was brought fro thens to saynt Poule & there the kyng made and helde his entere ment well and worthely with all his lordes in the chirche of saynt Poule in London/ and there he was buryed belyde dame Blaūce his wyfe þ was doughter & heyre vnto the good Henry that was duke of Lancastre. In the same yere there fell a dyscencion bytwere þ duke of Herforde and the duke of Norfolk in some che þ they waged batayll and casten downe theyr gloues & than they were taken vp & enlealed & þ batayll Joyned & the day set & þ place assygned where & whā and this sholde be at Louentre. ¶ And thyder come the kyng wyth all hys lordes

des at that daye and was set in the felde and than these two worthy lordes came into þe felde well and clene armed & well arayed with all theyr wepen & redy too done theyr batayll & were redy in þe place for to fyght at bitteraunce. But þe kyng had them ceste & toke þe quarell into his honde. And forth with ryght there presētēte cryled þe duke of Herforde for terme of x. yere. & the duke of Norfolke for euere more. And syr Thomas of Arūdell Archebysshop of Caūterbury was cryled þe same tyme for euere & deposed out of his see for malyce of the kyng. & anone these thre worthy lordes were comāūded & defēded þe kyngs reame. And anone they gate theym shypes at dyuerse hauens and went ouer see into dyuerse londes eche his waye. And the duke of Norfolke wente too Venyce and there he deyed on whos soule god haue mercy. Amen. and than kyng Rycharde made a clerke of his syr Roger Walden Archebysshop of Caunterbury. ¶ And in the .xxii. yere of kyng Rychardes regne by fals counseyll ymagynacon of coueytous men þe were about hym were made & ordeyned blanke chertres and made theym to be ensembled of all maner ryche men through oute the reame. In so moche that they compelled dyuerse people to sette theyr seales cherto. And this was done for grete couetyse wherfore all gode hertes of the reame were clene toined awaye fro the kyng for euere after. And that was vterly his dystruccyon and ende to hym þe was soo hyghe and soo excellente prynce and kyng and through couetous & fals counseyll falsly betrayed. Alas for pyte that suche a kyng myght not se. ¶ And thā kyng Rycharde sette his kyngdome & hys ryall londe of Englonde too ferme vnto four persones/ the whiche were the se/ Syr wylliam strop erle of wylshyre and tresourer of Englonde / and syr Johan Bullhe/ and Henry grene/ and syr Johan Bagot knyghtes that whyche/

toined theym too myscheyf and deche w in a lytell tyme as ye shall fynde here afterwarde wryten. ¶ And than kyng Rycharde made grete ordynaūce & wente hymself ouer see in to Irlande & many grete lordes with hym w ich a grete holte for to strench theyr kyng with men of armes archers and moche grete stuff & ryghte good ordynaūce as longed vnto warre And or he passed ouer see he ordeyned & made syr Edmonde of Langley his vnclē þe duke of yorke/ his lpuetenāūte of Englonde in his absence with the gouernaūce & counseyll of the .c. four knyghtes that had taken Englonde to ferme of the kyng. And than he passed the see and came into Irlande and there he was well & worthely receyued. And these rebelles that ben called wylde Iryshme came downe to the kyng & yolde them to hym both body & goodes all at his owne wyll/ and swore vnto hym to be hys lyege men/ and there dyd to hym homage and feaute and good seruyse / & thus he conquered the moost parte of Irlande in a lytell tyme. ¶ And whyle that kyng Rycharde was thus in Irlande/ syr Henry of Bolyngbroke erle of Derby that the kyng had made before duke of Herforde/ the whiche duke the kyng had cryled out of this lond was comen apen in to Englonde for to chalenge the dukedome of Lancastre as for his ryght & trewherytage/ & he came downe out of fraunce by londe vnto Calays. And there met hym syr Thomas of Arūdell þe was Archebysshop of Caūterbury þe was cryled out of Englonde/ & with hym came the erle of Arūdell his sone & heyre þe which was in keppe of syr John helley knight sōtyme w the erle of Hūtyngdō & with the duke of Excestre þe which was tho in þe castell of Regate in southsex/ & there he stalle hym awaye & came too Calays and there he was kept well & worthely tyll these other two lordes were comen/ to Calays. ¶ And than this worthy dur

he and syr Thomas of Arundell Arche  
 bysshop of Caüterbury shynned in þ ha  
 uen of Calays & drewe theyr cours nor  
 ward and arpyued in yorke shyre at Ra  
 uenpoune faste by wydelyngton / & there  
 he came & entred fyrste the londe & two  
 lordes with hym and theyr nauye. And  
 soo thanne moche people of the reame /  
 that whan they herde of his comynge &  
 knewen where that he was and anone /  
 they drewen vnto hym and welcomed  
 these lordes and soo gaaf them coura  
 ge in all manere thyng and soo passed  
 forth into the londe and gadred moche  
 people to them. ¶ And whan kyng Rychar  
 de herde and wyfte that these two  
 lordes were comen ayen in to Englonde  
 and also were loded / Than the kyng  
 lette his ordynaunce in Irlonde and co  
 me in to Englonde warde in all the hal  
 te that he myghte and come to the cal  
 tell of flynte and there he abode to take  
 his counseyll and what myght he done /  
 but too hym come none. And thanne syr  
 Thomas Percylerle of worcestre þ was  
 the kynges steward wyft and knewe all  
 this / anone he came into the hall amon  
 ges althe people / & he brake þ yerde of þ  
 ryall kynges houlholde / and anone eue  
 ry man was dysparpled and wente hys  
 waye & forloke theyr mayster and soue  
 rayne lorde & left hym allone. And thus  
 was kyng Rycharde brought downe &  
 destroyed and stode hymself allone with  
 out comforth or locoure or of ony goode  
 counseyll of ony man / alas for pyte of  
 this ryall kyng. And anone came wor  
 de that syr Henry of Bolyngebroke was  
 by with a stronge power of people and  
 that all the squyres of Englonde reylen  
 by the shyres in strengthyng of hym a  
 yenste kyng Rycharde. ¶ And thus so  
 ne he was come oute of the North coun  
 tre to Brystowe and the re he met wyth  
 sir wylliam Scrope erle of wyltshyre &  
 tresourer of Englonde & with sir John  
 Bullhe and syr Henry grene and John

Bagot but he escaped frome them and  
 went ouer see into Irlonde / & these thre  
 knyghtes were taken & theyr hedes smy  
 ten of & thus they deyed for theyr fals co  
 uetyse. ¶ And than was kyng Rychar  
 de taken & brought vnto the duke / and a  
 none the duke put hym in faste warde &  
 stronge holde vnto his comynge to Lon  
 don. And than was there a rumore in Lō  
 don & a stronge noyse that kyng Rychar  
 de came to westmynster / & the pro  
 ple of London ranne thyder and wolde  
 haue done moche harme & hurte in ther  
 woodnesse had notte the mayer and al  
 dermen and othere worthy men celled  
 them with fayre wordes and tomede  
 them home agayne vnto London And  
 ther was syr John Slake dene of þ kin  
 ges chapell of westmynster taken & brou  
 ght to London / & put in pylson in Lud  
 gate. And Johan Bagot was taken in  
 Irlonde and so brought to London and  
 put in pylson in Newgate there to be kep  
 te & abyde his answer. ¶ And soon af  
 ter the duke brought kyng Rychard pry  
 uely vnto London & put hym in the tour  
 vnder lurre keypyng as a pylsoner. And  
 than came the lordes of the reame wyth  
 all theyr couseyll vnto the Tour to kyng  
 Rycharde & layd to hym of hys myls  
 gouernaunce & extorcyon þ he hadde done  
 made & ordeyned to oppresse all the com  
 nyne people & also to all þ reame. Wherfo  
 re all the comyne people of þ reame wol  
 de hym haue deposed of his kyngdome.  
 And so he was deposed at þ tyme in the  
 Toure of London by all his lordes cou  
 sayll & comune assent of all the reame /  
 And than he was put frome the Tour  
 vnto the castell of Ledes in Kent & the  
 re he was kept a whyle. And thā he was  
 had frome thens vnto the castell of Pou  
 fret in the North coultre to be kept in pi  
 lson / and ryght sone after there he made  
 his ende. ¶ And than whan kyng Rychar  
 de was deposed and had resygned  
 his crowne & his kyngdome & was kept



fast in holde than all the lordes of the reame with the comyns assente & by accord cholen this worthy lorde syr Henry of Bolynghbroke erle of Derby duke of Herford & duke of Lancastre by ryght lyne and herytage and for his ryghtfull manhode that the people founde in hym before all other they chole hym and made hym kyng of Englonde amonges theym.

**I**nocencus the vii. was cholen at Rome and lyued but two yere and than Gregory. xii. was after hym. xii. yere & euer was debate. Than was Alexander cholen in the coulepyll of Pylā & he was called fyrste Petr<sup>s</sup> de Landyda & so was put stryf to stryf euerychone of thole thre sayd he was pope. than was there a coulepyll at Pylan where they began to make a concord & there they depoled the two & the thyrde stode & so was worle deuylpon made than before. for the they ordeyned preuayled not. **R**oberte was Emperour after wenselaus. ix. yere this man was duke of Bauary & erle of Palatyn a Just man and a good & was crowned of Boniface the. ix. This man entred ytaly with a greate hoost of Almayns ayenst John the duke of Galphas but with an heuy hoost he toined ayē & was had worthy to suffre for his ryght wysnes. **J**ohan the. xlii. succeded Alexander. iiii. yere & fyrste he began well for an vnyte and he was in the coulepyll at Constantis & offred hym to relygne the popehode. & after secretly & vntuly he fledde awaye but it profyted him not for he was taken & constreyned to peas and was made a Cardynall and buryed at florens. **S**pygylmundus was Emperoure after Robert. xvii. yere and he was lone to Karolus and kyng of Ungharye and moost crysten prynce. and he was so deuoute to god that he deserued too be canonyled. This man holpe the chirche thurgh his merueylous piudence

and wytte for he spared no labour nend thynge the he had tyll he had made a full peas amonge the clergye. And he had. ix. batayls ayenst the Turke. & euer he had the byctorye & what moie all thynge the euer was wryten in lounge to Constantyne Theodosio Karolo Otto may truly be wryten of him. And he was crowned in Unghary & decessed a blessed man.

**C**irca Annū dñi.  
M. CCCC. vii.

**O**f syr Henry of Bolynghbroke Erle of Derby that regned after kyng Rycharde whiche was the fourth Henry after the Conquest.

**A**nd after kyng Rycharde the seconde was depoled and oute of his kyngdome the lordes and the comynes all with one assent & all other worthy of the reame cholen Henry of Bolynghbroke erle of Derby lone and heyr of John the duke of Lancastre for his worthy manhode that oft tyme had be foude in hym and in dedes preued. vpon saint Edwardes daye the cofessour he was crowned kyng of Englonde at westmyster by assent of all the reame next after the depolyng of kyng Rycharde. Than he made Henry his eldest lone prynce of Wales & duke of Cornewayle & Erle of Chestre. And he made syr Thomas of Arundell Archebysshop of Caunterbury ayen as he was before. And syr Rogere Walden that kyng Rycharde had made Archebysshop of caunterbury he made byshop of London for the tyme it stode voyde. And he made the Erles lone of Arundell that came with hym ouer the se frome Calays into Englonde. he made hym erle of Arundell as his fader had ben & put hym in possessyon of all his lordes. And he made homage & feaute vnto his lyege lorde the kyng as all other lordes hadde done. **A**nd than anone

dyed kynge Rycharde in þe castell of Poufret in the North countre / for there he was enfamed vnto deeth by his keper / for he was kept there. iiii. or. v. dayes frome meete or drynke / and soo he made his ende in this worlde / yet moche people in Englonde and in other londes sayd he was alpyue many a yere after his deeth. But whether he was alpyue or dede the people helde theyr fals oppynyon and byleue þe many had & moche people cam to grete myscheyf & foule deeth as ye shall here afterwarde. ¶ And whan kynge Henry wyt and knewe verely that he was dede he lete sere hym in the best manere & closed it in a fayr chest with dyuerse spyces & barwnes and closed hym in a lynyn cloth all sauf his bylage and that was left open that all men myght se his person frome all other men. And so he was brought to London w<sup>ch</sup> forthe lyght brennyng to saynt Poules chirche & there he had his masse & drynke with moche reuerence & solemnyte of seruyce. And whanne all this was done than he was brought frome saynt Poule in to the abbaye of westmynster & there he had hys hole seruyce ayen. And fro westmynster he was brought to Langley and there he was buryed / vpon whos soule god haue mercy Amen. ¶ And in the fyrst yere of kynge Henryes regne he helde his Cristmasse in the castel of wyndesore. And on the. xii. euen came the duke of Awemarle vnto the kynge & tolde hym that he & the duke of Surrey & the duke of Excestre and the erle of Saleisbury & the erle of Gloucestre and other moo of theyr affynyte were accorded to make a momynge vnto the kynge on. xii. daye atte nyght / & there they purposed to sle þe kynge in the reuclynge. & thus he þe duke of Awemarle warned þe kynge. And than the kynge came the same nyght to London pryuely in all þe hast that he myght to gete hym helpe to coure and comforth & counseyll / And anone these other that

wolde haue put the kynge too deeth fled in all the hast that they myght / for they knewe well that theyr counseyll was bewraped. And than fled the duke of Surrey & the erle of Saleisbury with all their menye vnto the towne of Lycestr. And there the people of the towne wolde haue arested them / and they wolde not stande to theyr arestynge / but stode at defence & faught manly. But at þe laste they were ouercomen and taken. And there they smote of the dukes heed of Surrey and the erles heed of Salebury and many other moo and there they put theyr quarters in to laches & theyr hedes on pooles borne on hygge & so they were brought thrugh the cyte of London too London byrge and there these hedes were sette vpon hygge / & theyr quarters were sent vnto other good townes and Lytees of Englonde and sette vp there. ¶ At Dorforde was taken Blounte knyghte and Benet Tely knyght / and Thomas wyterfell squyre and there byheded & quartered & the knyghtes hedes were set vpon pooles and brought to London and sett vpon London byrge / and the quarters sent forth to other good townes. ¶ And in þe same yere at Pryttelwell in a mylle in Estlex there syr John Holande þe duke of Excestre was taken with the compnes of the countre / & they brought hym frome þe mylle to þe Plasse & to þe same place þe kynge Rycharde had rested sir Thomas of woodstok þe duke of Gloucestre & ryght there in þe same place they smote of the dukes heed of Excestre and brought it vnto London vpon a poole and it was sette vpon London byrge. ¶ And in the same yere at Brystowe was taken the lord Spenser þe kynge Rycharde had made erle of Gloucestre / & þe compnes of þe towne of Brystowe toke hys and brought hym into the market place of the towne and there they smote of his heed and sent it vnto London / and there it was set vpon London byrge. ¶ And

in this same yere was Syr Bernarde Brokeys knyght taken and arested and put in the Toure of London & Syr Johā Shelly knyght and Syr Johan Hawdelyn and Syr Wyllyam ferpbe perlones of kynges Rychardes and they were arested and putte in to the Toure of London/ And thyder came the kynges Justices & latte vpon theym in the Toure of London and there they were dampned all foure vnto the deche. and the dome was gauen vnto Syr Bernard Brokeys that he sholde goo on foote frome the Toure thurgh the cyte of London vnto Tyburne and there to be hanged and after his heed smyten of / & Syr Johan Shelly knyght & Syr Johan Hawdelyn and Syr Wyllyam ferpbe perlones were drawen thurgh the cyte of London to Tyburne & there they were hanged & theyr hedes smyten of & leton London byrdege. & in this same yere kynges Henry sente quene Isabell home ayen into fraunce & why she was kynges Rychardes wyfe & gaaf hir golde & syluer & many other Jewels and soo she was dyscharged of all hyr power and sent oute of Englonde. And in the seconde yere of kynges Henry the fourth was Syr Roger Claryngton knyght and two of his men and the pryoure of Launde and. viii. freres mynors and some maysters of dyuynyte and other for treason that they wrought ayenst the kynges were drawen & hanged at Tyburne all. xii. perlones. And there began a grete dyscencion and debate in the countre of wales bytwene the lorde Grey rythen & Owen of Glendere squire of wales & this Owen arered a grete nombre of wallshmen & kept all that countre abowt ryghte strongly & dyd moche harme and destroyed the kynges townes and lorde/ shippes thurgh the oute all wales and robbed and slewe the kynges people bothe Englyshe & waleshe / and thus he endurid a. xii. yere largely. And he toke the lorde Grey rythen prysoner and kepte him

fast in holde tyll he was taunlomed of prysoners of the marche and kepte hym longe tyme in holde. And at the laste he made hym wedde one of his doughters and kepte hym there tyll with his wyfe & lone after he deyed. And than kynges Henry knowynge this mylchyl destrucyon & treason & this Owen had wrougth. & anone he ordeyned a stronge power of men of armes & archers & moche other stuff & longed to warre for to abate & destroye the malyce of this fals wallshman. And than the kynges came in to wales with his power for to destroye this Owen & other rebelles fals wallshmen. and anone they fledde in to the montayns and there myght the kynges do the no harme in no maner wyse for the montayns / & so the kynges came ayen in to Englonde for lesynge of moche of his peple / & thus he spedde not there. In this same yere was grete scarlpyte of whete in Englonde for a quarter of whete was at. xvi. shellys ge. & there was marchaundysse of Englonde sent in to pruce for whete / & anone they hadde lade & fraught shippes inough & came home in saufte thanked be god of all his gyftes. And in the. iii. yere of kynges Henryes regne there was a sterre seen in the firmamente & shewed hymself thurgh all the world for dyuersle tokens & shold befall lone after the whyche sterre was named by clergye. Stella cometa & on saynt Mary Hawdeles daye nexte folowynge in the same yere / was the batayll of Shrowelburp / And thyder came Syr Henry Percy the Erles lone of Northumberlonde with a grete multytude of men of armes and archers and gaaf a batayll to kynges Henry the fourth thurgh the fals and wicked counseyll of Syr Thomas Percy hys vncle erle of worcestre / and there was Syr Henry Percy slayne & the moste parte of his peple in the felde / and Syr Thomas Percy taken and kept fast in holde two dayes tyll the kynges hadde lette in rest his peo/

*Owen Glendore squire of wales*

ple on both sydes/ And thā syr Thomas Percy was Jugged to þ̄ deche to be drawen & hanged and his heed smyten of for his fals treason at Shrowesbury & hys heed brought to London and set on Lōs don byrdge. And the other people þ̄ there was slayne on bothe partyes the kynge leete bury. And there was slayne on the kynges syde in þ̄ batayll þ̄ erle of Stafford & syr walter Blunche in the kynges cote armure vnder the kynge's baner and many mo worthy men vpon whos soule god haue mercy Amen. ¶ And in þ̄ fourth yere of kynge Henryes regne came þ̄ Emperoure of Constantynople w̄ many greate solaes and knyghtes and moche other people of his countre into Englonde to kynge Henry with hym to speke & to dysporte and to se þ̄ good gouernaūce & condycions of our people & to knowe þ̄ comodyttees of Englonde. and our kynge with all his lordes goodly & worshypfully receyued & welcomed him & all his menye þ̄ came with hym & dyd hym all the worshyp that they coude & myght. And anone þ̄ kynge commaūded all maner offycers that he sholde be serued as worthely and ryally as it longed to luche a worthy lord. & Emperour on his owne colt as longe as the Emperour was in Englonde and all his men that came with hym. ¶ And in this same yere came dame Jane the duches of Brytayne into Englonde and loded at falemouthe in Cornewayle & frome thens she was brought to þ̄ cyte of wynchestre & there she was wedded vnto kynge Henry the fourth in the abbaye of saynt lwythynes of wynchestre w̄ all the solemnitie þ̄ myght be done & made. And sone afterwarde she was brought frome thens to London. And the mayer & the aldermen w̄ the comunes of the cyte of London rode ayenst hyr & welcomed hir & brought hir thrugh þ̄ cyte of London to westm̄ster & there she was crowned queene of Englonde & there þ̄ kynge made

a ryall and solemne feest for hyr & for all maner of men that thyder wold com ¶ And in this same yere dame Blaūch the eldest doughter of kynge Henry the fourth was sent ouer see with the erle of Somersset hir vnclē & with mayster Rycharde Clyfforde than bysshop of worcestre & with many other lordes knyghtes ladyes & worthy squyres as longed to luche a kynges doughter and came in to Colayne. And thyder came the dukes sone of Barre with a fayr menye & receyued this worthy lady/ and þ̄ bysshop of worcestre wedded & sacced theym toggyder as holy chyrche it wolde. And there was made a ryall feest & a grete Justinge in the reuerence and worshyp of them & all people þ̄ thyder came And whanne this maryage & fest was done the erle & the bysshop & all theyr menye toke theyr leue of the lordē & the lady & came home ayen into Englonde in lauffte thanked be god. ¶ And in the .v. yere of kynge Henryes regne the lordē Thomas his sone went ouer see & þ̄ erle of Bent and many other lordes and knyghtes with men of armes & archers a greate nombre to chastyse the rebelles that afore had done moche harme to our Englysshmen and marchauntes/ & to many townes & portes in Englonde on þ̄ see costes. And the lordē Thomas the kynges sone came in to flaūdres before a towne þ̄ is called/ Schuse amonge all þ̄ shyppes of dyuers nacions þ̄ were there/ & after there they roden with theyr shyppes amonge them & went on londe & sported thē there two dayes & came ayen to theyr shyppes & toke þ̄ brode see & there they mette with thre Carackes of Jene þ̄ were lade with dyuerse marchaūdysle & well manned. & they foughte toggyder longe tyme but the Englysshmen had the vyctory & brougth the Carackes into the Cambre before wynchelle and there they canted thele goodes/ and one of thele Carackes was sodaynly brent there. And the lordes and

*the Englishmen were in the*

theyr people toined them home ayen & wente noo further at that tyme. ¶ And the same tyme Serle yoman of kyng Rycharde robbes came in too Englonde out of Scotlonde and tolde too dyuerse people that kyng Rycharde was on lyue in Scotlonde & so moche people blyued in his wordes wherfore a grete parte of the people of the reame were in grete errour & grutchynge ayenst the kyng through informacyon of lyes & fals lesynges that this Serle had made. For moche people trusted & blyued in his sayenge. But at the last he was taken in the North coultre & therby lawe Jugged to be drawen through euery cyte & good burgh townes in Englonde & so he was serued & at the last he was brought to London vnto y<sup>e</sup> gyldde halle before y<sup>e</sup> Justyce and there he was Jugged for to be brought to the Tour of London & there to be layd on an hurdell & than to be drawen through y<sup>e</sup> cyte of London to Tyburne and there to be hanged & than quartered and his heed smyten of & set on London bridge & his quarters to be sent to foure gode townes of Englonde & there lette vp & thus ended he for his fals treason and deceased. ¶ And in the .vi. yere of kyng Henryes regne y<sup>e</sup> fourth. the erle of Marre of Scotlonde by laufe conduyt come into Englonde to chalenge syr Edmonde erle of Kente too certayne courses of warre on horsback. And soo this chalenge was accepted & graunted & the place taken in Smythfelde at London. & this erle of Marre y<sup>e</sup> Scott came proudly in to y<sup>e</sup> felde as his chalenge asked. And anone came the erle of Kent & rode vnto y<sup>e</sup> scot & manly rode togyder w<sup>th</sup> sharpe speres dyuerse courses but y<sup>e</sup> erle of Kente had the felde and gate hym moche worlshyp and thanke of all manere men for hys manfull dedes. ¶ And in the .vii. yere of kyng Henryes regne the fourth syr Rycharde Scrop Archebysshop of yorke & the erle Marchall of Englonde gaded

vnto them a stronge power ayenst kyng Henry. And the kyng herynge therof in all the haste that he myght came w<sup>th</sup> his power Northwarde and mette w<sup>th</sup> them at yorke and there were these two lordes taken and brought to the kyng. And anone the Juges were sette & these two lordes brought forth and there they were dampned vnto dethe & boche their heedes smyten of & there they made an ende on whos soules god for his pyte haue mercy Amen. ¶ And whan this was done the kyng came too London ayen and there rested hym. Anone god of his greate goodnesse wroughte and shewed many greate myracles for this worthy clerke Archebysshop of yorke that thus was done to dethe. ¶ And in the .vii. yere of kyng Henryes regne dame Luce the Dukes syster of Melayne came in to Englonde & so too London & there was wedded to syr Edmonde erle of Kente in the priory of saynt Marye oueres in southwarke w<sup>th</sup> moche solempnyte & greate worlshyp. The kyng was there. hymselfe & gaf hir at y<sup>e</sup> chirche dore and whan y<sup>e</sup> they were wedded & masse was done y<sup>e</sup> kyng his owne person brought & ladde this worthy lady into y<sup>e</sup> bysshops place of wynchestre & there was a wonder greate feest holden to all manere of people y<sup>e</sup> wolde come. And the same yere sir Robert Knolles knyzt a worthi warryour deped at his maner in Northfolk & frome thens he was brought to London on a hors bere w<sup>th</sup> moche torche lyghte & so he was brought vnto the white freeres in fletstrete & there was do & made for hym a solempne feest & a ryall entertainment for tho that thyder wolde come boche ryche & pore & there lyeth buryed by dame Constance his wyfe in the mydde of the body of the chirche on whos soule god for his pyte haue mercy Amen. ¶ And thus in this same yere syr Thomas Rampton knyght & Constable of the Toure of London was drenched at

London byrde as he came fro westmyster Inwardes to the Toure in a barge and all thrugh lewdenesse. And in the same yere dame Phylip the yonger daughter of kynges Henry was ladde ouer se with syr Rycharde the dukes brother of yorke and syr Edmonde Courteney byshop of Norwiche & many other lordes knyghtes & squyres ladyes & gentylwomen that apperteyned to suche a kynges daughter & came in to Denmarke/and the kyng receyued this worthy lady for his wyfe/& welcomed these worthy lordes and dyd vnto theym moche worshyp/& they were brought vnto a towne þ was called London in Denmarke and there was thys lady wedded and sacred to the kyng of Denmarke Norway and Swithen & there was crowned quene of Denmarke with moche solempnyte and there was made a ryall fest. And whan this fest and maryage was done and ended these lordes and ladyes toke theyr leue of the kyng and the quene and came aþen in to Englonde ins autte thanked be god. ¶ And in the. viii. yere of kynges Henryes regne there was a man that was called þ walthe clerke/& he apelyd a knyghte þ was called syr Percuiale Snowdone of treason/& there they were Joyned to fyght vnto the veteraunce within/ Elytes/& the daye and place & tyme assigned and lymptted to be done & ended in Smythfelde/atte the whiche daye thowtwo persones camen into the felde and foughten loze & myghtely togyder/ but at the laste the knyght ouertome þ clerke & made hym yelde hym as recreaut of his fals enpechement þ he had sayd on hym/& thā was he dyspoyled of his armure & drawen out of þ felde to Tyburne & there he was hanged & þ knyght taken to grace & was a goode man. ¶ And in þ same yere the erle of Northumberland and the Lorde Bardolfe camen oute of Scotlonde in preiudyce and destruccyon of kynges Henry/wherfore they of þ Nor

the countree arosen vpon theym & foughten with them & scomfyted them and toke theym and smoten of theyr hedes & quartred theyr bodyes and sent the hede of the erle & a quarter of the lorde Bardolfe to London and there they were let vpon London byrde for fals treason þ they hadde purposed ayenst the kynges/ ¶ And in the. ix. yere of kynges Henryes regne was syr Edmonde Holonde Erle of Kent made Amerall of Englonde for to kepe the see/and he wente too the see with many ryall shyppes that were full welle arayed and enparelled and enarmed with many a goode man of armes and archers and of good defence of warre in the kynges name of Englonde/& so he loded at the last in þ coste of Brytayne in þ yle of Bryah with all his folke/& he besyged þ castell & assauted it & they withstode hym with grete defence & strengthe. And anone he layd his ordinaunce/& in the lpyenge of a gonne there come a quarell & smote the good erle Edmonde in the hecd & there he caught his deed wounde/ but yet they lefte not tyll that they hadde gotten the castell and all that were therein. And there this goode lorde deyed on whos sonle god haue mercy Amen. And than this menye came home aþen in to Englonde with the erles body & was buryed amonges his aūcestres ryght worthely. ¶ And in þ same yere was a greate frost in Englonde þ durted. xv. wekes longe. ¶ And in þ. x. yere of kynges Henryes regne the fourth came þ Seneschall of Henaude with other menye in Englonde too seke auentures and to gete hym worshyp in dedes of armes bothe on horsback and on foote at all maner poyntes of warre. And the seneschall chalenged the erle of Somersset & the erle delyuered hym fulle manfully of all his chalenges and put his aduersary vnto the worst in all poyntes & wāne hym there grete worshyp and þ degre of the felde. And on the next daye after

came into the felde an other man of armes of þe Seneschals partye. And ayenst hym came syr Rycharde of Arundell knyghte/ and the Henaude had the better of hym on foot in one poynte for he brought hym on his knee. And on þe thyrde dawe come in an other man of armes in too the felde/ and ayenst hym there came syr Johā Cornwayll knyght and manly and knyghtly he qupte hym in all maner poyntes ayenst his aduersary & had þe better in the felde. And on þe fourthe dawe come a nother man of armes of Henaude in too the felde/ and ayenst hym came syr Johā Chaynes lone and manly qupte hym ayenst his aduersary for he caste hors and man into the felde/ and the kynge for his manhode atte that tyme dubbed hym knyghte. And on the fyfte dawe there came an other man of armes of the Henaudes partye in too the felde/ and to hym came in syr Johan Stewarde knyght/ and manfully he qupte hym in all maner poyntes & had the better. And on the syxthe dawe after came an other Henaude/ and to hym came wylliam porter squyre & manfully he qupte hym and hadde the better in þe felde/ and the kynge dubbed hym knyghte that same tyme/ And on the seven the dawe after came an other man of armes of Henaude in too þe felde/ and too hym came Johan Standyshe squyre and manfully he qupte hym on his aduersarye and had þe better of hym in the felde and there the kynge dubbed hym knyghte that same dawe / And on the lamedawe came an other man of armes of Henaude/ and to hym came a squyre of Galroyne/ and proudly and manly he qupte hym of his aduersary and had the better of hym in þe felde / & anone þe kynge dubbed hym knyghte/ And on þe viii. dawe came in to the felde two other men of armes of Henaude/ and with them mette two souldyours of Calays the which were two bretheren þe were called Bur-

ghes/ & they well and manly qupte them selfe vppon theyr aduersaryes and hadden the better of theym in þe felde/ and thus ended these chalenges with many greate worthypnes / And thenne þe kynge at the reuerence of these worthy straungers/ made a greate feste and gaaf vn to theym many greate and ryche gyftes and thenne they token theyr leue and wente home ayen into theyr owne countree. ¶ And in the .xi. yere of kynge Henryes regne the fourthe/ there was a grea batayll doo in lynchfelde bptwene two squyres/ that one was called Gloucestre that was the appellaunte . and Arthur was the defendaunte/ and well and manly they foughten togyder longe tyme/ and the kynge for theyr manfulnesse & of his grace toke theyr quarell into his honde and made theym too goo oute of the felde atte ones and soo they were deuyded of the batayll and the kynge gaf them grace. ¶ And in the .xii. yere of kynge Henryes regne þe fourth. Rysdie a squyre of wales þe was a rybelle a ryler & supporter to Owen of Glendre þe dyd moche destruccō to þe people of wales was taken & brought to Londō & there he came afore þe Justices & was dampned for his treason/ & than he was layd on an hurdell & so drawen to Tyburne thrughe þe cyte & there he was hanged & lete downe ayen & his heed lympten of & þe body quartered & sent vnto four townes & his hede set on Londō byrdege. ¶ And in þe .xiii. yere of kinge Henryes regne the deyed syr Johan Beauforde erle of Somerssette. that was Captayne of Calays & was buried atte þe abbaye of þe Tour hyll on whos soule god haue mercy amen. And in the same yere the lorde Thomas kinge Henryes lone wedded the Countesse/ of Somersset. ¶ And in this same yere came the enbassatours of fraunce into Englonde frome the duke of Burgoyne vnto the prynce of Englonde kynge Henryes lone and heyre for to haue helpe &

locour of men of armes and archers a penite the duke of Dilyaunce. And tho went ouer see þ erle of Arüdell. Sir Sylberte. Dmfreyll erl of Keme. & the lor de Cobham syr Johñ Didecastell & many other good knyghtes & worthy squyres & men of armes & good archers into fraunce and came to Parys to þ duke of Burgoyñ. And there he receyued & welcomed these Englysshmen the lordes & all other meny. And thann it was done hym to mete that the duke of Dilyaunce was comen into Semtclowe faste by Parys with a greate nombre of armes and arbalastres. & thyder went our Englysshmen and fought with them & gate þ byrdege of Semtclowe & there they slew moche people of frensshmen & arbalastres & the remenaüt fledde & wolde not lenger abyde. And than oure Englysshmen came apen to Parys & there they toke theyr leue of þ duke & came apen in to Englonde in laufte & the duke gaaf theym grete gyftes. & anone folowynge the duke of Dilyaunce sent embassatours in Englonde to kynge Henry the fourth belechynge hym of his helpe & locoure. apenst his dedely enemye þ duke of Burgoyñ. And than the kynge made Thomas his sone duke of Clarence. and his other sone Johñ duke of Bedforde. and his other sone Humfrey duke of Gloucestre & syr Thomas Beauford erle of Dorset & the duke of Awemarle he made duke of yorke. And than the kyng ordeyñed his sone syr Thomas the duke of Clarence Thomas Beauford erle of Dorset & syr Johñ Cornwyll with many other lordes knyghtes & squyres and men of armes archers for to go ouer see in to fraunce in helpynge and strengychynge of the duke of Dilyaunce. And these worthy lordes with theyre retenue shypped at Hampton and saylled ouere the see in to Normandye and loded at Hogges. And there mette with theym þ lorde Hambe at theyr lödyng with. vii

thoulande men of armes of frensshmen & thre Sergeauntes of armes with the and all were put to flyght and taken of theym .vii. hondred men of armes and iiii. hondred horses with out tho that were slayne in the felde. And soo they rode forth through out all fraunce and token castels and townes and slewe moche people of frensshmen that withstode them and toke many pylsoners as they roden. And so they passed forth tyll they come to Burdeux & there they rested theym a whyle & set the coultre in peas & rested tyl the wynde was redy for to sayll. And than þ duke w his meny come home in to Englonde in laufte thanked be god. And in the same yere was þ byngs coyñ chaunged through oute Englonde by the kynge & his couñsell. þ is to laye the noble half noble and ferthyng of golde. And the .xiiii. yere of kynge Henryes regne the fourth he lette make Galays of warre for he had hoped to haue passed the greate see & so forth to Jherusalem. & there to haue ended his lyfe. but god vilyfted hym so sone after w Antyr mices & grete sekeneite þ he myght not well endure no while so feruently he was taken & brought in bedde at westmynster in a fayr chambie. And as he laye in his bed he asked his chamberlayn what they called þ chambie þ he laye in and he answered & sayd Jherusalem. And than he sayd þ þ prophecy sayd þ he sholde make an ende & deye in Jherusalem. And thā he made hym redy vnto god & dyspoled all his wyll. And soon after he deyed & was carryed by water frome westmynster in a barge vnto feuerham. and frome thens he was carryed to Caüterbury bylonde with moche torchelyght brennyng in too the abbaye of Cychyrche and there he was entered and buryed besyde saynt Thomas of Caüterburys shyrne & thus ended þ worthy kynge Henry aboute mydlynten sondaye in the yere of oure lorde a. M. CCC. and. xxi. vpon



whos soule god haue mercy. Amen.

**M**artin the .v. was pope after John .xiii. yere/this man was chosen by the counseyll of Constantynoble & the other was deposed that stroff. and so came peas in the churche the whiche longe tyme afore was desyred & necessarye for the defence of the fayth. This was the myghtyest pope he ever was of rychelesse & a greate Juge. he edefyed townes walles stretes & he destroyed heresy's & he dyd moche good thurgh the noble pryncce Spynymonde. And he gadred moche moneye for to gefen the holy londe apen/ but deathe came vpon hym & letted hym & he made a counseyll afore his deathe for the mater & there he decelld. **E**ugenius was pope after Martin .xvii. yere/ this Eugenius was chosen pealyble after the deathe of Martin/ & no man doubted but he was pope/ but soon after he was expelled frome Rome/ for it was soo he fled naked also he was cyted to the counseyll of Balylyens & deposed/ but he dyd charged hym not/ & for he began the stryffe apen the whiche stood to his deathe. & those that fauoured hym sayd he was worth moche lounge/ & the contrary sayd those that were ayenste hym but what someruer he was after he had taken the dygnite vpon hym afore he was of grete obstynance & of gode fame. & what he dyd after he fleue to the Jugement of god.

Circa Anni dñi.  
M.CCC.xxi.

Of kynges Henry the fyfthe that was kynges Henryes sone.

**A**nd after the deathe of kynges Henry the fourth regned kynges Henry by his sone that was borne at Monmouth in wales that was a worthy kyng & a gracious man and a grete conquerour

And in the fyfthe yere of his regne for grete loue & goodnesse he sent to the freeres of Langley there as his fader had do burye kynges Rycharde the seconde & lette take his body out of the erthe apen and dyd brynge it to westmynster in a ryall chare couered with blacke velvet & banners of dyuerse armes abowte & all the hors drawyng the chare were trapped in blacke & beten with dyuerse armes/ & many a torche brennyng by all the waye tyll he came to westmynster/ & there he lette make for hym a ryall & solempne enterement and buryed hym by quene Anne his wyfe as his owne desyre was on the fether syde of saynt Edwardes shypne in the abbaye of saynt Peters in westmynster on whos soule god haue mercy. amē

And in this same yere were a certayn of lollers taken and fals heretykes that had purposed thurgh fals treason for to haue slayne oure kynges/ and for to haue destroyed all the clergye of the reame and they myght haue had theyr fals purpose. But our lord god wold not suffre it/ for in hast oure kynges had warnyng therof & of all their fals ordynance & wer kynges & came sodeynly with his power to saynt Johns without mychfelde & anon they toke a certayn of the lollers & fals heretykes & brought them to the kynges presence/ & there they tolde all their fals purpose and ordynance how they wolde haue do and wrought yf they myght haue regned and had theyr wyll/ and there they tolde whiche were theyr capytayns & gouernours & than the kynges commaunded them to the tower of London/ & thā toke mo to them both within the cyte & without & sent them to Newgate & to both the couters & than they were brought in exampon before the clergye & the kinges Justices & there they werē conuycted for their fals heresy/ & dampned before the Justice for their fals treason. And thys was their iugement that they shold be drawen frome the tower of London to saynt Sepulchre

lys felde and there to be hanged & brente on þe galowes. Also there was taken syr Roger Acton knyght for herelye and eke for treason ayenst the kyng and the reame/ & he came afore þe clerye & was cōuycted for his herelye & dampned before þe Justyce to be drawn frome the toure of London thurgh the cyte to laynt Gyllys and to be hanged & brent. ¶ And in the seconde yere of kyng Henryes regne the fyft he helde a counseyll of all the lordes of the reame at westmyster and there he put hym this demaūde and prayed and belought them of theyr goodnesse and of theyr gode couſeyll & gode wyll to shew hym as touchynge the tittle of the ryght that he had to Normandy Gascoyne & Guyen the whiche the kyng of fraunce wicheelde wrongfully & vnyghtfully/ the whiche his aūcestres before hym had by trewe tittle of conquest & ryght herytage/ the whiche Normandy Gascoyne & Guyen the good kyng Edward of wyndelore & his aūcestres before hym had holden all theyr lynes tyme. And his lordes gaaf hym couſeyll to lende enbassatours vnto the kyng of fraunce & hys counseyll that he sholde gyue vnto hym his ryght herytage/ þe is to laye Normandy Gascoyne & Guyen the whiche his predecessours had holden afore hym or els he wolde it wyne with strengthe of swerde in thorte tyme with the helpe of almyghty god. ¶ And than þe Dolphyn of fraunce answered to our enbassatours and sayd in this maner that the kyng was ouer yonge & too tendre of aegge for to make ony warre as apenst hym and was not lyke yet to be a good warrour to do and make suche a conqueste there vpon hym. And somewhat in scoone and despyte he sente to hym a tonne full of tenes balles bycaule he wolde haue somewhat for to playe with all for hym and for his lordes/ for þe wolde become hym better than for to mayntene ony warre. ¶ And than anone oure lordes that we

re enbassatours toke theyr leue and came in to Englonde ayen & tolde the kyng & his counseyll of þe vngoodly answer that they had of the Dolphyn/ and of the present þe whiche he had sent to oure kyng. ¶ And whan the kyng had herd the wordes and the answer of the Dolphyn he was wonder loze agreed & ryght euill apayed towarde the frenschmen & towarde the kyng and the Dolphyn/ & thought to auenge hym on them as lone as god wolde sende hym grace & myght/ and anone lete make tenes balles for the Dolphyn in all the hast that myght be/ and they were greete gonstones for the Dolphyn to playe with all/ And than anone the kyng sent for all his lordes and helde a greate counseyll at westmyster and tolde vnto them the answer þe they had of þe Dolphyn and of his worthy present þe he sent to hym and to his lordes to playe with all. And ther the kyng and his lordes were accorded that they shold be redy in armes wth ther power in þe best araye þe myght be done/ and gete men of armes & archers þe myght be gotten & all other stuff that longed to warre and to be redy wth all theyr reuenue to mete at Southampon by Lammalle next folowynge without ony delay. wherfore the kyng ordeyned his nauye of shyppes with all maner stuffe & vttayll that longed to suche a warrpoure of all maner ordeynaunce in the haue of Southampon in to the nombre of .CC. L. and .xx. saylles. And than felle ther a greate dysleale and a foule mychtye/ for there were thre lordes whiche þe kyng trusted moche on/ & thurgh fals couetysle they had purposed and ymagyned þe kynges dethe & thought to haue slayne him & all his bretherne or he had taken þe see the whiche thre lordes were named thus sir Rycharde erle of Cambridg broder to þe duke of yorke/ þe seconde was the lord Scrop trelourer of Englonde/ the thyrde was syr Thomas Gray knyght of

the North countree. And these thre lordes afore sayd for lucre of money hadde made a promesse vnto the frenshmen for to haue slayne kyng Henry the fyfth & all his brethern by a fals trayne loda ynly or they hadde be ware. But god al myghty helde his holy honde ouer them and laued them frome these peryllous menpe. And for too haue done this they receyued of the frenshmen a Myllyon of golde/and h̄ was there openly knowen/and for theyr fals treason they were all thre Jugged vnto the dethe/and this was the Jugement h̄ they sholde be ladde through Hampton & withoute Northgate there to be heded/ & thus they ended theyr lyues for theyr falle couetyse and treason/And anon as this was done h̄ kyng and all his menpe made them redy and went to Shyppes & saylled forthe with .xv. hondred Shyppes and aryued w̄ in Sepn at Kydecaule vpon our ladyes euen the Assumpcyon in Normandy w̄ all his ordynance. And soo wente hym forth to Harflet & he besyged the towne all abowte by lond and eke by water/ & sent to the Capytayne of the towne and charged hym to delyuer the towne. And the Capytayne layd that he wolde delyuer hym none/ ne none he wold hym yelde/ but hadde hym do his best. And than our kyng layd his ordynance vnto h̄ towne/ that is for to laye Bonnes Engynnes & tryppettes & shotten & caste at the walles & eke vnto the towne/ & caste downe bothe towres and towne and layd theym vnto the erthe/and there he played at the tenes with his harde gonstones. ¶ And they that were within the towne whan they sholde playe theyr songe was well awaye & alas h̄ euer suche tenes balles were made/ & cursyd all tho h̄ warre began & h̄ tyme h̄ euer they were borne. ¶ And on the morne the kyng dyd crye at euery gate of the towne that euery man sholde be redy on the morne erly to make assaute vnto h̄ towne. And

Wylliam Boucher & John Graunte with .xii. other burgeys worthy men came to the kyng & besought hym of his ryall prynchode & power to withdraw his malyce & destruccyon h̄ he dyd to the & belought hym of .viii. dayes of respyte & trowes yf ony rescowe myght come to theym/ & els to yelde vp h̄ towne vnto h̄ with all theyr goodes/ & than the kyng sent forth h̄ Capytayne & kept h̄ remenaüt styll w̄ hym & the lord Gaucort h̄ was Capytayne of h̄ towne went forth to Royn in all h̄ haste vnto the Dolphyn for helpe & locour but there was none ne no man of rescowe/ for h̄ Dolphyn wolde not abyde. And thus this Capytayne come apen vnto the kyng and yelded vp the towne and delyuered hym the keyes and hadde hym go & putte out all h̄ frenshmen both men women and chyldren & stuff his towne of Harflet with Englysh people. And than the kyng sent into Englonde and dyd crye in euery gode towne of Englonde that what crafty man wolde come thyder and enhabyte hym there in that towne he sholde haue house and houlholde to hym and to hys heyres for euer more. And so thyder wēt many dyuerse marchauntes and crafty men and enhabyte theym there to strengthe the towne and were welcome. ¶ And whan the kyng sawe h̄ this towne was well stuffed bothe of bytays & of men this worthy pryncce toke his leue & went to Calays warde by lond/ & the frenshmen herde of his comynge they thought for to haue stopped hym his waye that he sholde not passe that waye and in all the hast that they myghte braken all the bydges where that as ony passage was for hors and man in soo moche that they myghte noo man passe ouere the Ryuers nothere on horse ne foote but yf he sholde haue be drenchyd/ And therefore oure kyng w̄ all his people wente and sough this way fer vp to Parys warde & there was all the ryall power of Fraū

ce assembled and redy to gyue hym batayll and for to dystrope all his people/ But almyghty god was his guyde and sauēd hym and all his menye & defendēd hym of his enmyes power & purpose thanked be god & sauēd soo his owne knyghte & kyng in his ryghtfull tytle/ ¶ And than our kyng beholdynge and seynge the grete multytude & nombre of his enmyes to withstande his waye & gyue hym batayll/ than the kyng with a meke herte & a good spyryte lyfte vp his hondes to almyghty god and besoughte hym of his helpe and locoute and that daye to saue his trewe seruauntes And than our kyng gadred all his lordes & other people aboute & bad them all to be of gode chere/ for they sholde haue a fayre daye & a gracypous vyctorye & the better of all theyr enmyes/ & prayed them all to make thē redy vnto þ batayll. for he wolde rather be deed þ daye in þ felde. than to be takē of his enmyes for he wolde neuer put the reame of Englonde to raūsome for his persone. ¶ And the duke of yorke fell on his knees & besought the kyng of a bone that he wolde graunte hym that daye þ auauituarde in his batayll/ & the kyng graūted hym his almyghty & saynt George colyn of yorke & prayed hym too make hym redy. And than he bad euery man to ordeyne hym a stake of tre & sharpe both endes þ the stake myght be pyght in þ erthe a slope that theyr enmyes sholde not ouercome them on horsbacke for þ was ther fals purpose & arayed them for too ouer ryde our menye sodaynly at the fyrst comynge on of them at þ fyrst brunte. And all the nyght before þ batayll. the frenshemen made many greate fyers & moche reuell with howtyng & showtyng & playd our kyng & his lordes at þ dyle/ and an archer alwaye for a blanke of theyre moneye/ for they wende that all had ben theirs/ the morne arose the daye ganne sprynge/ And the kyng by goode auple

lete araye his batayll and his wynges & charged euery man to kepe them hole to gyder & prayed them all to be of goode chere. And whan they were redy he asked what tyme of the day it was & they layd pryue. Than layd our kyng nowe it is good tyme for all Englonde prayed for vs/ & therfore be of good chere & lete vs go to our Journey. And thanne he layd with an hygh voyce in the name of almyghty god & saynt George auauite Banner & saynt George this daye thyn helpe. ¶ And than this frenshemen came prychnge downe as they wolde haue ouer ryden all onre menye/ but god & our archers made them ryght lone too stumblē/ for our archers shot neuer arowe a myste but it perpyshed & brought vnto þ grounde bothe hors & man/ for they shotte that daye for a wager/ And our stakes made them toppe ouer ferue eche one ouer other that they laye on hepes twoo speres lenthē of hyghte/ And oure kyng with his menye and with his men of armes and archers that shacked on thē soo thyrke with arowes & layd on with staues and oure kyng with his hondes foughte manly that daye. And thus god almyghty & saynt George brought our enmyes to graūde & gat vs that daye the vyctory. There were slayne of frenshemen þ daye in the felde of Agyncourt mo than. xi. thousande w out prysoners þ were taken/ & there were nombred þ daye of frenshemen in þ felde mo than fyr score thousāde. but god þ daye faught for vs/ And after came there tydynge to oure kyng that there was a newe bataylle of frenshemen ordeyned redy for to stele on hym and came to wardes hym ¶ And anone oure kyng lette crye that euery man sholde doo sle his prysoners that he hadde taken/ and anone to make them ayen redy for to fyghte wyth the frenshe men/ And whan they sawe that oure men kylled downe theyr prysoners thanne they dyde wythdrawe/

them and brake theyr batayll & all their araye. And thus our kynge as a worthy conquerour had that daye the vycory in the felde of Agynncourte in Pycardye / And than our kynge retorned ayen ther that the batayll was for to see what people were slayne of Englyshmen / and if ony were hurte that they myghte be holpen. And there were dede in the felde the duke of Barre & duke of Alaüsome & duke of Braban & erle of Nauerne chyef Censable of fraüce / & .viii. erles & & Archebysshop of Saüce / & of gode barons an hondred and moo / & of worthy knyghtes of greate alpaüce of cote armures a thoulande & .v. hondred. And so of Englyshmen was deed that daye the good duke of yorke and the erle of Southfolke / and of all other Englyshmen there were not deed passyge .xxvi. bodyes thāked be god. And this batayll was on a frydaye whiche was saynt Crispynne & Crispynnyanes daye in the monethe of Octobre / and anone the kynge commaūded to bury them and the duke of yorke to be carryed forth with hym and the erle of Southfolke. And there were pylsoners the duke of Orlyaüce & duke of Bourbon the erle of Vendome the erle of ewe the erle of Rychemonde & lyre Hurlygaüt Marchall of fraüce & many other worthy lordes were taken there in thys batayll of Agynncourt & were brought vnto the towne of Calays & so ouer the see with & kynge into Englonde & landed at Douer in Kent with all his pylsoners in laufte thanked be god almyghty / and so came to Launterbury and offred at saynt Thomas shypne & so he rode forth thurgh & countre of Kent the next waye vnto Eltham & there he rested tyll that he wolde come to London. And than & mayer of London & the aldermen shreues / with all the worthy comuners and craftes came to the blacke heth well and worthely arayed / for too welcome our kynge with dyuerse melo-

dyes / & thanked almyghty god of hys gracypous vycory & he shewed for hym / And so the kynge & his pylsoners passed forth by theym tyll he came to saynt thomas waterynge / & there met with hym all relygyous men with processyon and welcomed hym & so & kynge came rydinge w his pylsoners thurgh & cyte of Lōdon where & them was shewed many a fayre syght at all & conduptes & at the crosse in chepe as in heuenly araye of an gelles archaü gelles patryarhes prophe tes & virgynes w dyuerse melodys senslyng & syngynge to welcome & kynge & all & conduptes rennyng w wyne & the kynge passed forth to saynt Poules and there met w hym .xliii. byshops all reuelled & mytred with senters to welcome the kynge / & there they longe for his gracypous vycory Te deum laudam<sup>9</sup>. And there the kynge offred & toke his hors & rode to westmynster / & than the mayer toke his leue of the kynge and rode home ayen. ¶ And in the thyrde yere of kynge Henryes regne & fyfth come the Emperoure of Almayne kynge of Rome and of Hungrye in to Englonde & so to the cyte of London. And the mayer & the aldermen with & shreues & worthy craftes of London by the kynges comaudement met with hym on the blacke heth in the best araye that they coude on horsbacke. And there they welcomed hym and brought hym vnto London with moche honoure & greater reuerence. And at saynt Thomas waterynge there met w hym the kynge with all his lordes in gode araye. And there was a worthy metynge bytwene the Emperoure and kynge Hēry the fyfth & there they kyssed togyder. & embraced eche other / and than & kynge toke the Emperoure by the honde & soo they came ryding thurgh & cyte of Lōdō vnto saynt Poules & ther they alygh ted and offred and alle the byshoppes stode reuelled with senters in theyr hondes senslyng to theym . And than they

toke theyr horses and rode vnto westmynster. And þ kyng lodged the Emperour in his owne palays and there he rested hym a greate whiche & all at the kyngs colte. And soone after came þ duke of Hollonde in to Englonde to come and se there the Emperoure and to speke with hym and with our kyng Henry of Englonde. and he was worthyly receyued & lodged in the byllhops Inne of Ely & all at the kynges colte. And whan þ Emperour hadde well rested hym and seen the londe in dyuerse partyes and knewe the commodytees than by processe of tyme he toke his leue of the kyng but or he podede he was made knyght of the garter and receyued and wered the lpueray. And than he thanked the kyng and all his lordes. And than the kyng & he wente ouer the see vnto Calays and aboden there longe tyme to haue an answer of the frenshe kyng. and at the laste it came and plected hym ryghte noughte. & so the Emperoure toke his leue of þ kyng and passed forth in goddes name. and our kyng came ouer ayen in to Englonde in all the hast that he myghte and þ was on saynt Lucas euen. þ he came to Lambythe. and on þ mondaye nexte he came in to the parlement at westmynster. And in this same yere was a grete derth of corn in Englonde. but thanhed be god it lasted not longe.

**A**ND in the fourth yere of kyng Henryes regne the fyfth he held his parlemente at westmynster. in þ begynnyng of Octobre & last to þ purifycacyon of our lady than nexte after. And there was graunted vnto hym to mayntene his warres both of spyrityualtee & of tēporalte an hole tax & a dyeme. & than anone þ kyng prayed all his lordes to make them redy to strength hym in hys ryghte. And anone he lete make a newe retenu and charged all his men to be redy at Hampton in wyfsonweke thanne

next after with out ony delaye. And there the kyng made the duke of Bedford protectoure and defender of his reame of Englonde in his absence & charged hym to kepe his lawes and mayntene boche spyrityuall and temporall. And whan þ kyng had thus do & lette all thyng in his kynde. On saynt Markes daye he toke his hors at westmynster & came rydye to poules & there he offred & toke his leue. and so rode forth thugh the cyte takynge his leue of all maner of people as well poze as ryche praynge theym all in generall to praye for hym. And so he rode forth too saynt Georges & there offred & toke his leue of þ mayer charginge hym to kepe well his chambre. And so he rode forth to Hampton and ther abode tyll his retenu were redy & comen forth there was all his nauye & shyppes with his ordynaunce gadred togpyder and well stuffed as longed to luche a ryall kyng with all manere of vntayls for luche a ryall people as well for hors as for man as longed for luche a warryoure. þ is to saye gōnes tryppgytes engynes lowes battyls brydges of lether scalyng ladders malles & spades shoueles pyches pauers bowes & arowes bowe strynges & tonnes chestes & pypes full of arowes as nedded for luche a worthy warryour that no thyng was to seche whan tyme comethyder came to hym shyppes laden with gōnes & gōpoudre. And whan this was redy & his retenu come the kyng & all his lordes with all his ryall hooft wente to shyp & toke þ see & sayled in to Normandy & loded at Touke vpon Lammasse daye than next after. & there he made. xlviij. knyghtes at his loundynge. and thanne the kyng herynge of many enemyes vpon the see. that is for to saye. ix. greate Carakes hulkes Galays & shyppes þ were comynge to dystrope his nauye. And anone he commaunded the erle of Marche to be chyef chyefcayne & many other worthy lordes with hym &

with men of armes & archers to go to þe  
 se that none enemyes defouled his nauye  
 ne entred his londe in no partye for to dy  
 strouble his vyage ne his Journey. And  
 anone the erle toke his menye & went to  
 shyp & scammed the see & kept the see col  
 tes þ̄ no manere of enemyes durste rowte  
 vpon the see/and anone the kyng sente  
 his heraudes vnto þ̄ Capytayn of Tou  
 ke and charged hym for to delyuere him  
 his castell and his towne and els he wol  
 de neyther leue man ne chylde alyue. &  
 anone the Capytayne and foure othere  
 burgeles of the towne broughte the ke  
 yes to the kyng and besoughte hym of  
 grace/And þ̄ kyng delyuere the keyes  
 to Syr Johñ Rykelay and made hym ca  
 pytaine & comaūded hym for to put out  
 all frenshmen both of þ̄ castell and of  
 þ̄ towne/And there belyde was þ̄ castell  
 of Louers and thyder the kyng sente þ̄  
 erle Marchall with a fayre menye and  
 assauted the towne/and anone it was  
 yolden to the erle and broughte hym the  
 keyes / and he broughte them to the ky  
 ng and the kyng toke them to hym ayē  
 and made hym Capytayne of the castell  
 of Louers & of all þ̄ longed therto/and  
 charged hym to delyuere out all the fren  
 shmen. And thanne the kyng helde for  
 the his waye too Lane þ̄ was a stronge  
 towne & a fayre & a tyall castell therein/  
 & anone he sent his heraudes to the Ca  
 pytaine & charged hym to delyuere þ̄ tow  
 ne & his castell or els he wolde gete thē  
 with strength of honde. And they answe  
 red & layd þ̄ he toke them none too kepe  
 ne none they wolde delyuere vnto hym/  
 And so anone he layde his sytge vnto þ̄  
 towne and layd gonnes on euery syde/  
 and bete towne bothe walles and toures  
 and slewe moche people in theyr houses  
 and also in stretes. And the good duke of  
 Clarence layde downe the walles on his  
 syde vnto the bare grounde/And so with  
 in a whyle the kyng by his coulepylle  
 assauted the towne all about. And ano

ne the duke of Clarence was entred into  
 the towne and slewe downe ryght tyll he  
 come too the kyng and spared nothere  
 man ne chylde/and eucere they cryed a  
 Clarence a Clarence and saynt George  
 And there was deed on the walles on þ̄  
 kynges syde a worthy man þ̄ was called  
 Spyrnges þ̄ whiche the kyng comaū  
 ded to be buryed in the abbaye of Lane  
 fast by wylliam conqueroure/on/whos  
 soule god haue mercy Amen. And than  
 the kyng came into the towne with hys  
 broder þ̄ duke of Clarece & many othere  
 worthy lordes with moche solempnyte &  
 myrthe. And thanne the kyng commaū  
 ded the Capytayne for to delyuere hym  
 his castell/and he besoughte the kyng to  
 gyue hym. xiiii. daye of respytyf onyrel  
 rowe wolde come/ & yf none wolde come  
 to delyuere hym the keyes and the castell  
 at his comaūdemente. And vnder this  
 compolycyon was the towne and the  
 castell of Bayous with other townes for  
 tresses and byllages in to the nombre of  
 xiiii. vpon the hylle before the castell of  
 Lane our kyng pyght all his tentes þ̄  
 lemed a towne as moche as the Lane &  
 by that tyme came tydynges that none/  
 rescowe wolde come there. And so at the  
 xiiii. dayes ende the Capytayne of þ̄ ca  
 stell came out and delyuere the keyes &  
 the castell to our kyng/ & Bayous and  
 the other. xiiii. townes were delyuere vnto  
 hym also/ & anone the kyng delyuere  
 red the keyes to the duke of Clarence &  
 made hym Capytayne bothe of the tow  
 ne and also of þ̄ castell/and made hym  
 Capytayne of Bayours & of all the o  
 ther townes also/And soo he entred the  
 towne & þ̄ castell & there he helde saynt  
 Georges feeste/and there he made. xv.  
 knyghts of þ̄ bathe ther was Syr Rowys  
 Robert Salyn Thayne Mougomerie  
 & many othere worthy men and þ̄ kyng  
 comaūded them for to put out all the  
 frenshmen and women /and no man  
 so hardy to defoule no woman ne take

no maner of good awaye frome theym but lette them passe in peas on payne of dethe. And there passed out of the towne in one daye mo than .xv. hondred womē And than the kynge lete stuffe the towne and castell with Englyshe men and ordeyned there two Capytayns that one for the towne and an other for þe castell and charged them vpon theyr lyues too kepe well the towne and the castell. And or that oure kynge wente thens he gate Daleys Newelyn land layde a syege too Chyrburgh/ and þe syege layde þe duke of Gloucestre with a stronge power and a myghty/ and by procelle of tyme & made the a Capytayne of the same towne/ ¶ And this same tyme the good erle of Warwyk layde a syege vnto Dounfroete and gate it and put therin a Captayne. And for to speke more of the erle of Marche that the kynge ordeyned tho for to scoume the see & to kepe the costes of Englonde for all maner of enemyes/ þe wynde arose vppon them that they wente all to haue ben losse/ but thurgh the grace of almyghty god & goode gouernaunce they rodden afore the yle of wyght all that storne. And there was losse two Carackes & two Salynghers with marchaundys & other grete goodes & all þe peple þe were within theym/ and an othere Caracke droke vp before Hampton and threwe his maste ouer the walles of the towne/ and this was on saynt Bartholomeus daye. And whan all this storne was celled this worthy erle of Marche toke his shippes with his menye & went to the see and loded in Normandy at Hogges and soo roden forth towardes þe kynge/ and euer as he came the frensh men fledde/ And there came to them an chony pygge and folowed the hooft all the waye tyll they came to a grete water and there they dradde to haue be drenched for the water closed them so þe they myghte no where gete out. But atte the laste god almyghty & this pygge brou

ght theym all laufe onte/ and there they caughte them a gyde þe knewe all þe countre about & he broughte them thurgh a quyklande and so into an yle/ & they toke many pyloners by the waye toward the kynge in theyr Journey/ & so they camen vnto Lane. And there the kynge welcomed hym & toke his Journey atte Argentun & anone tho it was yolden to the kynge and they had theyr lyues and wente theyr waye. And than our kynge remeued vnto a stronge towne that tho was called Cese/ and there was assayre mynster & they yelde it vpon anone vnto þe kynge. And than the kynge wente from thens to alaunsome & wan the towne & the brydge/ and the kynge sente þe erle of Warwyk to a towne that was called Belme with a grete & stronge power and anone they yelde it & put them all to the kynges grace & in his mercy/ & soo dyde mauny stronge townes & castels that were in tho parties. And from thens they wente to Deryll in Perche. & anone it was yolden vnto the kynge bothe the towne and the castell and bodyes and goodes to the kynges good grace. and soo the kynge gate & conquered all the townes & castelles pylles strengthes and abbays vnto the cyte of rone. ¶ And in þe fifth yere of kynge Henryes regne þe fifth/ Lyr John Oldcastell þe was the lorde cobham was arested for herelye and broughte vnto þe Toure of london/ & anone after he brake the Tour and went in to wales and there he kepte hym longe tyme. And at the laste the lorde powys toke hym/ but he stode at grete defence longe tyme and was sore wounded or he wolde be take & so the lorde powys men broughte hym oute of Wales vnto London agayne in a whyrcole and so he was broughte to Westmynster and there was examyned of certayne popntes that were put vpon hym/ & he layde not naye & soo he was conuyct of the clargye for his herelye/ and dampned before the Justyces vnto



too the dethe for treaoun. And thane he was ladde to the Toure apen / and there he was layde on an hurdell and drawen thurgh the cyte too saynt Gyles felde & there was made a newe payre of galowes and a stronge chayne and a coler of yren for hym and there he was hanged and brente on the galowes and all for his lewdenesse and his fals oppnyons. /

**A**nd in the. vi. yere of kynge Henryes þe fyfth. he sent his vncler Thomas Beauforde duke of Excester with a sayre menye of men of armes & archers befoerthe cyte of Rone and there dyspleyed his baner & sent herodes vnto the towne and hadde them yelde that cyte vnto our kynge theyr lyege lorde / & they sayde he toke them none to kepe none he sholde haue there but yf it were dere boughte & meued with theyr hondes for other answer wolde they none giue but gonnes. And there the duke toke gode auysement of the grounde all about. And anone there yssued out of the cyte a grette menye of men of armes bothe on horsback and on foote and anone our menye met with them & ouerthrewe a grette hepe of them & there were taken & slayne. xxx. persones of full ryght good mennes bodyes & theyr tenaunt fledde apen in too the towne / & the duke wente vnto Pounclarge vntoo the kynge. and tolde hym all howe that he hadde spcedde and howe that he lykede the grounde. ¶ And anone as the duke was gone they caste downe all the subarbes aboute the Lyttee vntoo the harde grounde. for by cause the kynge sholde there noo refresshynge haue at his compynge. And vpon the frydaye befoer lammasdape than nexte folowynge / oure kynge with his hooft came befoer Roone / and anone he sette his lyege rounde aboute that Lyttee / and anone he lete laye his ordynaunce vnto the towne. And the kynge w his lordes

were lodged within the Chartre house and grete strengthe aboute theym and þe was in the best partye of the Lyttee. and than the duke of Clarence lodged hym with al his strengthe and power atte the Weste ende in a waste abbaye befoer the porte Chanse. And the duke of Excester with his menye in the Northe syde befoer the porte Beaueslyn. And bytwene þe duke of Clarence and the duke of Excester was the Erle Marchal lodged with moche prople and a stronge power befoer the castell gate. And thanne the erle of Dymonde with the lorde Haryngton and alsoo the Lorde Talbot with theyr Retenue and companye nexte hym / And thanne syr Johan Cornwayle w many other noble knyghtes and squyres of name with all theyr retenue laye with the noble duke of Clarence. And thanne frome the duke of Excester towardes þe kynge were lodged the lorde Roos / and the lorde Wylleby with the Lorde Phehewe and syr Wyllyam porter knyghte w ther retenue befoer the porte of saynt Hylary. And than was the erle of Morcayne with his retenue lodged in the abbaye of saynt Katherynes. And the erle of Salesbury with his retenue laye on that other syde of saynt Katherynes / & syr Johan Gray knyghte was lodged atte the abbaye that is called mounte dunsaynt Mychell. And syr Phylip Leche knyghte the kynges tresourer was lodged bytwene the water of Seyn and the abbaye and kepte the ward under the hylle / And the baron of Carowe was lodged vnder the water syde for too kepe the passage / And Jenico the squyre laye nexte hym on the water syde / and these two squyres kepte manly the water of Seyn and fought with ther enemyes oft tymes. And on þe other syde of Seyn laye the erle of Montyngdon & mayster Neuyll the erles sone of westmerlorde / and syr Gilbert Dymtreuppl erle of

Keme/and Syr Rycharde erle of Arun/  
 dell & the lorde ferryers with theyr rese/  
 nue before porte du Pouite/& eche of the  
 se lordes had stronge ordynaunce/and þ  
 kyng dyd make at Pouitlarge ouer the  
 water of Seyn a stronge and a myghty  
 chayn of Iron & put i tthrough grete pyls  
 fast pyght in the grounde & þ went ouer  
 þ Ryuer of Seyn that no vessell myght  
 passe that in no kynde. And about that  
 chayn þ kyng lete make a bydge ouer  
 the water of Seyn that man & hors and  
 all other carpage myght go too and fro  
 at all tymes whan nede were. And than  
 came the erle of warwyk and had gotten  
 Doufronte vnto kyng Henry of En/  
 glonde. And anone the kyng sente the  
 erle of warwyk to Lawdebeke for to be  
 leyge it/And whan he came before the  
 towne he sent his heraudes vnto the Ca  
 pytaine and hadde hym yelde vp þ tow  
 ne vpon payne of deche and anone he la  
 yde his leyge. and þ Capytayn belought  
 the erle that he myght come vnto his pre  
 sence and it pleased hym and speke with  
 hym/and so the good erle graūted hym  
 for to come. And than he came out and  
 four other burgeys came with hym and  
 entreated so with this erle that this las  
 me towne was vnder compolycyon too  
 be done as the Cyte of Rone dyd/and þ  
 erle graūted and consented thereto vp/  
 pon this condycyon that the kynges na  
 uye of Englonde with his ordynaunce/  
 myght passe vp by theym in lauffte with  
 out ony maner of lette or dysturbaunce.  
 and to his compolycyon they set to theyr  
 seales. And the shyppes passed vp by thē  
 in lauffte and came before the Cyte of  
 Rone in to an hondred shyppes & there  
 they caste theyr ankers/and thanne this  
 Cyte was besyged bothe by londe and  
 by water. And whan all this was done  
 and the shyppes comen vp thanne came  
 the erle of warwyk ayen to the kyng &  
 lodged hym bytwene þ abbaye of saynt  
 Katherynes and the kyng tyll that the

abbaye entreated and so was yolden vn  
 to the kyng. And thanne he remened  
 hym thens and lodgyd hym before the  
 porte Hartenuylye/and tho was the erle  
 of Salebury commaunded by the kyn  
 ge for to make hym redy for to ryde but  
 there came halsty tydpynges & made hym  
 to abyde / And soo he retorned ayen &  
 lodged hym helyde the goode Erle of  
 Huntynghdon tyll that the spege was en  
 ded. And thenne came the good duke  
 of Gloucestre the kynges brother from  
 the spege of Chyrbourgh the whyche  
 he hadde wonne and gotten and stuffed  
 it agayne vnto the kynges behoue and  
 profyte vnto the crowne of Englonde/  
 And whan he was comen to the kyng he  
 fore Rone he lodged with grete ordynaū  
 ce before þ porte saynt Hyllary more ne  
 rer þ towne & his enemyes than ony other  
 laye by .xl. roddes of lenth w in shot of  
 quarell. & with hym laye þ erle of South  
 folke & þ lorde of Bergeyney w all his  
 retenue & stronge ordynaūce & manly &  
 proudly faughte euery daye with theyr  
 enemyes euer whan they ysued out of þ  
 cyte. And thanne came the pryoure of  
 Kylmayne of Yrlonde ouer þ lce too the  
 kyng with a fayre meny of men of ar  
 mes of theyr owne coultre gyle þ somme  
 of .xvi. hondred goode mennys bodies/ &  
 the kyng welcomed them & made them  
 good chere. And than came tydpynges  
 vnto the kyng that the kyng of Fraū  
 ce and þ Dolphyn with þ duke of Bur  
 goyne wolde come downe & rescowe the  
 cyte of Rone w a stronge power of all  
 manere of nacyns and breke the spege  
 And casteth hym to entre on the northe  
 syde of the hoste by cause that ther was  
 the beste entryng and mooste playne  
 & thrcfore þ kyng assygned þ pryour of  
 Kylmayne w his power & lodged hym  
 on the north syde of the hoodt for to stop  
 pe theyr passage/ & was by the forreste of  
 Lyons/ & of this ordynaunce they were

full gladd and so they went forth in all hast & kept y<sup>e</sup> ground and y<sup>e</sup> place that the kynge & his counsell had assygned/ & they guyte them as good warrours vnto theyr kynge. ¶ Nowe wyl I telle you whiche were y<sup>e</sup> chiefe Capytayns & gouernours of y<sup>e</sup> cite of Rome. Mon syr Guy Botyler was chiefe Capytayne bothe of y<sup>e</sup> cite and of the castell. And Mon syr Termpgan he was Capytayne of porte Lanx. Mon syr de la Roche he was Capytayne of the Dylners. Mon syr Anthony he was Lyuetenaunt to Mon syr Guy Botyler. Henry Chanteyen he was the Capytayne of the porte de la Pointe. Johan Mantreus was Capytayne of the porte de la Castelle. Mon syr de Prianx he was Capytayne of the porte of saynt Hillary. The balcarde of Tyne he was Capytayne of the porte Martenyulle. And graunt Jakes a worthy warrour he was Capytayne of all men of warre and he was gouernour outwarde bothe on horsebacke and on foot of all men of armes whan they yssued out of the cite of all y<sup>e</sup> portes thanne he arayed them as they shold encountre with our men. And eche of the Capytayns ladde fyue thousande men of armes & some moo. And at the fyrste compnyng of our kynge there were nombred by Heroudes in to thre hondred thousande of men & women & chyldren what yonge & olde/ & amonge all these was many a manfull man of his honours and so they preued them whan they yssued out of the cite both on horsebacke & on foot/ for they came neuer at one gate allone/ but at thre or foure gates & at euery gate two or thre thousand of gode mennys bodys armed & manfully encountred w<sup>th</sup> our Englyshmen & moch people slayne dyuerse tymes with gonnes quarelles and other ordynaunce. And this syege dured .xx. wekes/ and euer they of the towne trusted too haue be rescowed but there came none/ so at the laste they

kept the towne so longe that there deyed many a thousande w<sup>th</sup> in the towne for defaute of mete of men & chyldren/ for they hadde cten theyr horses dogges and cattes that were in the towne/ And oftē tymes the men of armes drofe out y<sup>e</sup> pore people out at the gates of y<sup>e</sup> towne for spendyng of vycaylles/ and anone our Englyshmen drofe them in to y<sup>e</sup> towne ayen. Soe at the laste y<sup>e</sup> Capytayne of the towne lawe the mylchefe and h<sup>is</sup> they were notte rescowed and also the scarlyte of vycayll and h<sup>is</sup> people deyed so for defaute of mete euery dape many thousande & also lawe yonge chyldren lye and louke theyr moders pappes and were deed. Than anone they sent to the kynge besechyng hym of his grace and mercye and broughte the keyes of y<sup>e</sup> towne vnto the kynge and deliuered y<sup>e</sup> towne to hym and all the loudpours boyded the towne with ther horses and harneys and the comunes of the towne for to abyde and dwelle styll in the towne yerely/ to paye to hym & to his successours for all manere customes and fee fermes & hatcremes. And than the kynge entred in to the towne and rested hym in y<sup>e</sup> castell tyll the towne was sette in rule and in gouernaunce.

¶ How the kynge of Englonde was made enheyrour and regente of frace & how he wedded queene Katheryne.

**A**Nd anone after that Rome was gotten. Depe and many other townes in y<sup>e</sup> basse Normandy gaaf the ouer w<sup>th</sup> out stroke or syege whan they vnderstode y<sup>e</sup> y<sup>e</sup> kynge had gotten Rome. Al so this yere had be a peas made & sworn bytwene y<sup>e</sup> duke of Burgoyne & y<sup>e</sup> Dolphin whiche were sworne on goddes body that they shold loue & assyste eche o<sup>th</sup>er ayenste theyr enemyes. And after this contrary to this othe y<sup>e</sup> duke Johan of Burgoyne was slayne and pyteously

murdered in the presence of the Dolphyn wherfore þ ffrrenshmen were greely deuyded / & of very necessyte laboured to haue a treatye with the kyng of Englonde. For the kyng of Englonde wanne dayly of them townes castels & fortrelles. ¶ Also this same yere was quene Jane arrested & brought in too the castell of Ledes in Kent. And one frere Radulf a doctour of dyuynpte hir confessor whiche afterwarde was slayne by the persone of the Tour fallynge at wordes and debate / And afterwarde quene Jane was deliuered. ¶ And in the .vii. yere both the kyng of fraunce and of Englonde were accorded and kyng Henry was made heyre and regent of fraunce and wedded dame Katheryne the daughter of fraunce at Tropes in Champayne. on Trinite londaye. And this was made by the meane of Philyp newe made duke of Burgoyne whiche was sworne to kyng Henry to auenge his faders deche and was become Englyshe. ¶ And than the kyng with his newe wyfe wente to Paris where as he was ryally receyued / And frome thens he went with his lordes and the duke of Burgoyne & many other lordes of fraunce and layd siege to dyuerse towes & castels þ helde of the Dolphyns partye & wanne them but the towne of Mylon helde longe tyme for therein were good defenders. In the .viii. yere the kyng & the quene came ouer see and lounded on Candelmasse daye in the morne at Douer. And the .xiiii. daye of feuerer the kyng came to London. And the .xxi. daye of the same moneth þ quene came. And the .xxiiii. of the same she was crowned at westmynster. ¶ Also that same yere anone after Ester the kyng helde a parlement at westmynster / atte whiche parlement it was ordeyned that that golde in Englyshe copn sholde be weyed and none receyued but by weyghte. And anone after wynter of the kyng saylled to Calays and pat

led forth so in to fraunce. And in þ .xxii. daye of Marche before the kyng came ouer the duke of Clarence was slayn in fraunce & dyuerse other lordes taken prysoners as the erle of Huntynghdon þ erle of Somerlet with dyuerse other / and al was bycause they wolde not take none archers with them but thought to haue ouercome the ffrrenshmen themselfe wout archers. And yet whan he was slayne the archers came & rescowed the body of the duke whiche they wolde haue carryed with them / god haue mercye on his soule he was a valyaunt man. And the same yere bytwene Crystmasse and candelmasse the towne of Mylon was solden vnto the kyng. ¶ In the .ix. yere on saynt Nicholas daye in Decembre was borne Henry the kynges fyrste begoten sone at wyndelore / whos godfaders att the font stone was syr Henry byshop of wyndchestre and John duke of Bedford and the duchesse of Holonde was godmoder / and Henry chychelay Archebyshop of Caüterbury was godfader at confermyng; ¶ And in the .x. yere the Cytte of Mews in Bry was gotten whiche hadde ben longe belepyed. And this same yere the quene shypped at Hampton & sayled ouer to the kyng in fraunce where she was worshipfully receyued of the kyng & also of the kyng of fraunce hir fader and of hir moder. And thus kyng Henry wanne fast fraunce & helde grete astate & late at a greete feest in Paris crowned & the quene also whiche hadde not been seen before / & all people resorted vnto his court / but as to the kyng of fraunce he helde none astate nor rule but was lefte almost alone. ¶ Also this yere the wedercoke was set vpon Poules steple at London. And this yere in þ moneth of August the kyng waxed seke at Boys de byncet / & whan he saw he sholde deye he made his testamēt & ordeyned many noble chynges for his soule and deuoutely receyued all the ryghtes of

holy chyrche/in so ferre forth that whan he was anoynted he sayd the scruple w<sup>th</sup> the prest/and at the verse of þ<sup>e</sup> psalme of Miserere mei deus/þ<sup>e</sup> was Benigne fac dñe in bona voluntate tua syon/vt edificentur muri Iherusalem/he hadde tarpe there and sayd thus/D good loide thou knowed þ<sup>e</sup> myn entent hath ben & yet is yf I myghte lyue too reedyfye the walles of Iherusalem. And thanne the prest proceded forth and made an ende. And anone after this moost noble pynce and vycorpus kynge flourde in his tyme of crysten chpualtye. whome all the worlde doubted gaf his soule in to þ<sup>e</sup> handes of god and deyed and made an ende of his naturall lyfe at þ<sup>e</sup> forsayd Boys/ de vyncent helyde Paris the. xxxvi. yere of his aege/vphon whos soule god haue mercy Amen. ¶ Than was the body embayed and cerryd & layd in a ryall chare and an ymage lyke too hym was layd vpon the corps open w<sup>th</sup> dyuerse baners & hoises couered rychely with þ<sup>e</sup> armes of Englonde & Fraunce/and also þ<sup>e</sup> olde armes of saynt Edwarde saynt Eds monde and other with grete multytude of torches/with whome went þ<sup>e</sup> kyng of Scotlonde and many other lordes whyche accompanied þ<sup>e</sup> body tyll it came vnto westmynster by London in Englonde & in euery towne by þ<sup>e</sup> waye he had solenely his dryrge on þ<sup>e</sup> euen and masse on the morne & moche almes was gyuen to poore people by þ<sup>e</sup> waye. & the. vii. day of Nouembre after þ<sup>e</sup> corps was broughte/through London w<sup>th</sup> grete reuerence & sollemnynste to westmynster where as he now lyeth/it was worlshypfully buryed / & after was layd on his tombe a ryall ymage lyke hymself of syluer & gylde which was made at þ<sup>e</sup> coste of quene Katheryne And thus ended & is entered and buryed the noble kynge Henry the fyfth/vpon whos soule and ail crysten soules god haue mercy Amen.

¶ Of the lawe of kynge Henry þ<sup>e</sup> fyfth and what he ordeyned for kyng Rycharde and for hymselfe after his deche.

¶ Here is to be noted that this kynge Henry þ<sup>e</sup> fyfth was a noble pryce after he was kynge and crowned how it before in his yongth he had ben wyldre recheles & spared no thyng of his lustre ne despres but accōplyshed thē after his lykynge/ but as sone as he was crowned enoynted & sacred anone sodayly he was chaunged in to a newe man and set all his entent to lyue vertuouly in mayntenyng of holy chyrche/destroyng of heretykes/keppynge Justyce & defendynge of his reame & subgettes. ¶ And for as moche as his fader had depesed by his labour the good kynge Rycharde & pyteously made hym to deye/ & for þ<sup>e</sup> offence done to hym ayenst his legeaunce he had sente to Rome for to be assoyled therof for whiche offence oure holy fader the pope enioyned hym to make hym to be prayed for perpetually/ & lyke as he had done too be taken frome hym his naturall lyfe therfore he sholde do foude four tapets to brēne perpetually about his body þ<sup>e</sup> for þ<sup>e</sup> ex tynccōn of his bodely lyf his soule may euet be remēbred & lyf in heuē in spyrtyuall lyfe And also þ<sup>e</sup> he sholde euery weke on þ<sup>e</sup> daye as it come aboute of his deche haue a solempne masse of requem & on þ<sup>e</sup> euen afore a dryrge with ix. lessons & a doole to poore people alwaye on þ<sup>e</sup> daye of a .xi. shellynges and. vii. pēns to be deled peny mele/and ones in the yere at his annyuerlarye his terment to be holden in the moost honeste wyse/and to be deled þ<sup>e</sup> daye. xx. pōunde in pēns to poore people. And to euery monthe. xx. shellynge whiche all these thynnges performed this noble kynge for his fader for kynge Henry the fourth/ his fader performed it notte durynge his lyfe of wome as it is layd that god dyd touch hym and was lepre or that he deyed.

¶ And alsoo this noble prynce lete doo calle all the abbottes and pryours of saynt Bernets order in Englonde and had all them in to the chappre hous of west mynstre for the reformacyon of theyr order wherin he had comunycacyon/and alsoo with bysshops and men of the spyrytualtee/in so ferre forth that they doubted sore as that he wolde haue hadde the pemporaltees out of theyr hondes/wherfore by the aduyle labours & procurynge of the spyrytualte encouraged the king for to chalenge Normandy & his ryght in fraunce/to p̄tentent to let hym a werke there that he sholde not seke none occasyons for too entre in to such maters.& than all his lyfe tyme afterwarde he laboured and was hely in the warre and in conquerynge a greate parte of the reame of fraunce/and so afterwarde that by the gremment of the kyng Charles he hadde the gouernaunce & the rule of the reame of fraunce/and he was proclamed regent and heyre of fraunce. And so notwithstanding for all this greate warre that he hadde/neuertheles yet he remembried his soule and also thoughte that he was mortall and nedes muste deye/for whiche cause he ordeyned by hys lyfe tyme the place of his sepulture wher as he is buryed/and hath euery day thre masses perpetually longen in a chapel ouer his sepulture/of the whiche the myddyll masse and the fyrste and ȳ last masse shall be as it is allygned by hym as it appereth by these verses folowynge.

Henrici misse quinti sūt hic tabulate.

Que successive sūt p̄ monachos celebrate

¶ Die dñica.

Prima sit assūpte de festo virginis alme  
Polcic postrema x̄ps de morte resurgens

¶ Feria secunda.

Prima salute de festo virginis extat.  
Nūciat angelicū laudē postrema choris

¶ Feria tertia.

Esse deū natū de virgine prima fatetur.

Comemorat natā sic bliscia misse mariā

¶ Feria quarta.

Prima celebret ad honorē neupmact̄ al  
Ultima p̄ceptā denunciat eē mariā(m)

¶ Feria quinta.

Semper prima coli debet de corpore x̄pi  
Ultima sit facta de virgine purificat a.

¶ Feria sexta.

Concedet ut prima celebret de cruce scā  
Atqz salute fiet postrema maria.

¶ Sabbato.

Dēs ad scōs est prima colenda supernos  
Ultima de requie p̄ defūctis petit esse.  
Semper erit media de pprietate diei.

¶ And yet the noble kyng Henry ȳ fift founded two houses of relygion one is called Syon helyde Braynsforde of the ordre of saynt Bryggytte both of men & women/and on ȳ other syde of the Ryuer of Tamyle an hous of monkes of Chartrehous/in whiche two places he is contynually prayd for nyghte & daye. for euer whan they of Syon resten than they of ȳ Chartre hous do theyr seruyce and in lyke wyle whan they of ȳ Chartre hous resten the other gooth to/and by ryngynge of the belles of eyther place eche knoweth whā they haue ended theyr seruyse whiche be nobly endowed/& doo dayly there grete almes dedes/as in chartre hous certayn chyldren be founden to scole/and at Syon certayn almes gyue dayly. And yet helyde all this he had foūded a recluse the whiche shall be alway a preest to praye for hym by the sayd chartre hous whiche preest is suffyciently endowed for hym and a seruaunt. So here maye all prynces take ensample by this noble prynce that regned so lptyll tyme not fully .x. yere and dyd so many noble actes as well for his soule to be perpetually remembried and prayed for/as in his conquestes & he beyng in his moste lusty aegge dyspoled & elchewed synne & was a grete Justicer/in so moche th̄ all ȳ p̄p̄es of crystendome dradde hym and also of

alsoo of hethenes/and he had determy-  
ned in hymselfe yf god wolde haue spas-  
red hym to haue warred on þ Saralyns  
and for to knowe the ayde of other pry-  
nces & all the passages in þ Journeye he  
sent a knyght of Henaude named Hugh  
de lanoye vnto Iherusalem/ but or he  
retorned he deyed at Boys de vyncente  
in the. xxxvi. yere of his aege. on whoos  
loule god haue mercy Amen.

**H**elyx the. v. was pope whan Eu-  
genius was deposed. ix. yere. this  
felix was duke of Sauoye a deuoute  
prynce & an olde man. & he saue his chil-  
des childe. This man whan he lyued a  
holy lyfe was cholen pope of þ counseyll  
of Balyle/ & Eugeny was deposed. and  
there was stryfe longe tyme/ & he hadde  
no grete obedyence for þ depolycyon of  
Eugeny. And at þ laste Eugeny decel-  
led/ & than felix relpynged to Nicholas  
for fauour of peas to be hadde & he was  
made Legate of fraunce & Cardynall of  
Sabianus. This was þ. xxxiii. stryfe by-  
twyxt Eugedy & felix & it dured. xvi. &  
yere & this was a newe cause & neuer se-  
en before. for þ couleyll of Balyle depos-  
sed Eugeny the vere pope & there was  
no mo for he obeyed not the decrees of þ  
couleyll of Constantynople as they laid  
ne he charged not to obeye þ couleyll of  
Balyle. but he sayd rather the contrary  
shold be done than as they decreed. wher-  
fore there arole a greate alteracõn in þ  
mater/ for some sayd one waye/ & some  
an other and coude notte accorde to this  
dape/ for that one partye sayd þ the cou-  
leyll was aboue þ pope. & an other par-  
tye sayd the contrary that þ pope was a-  
boue the couleyll. but they lefte it vnde-  
termynd. and therfore god muste dyspo-  
se for þ best. ¶ Albert was Emperoure  
after Sygylmonde one yere. this Albert  
was the duke of Austre and neuewe too  
Sygylmond & therfore he was kynge of  
Veme and of Vngary for his doughter

for other heyre he left none. This man  
was cholen Emperour of Almayne but  
anone he was poylened and deped/ and  
he was in all thyng a vertuous man þ  
all men sayd he was a presydent too all  
kynges ¶ Fredericus þ thyrde was Em-  
peroure after hym. this Frederyk was  
þ duke of Osterreich & cholen Emperour  
of Almayne but it was longe or he was  
crowned of the pope for deuplyon. And  
at the laste there was made an vnyte/ &  
he was crowned with a grete honour of  
the pope in the cyte and was a pealyble  
man & a quyete & of a synguler pryce/ &  
he hated not the clergy (he wedded þ kin-  
ges doughter of Portyngale/ and in his  
tyme whyles þ he regned he made a gre-  
te conuocacyon of prynces in Ratispona  
for the Incours of the Turkes/ & shew-  
ed vnto them that nowe within this. xx.  
yere. crystendom was made lasse by two  
hondred myle. and he warned theym þ  
they sholde beredy to relpyt hym. ¶ And  
the unperyll Cyte of Constantynople  
was taken atte that same tyme of the  
myschyleupnge Turkes and betrayed  
by a Januës whome for his labou-  
re the Turke made a kynge as he pro-  
myled hym. and the fourth dape he cal-  
led hym to hym and dyd hange hym for  
his dylcepte too his mayster. And there  
was grete sorowe and weppinge amonge  
the crysten peple for the losse of that no-  
ble Cyte/ for many a crysten man was  
slayne & innumerable were solde. and þ  
Emperoure was slayne & forenyue the  
Turke cauled his heed to be smyten of  
whan he was deed. And al moost all the  
sayth in the londe of Greke fayled.

¶ Nicholas the. v. a Januens was po-  
pe after felix. viii. yere. This Nicholas  
was cholen at Rome in the place of Eu-  
genye/ and yet the stryf henge styll. and  
a lityll & a lityll they obeyed hym/ & all  
men merueyled þ a man of so pore a na-  
cyon shold obteyne ayenst þ duke of Sa-  
uoy the whyche was colyn and alyed al

moost to all the prynces of crystendome and euerychone left hym. Than in þy yere after there was a peas made / & felix relygned for it pleased our lorde his name to be glorifyed by an object of þy worlde as that Januens was in comparysō of the duke the pope. This Nicholas was a mayster in dyupnyte and an actiue man & a ryche man in conseytes / & many thynge that were fallen he buyl dyd apen / & all the walles of Rome he renewed for drede of the Turke. And there was a versle made of this byrte & publyshed in the cyte. ¶ Lux fullit mūdo: cessit felix Nicholao. And þ in the yere of our lorde. M. CCC. xlix. The yere of gra ce with a greate deuocyon was confermed and Innumerable people wēte to the appostles setes.

¶ How kynge Henry the fyrte regned be yunge a chylde not one yere of aege / and of the batayll of Bernayll in Perche.

**A**fter kynge Henry the fyrth regned Henry his sone but a chylde & not fully one yere of age. whos regne began þ fyrste daye of Septembre in the yere of our lord. M. CCC. xxi. This kynge beyng in his cradell was moche doubted & dradde bycause of the greate conquest of his fader and also þ wpldome & gudyng of his vnclis þ duke of Bedforde and the duke of Gloucestre / ¶ This yere the. xxi. daye of Octobrie deyed Charles the kynge of fraunce & lyeth buried at saynt Denys. And chan þ duke of Bedford was made regent of fraunce / & the duke of Gloucestre was made protectour & defendour of Englonde ¶ And the fyrste daye of Marche after was syr wpllam Taylour prest degraded of his presthode / & on the moine after he was byrte in Smythfelde for here lye. ¶ This yere syr James Steward kynge of Scottes maryed dame Jane the duchesse doughter of Clarence þ whi

che she had by hir fyrste husbonde þ erle of Somerslet at saynt Mary ouerys / ¶ Also this yere the. xvii. day of August was the batayll of Bernayll in Perche. bytwene the duke of Bedforde regente of fraunce & the duke of Alaunsome whiche was a full grete batayll. The duke of Bedford had on his syde þ erle of Salisbury Moūtagu & the lorde Talbot & all the power that they coude make in Normandy & the garysons kept / and also many Copptayns with moche peple of the duke of Burgoyns / And on that other syde was the duke of Alaunsome. the duke of Turon that was the erle of Douglas and the erle Boughan wpyth many lordes of fraunce & a greate company of Scottes and Armynakys. And chan þ erle Douglas called the duke of Bedforde in scoine Johā with the leden swerde. And he sent hym worde apen þ he sholde fynde that daye that his swerde was of stele. And the batayll Joynd on bothe sydes and faught longe tyme. that there wylt no man who sholde haue the better a greate whyle. but attē þ last as god wolde the vyctory felle vnto the Englyshe partye. for there were slayne the erle Douglas whiche a lptell before was made duke of Turon the erle Boughan the erle Almarie þ erle of Tonu ar þ erle of Haūtedor & the vylcouite of Nerbon whiche was one of them þ slew the duke Johan of Burgoyn knelyng before the Dolphyn and many mo vnto the nombre of. x. thousand & mo. And there was taken pryloners the duke of Alaunsome and many nther lordes and gentylles of fraunce. but Scottes that daye were slayne downe ryghthe the substance of them all. ¶ And the thyrde yere of kynge Henry the fyrth the duke of Gloucestre maryed the duchesse of Holland & went ouer see with hir in to He naude for to take possession of his wyues enherytaunce where he was honora by receyued and taken for lorde of that



londe/ but sone after he was fayne to re-  
 torne home ayen to Englonde and left  
 his wyfe & all his tieloure that he hadd  
 broughse with hym in a towne y is cal-  
 led Mounle in Henaude/ whiche promp-  
 sed hym to be trew to hym. Notwithsta-  
 dyng they delyuered the lady to the du-  
 ke of Burgoyne whiche sent hir to Ga-  
 ante. And frome thens she escaped in a  
 mannes clothyng and came into zelan-  
 de to a towne of hir owne called Syrix  
 And frome thens she went to a towne in  
 Hollonde called the Gowde and there  
 she was stronge ynoughe and withstode  
 the forsayd duke of Burgoyne. ¶ And  
 sone after the duke of Gloucestre sente  
 ouer see in to zelande the loide fytzwa-  
 ter with certayne men of armes and ar-  
 chers for to helpe and locoure y forsayd  
 duchesse of Hollande/ whiche londe at  
 a place in zelande called Brewers hauent  
 where the loides of the couitee came dow-  
 ne and faughte with hym/ and in con-  
 clusyon he was feyne to withdraw hym  
 and his menye to the see ayen. But yet  
 he slewe and kylde & hurte dyuerse lor-  
 des and moche people of that same cou-  
 tee/ & so returned home ayen into Englonde  
 with his menye & picuapled no thynge.  
 ¶ And also this same yere the erle of  
 Salebury/ the erle of Suffolk/ the loide  
 wylleby & y loide Scales with theyr  
 retenu layd lyege to y cyte of Manus y  
 whiche cyte was yolden to theym wyth  
 many other stronge townes and castels  
 to y nombre of. xxxvi. ¶ This tyme all  
 Normandy and a greate parte of fraun-  
 ce vnto Dilpaunce was vnder the obeyt  
 saunce of the kynge of Englonde/ and al  
 the remenaunt of fraunce was in grete  
 trybulacyon and myschep.

¶ How there was lyke to haue ben a gre-  
 te fraye bytwene the Cardynall and the  
 duke of Gloucestre. And of the corona-  
 cyon of kynge Heney the lyxte bothe in  
 Englonde & in fraunce.

**I**n the fourth yere the same nyght  
 that y mayer of London Johan  
 Couentre had taken his charge/ was a  
 greate watche in London for a fraye y  
 was bytwene the byshop of wyndchestre.  
 & the duke of Gloucestre protectour ic.  
 for the mayer with the people of the cy-  
 te wolde abyde by y duke of Gloucestre  
 as protectour & defendour of the reame  
 but by labour of loides that went bitwe-  
 ne/ and in especyall by the labour of the  
 prynce of Portyngale/ there was a poynt-  
 temente taken that there was no harme  
 done. ¶ And after y batayll of Bernayl  
 in Perche the duke of Bedforde came o-  
 uer into Englonde. And on wyflonday  
 this same yere atte Lepestre he dubbed  
 kynge Henry knyghte. And forth wyth  
 the sayd kynge Henry dubbed all these/  
 knyghtes whos names folowen/ that is  
 to wyte syr Rycharde duke of porke/ al-  
 so the sone and heyre of the Duke of  
 North folke/ the erle of Orfoide/ the er-  
 le of westmerlonde/ the sone and heyre/  
 of the erle of Northumberlonde/ the so-  
 ne & heyre of the erle of Hermonde/ y lord  
 Roos/ syr Jamys bottelar/ y lord Mar-  
 trauas/ sir Henry gray of Tankeruyple  
 syr wyllyam Neuill/ loide fawconbryd-  
 ge/ syr George Neuill loide Latymier/ y  
 loide wellys/ y loide Barkle/ the sone/ &  
 heyre too the loide Talbot/ syr Raufe  
 gray of wetke/ syr Robert beer/ syr Ry-  
 charde gray/ syr Edmonde hongertorde  
 syr Johan bottelar/ syr Raynolde Cob-  
 ham/ syr Johan passheley/ syr Thomas  
 kustall/ Johñ Chydok/ sir Rauf lange-  
 ford/ sir william dury/ syr william tho-  
 mas/ Rycharde Carbonell/ sir Rycharde  
 wydewyle/ sir Johñ shydelowe/ sir wyl-  
 lyam Chayn/ sir william Badyngton.  
 syr Johñ June/ and sir Gilbert Beau-  
 champ. ¶ Item in the fyfthe yere the  
 duke of Bedford with the duchesse hys  
 wyfe wente ouer see to Calays/ & a ly-  
 tell before went ouer see Henry byshop  
 of wyndchestre. And on our ladyes daye

Annuncyacyon in our lady chirche atte Calays the byshop of wynchestre as he had longen masse was made Cardynal and he knelinge before the hyghe awter the duke of Bedforde let the hat vpon his heed/and there were his bullys redde as well of his charge as of the reioylynge of his benefices spyrtyuall and temporall. ¶ And this same yere was grete habundaunce of rayne/that the substaūce of heye and also of corne was dystroyed/for it rayned almost euery other da ye. ¶ And this same yere the good Erle of Salebury syr Thomas of Mountagu layde syege vnto Dilpaunce atte the whiche syege he was slayne with a gonne that come out of the towne on whoos soule god haue mercy amen. for sythe þ he was slayne Englysshmen neuer gaste ne preuayled in fraunce/but euer after beganne to lese lpyll & lpyll tyll all was loste. ¶ Also this same yere a Bryton murthred a good wedowe in hir bed withoute Algate whiche wedowe found hym for almelle/and he bare awaye all that she hadde. And after this he toke þ gythe of holy chirche at saynt George in Southwarke/ & there he toke þ crosse and forswore this lond. And as he went it happened þ he came by the place where he dyd this cursyd dede in the subarbes of London. And the women of the same paryshe came oute with staves/ & canell douge and slewe & made an ende of hym there. Notwithstandynge þ constables & many other men beyng present for to kepe hym for there were so many women & had no pyte. ¶ Also this same yere the duke of Northfolk with many gentylmen and yomen stoke hys barge/ the .viii. da ye of Nouembre atte saynt Marpe oueres for too haue gone thrugh London brydge. and thrughe mysfydnyge of the barge it ouerthrewe on þ pylles and many men drowned/ but the duke hymselfe with two or thre leped vpon pylles and so were saurd with helpe of men

that were aboute the brydge with castynge downe ropes/ by þ whiche ropes they saurd themselfe. ¶ This same yere on saynt Leonardes da ye kynge Henry beyng .vii. yere of aege was crowned atte westmynster/ at whos coronacyon were made .xxxvi. knyghtes. ¶ This yere on saynt Georges da ye he passed ouer se to Calays towarde fraunce. ¶ About this tyme and afore the reame beyng in grete mysery and trybulacyon. þ Dolphyn with his partve began to made warre & gate certayne places & made dystresses vpon the Englysshmen by the meane of his Capytayns. that is to saye la heer & poton de sayntraylles/ and in especyall. a mayde the whiche they named la pucelle de dicu. This mayde rode lyke a man and was a valyaunt Capytayne. amonge them and toke vpon hir many grete enterpyles in so moche þ they had a byleue for to haue recoueryd all theyre losses by hir. Notwithstandynge atte the laste after many grete feates/ by the helpe & prudence of syr Johā Luxemburgh the whiche was a noble Capytayne of the duke of Burgon & many Englysshmen Dycardes and Burgoynonis which were of our partve before the towne of Compynce the .xxiii. da ye of Maye. the forsayd pucelle was taken in the felde armed lyke a man & many other Capytaynes with hir & were all brought to Rone & there she was put in to pylson. And there she was Juge by þ lawe to be brient And thanne she sayd that she was with chyld/ wherby she was a whyle respyted But in conclusyon it was founden that she was not with chyld/ and thanne she was brient in Rone/ and the other Capytayns were put to raūsome & entreted as men of warre ben accustomed. ¶ And this same yere about Candelmasse Rycharde hunder a wulle packer was damned for an heretyke and brient at Tourhylle. ¶ And about mydlenten syr Thomas Baggely preeft and bycarpe of þ

Mauen in Estley belyde walde was dysgraded and dampned for an heretyke & brennt in Smythfelde. And also in this same yere whyles the kyng was in fraunce there were many heretykes and lolar des that hadde purposed to make a rylynge and caste bylles in dyuerse places but blessed be almyghy god the Cappytayne of theym was taken whos name was wyllyam Maundeuyll a weuer of Abendon and balyf of the same towne. whiche named hymself Jacke Sharpe of Wymorellonde in wales. And after warde he was beheded atte the forsayd Abendon in the wynterweke on y<sup>e</sup> twel dape. This same yere the .vi. dape of Decembre kyng Henry the sixth was crowned kyng of fraunce at Parys in the churche of our lady with grete solempnyte there beyng presente the Cardynall of Englonde the duke of Bedforde and many other lordes of fraunce and of Englonde. And after this coronacion and grete feest holden at Parys the kyng retorned frome thens to Rome and so towarde Calays and the .ix. day of feuerer loded at Douer whome all the comunes of Kent mette at Beramdon bytwene Launterbury and Douer all in reed hodes. and so come forth tyll he came to y<sup>e</sup> blacke hethe where he was mette with y<sup>e</sup> mayer Joh<sup>n</sup> Wellps with all the craftes of London clothed all in whyte and soo they broughte hym vnto London the .xxi. dape of the same mo<sup>th</sup> the. And this same yere was a restraynte of the wulles of Calays made by the loudpours bycause they were not payed of theyr wages. wherfore y<sup>e</sup> duke of Bedforde regent of fraunce beyng than Capytayne came to Calays the twel dape in the esterweke. And than on the mo<sup>ne</sup> after many loudpours of the towne were arested and put in warde. And in the same weke he rode to Terwyn and by the meane of the byshop of Terwyn he wedded the Erls doughter of

saynt Poule & came ayen to Calays & than the .xi. dape of June on saynt Bernabys dape there were four loudpours of Calays that were the chyef causes of the restraynt of the wulles byheeded that is to wyte Johan Maddeley / Joh<sup>n</sup> Latunday / Thomas Palmer and Thomas Talbot & an hondred & .x. bannyshed oute of the towne that same tyme and before were bannyshed an hondred and .xx. loudpours. And on mydsomere enen after came the lord regent & hys wyf too London.

**A**nd than about this tyme deyed pope Martyn. And after hym Eugeny the fourth was pope. This man was pealably cholen in the court of Rome by the Cardynales and was very & indubytate pope. But within a choite tyme after he was putte and expulced out of Rome in suche a maner that he was fayne for to flee naked. In this same tyme was the counseyll of Basyle to y<sup>e</sup> whiche counseyll Eugeny the pope was cyted to come. And bycause that he came not they deposed hym but he rough not he let not therby but gate y<sup>e</sup> cyte of Rome & abode styll pope .xii. yere. Thys tyme about wynter wherof of Prague were dystroyed. for atte two Journys were dystroyed of theym mo<sup>th</sup> than .xii. thousande with theyr Capytaynes that is to wete Procapius Saplico & Lupus presbyter. Also there was taken on lyue mayster Peers clerke an Englyshe man and an heretyke. And also thys same yere was a stroge frost & a long durtynge the whiche lasted .xi. wekes for it beganne vpon saynt Katherynes euent and lasted vnto saynt Scolastycus day in feuer yere / in the whyche tyme the vyntage that came frome Burden came ouer lhotres hylle. This yere was y<sup>e</sup> counseyll of aras & a grete treatye bytwene the kyng of Englonde and y<sup>e</sup> kyng

of fraunce where were assembled many grete lordes of bothe partyes. at whiche couñseyll was offred to the kynge of Englonde greate thynges by the meane of a Legate that came fro Rome þ which was Cardynall of saynt Crosse/whiche offres were refused by the Cardynalle of Englonde & other lordes þ ther were for the kynge. wherfore the duke of Burgoyne þ which hadde ben longe Englyshe sworne forloke oure partye & returned frensche by the meane of þ forlaid Legate. & made a peas with the frensche/ kynge recepyunge of þ kynge for recompensyunge of his faders dethe þ couñte of Pontui/ þ lordshyp of Macon with moche other as is specyfyed in þ sayd treaty And soo oure embassatours came home ayen in woile caas than they went oute for they losse there the duke of Burgoyne whiche hadde ben with his Burgoynes & Pycardes a synguler helpe in all the conqueste of Normandye & of fraunce This same yere was a greate bataylle on the see bytwene the Genewes & the kynge of Aragon of whiche bataylle þ Genewes had the byctory/ for they toke the kynge of Aragon þ kynge of Nauerne & þ grete mayster of saynt James in Galycie w thre hondred knyghtes & squyr & moche other people/ & this was on saynt Dominic⁹ daye. And this same yere were seen thre sones at ones/ & anone followed the thre folde gouernaunce in the chirche/ that is to wese of Eugeny of the couñseyll and of neutralyte. Also thys same yere a .M. CCC. xxxiiii. was a passyng grete wynde by whiche steples houses & trees were ouerthrowen. About this tyme was an holy mayde in Hollonde called Lpdyth whiche lpyed only by miracle not etyngge ony mete. Thys yere the duke of Burgoyne beganne his ordre atte Lyle of the golden fleys and ordeyned certayne knyghtes of the same ordre and made statutes and ordynauces moche accordyng vnto the ordre of

the garter. Also this same yere þ frenschmen had enterpyled too haue stolen Calays in the tpslyng tyme/ for many botes of fraunce had safeconduytes to come to Calays for to take herynge. And the loudpours of the towne had a custume to come to the chirche. & leue theyr staues standyng at the chirche doore/ which staues the frensche men that were arrayed lyke tpslbers hadde purposed for to haue stolen theyr staues and wepen for to haue wonne so the towne. but one of them laye with a comune woman þ nyghte before/ and he tolde to hyr ther couñseyll/ and she on the morne tolde it to þ Lyuetenaunte whiche forthwith all commaunded that euery man sholde kepe his wepen in his honde sakeryng tyme & other. And whan the frenschmen perceyued this that they were myspoynted they saylled streyghte to Depe & stole & take þ towne. And on New yeres daye/ after they toke Hartlete. And thus þ Englyshmen began to lese a lpyll and lpytill in Normandye.

How Calays & Gynnes were besyged by the duke of Burgoyne & how they were rescowed by þ duke of Gloucestre.

This yere was a greate noyse all Englonde thurgh howe þ duke of Burgoyne wold come & besyge Calays/ wherfore the erle of Mortayne w his armye that he had to haue go w hy into fraunce was commaüded & charged þ he sholde go to Calays/ whiche was atte þ tyme well bytayed & manned/ for syr Iohn Ratclyfe was Lyuetenaunte of þ towne for þ kynge. & the baron of Dudlay Lyuetenaunt of þ castell. And the ix. daye of Julii the duke of Burgoyne. with all the power of flaundes and moche other people came before Calays & sette his spege about the towne/ and euery towne of flaundes hadde theyr tentes by themself. And this spege endured

thre were. In the meane whyle the duke of Gloucestre beyng protectour of Englonde toke y moost parte of all the lordes of Englonde & went ouer the see to Calays for to rescoue the towne or for to fyghte with the duke and his hooft yf they wolde haue byden. This tyme London and euery good towne of Englonde sente ouer thele to this rescow certayne people well arayd of the best & chole men for y warre. And the second day of August the forsayd duke of Gloucestre arpued at Calays with all his army & .v. hundred thypes and moo. And the duke of Burgoyne & all his hooft y laye in the lyege/as lone as they alpyed the sayles in y see/before they approched Calays hauen sodaynly in a moznyng departed frome the lyege/leuyng behyde hym moche stuff and vylayle & fledde in to Flaunders and Pycardye. & in lyke wyle dyd the lyege y laye befor Guynes where as they of Swenes toke the grengonne of brasse called Dygeon & many othere greate gonges & serpentess. And than whan the duke of Gloucestre was arpued with his hooft/he went into flaudres and there he was. xii. dayes and dyd but lytell harme excepte y he biente two fayre byllages Poperyng & Belle & other houles whiche were of no stronge buyldyng/& so he retorned home aue. And this same yere the kynge of Scotlande besyged Rokelburgh with moche people. But syr Rauf gray departed frome the castell & ordeyned for a rescow. But as lone as the kynge of Scotland vnderstode his departyng sodaynly he brake his lyege and wente his waye and lefte moche ordynaunce behynde hym/where he gate hym no worshyppe. This same yere the seconde daye of Januere quene Katheryne the whiche was the kynges moder and wyfe too kyng Henry the fyfte deyed & departed out of this worlde and was brought ryally thurgh London & so too westmynster and there

the lyege worshypfully buried in oure ladyes chapell. And also this same yere the fourth daye of Januere felle downe the gate with y toure on it on London brydge towarde Southwerke w two arches & all y stode thereon. This same yere was a greate treate holden byt wene Graucnyng & Calays bythenethe kyng & the duke of Burgoyne/where was in the kynges name the Cardynalle of Englonde the duke of Norfolk & many other lordes/& for the duke of Burgoyne was the duchesse hauyng full power of hyr lorde as regent and lady of hys lordes where was taken by thadyse of bothe partyes an abstynence of warre for a certayne tyme in y name of y duchesse and not of the duke bycause he had gone frome his othe and legeaunce that he hadde made to kyng Henry the fyfte therfore the kyng neuer wolde wyfene appoynt ne haue to do w hym after. but all in the duchesse name. Also this same yere quene Jane deyed y second day of Iule whiche had ben wyf to kyng Henry y fourth & was carryed frome bermoodsey to Laüterbury where she lyege buried by kyng Henry hir hulbonde. Thys same yere deyed all the Lyons in y toure of London. the whiche had not ben seen many yeres before.

How Owen a squyre of wales that hadde wedded quene Katheryne was arested/and of the lyege bytwene Lusgenye and felix.

In the .xv. yere of kyng Henry the fyfte. deyed Spygysmond Emperoure of Almayne and knyghte of the garter/whos fermente the kyng kepte at saynt Poules in London ryally/where was made a ryall heerle/& the kyng in his astate clad in blew was at euen at dyppe & on the morne at masse. And after hym was electe and cholen Albert duke of Osteryk whiche hadde wedded

Sygylmondus daughter for to be Emperoure. This man was taken & receyued to be kynge of Beme & Hungary by cause of his wyfe that was Sygylmondus daughter whiche left none other heyre after hym. This Albert was Emperour but one yere for he was poysoned & so deyed: some sayth þ he deyed of flix but he was a vertuous man & pytefulle so moche þ all the people þ knewe hym sayd that the worlde was not worthy to haue his pience ¶ This same yere one Owen a squire of wales a man of lowe byrth. whiche hadde many a daye before secretly wedded quene Katherync & hadde by hir thre sones and one daughter & he was taken and comaunded too Newgate to pryson by my lord of Gloucestre protectour of þ reame. And this yere he brake the pryson by the meane of a prest þ was his chapelayn & after was taken ayen by my lord Remonde and brought ayen to Newgate and afterwarde delyuerd at large. And one of his sones afterwarde was made erle of Rychemonde and an other erle of Penbroke. and the thyrde a monke of westmynster whiche monke deyed lone after. ¶ This same yere also on Newe yeres daye atte Bernardes castell fell downe a stake of wood sodaynly at after none and slewe thre men myscheyfly & foule hurt other ¶ Also at Bedforde on a shyresday were .xviii. men murdered without stroke by fallynge downe a steyr as they come out of theyr comune halle and many foule hurt. ¶ In the .xviii. yere syr Rycharde Beauchamp the good erle of warwyke deyed atte Rone he beyng that tyme lyuetenaunte of the kynge in Normandy and frome thens his body was brought to warwyk where he lyeth worshypfully in a newe chapell on the south syde of þ quere. ¶ Also this yere was a grete derth of corne thurgh out all Englonde for a busthell of whete was worth .xl. pens in many places of Englonde and yet they

myght not haue ynoughe wherfore Steuen browne that tyme mayer of London sente in to pruce and broughte to London certayn shyppes laden with rye whiche dyd moche good to the poore people. for corne was so scarle in Englonde þ in some places of Englonde poore people made them brede of fern rotes. ¶ Thys yere the generall couseyll of Balyle depoled Eugeny & they chole felix which was duke of Sauoy & than began the scylme whiche endured vnto the yere of oure lord. M CCCC. xlviij. ¶ Thys felix was a deuouite prynce & laue hys sones lone and after lyued an holy lyfe & was cholen pope of the couseyll of Balyle & Eugeny depoled. And so the scylme was longe tyme & this felix had but lytell obedyence by cause of the nautraslyte for the moost parte & well nyghe all crystendome obeyed & reputed Eugeny for very pope of them bothe for both occupied durynge þ lyfe of Eugeny. This same yere syr Rycharde whiche was by carpe of hermettelworth was degraded of his piceshode at Poules & brent atte Toure hylle as for an heretyke on lajt Botulphus daye how well at his dethe he deyed a good crysten man wherfore after his dethe moche people come to þ place where he was brent & offred & made an hepe of stones & set vp a crosse of tree & helde hym for a saynt tyll þ mayer & thicues by þ kynges comaundement & of byshoppes dystroyed it & made there a douge hylle. Also this same yere þ thre ues of London fet out of saynt Martyns the graunte of the sentwary tyue persons whiche afterward were restored apē too the sentwary by the kynges Justices ¶ And after Alberte the thyrde. frederyk was cholen Emperour. This frederyk duke of Ostryk was longe Emperour & dyfferred to be crowned at Rome by cause of the scylme but after that vnyte was had he was crowned w the Imperypall dyademe w grete gloyre and

tryumphe of pope Nicholas p. iiii. This was a pealsyble man. quyetie and of syn guler pacyence not hatyng the chyrche/ he wedded the kynges doughter of Pors tyn gale.

How the duchesse of Gloucestre was arested for treason & comytted to perpetuall pylson in y<sup>e</sup> yle Man/ & of the de/the of mayster Roger Bolynghbrok.

**I**n this same yere Elynoure Cobham duchesse of Gloucestre was arested for certayne poyntes of treason layde azen hyr/ wherupon she was examyned in laſt Stephens chapell at west mynster afore the Archebpyshop of Canturbury. And there she was emoynded to open penaunce to go thurgh chepe beyng a taper in hir hande & after to perpetuall pylson in y<sup>e</sup> yle of Man vnder y<sup>e</sup> heppynge of sir Thomas Stanley. Also that same tyme was arested mayster Thomas louthwell a chanon of westmynster mayster Joh<sup>n</sup> hane a chapelayne of the sayd lady/ mayster Robert Bolynbroke a clerke vlyngge Nygromancy/ and one Margery iourdemayn called the wyche of Eye belyde westmynster/ there were arested as for beyng of counseyll w<sup>th</sup> the sayd duchesse of Gloucestre. & for mayster Thomas louthwell deped in y<sup>e</sup> Tour the nyghte before he sholde haue be reynyed on y<sup>e</sup> moine. for he hymself layd that he sholde depe in his bedde & not by Justyces. And in y<sup>e</sup>.xx.yere mayster Joh<sup>n</sup> hume and mayster Roger Bolynghbrok were brought to the gylde hall in London/ and there before y<sup>e</sup> Mayer the lordes and chref Justyces of Englonde were reynyed and dampned bothe to be drawen and hanged & quartred. but mayster Joh<sup>n</sup> hume had his chartre/ & was pardoned by the kynge. but mayster Roger was drawen to Tyburne where he confessed that he deped gyltles of this matter & neuer had trespased in y<sup>e</sup> he deped

fore. Notwithstandynge he was hanged heeded and quartred/ on whos soule god haue mercy. Amen. And Margere iourdemayn was brent in Smythfelde. Also this yere was a greate fraye in London in flete strete by nyghte tyme bytwene men of court & men of London/ and dyuerse men slayne and some hurt. and one Herbotell was the chref causer of the mysgouernaunce & affray. Also this yere at y<sup>e</sup> chelyng of the mayer of Lond<sup>o</sup> the compus named Robert Clopton & Raulyn Holande talyour/ and the aldermen toke Robert Clopton & broughte hym at the ryghte hande of the mayer/ as custome is. And thā certayn talyours and other hande craftes men cryed nay nay not this man but Raulyn Holande wherfore the mayer that was Paddyse/ sente them that so cryed too Newgate where they abode a grete whyle and were punysshed. In this same yere were dyuerse enballatours sente into Guyon for a maryage for the kynge for the erles doughter of Armpnake that whiche was concluded/ but by the meane of the erle of Suffolke it was lette and put a parte. And after this the sayd erle of Suffolke went hymself ouer se in fraunce & there he treated the maryage bytwene the kynge of Englonde & the kynges doughter of Cypre and of Iherusalem And the nexte yere it was concluded fully that maryage/ by whiche maryage y<sup>e</sup> kynge sholde delyuer to hir fader the duchye of Angeo and the erldome of Mayn whiche was the here of Normandy. Than departed y<sup>e</sup> erle of Suffolke with his wyfe and dyuerse lordes & knyghtes in the moost ryall astate that myght be oute of Englonde with newe chartres & palstreys whiche went thurgh the chepe and so wente ouer the see and recepued/ hir and than after in the Lenten broughte hir vnto Hampton where she landed and there was ryally recepued. And vpon Landelmasse euen before by a gre

te tempeste of thondre and lyghtnyng/ at after none/Poules Steple was sett on fyre on the myddes of the shaft in þ tyme bre/whiche was quenched by force of labour/ & specyally by the morowe masse prest of the Bowe in chepe whiche was thought impossyble sauf only the grace of god. ¶ This yere was þerle of Staforde made and create duke of Bukyng ham/therle of werwyk duke of war wyk the erle of Dorset markys of Dorset/ & the erle of Suffolke was made markis of Suffolke.

¶ How kynge Henry wedded quene Margarete/and of hyr coronacyon.

**T**his yere kynge Henry maryed at Suchwyk quene Margarete/ & she came too London the .xxviii. daye of May. And by þ waye all þ lordes of Englonde recepued hir worthypfully in dyuerse places And in especyall the duke of Gloucestre/ & on the black hethe þ mayer w all the aldermen/ & all the craftes in blewe gownes broudered with the deuple of his craft/ that they myght be be knowne/ met with hir with redde hodes & brought hir to London. where were dyuerse pagentys & couēnaunce of dyuerse hystories shewed in dyuerse places of þ cyte ryally & costely. ¶ And þ .xxx. daye of May. þ forsayd quene was crowned at westmynster. And there was Justes thre dayes durynge within the Sayn/ tuary before the abbaye. ¶ This yere þ pryncour of Kylmayn apeled therle of Bermonde of treason. whiche hadde a dape to them assygned for to fyght in Snythfelde. And the lystes were made. and the felde dreslyd. But whan it came too poyn/ the kynge comaūded þ they shold not fyght: but toke the quarell into his honde. And this was done at the Instauce and labours of certayne prechers & doctours of London/ as mayster Gyl

bert worthyngton perlonc of saynt Andrews in Holborn/ and other. ¶ Also this yere came a greate embassate in to Englonde out of fraūce. for to haue concluded a perpetuall peas/ but in conclusyon it turned vnto a trewes for a yere. ¶ About this tyme dyed sayne Barnardyne a gray frere whiche began þ new reformatiō of þ ordre in many places/ in so moche/ that they/ that were reformed/ ben called Obseruautes/ whiche obseruautes ben gretyly encreaced in ytaly and in Almayne. This Barnardyn was canonyled by pope Nicholas the .v. in the yere of oure lord. M. CCC. l. ¶ Johannes de Capistrano was his discyple/ whiche profyted moche to þ reformatiō of þ ordre for god hathe shewed many a fayre miracle. ¶ Also here is to be noted/ þ frome this tyme forwarde/ kynge Henry neuer profyted ne went forwarde/ but fortune began to torne frome hym on all lydes. as well in fraūce Normandy/ Guyon. as in Englonde. some men holde oppinyon/ þ kynge Henry paat comynslyon puenarly to syr Edward de Hull: sir Robert Roos/ Deane of saynt Senerynes and other. to conclude a maryage for hym/ with þ erle of Armpnakes lyster/ whiche was promysed as it was layd and concluded/ & after broken/ and he wedded quene Margarete/ as afore is layd/ & a full dere maryage for þ reme of Englonde. for it was know verily/ þ for to haue hir delpuerde was þ duchy of Angeo & the erldom of Mayn whiche was þ kepe of Normandy for þ frenshmen to entre. ¶ And about thys the sayd Markys of Suffolke aryd in playne parlement/ a fyftene and an halfe/ for to fetche hyr out of fraunce. Soo what a maryage was this as to the comparyson of that other maryage. for there sholde haue be delpuerde. so many castels & townes in Guyon/ & soo moche gold sholde haue be yeuen with hir/ þ all Englonde sholde haue be therby enryd



ched/ but contrary wyle fell. wherfore e-  
 uery grete prynce oughte to kepe his pro-  
 myse/ for bycaule of brekyngge of thys  
 promyse/ & for maryage of queene Marga-  
 rete/ what losse hath the reame of En-  
 glonde had/ by lclpyngge of Normandye/  
 & Guyon/ by dyuylsion in the reame/ &  
 rebellyngge of compyns apenst ther prynce  
 & lordes/ what dyuylsion amonge y loz-  
 des. what murdre & sleynge of theym/  
 what felde foughite and made/ in con-  
 clusyon so many y many a man hath  
 losse his lyfe. & in conclusyon the kyng  
 depolpd/ & the queene with hyr lone fay-  
 ne to fle into Scotlonde/ & frome thens  
 into frauce. & so to Loreyne/ the place y  
 she came fyrst fro. Many men deme that  
 the brekyngge of y kynges promyse to y  
 syster of the erle of Armysnah/ was caule  
 of his greate losse and aduerlyfe.

How the duke of Gloucestre the kyn-  
 ges vncler was arested at the parlemente  
 of Bury/ and of his dethe/ and how An-  
 geo in Mayn was delyuered.

**I**n the .xxvi. yere of kynges Henry  
 was a parlement at Bury. called  
 saynt Edmondes bury. abowte whyche  
 was comaunded all the compyns of y cou-  
 tre to be there/ in theyr moost beste defen-  
 syable araye/ for to wayte vpon y kyn-  
 ge To whiche parlement came the du-  
 ke of Gloucestre. Hmfrey y kynges vn-  
 cle. whiche hadde be protectoure of En-  
 glonde all y noncage of the kyng. And  
 anone after as he was in his lodgynge.  
 he was arested by y wycoüte Beaumont  
 the Conestable of Englonde/ whome ac-  
 companyed the duke of Bukyngham/  
 & many other lordes. And forth with all  
 his seruantes were comaunded to departe  
 frome hym. And .xxxiii. of the chyeft of  
 them were arested. and sente to dyuers  
 pylons And anone after this sayd arest  
 y sayd duke was on the morow dede. on  
 whos soule god haue mercy. but how he

dped & in what maner the certente is not  
 knowe. Some sayd he dped for sorowe/  
 some sayd he was murdered by twene two  
 federbedds. some sayd y a spyt was put  
 in his fūdmente. But how he deyed god  
 knoweth. to whome no chyngge is hydde  
 & then whan he was deed. he was layed  
 open y all men myght hym see. And soo  
 bothe lordes & knyghtes of y shyre. with  
 burgeys. came & sa we hym lye dede. but  
 woude ne token coude they not perceyue  
 how he dped. here may men mark what  
 this worlde is. ¶ This duke was a no-  
 ble man & a grete clerk. & ruled worlhypp  
 fully y reame to y kynges behoue. & ne-  
 uer cowde be foude faute to hym. But  
 enuye of them y were gouernours & had  
 promysed the duchy of Angeo & the erle  
 dome of Mayn. caulyd y dystruccyon of  
 this noble man. for they dradde that he  
 wolde haue empelhyd y delyueraunce.  
 And after they sente his body to saynt  
 Albons with certayne lychtes. for to be  
 buryed. And so syr Geruays of Clyfton  
 had then y charge for to conuey y corps  
 And so it was buryed at saynt Albons  
 in the abbaye/ And fyue perlones of his  
 houlholde were sente too London/ and  
 there were they reyned. and Jugyd to be  
 drawen/ & hanged/ & also quartred. Of  
 whome y names were/ syr Roger cham-  
 brielaine a knyghte. & one Hydelton a  
 squyre. Arthur a squyre. and Rycharde  
 Nedham. whiche .v. perlones were draw-  
 fro the Toure of London thugh Chepe  
 to Tyborn/ & there lete downe quycke &  
 thenne strypped too haue ben heeded and  
 quartred/ and thenne the Marqueys of  
 Suffolke shewed there for theym y kyn-  
 ges perdon vnder his grete seale. And so  
 they were pardonned of the remenaunte  
 of all that other executyon/ & had theyr  
 lyses/ and so they were broughte ayen/  
 too London/ and after freely delyuered  
 Thus began trowble in this reame of  
 Englonde / for the dethe of thys noble  
 duke of Gloucestre/ & all the compyns of

the reame began for to murmure for it and were not content.

¶ After that pope Eugeny was dede/ Nicholas the fyfth was elect pope. this Nicholas was chole for Eugeny yet hangynge þ̄ scylme. notwithstanding he gaue the obedyence of all crysten reames/ for after he was elect and sacred pope/ certayne lordes of fraunce and of Englonde/ were sent in to Sauoy too pope felyx. for to entreate hym to leasse of the papacy. And by the specyall labour of the bysshop of Norwiche and the lord of saynt Iohannes. he cessed the seconde yere after þ̄ pope Nicholas was sacred/ And þ̄ sayd felyx was made Legate of fraunce and Cardynall of Sauoy. and he relygned þ̄ hole papacy to Nicholas. And after lyued an holy lyfe. and deded an holy man. And as it is layd almyghy god shewyth myracles for hȳ. Thys was the. xxiii. scylme bytwene Eugeni and felyx. and dured. xvi. yere. The cause was this/ the generall couñsell of Baile depoled Eugeny/ whiche was oonly pope and Indubytate. for as moche as he obserued not and kepte the decrees & statutes of the couñsell of Constance. as it is layd before. Nother he rought notte to yeue obedyence to the generall couñsell in no maner wyle. wherfore arose a grete alteracōn among wryters of this matere (pro et contra) whiche can not accorde vnto this daye/ one partye sayth/ that the counsell is aboute the pope. and that other partye sayth nay. but the pope is a boue þ̄ counsell. God blessed aboute all thyng. yeue and graunte his peas in holy chirche spouse of cryste Amen. Thys Nicholas was of Jene comen of lowe degree/ a doctoure of dyuynyte. an actyf mā he reedyfyed many places that were broken/ & ruynous. and dyd make a walle abowte the palays. and made the walle newe abowte Rome for drede of þ̄ Turks. ¶ And the people wondred & grete ly merueyllid of þ̄ cealyng & relynyng

of pope felyx to pope Nicholas/ consyde ryng that Nicholas was a man of soo homely a byrth. And that other was of affynyte to all the moost party of crysten prynces/ wherfore there was a verle published. as afore layd.

¶ How syr fraunsoys Aragonops toke fogiers in Normandy. and of the losse of Constantynople by the Turke

**I**n the yere of kyng Henry. xxvii. beyng trewe bytwene fraunce and Englonde/ a knyght of þ̄ Englysh the partye named syr frauncoys Aragon toke a towne in Normandy. named fogyers/ apenste the trewes/ of whiche takynge began moche sorowe and losse. for this was the occasyon/ by the whiche the frenshmen gaue all Normandy.

¶ Abowte this tyme þ̄ Cyte of Constantynople/ whiche was the imperyall cyte in all Grece/ was taken by the Turkes Infydels. whiche was by trayde as some holde oppynon/ and themperoure take and slayne. and þ̄ ryall chirche of saynt Sophia robbed and dyspoyled/ and the relyques and ymages and the rode drawenge about the stretes/ whiche was done in spyte of Crysten fayth and sone after all crysten fayth in Grece perysshed and cellyd. There were many Crysten men slayne. and innumerable solde and put in captuyte. By þ̄ takynge of this towne the Turke grete was enhauncyd in pryde. & a grete losse to all crystendome.

¶ In the. xxviii. yere was a parlement holden at westmynster/ and frome thens adiourned to the blacke freres at London/ & after crylmas to westmynster a yen. ¶ And this same yere Robert of canne a man of the westcōtre/ with a fewe shyppes toke a grete flete of shyppes comynge out of þ̄ bay. lade with salt. whiche shyppes were of pruce/ flaunders Holande and zelonde/ and brought they to Hampton. wherfore the marchaunt

res of Englonde beyng in flaundes/  
were arested. in Brydges. Jpre & othere  
places. and myghte not be delyuered/ ne  
theyr dettes dyl charged/ tyll they hadde  
made apoyntment for to paye the hurt  
of those shyppes/ whiche was payde by  
the marchauntes of the staple euery pe-  
ny. And in lyke wyle the marchauntes &  
goodes beyng in Dantk/ were also are-  
sted. and made grete amendes. ¶ This  
same yere þ frenshmen in a moynng  
toke by a trayne the towne of Pouste all  
Arche. & therein the lord fawconbrydge  
was taken pyloner. And after that in  
Decembre Rone was taken and lost. be-  
yng therin syr Edmonde duke of So-  
merset/ and the erle of Shrewesbury. þ  
whiche by a poyntment left pledges and  
lost all Normandye/ and come home in  
to Englonde. And durynge the sayd par-  
lement/ the duke of Suffolke was are-  
sted/ & sent in to the toure/ & there he was  
a moneth. & after the kynges dyd do fet-  
che hym oute. for whiche cause all the co-  
munes were in a grete rumoure/ what  
for the delyueraunce of Angeo & Mayn  
and after lesynge of all Normandye and  
in elspecyall for the dethe of the good du-  
ke of Gloucestre/ in soo moche in some  
places men gadred and made them Ca-  
pytayne/ as Blewberde & other/ whiche  
were take & putte to dethe. And then the  
sayd parlement adiouned was to Lepy-  
tre. And theder the kyng brought with  
hym the duke of Suffolke. And whan þ  
comyns vnderstode that he was oute of  
the Toure and comen thyder/ they dely-  
red for to haue execucion on them that  
were cause of the delyueraunce of Norma-  
ndye/ and hadde be cause of the dethe of  
the duke of Gloucestre: and hadde solde  
Galcopn & Gupan/ of the whiche they  
named to be gylty/ the duke of Suffolke  
as chyef/ the lorde Saye. the byshop of  
Salisbury/ Danyell/ & many mo. And  
for to peale þ comyns. the duke of Suf-  
folke was exyled out of Englonde for. v

yer. ¶ And so durynge the parlemente  
he wente in to Norfolk. and there he to-  
ke hys shyppynge/ for to goo oute of the  
reame of Englonde in to fraunce. And  
this yere as he saylled on the see a shypp  
of werre called Nicholas of þ four met-  
t with hys shypp and founde hym therein/  
whome they toke out/ and brought hym  
in to theyr shyppe to the mayster and þ  
capytayne/ and there he was examyned  
and acte the laste Jugged too dethe. And  
soo they putte hym in a caban and hys  
chapelayne wyth hym for to shyue him  
And that done they brought hym in too  
Douer rode/ and set hym in to the hote/  
and smote there of his heede. And brou-  
ghte the body a londe vpon the sondes/  
and sette the heede therby. ¶ And thys  
was done the fyrst daye of May. ¶ Soo  
what auapled hym nowc all his delyue-  
raunce of Normandye. And here maye ye  
se how he was rewarded for the dethe of  
þ duke of Gloucestre/ thus began sorow  
vpon sorowe & dethe for dethe.

¶ How this yere was Insurreccō in hē-  
te of the comyns/ of whome Jack Cade  
an Jryllhe man was Capytayne.

¶ This yere of our loide. M. C. C. l.  
was the grete grace of the Ju-  
byle at Rome/ where was grete pardon.  
in so moche þ frome all places in cryste  
dome/ grete multytude of people resoz-  
tyd thyder. And in this same yere was  
a grete assemble and gaderynge togy-  
der of the comunes of Kente in to grete  
nombrie. And made an Insurreccyon/ &  
rebelled ayenste the kyng and his law-  
es/ And ordeyned theym a Capytayne.  
called Johan Cade an Jryllhman whi-  
che named hymself Morsmyer/ colyn to  
the duke of yorke. And this Capytayne  
helde theym togyder/ & made ordynaun-  
ces amonge theym/ and brought theym  
to the black hethe/ where he made a byll  
of petycyons to the kyng & his couleyll

*of part*

and shewed what Iniuries and oppres-  
sions þ poore compyns suffred. & vnder  
colour. for to come to his aboute. & he had  
a grete multitude of people. ¶ And the  
xxvii. daye of June. the kynge & many  
lordes Capytayns. & men of werre went  
towarde hym to þ black hech. And whā  
the Capytayne of Kent vnderstode þ co-  
mynge of the kynge with so grete pay-  
saū. e. he withdrewē hym & his peple to  
senok / a lptell byllage. ¶ And the. xxviii.  
day of June he beyngē withdrawen and  
gone þ kyng came with his armye set in  
ordre & enbataylled to þ black hech. and  
by aduys of his counsell. sent syr Dmfrey  
Stafforde knyght / & wylliam Staffor-  
de squire / two valyaunt Capytayns / w  
certayne people for to fyght with the ca-  
pytaine & to take & bynge hym & his ac-  
cessaryes to the kynge / whiche went too  
Senok. / And the Capytayne with hys  
felyshyp and mette with them. & fought  
ayenste them / and in conclusyon slewe  
them bothe / and as many as abode &  
wolde not yelde them / were slayn.

¶ Durynge this skyrmysh. feile a gre-  
te barpaunce amonge þ lordes men and  
comyn people beyngē on black hech ayē-  
ste their lordes & capytayns / saynge pla-  
ynly / þ they wolde go vnto the capytay-  
ne of Kent. to assyst & helpe hym / but yf  
they myght haue / execucon on the tray-  
tors beyngē about the kynge. wherto þ  
kynge sayd nay. And they sayd playnly  
that the lorde Saye tresourer of Englo-  
de / and the bysshop of Salysbury / and þ  
baron of Dubby / the abbot of Gloucel-  
tre / Danpell / & Treuilyon / & many mo  
were traytours / and worthy to be dede.  
wherfore for to please the lordes meny  
& also some of the kynges hous / þ lorde  
Saye was arested and sent to the toure  
of London. And then the kynge herynge  
tydynge of the deche and ouerthrowen-  
ge of the Staffordes he withdrewē hym  
to London / and frome thens to Relyng-  
worth / for the kynge ne the lordes durst

not truste theyr owne houlholde men. : /  
¶ Then after that the Capytayne had  
had this vyctory vppon the Staffordes  
anone he toke syre Dmfreys laette. and  
his Brygantynes syncten full of gylte.  
naplies / and also hys gylte spoyrs and  
araped hym lyke a lorde & a capytayne  
and refoited with all his meny / & also  
mo than he had befoire. to the black hech  
ayen. To whome came þ Archebysshop  
of Caunterbury / and the duke of Bo-  
kyngham to the blacke heche. and spa-  
ke with hym / And as it was layd / they  
founde hym wytty in his talkynge and  
his requeste / & so they departyd. ¶ And  
the thyrde day of July he came & entred  
into London with all his people And the  
re dyde make cryes in the kynges name  
and in his name / that noo man sholde  
robbe / ne take no manere goodes / but yf  
he payed for it. And came rydynge thru-  
ghe the cyte in grete pryde / and smote.  
his swerde vppon London stone in Can-  
wyk strete. ¶ And he beyngē in þ cyte se-  
te to the toure for to haue the lorde Saye  
And so they sette hym / & brought him to  
the yelde halle befoze þ mayre & th alder-  
men / where þ he was examyned. And he  
sayd he wolde and oughte to be Juygd  
by his pcrs. And the comyns of Kente  
toke hym by force frome the Mayer &  
offpcers that kept hym / and toke hym to  
a prest / to shryue hym. And or he myght  
be halfe shryuen / they broughte hym to  
the standarde in the Chepe syde / & there  
smote of his hede / on whos soule god ha-  
ue mercy. Amen. And thus deyed the lor-  
de Saye tresourer of Englonde. After  
this they sette his heede vpon a spere. &  
bare it all aboute the cyte. And the same  
daye abowte Wple ende / Cromere was  
beheaded / And the daye befoze atte after  
noone / the Capytayne with certayne of  
his men / wente to Phyllyp Malpas hou-  
se / and robbyd hym / and toke awaye  
moche good / And frome thens he went  
to saynt Margaretes patens to one Ger-

tye hous/and robbed hym. & toke away fro hym moche good also. At whiche robberyng dyuerse men of London/of theyr neyghbours were at and toke part with theym. ¶ For this robberyng the peoples hertes selle frome hym/and euery thryfty man was a ferde/for to be serued in lyke wyle. for there was many a man in London/that awayted and wolde fayn hane seen a comyn robbery/whiche almighty god forbyd. for it is to suppoise yf he hadde not robbed: he myght haue gone ferre/or he had be withstonde. for the kynge / and all the lordes of the reame of Englonde/Were departed except the lorde Scalps/that kept the toure of London. ¶ And the fyfte daye of Julyll. he dyd do smyte of a mannes hede in south werke. And the nyghte after the Mayor of London with þe aldermen & the comynes of the cyte/concluded to dryue away the Capytayne and his hooft. And sente to the lorde Scalps to the toure and too Mahe gough a Capytayn of Norman dyre/that they wolde that nyght assapll the Capytayne with them of Kent. And so they dyd come too London brydge/in Southwerke/or the Capytayne had any knowlege therof/and they fought with them that kept the brydge. And the Retyllmen wente to harnes/and came to the brydge/& shot and foughte with the and gate the brydge / and made theym of London too flee and slewe many of them. & this endured all the nyght to & fro/tylle one of the clocke of the morow And at the laste they brente the drawe brydge. where many of theym of Londõ were drowned. In the whiche nyght lutton an Alderman of London was slayn Roger Heyslaunte/Mahe Gough/and many other. And after this the chaunceler of Englonde sent to the Capytayne a pardon generalle for hym & an other for his menye. And then they departed fro Southwerke/euery man to his owne hous. ¶ And whan they were all depar

tyd and goon there was proclamacyons made in Kent/Southsex and other places/þ what man coude take the capytayne quyk or deed/shalde haue a thousande pounde. ¶ And after this one Alexander yden a squire of Kent toke hym in a garden in Southsex/and in taken John Lade capytayne was slayne/& beheaded and his heede set vpon London brydge: And anone after the kynge came in to Kente/and dyde his Justices lyste atte Caunterbury/& enquired who was causers and cheyf cause of this Inturreccõn And there were. viii. men Jugyd to the dethe in one daye. and in other places mo And frome thens the kynge went in to Southsex/and in to the weste countree/where a lytell before was slayne the byshop of Salysbury. And this same yere there were so many Jugyd to dethe that thre heedes stode vppon London brydge atte ones.

¶ Of the felde þ the duke of yorke toke at Brenteth in Kent/& of the byrth of prynce Edward/and of the fyrste battaylle atte saynt Albons. where the duke of Somerset was slayne.

**I**n the. xxx. yere of þe kynge/ the duke of yorke came out of the Marches of walys/with therle of Deuenshyre & the lorde Cobham & grete pupllaunce for reformacyon of certayne Injuries & wronges/and also to haue Justice vpon certayne lordes beyng about þe kynge/ & toke a felde at Brenteth belyde Deford in Kent. whiche was a strong felde for whiche cause the kynge with all his lordes went vnto the blacke heche. with a greate and a stronge multytude of people armyd/and ordeyned for þe were in the beste wyle. And whanne they hadde mustred on þe heche/certayne lordes were tho sente vnto hym. for to strete & make apoyntment with hym. whiche were the byshop of Ely. the byshop of wyng

chestre/therles of Salpsbury and of war  
wylk/And they concluded that the duke  
of Somerset sholde be hadde to warde.  
and to answere to suche artycles as the  
duke of Yorke sholde put on hym. And  
then the duke of yorke sholde breke hys  
felde/ & come to the kynge. whiche was  
all promysed by the kynge. And soo the  
kynge commaunded. that the duke of So/  
merset sholde be hadde in to warde. and  
thenne the duke of Yorke brake vp his  
felde and came to the kynge. And whan  
he was come contrary to the promysle a  
fore made. the duke of Somerset was  
presente in the felde/awaytynge and che  
yf abowte the kynge/And made the du  
ke of Yorke ryde before as a pylonere  
thruogh London. And after they wold ha  
ue put hym in holde. But anoyse arole  
that therle of Marche his sone. was co/  
myngne with. x. thousande men to Londo  
warde. wherfore the kynge and hys cou/  
seyll feryd/And thenne they concluded/  
that the duke of yorke sholde departe at  
his owne wyll. ¶ Abowte this tyme be/  
ganne greate deuplyon in Spruce bytwe  
ne the greate mayster and the knyghtes  
of the duchye ordre/whiche were lordes  
of that countree.. for the compyns & tow  
nes rebelled ayenst the lordes and made  
so greate werre. that at the laste they cal  
led the kynge of Pole to be theyr lord/  
the whiche kynge came/ & was worshyp  
fully receyued/And besyged the castell/  
of Maringburgh/whiche was the che  
yf castell of strength of all the londe. and  
wanne it/ & droue out þ mayster of Dal  
ke/ & all othere places of that londe and  
so they that hadde ben lordes many ye  
res. lost all theyr seynourye & possel  
sions in tho londes. ¶ And in the yere of  
þ Incarnacón of our lorde. M. cccc. liii.  
on saynt Edwardes daye. quene Marga  
rete was delyuerde of a fayr prynce whi  
che named was Edwarde. That same  
daye Johñ Norman was cholen for too  
be mayer of London. And the daye that

he sholde take his othe at Westmynster/  
he went thyder by water with all þ craf  
tes/where afore tyme þ mayer/ aldermē  
& the craftes rode on horsbacke þ which  
was neuer vlyd after. for syn that tyme  
they haue cuer goon by water in botcs &  
barges.

¶ We haue well vnderstond before how  
þ contrary to the promysle of the kynge  
& also the conclusyons take bytweene the  
kynge & the duke of yorke at Brenteth  
the duke of Semerlet went not to ward  
but abode about the kynge/ & hadde gre  
te rule/And anone after he was made  
Capytayne of Calays. & ruled the kyng  
& his reame as he wolde / wherfore the  
grete lordes of þ reme/ & also þ compyns  
were not pleased: for whiche cause the  
duke of Yorke/ the erle of warwylk/ the  
erle of Salpsbury with many knyghtes  
and squyres/ and moche other people ca  
me to remeue the sayd duke of Somerset  
and other fro the kynge/ And the kyng  
herynge of theyr comynge/ thoughte by  
his coulepyll for to haue gone westwarde  
& not for to haue mette with them. And  
had w hym the duke of Somerset þ du  
ke of Bokyngham/ þ erle of Stafforde  
the erle of Northüberlond/ þ lordes Clyf  
forde/ & many other. ¶ And what tyme  
that the duke of yorke and his felyshyp  
vnderstode/ that the kynge was depar/  
ted with the lordes frome London/ ano  
ne he chaüged his way/ & costed þ coultre  
and came to saynt Albonsche. xxiii. day  
of May. and there mette with the kynge  
to whome the kynge sente certayne lor  
des/ and despyred theym to kepe the peas/  
& depart: But in conclusyon whyle they  
treated on þ onelyde/ the erle of werwylk  
with the Marche men and other/ entred  
in to the towne on that other syde/ and  
fought ayenst the kynge & his partye/ &  
so began the batayll and fyghtynge whi  
che endured a greate whyle/ But in con  
clusyon the duke of yorke obteyned. and  
hadde the vycory of that Journeye/ In

whiche was slayne the duke of Somers-  
set/the erle of Northumberlande.the lor-  
de Clyfforde.& many knyghtes & squy-  
res/& many moo hurte/ And on the mor-  
ne after they broughte þe kyng in grete  
astate to London/whiche was lodged in  
þe byllhops palays of London. And ano-  
ne after was a grete parlement at Lon-  
don/in whiche parlements the duke of  
yorke.was made protectour of Englon-  
de/& the erle of werwyk Capytayne of  
Calays,the erle of Salysbury Chaunce-  
ler of Englonde. And all suche perlonas  
as had the rule before aboute the kyng  
were let a part/& myght not rule as they  
dyd before. ¶ And this same yere deyed  
pope Nicholas the fyrte.and after hym  
was Calixt þe thyrde. This Calixt was  
a Catalane/& the actes of hym shall be  
shewed here after folowynge.

¶ In this same yere fell a grete affraye  
in London ayenst the Lumbardes.the  
cause began / bycauce a yonge man to-  
ke a dager frome a Lumbarde & brake  
it.wherfore the yonge man on the mor-  
ne was sente fore to come before þe Ma-  
yer & the aldermen and there for the of-  
fence .he was comytted to warde.and  
thenne the mayer departed fro the yelde  
halle/for to go home to hys dyner / But  
in the Chepe the yonge men of the mer-  
ceye for the moost partye prentyses.held  
de the Mayre & Shyres styll in Chepe.  
and wolde not luffre theym too departe/  
vnto the tyme that theyr felowe/whiche  
was comytted to warde / were delyue-  
red:and so by force they rescowed theyr  
felowe frome pylson. And that done the  
Mayre departed and the Shyres also/  
& the pyloner delyuerd.which yf he had  
be put to pylson.he had be in Jeoperdye  
of hys lyfe. And thenne beganne a ru-  
moure in the cyte ayenst the Lumbardes  
And the same euenynge the hondcrafty  
men of the towne arole/and ranne to þe  
Lumbardes houles and dyspoyled and  
robbed dyuers of them.wherfore þe May-

re and the Aldermen came with the ho-  
nest people of the cyte . and droue them  
thens/and sent some of theym that had  
stollen to Newgate. ¶ And þe yonge man  
that was rescowed by his felowes/sawe  
this greate rumoure. affraye & robbery/  
enlewed /of his fyrste meynge to þe Lon-  
barde/departyd & went to westmynster  
to sayntwary. Whelles it had coste him  
his lyfe.for anone after came downe an  
Oyer determyned.for to do Justyce on al  
theym that so rebelled in the cyte ayenst  
the Lumbardes/¶ On whiche late with þe  
Mayre that tyme wylliam Marowe/þe  
duke of Bokyngham.& many other lor-  
des/to se execucyon done/But the com-  
ynes of the cyte secretly made them redy  
and dyd arme them in theyr houles and  
were in purposos to haue rongen the co-  
myne belle/whiche is callyd bowe belle.  
but they were lette by sadde men/which  
came to the knowlege of the duke of Bo-  
kyngham & other lordes. And in conty-  
nent they arole/for they durst no lenger  
abyde/for they dowtyd that the hole cy-  
te sholde haue rysen ayenst theym. But  
yet neuertheles two or thre of the cyte we-  
re Jugyd to dethe for this robbery/and  
were hangyd at Tyborne. ¶ Anone af-  
ter the kyng and the quene/& other lor-  
des rode to Louëtre & withdrew theym  
fro London.for this cause. And a lytel be-  
fore þe duke of yorke was sent for to gre-  
newych.& there was dyschargyd of the  
protectourshipp.& the erle of Salysbury  
of his Chauncelershipp. And after thys  
they were sent fore by preuy scale for too  
come to Louentre/where they were al-  
moost dysceyued/& the erle of werwyke  
also & sholde haue ben dystroyed yf they  
had not seen well to.

¶ Howe the lordc Egremonde was take  
by the erle of Salysbury lones/and of þe  
robbynge of Sandwyche.

This yere were taken foure grete  
 fyllthes bytwene Breth & Londo  
 That one was called Moys Marpne /  
 leconde was a swerde fyllthe & the other  
 tweyne were whalys. ¶ In this same  
 yere / for certayne affrayes done in þe nor  
 the countre bytwene lorde Egremond &  
 the erle of Salpsbury sones. the sayd lor  
 de Egremond whome they had condemp  
 ned in a grete somme of moneye to the  
 sayd Erle of Salpsbury / and therfor he  
 was commytted into pylson in Newega  
 te in London where whan he had be a  
 certayne space he brake the pylson / and  
 thre pylsoners with hym / & elcaped and  
 went his way: ¶ Also this yere þe erle of  
 warwyk & his wyfe went to Calays w  
 a fayr felyshyp & toke possession of his  
 offyce / ¶ Abovte this tyme was a grete  
 reformacyon of many monesterpes of  
 relygyon in dpuerle partyes of the woil  
 de / whiche were refourmed after þe fyrste  
 Instytucyon / & contynued in many pla  
 ces. ¶ This same yere was a grete ba  
 tayll in the Marches bytwene the londe  
 of Hungry and Turkey / at a place cal  
 led Septedrad / where Innumerable tur  
 kys were slayne / more by miracle than  
 by mannes honde / for oonly the hond of  
 god smote theym / Saynt Johñ of Ca  
 pylstrane was there present. & prouokyd  
 the crysten people beyng theenne aferde  
 for co pursue after the Turky / where  
 an Infynyte multytude were slayne and  
 dystroyed & the Turky sayd / that a gre  
 te nombre of armyd men folowed them  
 that they were aferde to turne ayen and  
 they were holy angeilles. ¶ This same  
 yere the pylsoners of Newgate in Lon  
 don brake theyr pylson / and went vpon  
 the ledes and fought ayenst theym of þe  
 cyte / and kepte the gate a longe whyle /  
 But atte the laste the towne gate þe pyl  
 son on theym. And thenne they were put  
 in fettes and prens / & were loze puny  
 shed in ensample of other. ¶ In this ye  
 re also. there was a grete erthquake in

Naples / in so moche that there perysshyd  
 xl. thousande people. that sanke therein  
 to the erthe. ¶ Also in the. xxxvi. yere sa  
 ynt Dymonde somtyme bysshop of Sa  
 lpsbury was canonyed at Rome by po  
 pe Calist. & þe. x. day of July he was tral  
 latyd at Salpsbury by the bysshopp of  
 Caüterbury & many other bysshoppes.  
 ¶ And in August after syr pers de bra  
 lay seneschall of Normandye / with the  
 Capytayne of Depe & many other Ca  
 pytaynes / & men of werre went to the se  
 with a grete Naup. & came into þe dow  
 nes by nyghte. And on the morne erly be  
 fore daye they loded and came to Sand  
 wytche / bothe by londe & water / & toke  
 the towne / and ryfled and dyspoyled it /  
 And toke many pylsoners / and left the  
 towne all bare / whiche was a ryche pla  
 ce and moche goode therein / And ladde  
 with theym many ryche pylsoners / In  
 this same yere in many places of Fraū  
 ce Almayne / Flaundes Holonde and ze  
 londe / chyl dren gadred theym togyders  
 by grete companyes / for to gos on pyl  
 grymage to saynt Myghels mounte in  
 Normandye / whiche came fro ferre cou  
 trees / wherof the people merueyled. And  
 many suppolyd þe some wyched spyrte  
 meued the to do so. but it dured not long  
 by cause of the longe way & also for lac  
 of vycaille as they wente. ¶ In this ye  
 re Reynolde Pecok bysshop of Chestre /  
 was foude an heretyke / and the thyrde  
 daye of Decembre was adiured at Lam  
 beth in presence of the Archebysshop of  
 Caunterbury & many other bysshoppes  
 doctours & lordes temporall / and his bo  
 kes brient at Poules crosse.  
 ¶ And ye haue herde before howe cer  
 tayne lordes were slayne atte saynt Als  
 bons / wherfore was alwaye a grutchyn  
 ge / and wrathe hadde by þe heyres of the  
 that so were slayne / ayenst the duke of  
 yorke / the erles of werwyk and of Salps  
 bury / wherfore the kynge by the aduys of  
 hys counseyll sente for theym vnto Lon



don to whiche place the duke of Yorke came the .xxvi. dape of Janueri w four hundred men and lodged hym at Baynerdes castell in his owne place. ¶ And the .xv. dape of Januer came the erle of Salysbury with .v. hundred men & was lodged in therber his owne place. ¶ And then came the duke of Exceire & of Somerset w .viii. C. men & laye withoute temple barre. ¶ And the erle of Northūberlonde / and the lorde Egremonde / the lorde Clyfforde with .xv. hundred men / & lodged without the towne. ¶ And the Mayre that tyme Geffraye Holopne / kepte greate watche with the comyns of the cyte / and rode abowte the cytee by Holborne and fletestrete / with a .v. thou sande men well arayed and armyd. for to kepe the peas. ¶ And the .xiii. day of feuerer h erle of warwyk came to London. fro Calays well beleen & worthpy fully with .v. hundred men in redde Jakettes broudred with a ragged staff be hynde and before. and was lodged at h gray freres. ¶ And the .xv. dape of Marche the kynge came to London & the que ne. And there was accorde & peas made among h lordes / & they were set in peas And on our lady dape h .xv. day of Marche. in h yere of our lorde. M. cccc. lviii. h kynge & the queue & all h lordes went on procellyon at poules in London. & anone after h kynge & the lordes departed. & in this yere was a grete fraye in flete strete by wene men of courte & men of h samie strete. In whiche fraye the queues Attourney was slayne.

¶ How the kynges houlholde made a fraye ayenst the erle of werwyk / & of the Journeye at blorehech.

**A**lso this same yere as the erle of werwyk was at coulepyll at west mynster all the kynges houlholde meny gadred them togyder / for to haue slayne the sayd erle. But by the helpe of god &

his frendes he recouerde his barge / and escapyd theyr euyl enterpyse / how well the cokes came rennyng out with spyttes and pestels ayenst hym. And the same dape he rode towards warwyk and lone after he gate hym a compyllyon / and went ouer the see towarde Calays ¶ Sone after this therle of Salysbury comynge to London / was encoūfred at Blorehech with the lorde Audley. & moche other people ordeyned to dystroy him But he haunng knowlege h he sholde be mette with / was accompanied with his two lones syr Thomas and syr Johan Neuell / & a grete felphyp of goode men. And so they faught togyder / where the erle of Salysbury wanne the felde / And the lorde Audley was slayne / and many gentylmen of Cheshyre. & moche people hurte. & the erles two lones were hurte. & goynge homewarde after ward they were taken / & had to Chestre by the queues meny.

¶ After Calixt Pius was pope / & was chole this yere. M. CCCC. lviii. and he was callyd before Eneas an eloquente man / and a poete laureate. He was em bassatour of h Emperours before tyme And he wrote in the coulepyll of Balyle a noble treatysle for thactoyte of the same / Also he canonyled saynt Katheryne of Senys / This pope ordeyned grete Indulgence and pardonne to theym h wolde go & werre ayenst the Turke / & wrote a pytyle to h greate Turke / exhortyng hym to become crysten. And in thend he ordeyned a passage ayenst h Turke at Ankon / to whiche moche people drewe out of all partyes of crystendome / of the whiche people he sente many home apē by cause they suffryed not / & anone after he dyed at h sayd Ankon / h yere of oure lorde. M. CCCC. lxi. the .xiii. dape of August.

¶ How Andrewe Trollop and the soul dypours of Calays forloke the duke of

yorke & theyr mayster therle of warwyk  
in the weste countre.

**T**he duke of yorke / & erles of war  
wyk and of Salysbury / sawe þ  
gouernaunce of the reame stode mooste  
by the quene and hir counseyll / and how  
the greate prynces of the londe were not  
callyd to coulell but lett a parte / & not  
oonly so / but it was sayd thugh the rea  
me / þ tho sayd lordes shold be dystroyed  
as it openly was shewed at Bloreheche  
by them þ wolde haue slayne the erle of  
Salysbury. Then for sauacion of theyr  
lyues & also for þ comyn wele of þ rea  
me thought for to remedy thyle thyngs  
assembled them togyder with moche pe  
ple / and toke a felde in the west countre  
to whiche therle of warwyk came fro ca  
lays / w many of the olde souldyours as  
Andrew Trollop and ocher / in whole  
wysdome / as for the werre he trustyd mo  
che vpon / And whan they were thus as  
sembled & made theyr felde. þ kyng sent  
out his comysstions & preuy scales vnto  
all þ lordes of his reame / to come & way  
te on hym in theyr moost beste defenla  
ble araye / And so euery man came in lu  
che wyle. þ the kyng was stronger / and  
had more people than the duke of yorke  
& therles of werwyk & of Salisbury. for  
it is here to be notyd þ euery lorde in En  
glonde at this tyme / durst not dysobeye  
the quene / so therulyd pealpbly all that  
was done abowt the kyng whiche was  
a good and a well dyspoyled man. And  
then whan the kyng was come to the  
place where they were / the duke of yorke  
& his felyshyp made theyr feld in þ stron  
gest wyle / & purpoyd verly to abyde &  
haue fouzte. But in the nyght Andrwe  
Trollop & all the olde souldyours of Ca  
lays with a greate felyshyppe / lodeynly  
departyd out of the dukes hooft / & wen  
te strayte vnto the kynges felde / where  
they were receyued Joyouully. for they kn  
ewe thentent of thother lordes / & also the

maner of theyr felde / And then the duke  
of yorke with þ other lordes. seyng thez  
dylcepued / toke a counseyll shortly in þ  
same nyght. and departed from the fel  
de / leuyng behynde them the mooste par  
tye of theyr people to kepe the felde tyll  
on the morowe / Then the duke of yorke  
with his seconde sone departyd thugh  
walys towarde Irlande / leuyng his els  
dest sone therle of Marche with the erles  
of werwyk & of Salysbury. whiche ro  
de togyder w thre or four persones strag  
ght in to Deuentshyre / & there by helpe &  
ayde of one Denham / gate a shyp why  
che coste a. xi. score nobles / & with the sa  
me shyp sayled fro thens in to Berneley  
& there restreshed theym / & frome thens  
sayled to Calays. where they were recep  
ued in to þ castell by the postern. or they  
of the towne wylt of it / And the duke of  
yorke toke shyppe in walys. and say  
led ouere in too Irlande / where he was  
well receyued.

**H**ow the erles of Marche / werwyk  
and Salysbury entred in too Calays &  
how the erle of werwyke wente in to Ir  
londe.

**T**hen kyng Henry with his host  
in the felde / notte knowynge of  
this lodeyne departynge / on the morow  
foude none in þ felde of the sayd lordes.  
sent out in all þ halt men for to folowe &  
pursue after to take them / but they met  
not with them as god wolde / And then  
the kyng went to Ludlowe / & dyspoyled  
the castell & the towne / And sent the du  
chesse of yorke & her chyldren to the du  
chesse of Bohyngham her syster / where  
she was kept longe tyme after / And for  
thwith the kyng ordeyned the duke of  
Somerset / to be Capytayne of Calays  
and thyle other lordes so departed / as a  
fore is layd / were proclamyd rebels and  
greate traytours. Then the duke of So  
merset toke to hym all the souldyours þ

departyd fro the felde and made hym re-  
dy in all the hast/for to go too Calays/  
and take possession of his offyce/And  
whanne he came he fonde therle of wer-  
wyk therein as Capytayne//& the erles  
of Marche & of Salysbury also/& then  
he loded by Scalys & went to Gynes &  
therē he was receyued/And it fortunēd  
that some of thoo shyppes þ̄ came ouer  
with hym.came in to Calays hauen. by  
ther fre wyll/for þ̄ shyppmen ought more  
faueur to therle of werwyk than to þ̄ du-  
ke of Somersset/in whiche shyppes were  
take dyuerse men/as Jeynyn fynkyl Jo-  
han fetowe. Kaylles and Purter:whiche  
were beheded sone after in Calays.and  
after this came men dayly ouer the se to  
thyle lordes too Calays/and began for  
to were stronger and stronger.and they  
borowed moche goode of the Staple/&  
on that ocher syde þ̄ duke of Somersset  
beynge in Gynes/gate people too hym  
whiche came out and scarmysshed wpyth  
theym of Calays/and they of Calays  
with them whiche endured many dayes  
Durynge this skermysshynge.moche pe-  
ple came ouer dayly vnto thyle lordes/  
¶ Then on a tyme by thādrys & coun-  
seyll of the lordes at Calays lēte ouer  
mayster Denham with a grete felyshyp  
to Sandwytche/whiche toke the towne  
& therein þ̄ lorde Ryuers & the lorde Sca-  
lys his sone/& toke many shyppes in the  
hauen/& brought them all to Calays w  
whiche shyppes many martyners of ther  
fre wyll/came to Calays/to serue therle  
of werwyk/And after this the Erle of  
werwyk by the adrys of the lordes.toke  
all his shyppes and manned theym wel  
and sayled hymself in too Itlonde.for  
too speke with the duke of yorke/and to  
be hys adrys how they sholde entre into  
Englond.And whan that he had be the-  
re and done his erandes/he retorned ayē  
towards Calays / and broughte with  
hym his moder the countesse of Salys-  
bury/And compynge in the weste countre

on the see.þ̄ duke of Excetre Admirall  
of Englonde beynge in þ̄ grace of du.as  
cōpanyed w many shyppes of werre.met  
with the erle of werwyk & his flete. but  
they faught not/for þ̄ substāuce of þ̄ pe-  
ple beynge w the duke of Excetre.ought  
better wyll & fauoure to the erle of wer-  
wyk than to hym/& they departyd & ca-  
me too Calays in sauftee.¶ Then the  
the kynges coulsyll seyng þ̄ thyle lordes  
had gotten thole shyppes fro Sandwyt-  
che.& taken the lorde Ryuers & his sone  
ordeyned a garyson at Sandwytche to  
abyde & hepe þ̄ towne.& made one mouē  
forde capytayne of þ̄ towne/& þ̄ no man  
dytaylor/ne marchant.þ̄ shold go to fla-  
unders/sholde go to calays. Thē they of  
Calays seyng this/made Denham/&  
many ocher to go to Sandwytche & al-  
sayled þ̄ towne by londe & by water & ga-  
te it.& brought þ̄ capytayne ouer se and  
smote of his heed/& yet dayly men came  
ouer to theym fro all partyes.

¶ How therle of Marche and of Wer-  
wyk and of Salysbury entred in to En-  
glonde/& of þ̄ felde of Northampton whe-  
re dyuerse lordes were slayne.

**A**nd after this þ̄ forsayd erles of  
Marche warwyk & Salysbury  
came ouer to Douer with moche people  
& there loded/to whome all þ̄ countree  
drew/& came to London all armyd/&  
for to lēte the lordes of þ̄ kynges coulsell  
knowe theyr truth & also theyr entente/  
assembled theym.and tolde theym/that  
they entended no harime to þ̄ kynge's per-  
sone/sauf þ̄ they wolde put frome hym  
suche persones as were about hym.And  
so departed frome London wpyth a gre-  
te puppsaunce towards Northampton/  
where the kynge was accompanied w  
many lordes/and made a stronge felde  
withoute the towne/And there boch par-  
tyes met.& was fought a grete batayll  
In whyche batayll were slayne the du-  
ke

ke of Bokyngham and cherle of Shrewsbury/the vycount Beaumonde/þ lordes Egremonde/and many other knyghtes and squyres/and other also/and the kyng hymself was taken in the felde/and afterwarde brought to London/And a none after was a parlement at westmyster/durynge whiche parlement the duke of Yorke came out of Yrlande/with þe erle of Rutlonde/ryd ynge with a greateselyshyp into the palays atte westmyster/and toke the kynges palays & came in to the parlement chambre/& there toke the kynges place/& claymyd þe crowne as his propre enherytaunce & ryghte. & caste forth in wrytynge his tycle/& also how he was ryghtfull heyre/wherfor was moche to doo/but in conclusyon it was appoynted & cōcluded/þ kyng Henry sholde regne & be kyng/durynge his naturall lyfe/for as moche as he hadde be kyng so longe/& was possessyd/& after his dethe the duke of Yorke shold be kyng/& his heyres kynges after hym/& forth w sholde be proclamyd heyre apparaūt/& shold also be protectour & regēt of Englonde durynge þe kyngs lyf w many other thyngs ordered in þe same parlement/& yf kyng Henry durynge his lyf/went frome this apoyntmente or ony artycle cōcludyd in þe sayd parlemēt he sholde be depolyd/& the duke sholde take the crowne & be kyng.all whyche thynges were enacted by chauctoryte of þe same/at whiche parlemēt þe compyns of the reame beyng assembled in the comyn hous/comynng and treatynge vpon the tycle of the for sayd duke of yorke/so deynly fell downe the crowne/whiche henge thenne in the myddes of the sayd hous whiche is the frayter of the abbaye of westmynster/whiche was taken for a prodycce or token/þ the regne of kyng Henry was endyd.& also the crowne whiche stode on the hyggest toure of the cleple in the castell of Douer/fell downe this same yere.

How the duke of Yorke was slayne/and of the felde of wakefeld/and of þe seconde Journeye at saynt Albons by þe quene and the prynce.

**B**I cause the quene with the prynce her sone/was in the northe. and abient her fro the kyng. and obeyed not suche thynges cōcluded in the parlement. was ordeyned þe duke of yorke as protector. sholde go northwarde. to bryn in þe quene/& subdue suche as wolde not obey/with whome went the erle of Salisbury/syr Thomas Neuyll his sone/with moche people And at wakefeld in Cristmas weke/they were ouerthrowe and slayne by lordes of the quenes parti that is to wyte. the duke of yorke. was slayne. the erle of Rutlonde. Syr Thomas Neuyll & many mo/& the erle of Salisbury was take & other/as Johan Harrowe of London capytayne & ruler of þe fotemen & haūson of hull. whiche were brought to pouñret/& there beheaded. & ther hedes sent to yorke. & set vpon þe pates/& thus was þe noble prynce slayne: the duke of yorke/on whos soule god haue mercy. And this tyme cherle of Marche beyng in Shrowelbury. herynge þe deth of his fader: delyred ayde of þe towne to auenge his faders dethe. & fro thēs went to walys/& at Lanelmalle after he had a batayll at Mortimers crosse: as yent therle of Penbroke & of wylshyre where the erle of Marche had þe vycorē Then the quene with those lordes of the north after þe they had dystressyd & slayn the duke of yorke and his selyshyp/came southwarde with a greateselyshyp/with a greateselyshyp of people/for to come to the kyng and defete suche conclusyons as had be take before by the parlement/ayent whoos comynge þe duke of Northfolke. the erle of werwyk/with moche people & ordynance. went to sayne Albons/and lad hit ge Henry with them/& there encountred to byder in suche wyle/and faught: so þe

the duke of Northfolke & therle of Werwyk/with many other of ther party fled and lost that Journeye. where that kynge Henry was taken with the queene and prynce Edwarde his sone / whiche two had gotten that felde. Then the queene & hir partye beyng at hir aboue sent anone to London / whiche was on an Althwensdaye the fyrst daye of Lente for vyctayll / for whiche the Mayre ordeyned by chaduyes of þ Aldermen. þ certen cartes lade w byctayll sholde be sente to saynt Albons to them. & whan tho cartes cam to Crepyll gate / the comyns of the Cyte that kepte that gate / toke the vyctaylles fro the cartes and wolde not suffre it to passe. Thenne were there certayn Aldermen & comyns apoynted to go vnto berneset / to speke with the quenes counseylle to entreate that the northern men shold be sente home apen. in to theyr coultre. for the cyte of London drad to be dyspoyled yf they hadde come. ¶ And durynge this treatyle / tydynge came. that the erle of warwyk had met with the erle of Marche on Cottelwolde compynge out of walyes with a greate menye of walschmen / and that they bothe were compynge vnto London warde. Anone as thyle tydynge were knowe. the treatyle was broke for the kynge. queene / prynce / & all the other lordes þ were with the departed fro saynt Albons northwarde with all ther people. yet or they departed thens they beheaded þ lorde Bonnyll & sir Thomas Kyrell. whiche were taken in þ Journey done on Shroueteweldaye. ¶ Then the duchesse of yorke beyng at London / heyringe of the losse of the felde of saynt Albons / sente ouer see hir two yonge sones George & Rycharde / whiche wente too Breteche. & Philip Malpas a ryche marchaunte of London. Thomas Baghan squyre / mayster wylliam Hatclif & many other / ferryng of the compynge of the queene to London. toke a shyp at Andwerpe to haue gone in to zelande. & on that

other coste / were taken of one Colompane a frenschman / a shyp of werre. And he toke theym prysoners / & brought the in to fraunce. where they payed greate good for theyr raunton. & there was grete gode & ryche in þ shyppe.

¶ Of the depolynge of kynge Henry þ vi. and how kynge Edward þ fourthe toke possessyon. & of þ batayll on Palmsondaye / & how he was crowned.

¶ When whan the erle of Marche. & the erle of warwyk had mette togyder on Cottelwold / incontynent they concludyd to go to London / & sent word anone to the Mayre & too the cyte / that they wolde come / and anone þ cyte was gladd of theyr compynge / hopynge to be releuyd by theym. and soo they came too London. And whan they were come and hadde spoke with the lordes and estates beyng there / concluded for as moche as kynge Henry was gone with them northwarde / that he had forfeited his crowne and ought to be depolyd accordynge vnto the actes made and passyd in the last parlement. And so by the aduyes of þ lordes spyrytuall and temporall. thenne beyng at London / the erle of Marche Edward by the grace of god eldest sone of the duke Rycharde of Yorke / as ryghtfulle heyre / and nexte enherytour to his fader / the fourth daye of Marche / the yere of our lord god. M. CCC. lix. toke possessyon of the reame. at westmynster in the chirche of the abbaye. & offred as kynge w the ceptre ryall. To whome all þ lordes spyrytuall & teporall dyde homage / as to theyr souerayne lorde & kynge. And forthwith it was proclamid thurgh the cyte kynge Edward the fourth by name / And anone after the kynge rode in his ryalle estate northwarde with all his lordes to subdue his subgettes þ tyme beyng in þ north. and for to auenge his faders dethe. And on Palmsondaye as

ter he had a greate batayll in the northe  
 coultre at a place called Towton/ not fer  
 from porke. where with the helpe of god  
 he gate the felde and hadde the vycory  
 where were slayne of his aduersaryes/  
 xxx. thousande men & mo. as it was sayd  
 by them that were there. In whiche ba-  
 tayll was slayne the erle of Northumber-  
 londe/ the lorde Clyfforde lxxi. Johñ Ne-  
 uyll the erle of westmerlondes brother/  
 Andrewe Trollop/ & many knyghtes &  
 squyres. ¶ Thenne kynge Henry that  
 had be kynge/ beyng with the quene &  
 the prynce at porke/ heryng the losse of  
 that felde: & somoche people slayne and  
 ouerthrowe/ anone forth with departed  
 all thre with the duke of Somerset/ the  
 lorde Roos/ & other/ towarde Scotlonde  
 And the next daye after kynge Edward  
 with all his armye entred into porke/ &  
 was there proclamyd kynge & obeyed as  
 he ought to be. And þ̄ mayre & comyns  
 swore to be his lyege men/ & whan they  
 had tarped a whyle in þ̄ north & that all  
 the north coultre hadde turned to hym he  
 returned southwarde/ leuyng behynde.  
 hym the erle of werwyk in tho partyes.  
 to gouerne & rule that coultre. And about  
 Mylomer after/ the yere of our lorde/  
 M. cccc. lx. & the fyrste yere of his regne/  
 he was crowned at westmynster/ & ano-  
 ynted kynge of Englonde/ haupng pol-  
 lessyon of all the reame.

**A**lixus the thyrde was pope af-  
 ter Nicholas thre yere & .v. mone-  
 thes/ this Calixt was an olde man whā  
 he was chole pope. & was contynuelly se-  
 ke/ ne he myghte not fulfyll his desyre/  
 whiche he entended to do apenst þ̄ Tur-  
 kes/ for dethe came vpon hym. And he  
 was chole in þ̄ yere of our lorde. M. cccc.  
 lv. & he deped the .vi. daye in the whiche  
 he made the fyguracyon/ and also he cha-  
 nonysed laynt Hyncent/ a frere precher  
 and there was a greate reformacyon of  
 many monasteryes in dyuerse partyes/

of the worlde/ and these reformacyons/  
 were made many tymes/ but almost no  
 ne abode/ but they returned ayen as they  
 were afore/ by successyon of tyme/ after  
 the dethe of the workyppfull faders. the  
 feest of þ̄ Transfyguracyon was ordey-  
 ned of Calixt/ for þ̄ yeste of grace of the  
 meruelous vycory done apenst þ̄ Tur-  
 ke in Hūgary on saynt Sirt<sup>9</sup> day. M. cc.  
 cc. lvii. for there was a merueylous vyc-  
 tory yeuue to the crysten men in Hūgary  
 apenst the grete Turke/ & there he losse.  
 many a man & fled shamfully for drede  
 of enemyes/ & no man folowed hym/ but  
 alone the honde of god feryd þ̄ Turke  
 & his hooft on saynt Calixt day. Saynt  
 Johñ de Cappstrano was there seen pres-  
 sent/ & he prouokyd the people that were  
 aferde to folowe þ̄ mysbyleuyng Tur-  
 kes. & there fell a grete vengeaūce on thē  
 for þ̄ Turkes sayd/ þ̄ there was so grete  
 a nombre of knyghtes þ̄ folowed them/  
 þ̄ vnnethe they durste loke bakwarde/ &  
 therfore they fled/ & left all ther tresour  
 behynde them/ & they were angelles that  
 caulyd them to flee.

Nota.

**D**rynters of bookes were mygh-  
 tely multiplyed in Maguncye/ &  
 thrygh out the worlde. and there began  
 fyrste/ and there helde theyr craftes. and  
 this tyme many men began to be more  
 subtyll in craftes and swyfter than euer  
 they were afore.

**P**ius the seconde was pope after  
 Calixt. vi. yere. this pi<sup>9</sup> was cho-  
 le in þ̄ yere of our lorde. M. cccc. lviii. &  
 he was callyd Pius as an eloquent man  
 a grete oratour a laurate poete. & in the  
 couseyll of Balyle he wrote a noble tres-  
 tyle for thactoryte of þ̄ same/ This mā  
 desyred to haue a passage to the Turke  
 & moche people of dyuerse coultres came  
 to Rome/ & he yauue theym his blessyng  
 and sent theym home ayen/ for they we-  
 re not suffycient for the Turkys holte &  
 anone after he decessyd.

**P**aulus a Venician was pope af-  
ter Pius. vii. yere. this Paul was  
chose in y<sup>e</sup> yere of our lorde. M. CCC.  
lxiii. And anone he halowed the fest of  
the presentacōn of our lady. as Pius dyd  
This man was a tough man in ryghte  
wylnes/ and he sayd it was better to ma-  
ke fewe thynges. & kepe them stedfastly  
than for to make many/ & loone renouke  
them. And he made a grete palays at sa-  
ynt Markys. & he decessed or he had en-  
ded it in y<sup>e</sup> yere of our lorde. M. cccc. lxxi.

**R**oodin. the londe of Luke was oppres-  
syd with many tribulacyons/ & after in  
the yere of our lorde. M. cccc. lxxviii. vnter-  
ly it was dystroyed by Carolū y<sup>e</sup> duke of  
Burgoyne/ y<sup>e</sup> whiche wedded dame Mar-  
garete syster to kynge Edwarde y<sup>e</sup> four-  
the of Englonde. Also the same Karolū  
entred in the londe of Geldyr/ & cōques-  
red it hooly. The yere of grace also was  
chaunged by pope Paule for fauoure of  
mānys soule frome. xxv. yere. to. xxv. yea-  
re. And bycause y<sup>e</sup> cursydnesse abounded  
so sore/ grace abounded also sore.

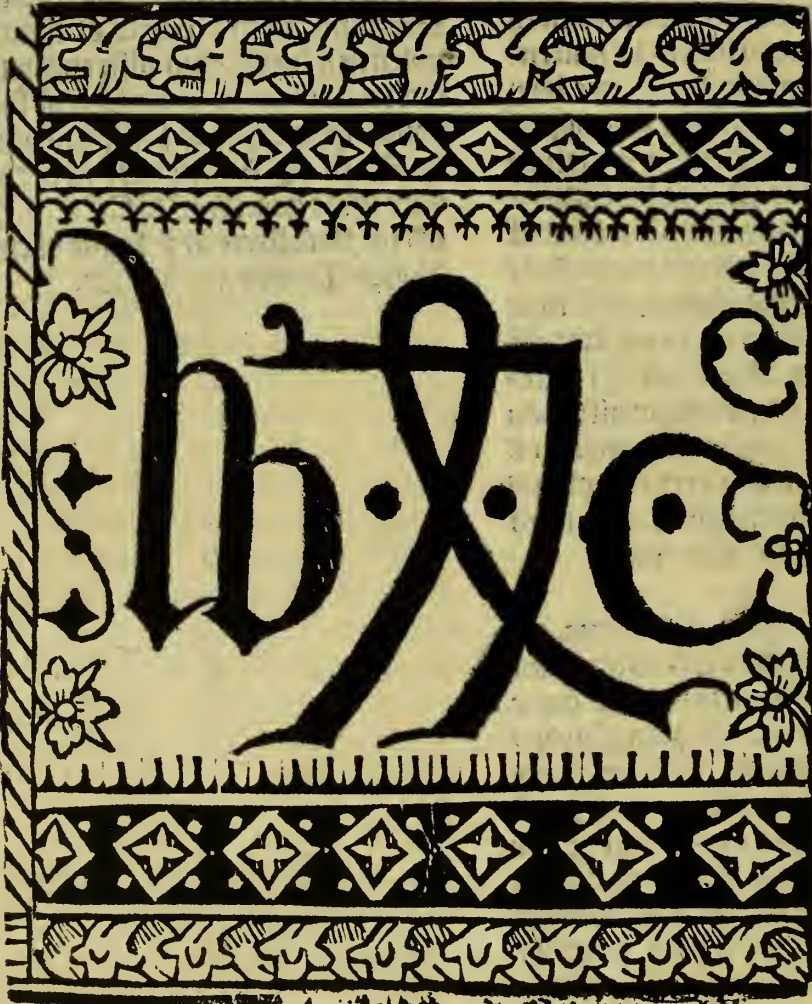
**S**ixtus the fourth a Januens. & a  
frere mynor was pope after Pau-  
le/ This man was generall in the ordie  
of the frere mynoris or he was Cardy-  
nall. And he was chosen in y<sup>e</sup> yere of our  
lorde. M. cccc. lxxi. And was called Fraū-  
cylcus de Sanona. of good fame & ver-  
tuous. He was cholen Cardynall with-  
oute his knowlege tyll he was made/ &  
the same yere y<sup>e</sup> he was cholen pope. the  
Turke had takē frome crysten men two  
Empyres/ & four kyngdoms. xx. prouyn-  
ces/ & two hondred cytees/ & had destro-  
ped men & wymen without nombre. and  
y<sup>e</sup> meued y<sup>e</sup> pope/ y<sup>e</sup> he choldē dystrope him  
to goo to withstonde hym. And for an ar-  
mye to be made ayenste the Turke. the  
pope gaue grete Indulgences of pardon  
of y<sup>e</sup> tresory of the chirche vnto all crystē  
reames/ y<sup>e</sup> he myght ordeyne some treso-  
re/ to withstande y<sup>e</sup> myschyleued Turke.

And in the londe of Englonde/ Johan  
abbot of abyngdon was the popes Lega-  
te. to dystrope this goodly tresoure: of the  
chirche too euery faythfull man/ y<sup>e</sup> was  
dystrolyd/ and that wolde able hym too  
recepue it.

**T**here endeth this present Cronycle of  
Englonde with y<sup>e</sup> fruyte of tymes. com-  
pyled in a booke/ and also enprynted by  
one some tyme scole mayster of saynt Al-  
bons/ vppon whoos soule god haue mer-  
cy. Amen. And newely in the yere of  
oure lorde god. M. CCC. C. ii. Enpry-  
ted in flete strete in y<sup>e</sup> sygne of the lone  
By me Wynkyn de Worde.

*Handwritten notes in a cursive script, likely a library inventory or list of books. Some legible words include "Book of...", "died 1494", and "to be a...".*

*Many more Books than these may be seen in  
the history of Printing by Mr. Ames 4. 1744.  
Above so, see the above <sup>Chil-</sup> at length &c.*





The descrypcyon of Englonde.

There foloweth a lytell treatyse the which treateth of the descrypcyon of this londe whiche of olde tyme was named . Albany . And after Brytayne And now is called Englonde and speketh of the noblesse and worthynesse of the same.



## The descrypcyon of Englonde

**I**t is so that in many and dyuerse places the comyn Cronycles of Englonde/ben hadde and also now late Enprynted in flete strete in the syne of the sonne And for as moche as the dylcrypcyon of this londe whiche of olde tyme was named: Albyon/and after Brytayne/is not descryued ne comynly hadde/ne the noblenesse & worthynesse of the same is not knowen: Therefore I entende to sette in thys booke the descrypcyon of this layd Ple of Brytayne and with the commodytes of the same.

**I**n the fyrst shall be tolde the names of the Plond. Ca. i.

**O**f the letynge bouyngge lenth and brede. ca. ij

**O**f the worthynesse and perogationes Capitulo. .ij.

**O**f the meruaylles and of the wondres. ca. iij.

**O**f the chyet partyes of the same londe. ca. v.

**O**f the Plondes that been therto adiacent. ca. vi.

**O**f the kynges byghe wayes and stretes. ca. vij

**O**f þe famous Ryuers & strems ca. viii

**O**f auncyent cytes and townes. ca. ix

**O**f prouynces and shyres. ca. x

**O**f the lawes and names of the lawes. ca. xi

**O**f kyngdoms of boundes & marches bytwene them. ca. xij.

**O**f bysshopyches & theyr sees ca. xij.

**O**f howe many manere people haue dwelled therein. ca. xiiij

**O**f the langages of maners & blage of the people of that londe. ca. xv.

**O**f the londe of wales. ca. xvi

**O**f the name and whye it is namede: wales. ca. xvij.

**O**f the commodytes of the londe of wales. ca. xvijij:

**O**f the maners and ryttes of the walshmen: ca. xix

**O**f the meruaylles wondres of Wales. ca. xx

**O**f the dylcrypcyon of Scotlonde som tyme named Albanva. ca. xxi.

**O**f þe dylcription of Irtonde: ca. xxii

**O**f þe bouyngge of Irtonde. ca. xxiiij:

**O**f the gretnes and quantyte of that londe. ca. xxv.

**O**f the defautes of þe londe. ca. xxvi.

**O**f theyn that fyrste enhabyted Irlonde. ca. xxvi.

**O**f the condicions and maners of Irishmen. ca. xxvii.

**O**f the merueylles & wondres of Irlonde: ca. xxviii

**O**f the merueylles of sayntes of Irlonde. ca. xxix

### Explicit tabula.

**T**he names of this Plonde. ca. j.

**F**yrste as Galfrydus sayth this londe was called Albyon after the name of Albpyne the oldeste daughter of Dyoclespan and had. xxxii. systers. & theye were fyrste that enhabytede this londe/ And bycause she was the oldeste systre she named this londe albyon after hir owne name as the Cronycle reherleth: Dthere saye that this londe was named Albyon as it were the whyte londe of whyte rockes aboute the clyues of the see that were seen fro ferre. Afterwarde Brute conquered this londe & called it Brytayne after his owne name. And thenne Saxons or Englyshmen conquered this londe and called it Anglia that is Englonde Or it is called Anglia of a quene that owed this londe/ that was named angela and was a noble bukys doughter of the Saxons. Or as Elyd sayth Echi. xv. anglia hath that name as it were an angle and a corner of the worlde. Or els as Beda sayth li. i. Saynt Gregory sawe En

## The descryptyon of Englonde.

glysthe chylde to sell at Rome & he accorded to the name of the lond. and sayd they ben sothely angles/for hir face shyned as angels/for the noblyte of the lond shone in þ chylde's faces. ¶ **Alfre.** The Brytyshe Anglia is called þ other worlde/and for greate plente of all good the grete Charles called it his owne chambric. ¶ **Solin.** The edge of the frenshee clyf sholde be the ende of the worlde/þ the Blonde of Britayn ne were not/whiche is worthy to haue the name of an other worlde. ¶ **Alfy** this Blonde is called insula for it is in salo/that is the se/& is beten of wiche dyuerse cours of waters wiche stremes and wiche waves of the se.

¶ **Of the lettyngge bouyngge lenthe and bredth of this lond.**

**T**his Britayne is acoüted a noble lond bothe in our storpes and also in the storpes of Grekes. & is set apenste Germania. Gallia. fraunce & Spayne bytwene the north and the west & the se bytwene. This lond is fyftyn myle fro the clyf of the men that be called morini gessorico. ¶ **Beda li.i.** And for this plond lyeth vnder the north hede of the worlde. & it hath lyght and byght nyghtes in þ somer tyme. So that oftentyme at myd nyght men haue questyons & doubtte whether it be euyntyde or dawynge/þ is for the tyme of the yere þ the sonne goeth not ferre vnder the erth by nyght but passeth by the north syde & cometh soone in to þ east agayne. And therefore in the somer be theyr dayes full longe of .xviii. houres & the nyghtes of .vi. houres. And after in þ wynter ben longe nyghtes of .xviii. houres and shorte dayes of .vi. houres. Also in Armenia. Macedonia. Italya and in other londes of the same lyne the lengest daye and lengest nyght also is of .xv. houres. and the shorrest day or nyght is of ix houres. ¶ **Plinius** in meroe. That plond is chiefe of blacke men/ther is the lengest

daye .xii. houres. In Alexandre in Egypt of .xiii. houres In ytalya of .xv. houres. In Brytayne of .xviii. houres. In the plond named Tyle all the .vi. somer monethes is daye & all the .vi. wynter monethes in nyghte. ¶ **Alfy** li. xiii. Brytayne is sette within Ocean as it were wout the worlde/and is sette apenst fraunce & Spayne ¶ **Giraldus.** Brytayne is endlonge and larger in the myddell than in the endes. ¶ **Drosi.** Brytayne stretcheth in lenth out of the south into the north/and in the southe it hath fraunce/ in þ south Spayne in the north/ Norwaye/ & in the west Hybernia/that is Irland. whan shippemen passen the next clyf of that lond they see a cyte that heet Rupty mouth. ¶ **Beda li.i.** That cyte is now called thortly of Englyshmen Reptacestre/ ¶ **Solinus/** Brytayne is viii. houndreth myle of lenth and it be mocon from the clyf of Totenelle to the angle of Calydon. ¶ **Alfre** That is from penwithstrete .xv. myle be yonde Mychels stowe in Cornewayle vnto Latenelle that is beyonde Scotlonde and Brytayne is more than two hondred myle brode from Mencia þ is the bettremest place in wales vnto yarmoch in northfolke. ¶ **Beda** Only out take the lengest outthetynge of dyuerse forlondes wiche whiche Brytayne is all about. ¶ **lxviii** sythe .lxx. thousande paas.

¶ **Of the worthynesse and perogationes.** ca. iii.

**A**s fraunce passeth Brytayne so Brytayne passeth Irland in fayre weder and noblyte/ but not in helthe. ¶ **Beda li.i.** for this plond is beste to brynge forth trees and scrupte. Retherne and beestes. And wyne groweth therein in some place. The lond hath plente of fowles and of beestes of dyuerse manere of kynde. The lond is plenteuous and the see also. The lond is noble copious

## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

and ryche of noble welles and Ryuers w<sup>th</sup> plente of fyllhe. There is grete plente of small fyllhe of lamon & of eccles. ¶ Wilhel. de. pon. li. iii. So that the people in some place fede theyr swyne w<sup>th</sup> fyllhe. ¶ Beda. li. i. There ben oftentimes taken dolphyns. See calues / & Balayne grete fyllhes as w<sup>th</sup> jales kynde. and dyuerse manere shelyfyllhe / amonge the whiche shelyfyllhe ben muskles that within them haue Margery peerles of all maner of colour and hewe of rody & rede purple and of blew and specially and moost of whyte. There is also plente of the fyllhe y<sup>e</sup> men open therwith fyne rede / the rodenes therof is wonder fayre and stable / & stayneth neuer with colde ne with hete. with wete ne with drye / but euer the older the colour is the fayrer. There ben also saltewelles & hote welles / therof rennyng streames of hote bathes departed into dyuerse places accordyng. for man & woman of al manere age olde or yonge. ¶ Bassilius sayth. That the water that renneth and passeth by daynes of certayne metall taketh in his course grete hete. This plond is plenteuous of daynes of metalles. bras of yron of leede of tyn / & of syluer also. ¶ Plinius li. vi. ca. vi. In this plonde vnder the turke of the londe is founde good merle. the thyfey of the fatnes dryeth hy<sup>e</sup> selfe therin / So that euer the thycker the felde is merled the better come it wyll bere. There is also a nother maner whyt merle / that the londe is the better foure score yere that therwith is merled. ¶ Solinus In this plonde groweth a stone y<sup>e</sup> is called Sagates / yf ye wyll knowe his fayrnesse / it is blacke as gemes ben / yf ye wyll knowe his kynde / It brenneth in water and quenched in oyle and as to his myght yf the stone be froted and chaffed It holdeth what hym neygheth as Succus a stone that is so named. ¶ Pseudo. li. xv. There ben shepe that bren gode wil. There ben many hertes & wylde beestes

and fewe wulues / therfore shepe ben the surer withoute keepyng lefte in the felde. ¶ In this plonde also ben many cyties and townes fayre & noble & ryche / many grete Ryuers and streames with grete plente of fyllhe / many fayre woodes and grete / with ryght many beestes came and wylde / The erthe of that londe is copious of metall / and of salte welles / of quareyes of marbyll of dyuerse manere stones / of reed of whyte of losse & of hard / of chalke & of whyte lime. There is also whyte claye & rede for to make pottes / croches / stens / & other vessell & bren tyle to couer y<sup>e</sup> houses & churches as it were in y<sup>e</sup> other samia / that is named lamos also. ¶ Flaunders loueth well the wull of this londe. And Holand the skynnes and felles of all maner of beestes. Guyan y<sup>e</sup> yron & the leed. Inlonde the oore & y<sup>e</sup> salte. All Europa loueth & desyret the whyte metall of this londe. ¶ Alfredus. Brytany hath ynough of mater that there nedeth to bye and sell / or is nedefull to mannes vyle / there lacketh neyther salt ne yron. Therfore a verseyour in his metre prayseth this londe in to this manere. Englonde is a good londe fruytfull of wull / but it is a corner. Englonde is full of playe free men well worthy to playe / fre men / free tonges / free hertes / and free ben all theyr thynges. theyr honde is more free / and better than theyr tonge. Also Englonde is beauteuous of londe floure of lond / des all aboute / that londe is full payede with fruyte and good of hys owne / that londe reueleth straunge men that haue nede therto. And whan hunger greuethe other londes that Londe fedethe them / That londe bereth fruyte and come grete plente ynough. That londe is welle ateale as longe as men lyue in peas. rest and welle in eche londe been knowen wel the Hauenes of Englonde. Her shyppes foundes and ofte helpeth many londes. Theyre mete and money men haue there

## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

more comyn alway. And for to lerne mā gladly yeue gyftes. In londe and stonde wyde speke men of Englonde. Londe hony mylke chese this Plonde therof shall bere the pryce. This plonde hath no rede of other londes. all londes muste seke helpe at this alone. Of the lpyngge of theyr woun/ myght wonder kyng Salomon The ryches that there is an/ wolde desyre octauyan.

### Of the meruayles & wondres. ca. iiii.

**I**n Brytayne been hote welles wel laryed and a dresed to the vse of manhode/ maystres of thylke welles is the grete spyrte minerua. In hir hous þ fyre endureth alway that neuer chaungeth into ashes/ but there the fyre slaketh/ it chaungeth into stone clottes. ¶ All fre. In Brytayn ben many wondres/ neuertheles four ben moost wonderfull the fyrste is at Pecton there bloweth so stronge wynde out of the chynes of the erth þ it casteth vp agayn clothes that men caite in. The seconde is at Stonhenge belydes Salesbury there ben grete stoones & wonder huge. and been rered on hygh as it were pates sette vpon oþer pates: Neuertheles it is not knowen clerely ne aperceued how and wherfore they ben so are red & soo wonderfull honged. The thyrde is at Lherdhoke there is a greate hollownes vnder the erthe/ often many men haue walked therein. and haue seen Ryuers and stremes but no where can theye fynde none ende. The fourth is that rayn is seen repled vpon hylles and none yspronge aboute in the feldes. Also ther is a greate ponde that conteyneth. lx. ylondes couenable for men to dwelle in/ that ponde is bedclypped aboute with lxx score roches/ & vpon euery roche an egles neste and thre score Ryuers rennen into. þ pon

de/ and none of theym all renne into the see but one. There is a ponde closed aboute with wall of tyle and of stone. In that ponde men washe and bathe ryght ofte/ and euery man feleth the water hote or colde ryght as he wyll hymself. There been salte welles ferre frome the see & been salte all the weke longe vnto saterdaye at noone/ And freshe fro saterdaye at noone vnto mondaye. The water of these welles whan it is loden torneth into smalle salte fayre and whyte. Also there is a ponde/ the water therof hath wonder werkyngge/ for though all an hooftc stode by the ponde and torned theyr face thyderwarde the water wolde drawe hym vpolently towarde the ponde and wete al theyre clothes/ so sholde hoys be drawen in the same wyle. And yf the face be torned away fro the water the water noyeth the not. There is a well that no stremereneth fro ne neyther therto/ and yet four maner of fyllhe be taken therein. that welle is but. xx. foote longe and xx. foote brode/ and not depe but to the knce. and closethe with hyghe bankes on euery syde. In the countrec aboute Wynchestre is a denne or a caue/ oute of that caue bloweth alwaye a stronge wynde/ soo that no man maye endure to stonde tofore that. denne or caue. There also a ponde that torneth trece into yron yf it be therein a yere. And so trees ben shapen into whelstones. Also there is in the toppe of an hylle burpels euery man that cometh and meteth that buryel/ he shall fynde it euen of his owne lenth and mesure. And yf a pylgryme knele therto anone hel shall be all freshe & fele no geyf of wecynges. ¶ Sir in. top. ffaste by the mynstre of Wynburyney that is not ferre fro bathe is a wood that bereth moche fruyte/ yf the trees of that woode fall into water or grounde þ is nyghe and lye there all a yere. the trees tornen into stones. ¶ Sir in itenere. Vnder the Lyte of Chelstre renneth þ Ryuer

## The Descrypcyon of Englonde.

Dee that nowe departeth Englonde and wales. That Ryuer chaunged euery mo-  
 netch his lordes as men of the countre tel-  
 len/and leueth often the chanel/ but whe-  
 ther the water drawe moze towarde En-  
 glonde or towarde wales to what syde it  
 is be. that yere men of that syde haue the  
 worst ende and be ouerlette. And men of  
 that other syde shall haue better ende &  
 ben at theyr aboue. Whan the water soo  
 chaungeth his course it bodeth luche hap-  
 pes. This Ryuer Dee renneth & cometh  
 out of a lake that heet. Pymblemere. In  
 this Ryuer is greate plente of samon/ne-  
 uertheles in the lake is neuer samon foun-  
 den. **¶** Wilhel de re le ii. Take hede how  
 grete lycht and bryghtnesse hath be shew-  
 ed vpon Englyshemen by the theyr fyrste  
 tomed to ryght byleue. So that of no mē  
 in ony prouynce ben founden soo many  
 hoole bodyes of men after her deth in ly-  
 henes of euerlastyngnes that shall be af-  
 ter the daye of dome/as it well semeth in  
 these holy sayntes as Edelrede/ Edmō-  
 de/the kynge Elphege: Edgar Lucherd  
 and saynt Edward and many other. **¶**  
 crowe that it be do by a specyall grace of  
 god almyghty for the nacyon that is let-  
 as it were withoute the worlde sholde ta-  
 ke hede to burpunge of bodyes withoute  
 corrupcyon and rotynge/and ben the mo-  
 ze bolde and stedfaste for to truste on the  
 fynall arplyng of dede bodyes for to last  
 euermore after the daye of dome.

**¶** Of the chyef partyes of the same londe.  
 ca. v.

**A**fter the fyrste Brutes tyme the  
 Plonde of Brytayne beganne for  
 to haue the pryncypall partyes/that ben  
 Loegria Cambria that is Wales. And  
 Albania that is nowe Scotlonde Loegri-  
 a hath the name of Loerinus that was  
 Brutes oldeste loone/And heet Loegria

as it were. Loerinus londe / But nowe.  
 Loegria is called Englonde The bound-  
 des and Markes were therof some tyme  
 the frenshe see both by east and by south  
**¶** Beda. li. i. ca. ii. And by north two ar-  
 mes of the see that bracketh ferre into the  
 londe eyther apenste ocher But they re-  
 che not togyder / The easte arme of thyl-  
 ke twayne begynneth aboute a two lychell  
 myle fro the mynstre of Ebburcyrngc.  
 In the weste syde of Penulton in that ar-  
 me is a towne that is called Gudy. the  
 weste arme of thylke twayne hath in the  
 ryght syde a stronge Lyte that heet Al-  
 cliud whiche in theyr langage is called.  
 Clyntstone and stondeth vpon a Ryuer  
 that is called Clynt also. **¶** R. Some mē  
 wolde mene that Loegria endeth at Hum-  
 bie/and stretcheth no ferther northward  
 The seconde partye of Brytayne is cal-  
 led Albany that is Scotlonde and hath  
 that name of Albanactus Brutes loone  
 and stretcheth fro the foilsayd two armes  
 of the see northward vnto these of Nor-  
 waye. Neuertheles the southe partyes of  
 Albania where as Pyctes dwelled some-  
 tyme that lyeth from the water of Twe-  
 vnto the Scotteshe see. All that longed  
 some tyme to the kyngdome of Northum-  
 berlond Brenycorn & north syde of Nor-  
 thumberlond fro the fyrste tyme of En-  
 glyshe kynges to that tyme whan Ryna-  
 dius kyng of Scotlonde that was Alpi-  
 nus lone dyd away the Pyctes and soo  
 Joyned that countre to the kyngdome of  
 of Scotlonde. The thyrde partye of Bry-  
 tayne is wales wallia that heet Cambria  
 also/and hath the name Cambria of  
 Cambre Brutes lone/for he was prynce  
 of wales. in the east syde Seuarne depar-  
 ted some tyme bytwene Englonde and  
 Wales. But in the north syde the Ryuer  
 of Dee at chestre/and in the south & Ry-  
 uer that is named Waga at the castell of  
 Strygelyn departeth Englonde and wa-  
 les. Also kyng Offa for to haue a dyl-  
 tynccyon for euermore bytwene the kyn-

## The descrypcion of Englonde.

ges of Englonde and of Wales made a longe ditche that dretcheth forth oute of the south syde by Brystowe vnder the hylles of wales Seuarne and Dee almost to the heedes and vnto the mouth of the Ryuer of Dee beyonde Cheshire fast by y castell it renneth bytwene Colchylle and the mynstre of Balsyngwerke into the se This dytche is yet in many places seen In saynt Edwardes tyme Wallshmen holde not passe that dytche with wepyn vpon a grete payne. And that was atte erle Haroldes procuryng as it shall be sayd here after. But nowe in epyther sydes both ayonde half and a this halfe the dyche and specyally in the shyres of Cheshire of Shrowelbury and of herforde in many places ben Englyshmen and wallshmen medled togyders.

**O**f the Plondes that ben therto adiacent. ca. vi.

**B**rytayne hath thre Plondes that ben nygh and longynge therto al without the Plondes Orcades/as it were answerynge to the thre chyeft partyes of Brytayne. for the Ile of wyght longeth and lyeth to Leogrya that is Englonde. The plonde Mon that is called Angleseya also longeth to wales/and the Plonde Eubonia that hath two othere names and is called Menenuia and Man also whiche longeth to Scotlonde. And all these thre plondes Wyght Mon and Man ben almost alyke moche and of y quantyte/of the whiche three all a rowe foloweth our speche. ¶ Beda. li. i. ca. iii. Claudius sent Vespasianus/and Vespasianus wanne wyght/And Wyght stretcheth oute of the east in to the weste. xxx. myle longe And oute of the south in to the north. xii. myle/and is in the east syde vi. myle fro the south clyf of Brytayne. And thre myle in the weste syde. ¶ Beda li. iiii. ca. v. The mesure of this plonde as

Englyshmen gesse is a thousand houles holdes and two hondred. ¶ Gir. in itinere. Mon that is called Angleseya also is departed from northwales by a short arme of the see as it were two myle brode. In Mon ben thre hondred townes. lx. iii. And ben accompted for Landredes h ben. iii. hondredes/ The Plonde is as it were. xxx. myle longe and xii. myle brode Landredus is so moche londe as conteyneth an hondred townes/that name Landredus is made oute of two langages of Brytyshe and of Frysshe. In praylyng of this plond wallshmen were wonte to saye a prouerbe and an olde sawe. Mon Man kembri/that is to saye in Englysh that londe is so good that it semeth that it wolde fynde come ynoughe for all the men of wales. Therefore Dyrge's verles maye be accordynge therto/as moche as guawes/bestes longe Innech dawes. So moche este byngeth colde dewe in a nyght. In that arme of the see that departed this londe and northwales/is a lowe that draweth shyppes to it that layeth by and swoloweth them in ryght as doth: Cylla and Carphidis that ben two peryllous places in the see of myddell erthe. Therefore men may not sayll by this swalowe/but slyly atte full see. ¶ R. Of the merueylles and wondres of the plonde of Mon thou shalt fynde in the chapytre of Wales. ¶ Gir. in itinere. The thyrde plonde that is called both Eubonia and Menenuia that is Man stondesth in the myddell bytwene the Frysshe vltare and the Scotteshe gallewaye/as it were in the nauell of the see. Beda li. ii. ca. ix. This plonde Man conteyneth as it were two plondes. The fyrste is southwarde the more countree. And the better coine londe/and conteyneth. ix. hondred and lx. housholdes. The seconde conteyneth the space of: CCC. & moo as Englyshmen gesse. ¶ Gir. in top: Somtyme was stryfe whether this plonde Man holde long to Britayn or to Irland & for as moch asde

Came in  
4 copy

## The descripcyon of Englonde.

nemous womies that were broughte thyr der lpyed there. It was Jugeed that the ylonde of man sholde longe to Brytayne. ¶ In that ylonde is sortplege and witchcraft bled. for women there selle to thypmen wynde as it were closed vnder thre knottes of threde. so that the moore wynde he wpll haue. the moo knottes he muste vndo. There often by day tyme mē of that londe seen men that ben deed to fore honde byheded or hoole and what de the they deped. Alpens sette theyr feet vpon feet of the men of that londe for too see suche syghtes as the men of that lond done. ¶ Bede li. ii. Scottes dwelled fyrste in this ylonde. ¶ Thanatos that is Tenet and is an ylonde belydes Kent and hath that name Thanatos of dethe of serpentis for there ben none. And the erthe therof sleeth serpentis yborn in othel londes. There is noble corne londe and fruytfull. It is supposed that this ylonde was halowed & blessed of saynt Austen the fyrste doctour of Englyshemen for there he arryued fyrste.

### ¶ Of the kynges hie wayes and stretes Capitulo. viii.

**M**olyneus kyng of Brytons. was the .xiii. of them and y fyrst that gaf theym law. he ordeyned h plowaren folowes goddes temples and hygh wayes that leden men to Lytees & townes. sholde haue the freedom of coloure so that euery man that wente to ony of the ym for locour or for trespaas that he hath do sholde be laufe for pourlute of all his enemyes. But afterwarde for the wayes were vncertayne & stryf was had. Therfore Belinus y kyng h was the forlaid Moliuncius lone for to put away al stryfe & doute. made foure hygh kynges wa

yes preuyled with all preuylege and freedom. And the wayes stretche through the ylonde. The fyrste & grettest of the foure wayes is called fosse & stretcheth out of the south into the northe and begynneth from the corner of Cornewale and passeth forth by Deuenshyre by Somersete and forth belydes Tebury vpon Cottel wolde belyde Louentre vnto Lyncestre. & so forth by wyld playnes towarde Newwarke and endeth at Lyncoln. The secōde chyef kynges hygh way is named watlyngstret and stretcheth thwarde ouere fosse out of the southeest into the norwest and begynneth at Douer and passeth by the myddell of Kent ouer Temple belyde London by westmestre and so forth by lant Albon in the weste syde by donstaple by Stratforde by Towcetre by wedō by south Lylleborn by Atheryston vnto gybertes hylle that nowe is called wreken and forth by Seuarne and passeth belydes wrocestre and thenne forth to Stratton and so forth by the myddell of wales vnto Cardyhan and endeth atte Frysthe see. The thyrde waye is called Erynnus gestrete and stretcheth out of the weste norweste into the east southeest. & begynneth in Hencuia that is saynt Daupds londe in weste Wales and stretcheth forth vnto Southamton. The fourth is called Rykenpldestret and stretcheth forth by Worchestre by Wycombe and by Birnyngcham by Lechefelde by Derby by Chestre felde by Porke and forth vnto Tynmouth.

### ¶ Of the famous Ryuers and Strames Capitulo. viii.

**T**here ben thre famous Ryuers rē vnto Englonde through Brytayne by y whi



## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

the thre Ryuers marchaūtes of beyonde the see comen in shyppes in to Brytayne well nygh out of all manere of nacjons and landes. These thre Ryuers ben temse. Seuarne and Humber. The see ebberth and floweth at these thre Ryuers and departeth the thre prouynces of the B. of de as it were the thre kyndoms asondre. The thre partyes ben Loggria. Cambria and Northumbria. That ben myddell Englonde: wales. and Northumbrelond. ¶ R. These name Temse semeth made one name of two names of two Ryuers that ben Tame & Ule for the Ryuer of Tame renneth belydes Dorchestre and falleth in yle/therfore all the Ryuer fro the fyrst hede vnto the east see is named Tample or Temse. Temse begynneth belydes Tctbury that is thre myle by north Halmesbury. There the Temse spryngeth of a well that renneth eastwarde & passeth the fosse and departeth Glocestre shyre and wylshyre/and draweth w hym many other welles and stremes and weteth grete at grecestre and passeth for the than towarde Hampton & so forth by Drenforde by wallynforde by Redyng and by London. ¶ Wilhelm<sup>9</sup> de pon. ca. ii. Atte haucn of Sandwhiche it falleth in to the east see/and holdeth his name xl myle beyonde London:and departeth in some place Kent and Essex westler and Mercia/that is as it were a grete dele of myddell Englonde. ¶ R. Seuarne is A Ryuer of Brytayne and is called Habern in Brytons/ & hath that name Habern of Habern that was Estrydes doughter Guendolon the quene drenched this habern therein/therfore the Brytons called the Ryuer Habern after þ woman þ was drowned therein/ but by corrupte latyn it is called Sabrina Seuarne in Englysh/ she. Seuarne begynneth in the myddell of wales and passeth fyrste towarde the east vnto Shrowelbury /and thenne forned southward vnto Bryggenorth wyrcelstre & gloucestre & falleth into þ west se

belydes Brystow and departeth in some place Englonde and wales. ¶ Wilhelm de pon. li. iii. Seuarne is swyfte of streme/ fyllthe craftte is therein/ wodenes of þ two lowynge and of the whyrlynge water catcheth by and gadre to hepe grete hepes of grauell. Seuarne ofte aryleth and overfloweth the bankes: ¶ R. Humber hath that name of Humber kynge of. hūnes. for he was drowned therein. And renneth fyrste a croke out of the southlyde of porke/ and thenne it departed the prouynce of Lyndeleye that longed somtyme to the Mercies from the other contie Northumberlonde Trente and Ous rennen into Humber and maken the Ryuer full grete ¶ Treuysla. The mercies were men as it were of myddell Englonde as it shall be sayd here after.

¶ Of aūcyent cytees & townes. ra ix.

The kyndome of Brytayne was somtyme made fayre with. xviii noble cytees without ryghte many castels that were walled with toures with yates & with barres strongly buylded. ¶ Alfre These were the names of the cytees. Caerlud that is London. Caerbranch that is Poike. Caerhent that is Caüterbury Caergoraukon that is worcestre. Caerlirion that is Lecestre. Caerclon that is. Gloucestre Caercolden that is Colcestre Caerrey chat is Chichestre. Saxons called it somtyme Cylstoncestre: Caertery þ is Cyrecestre. Caerquent that is Wyncheltre. Caergraunte that is Lambiggge. Caerlepyll that is Lugubalia and Karlylle. Caerporis that is Dorchestre. Caerdrom that is Dorchestre. Caerludcoyt that is Lyncoln and Lyndecolyn. Caer marthyn þ is Werlyns Cytte Caerlegēt þ is Sicel tre & is vpon Temse not fer frō redyng leon that is Caerleggon also & hyght fyrste Legecestre and now is named Chelstre Caerbathon that is bathe. and hyght somtyme Athamannus Cytte Caerpaladour

## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

that is Septon that now hyght Shaftelbury. ¶ R. Other cytees ben foude in cronycles for vnderstandynge of storpes/ of whom it shall folowe. ¶ Wil de pon. London is a ryall and a ryche cyte vpon. ca/ mple. of burgeyles of ryches of marchaūtes of chaffare & of marchaūdyle. Therefore it is that somtyme whan derth of bytays is in all Englonde comuly at London it is beste chepe bycause of the byers and sellers that ben at London. ¶ Gaufre. Brute the fyrste kynge of Brytons buylded & edyfyed this cyte of London þ fyrst cyte in remembraunce of the cyte of Troye þ was dystroyed & called it Troye neweth and Trinouantū that is new Troye Afterwarde kynge Lud called it Laerlud after his owne name. therfor þ Brytons had indygnacion as Gpldas/ telleth. Afterwarde Englyshmen called the cyte London/ & yet after þ Normans called it londres. & is named in latyn londonia. Rudhudibras kynge Leyles lone. was the viii. kynge of Brytons/ he buylded Caunterbury the chyef cyte of Kent & called it Laerkent. Afterwarde Englyshmen called it Dorobernia/ but þ is not Douer þ stondech vpon the clyf of þ frenshe se & is frō this Douer. xii. Englyshe myle. Afterwarde this Dorobernia was & is called Caūterbury. The same kynge. Rudhudibris buylde. Wynchestre. & called it Laerquent & after Englyshmen called it went & Wynchestre after the name of one wyne an Englyshe man that was byshop there All westsaxon was subgette to hym/ the same kynge buylded Paladour þ is Septon that now is called Shaftelburye Brytons tellen þ an Egle prophecyed. there sōtyme. Bladud. Leyles lone a Nygromancer was þ ix. kynge of Brytons/ he buylded Bathe and called it Laerbathon. Englyshmen called it after Athamannus cyte. But at te the laste men called it Bathonia that is Bathe. ¶ Wylhel. depon. li. ii. In this cyte welletþ vp and spryngeth hoothe ba-

thes and men wene that Iulys Cesar made there suche bathes. ¶ R. But Gaufre. monemutensis in his brytons boke/ sayth that Bladud made thylke bathes bycause wyllyam hath not seen that brytthe boke wrote so by tellynge of other men/ or by his owne gellynge as he wrote other thynge not best auyledly. Therefore it semeth more lothely that Bladud made not the hoothe bathes/ ne Iulys cezar dyd suche a dede though Bladud builded and made the Lyte. but it accordeth better to kyndely reason that the water renneth in the erthe by vaynes of byrm/ stone and sulphur and so it is kyndly made hoot in that course & spryngeth vp in dyuerse places of the cyte. And so thre bē hoothe bathes that wasseth of tetres loores shabbes/ ¶ Treuila. Though men myght by craft make hote bathes for to endure longe inough/ this accordeth wel to reason and to phylosophy that treateth of hote welles and bathes that ben in dyuerse londes though the water of this bathe be more strobly & sourer of sauour and of smell than ocher hote bathes bene that I haue seen at Akon in Almayne. And eyges in Sauoye/ whiche been fayr and clere as ony well streme I haue ben bathed therein & assayed them. ¶ R. Claudius Cesar maryed his doughter to Aruiagus kynge of Brytons. This Claudius cesar buylded Gloucestre in the weddyng of his doughter. Brytons called this cyte fyrste after Claudius name but afterwarde it was called Glocestre after one Gloza whiche was duke of that contree and stondech vpon Seuarne in the marche of Englonde and wales' Shrowesbury is a cyte vpon Seuarne in the marche of Englonde and Wales is sette vponne the toppe of an hylle/ And it is called/ Shrowesburye of shrobbes and fruyte that grewe there somtyme on that hylle Brytons called it somtyme pengwerne þ is þ hede of a fayr tre. Shrowesbury was somtyme the hede of powelpe

## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

that stretcheth forth thwart ouer þ̄ myddell of wales vnto the Iryllhe see Notyngham stondech vpon Trente and somtyme heet Notyngham þ̄ is the wonnyng of dennes/for þ̄ Danes dwelled there sōtyme & dygged dennes & caues vnder harde stones and rockes and dwelled there.

**CR.** Lyncoln is chyef of the prouynce of Lyndeseye & was called somtyme Caerludcoit & afterwarde Lyndecoln. It is vncertayne who buylded fyrste this cyte but yt it were kynge Lud/& so it semethe by menyng of the name/for Caer is brytyshe & is to saye a cyte & coit is a wood and so it semethe that Caerludcoit is to saye Luddes wode to wne kynge Lepr was Bladuddes sone & buylded Lypestre/as it were in the myddell of Englonde vpon the Ryuer Sos & vpon fosse the kynges hye waye.

**Wylhel. de pon. li. iii.**

**E** Dike is a grete cyte in eyther syde of the water of Dule that semed as fayre as Rome vnto the tyme þ̄ the kynge wyllyam had with brennyng and fyre defouled it and the countre aboute. So that a pylgryme wolde now wepe and he sawe it/yt he had knowen it tofore. **Gaufre. Ebrancus** the. v. kynge of Brytons buylded Forke and called it after his owne name Caerbrianch he buylded also two othe cytees one i scotland & is called Edenburgh/& an other toward Scotland in thend of Englonde & is called Alcliu. **CR.** Edenburgh is a cyte in the londe of Pictes bytwene the Ryuer of Twede and the Scottellhe see & heet somtyme þ̄ castell of Maydens & was called afterward Edenburgh of Edan kynge of pictes þ̄ regned ther in egfridus tyme kynge of Northūbreland. Alcliu was sōtyme a noble cyte/& is now wel nygh vnknowe to all Englyshmen. for vnder the Brytons and Pictes and englyshme it was a noble cite to þ̄ comfyr

of the Danes. But afterwarde abowtee þ̄ yere of oure lorde. viii. C. lxx. it was destroyed whan þ̄ Danes destroyed þ̄ countrees of Northumbrelonde. But in what place of Brytayne that cyte. Alcliu was buylded. Auctours tellē dpuerly. **Be. da. li. i.** sayth that it was buylded by west þ̄ arme of the see that departed bytwene the Brytons and þ̄ Pictes somtyme there Seuerus famous wall endeth westwarde/& so it semeth by hym þ̄ it is not ferre from Caerleyll for that cyte is set at the ende of that wall. Other wryters of storyes wryten that the cyte of Alcliu is that cyte þ̄ now is called Aldburgh/þ̄ is to say an olde towne/& standeth vpon the Ryuer Dus not ferre fro Burghbydge/that is. xv. myle westwarde oute of Forke/& it semeth that he preuech that by Gaufre in his boke of dedes of brytons/he wryteth that Elidurus kynge of Brytons was lodged at the cyte alcliu by cause of solace & huntynge/& founde his broder Argalon makyng in a wode nygh there belyde þ̄ hyght Calatery/ but that wood Calatery which is caltres in Englysh rechet almost to Forke & stretcheth towarde þ̄ north by Aldburgh in length by space of. xx. myle/the moost dele of that wode is now drawen downe and the londe ytylled. Other men wolde suppose þ̄ Alcliu was that cyte þ̄ now is called Burgham in the north contree of westmerlonde faste by Lomberland/and standeth vpon the Ryuer Eden/the cyte is ther wonderly seen. Deme ye now where it is buylded. **Treupla.** It is not harde to asloyle yt men take hede/that many townes here one name/as Cartage/ in Affryca & Cartago in Spayne. Newporte in Wales and Newporte in the paryshe of Barkeleye/Wottonne vnder egge and wotton passeth/Wykwar wyk payne. and wyk in the paryshe of Barkeleye. And two shyre towne eythere is called Hampton / as Southamptonne and Northampton so it semeth by the sto

## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

ryes that one Alcliud was in yorke shyre/  
 an other in westmerlonde/ & one faste by  
 the ryght syde of the west arme of the see  
 that departeth Englonde & Scotlonde/  
 But þe Alcliud was a ryght stronge cyte  
 as Beda sayth. And þe cyte standeth fast  
 by a Ryuer þe is called Cliud. And there  
 is no luche Ryuer in yorke shyre neythere  
 in westmerlonde as men of the contre tell  
 me. Some men say that the Ryuer Cliu  
 ud is now named Sulwach. Sulwathe  
 is but fyue myle fro Caerlepyll whiche is  
 a cyte in the contre of north Englonde/  
 toward the north west & hath an other na  
 me whiche is Luguball' Lepyll the. vii. ky  
 nge of Brytons buylded Caerlepyll. ¶ R.  
 In this cyte is somewhat of that famous  
 walle þe passeth Northumberlonde. ¶ Wil  
 hel. de pon In this cyte is yet a thre cham  
 bred hous made of dawte stones that ne  
 uer myght be dystroyede wiche tempeste.  
 of weder ne with brennyng of fyre also  
 in the contree fast by in westmerlonde in  
 the fronte of a thre chambie place is wri  
 ten in this manere. ¶ Mari. v. c. xvi. What  
 this writynge is to say I doute somewhat  
 but yf it were so þe some of the Lombres  
 laye there some tyme whan the counsell.  
 Marius had put hym out of ytalie. But  
 it seemeth better that it is wryten in myn  
 de of Marius kyng of Brytons þe was.  
 Aruiragus sone. This Marius ouercom  
 in þe place Rodryke kyng of Pictes So  
 sayth Gaufre in his brytyshe boke. wil  
 liam malmesburi sawe neuer that boke  
 At Hagulstaldes chirche is a place. lxxx.  
 myle out of yorke nor westwarde þe place  
 is as it were dystroyed / so sayth wyhel.  
 li. iii. de pon. That place longed somtyme  
 to þe bysshopyche of yorke / there were so  
 tyme houses with byce arches & voutes in  
 the manere of Rome. Nowe that place is  
 called. Hestoldeham and Heglesham al  
 so. ¶ Beda. li. iii. ca. i. saythe. That that  
 place is faste by the longe walle of the  
 werke of Rome in the north halfe. ¶ R.  
 Ther is dyfference bytwene the prouynce

of Lyndeffar & the chirche Lyndefarne/  
 for the prouynce of Lyndeffar & Lynde/  
 seye is all one / & lye the by cest Lyncolne  
 and Lyncoln is the hede therof / of þe whi  
 che saythe Beda. li. iii. ca. xi. that Sex  
 wulfus was fyrste bysshop there. but Be  
 da. li. iii. ca. xxiii. sayth. That Lyndeffar  
 chirche is an ylonde that is called holy y  
 londe in the Ryuer of Twede next Bar  
 wyk. And so it is gadred of Bedaes law  
 es that Twede renneth into the famous  
 arme of the see that nowe departeth En  
 glyshmen and Scottes in the east halfe  
 and in that arme ben thre ylondes. that  
 one is Maylros that nowe is called men  
 ros. Thenne aboute towarde the west is  
 Lyndeffarn chirche that is called holy y  
 londe: Thenne þe thirde is aboute vpwat  
 de and is the ylonde farn / and is called  
 also ferny ylonde. Thenne vpwat abo  
 ue that two myle is a ryall cyte vpon þe  
 bynke of Twede / that somtyme hygh.  
 Bebanburgh that is Bobbes cyte / and  
 nowe is called Bamburg and hath a ry  
 ght stronge castell. ¶ Sir. in itenere. two  
 cytees ther ben eyther is called Caerlegy  
 on and Caerleon also. one is Demycpa  
 in south wales that is named Caerulke  
 also there the Ryuer of Hshe falleth into  
 Seuarne fast by Glamorgan. Bellinus  
 kyng of Brytons somtyme buylded þe  
 cyte and was somtyme the chiefe cyte of  
 Demecia in south wales. Afterward in  
 Claudius cesars tyme it was called the  
 cyte Legyons whan atte prayer of Geni  
 us t he queene Hespacyanus and Aruira  
 gus were accorded and Legyons of Ro  
 me were sent into Iretonde / tho was Ca  
 erleon a noble cyte and of greate aucto  
 rity / & by the Romayns ryally buylded  
 and walled aboute with walles of brent  
 tyle. Grete nobley that was there in olde  
 tyme is there yet in many places seen as  
 the grete palayles gyauntes toures noble  
 bathes / releef of the temples places of the  
 atreces / that were places hyghe and ryall  
 to stande and lye in. & to behold aboute

*Britons, that had the first cyte of  
Wales, which is called North Wales*

### The descrypcyon of Englonde.

The places were ryally closed with ryal walles that yet somdele stondech ryght nyghe doos. And within the walles and withoute is greate buyldynge vnder erthe/ water conduytes and wayes vnder erthe and stewes/ also thou shalt see wonderly made /with strayte syde wayes of brethynge that wonderly caste vp heete. In this Lyte were somtyme thre noble chirches/ one was of saynt Juliuſtſ martyr and therin a grete companye of byrgynes. That ocher was of saynt Aaron that was of the ordre of blacke Chanon that churche was ryght nobly adourned. The thyrde churche was the chpſe moder churche of all wales & the chpſe lee. But afterwarde ſ chpſe le was torned out of ſ cyte into meneuia ſ is saynt dauids lode in west wales. In this Caerleon was am phibalus born that taught saynt Albon There the messagers of Rome come too greate Arthurs court/ yf it is leſſfull too trowe Treuila. yf/ Giraldus was in doubt whether it were leſſfull for to trow or not/ it were a wonder shewenge as mē wolde wene for to haue euermore in mynde/ and euer bee in doubt yf all his bookes were suche what lore were therein and namely whyle he maketh none euidence for in neyther syde he telleth what meue the hym so to sape. **CR.** There is an ocher Lyte of Legyons. there his Cronycles were bytrauappled as it is clerely known by the fyrſte chapytre of this booke **¶ Treuila.** That is to vnderſtondyng in the latyn wytyng for he that made it in latyn torned it not into Englyſhe ne it was torned into Englyſhe in the ſame place that it was fyrſte in latyn. The vnderſtondyng of hym that made thys Cronycles is thus witen in latyn in the begynnynge of this booke. **¶ Presentem** **ronicam** **compilauit** **frater** **Ranulphus** **Lestrenſis** **monachus.** That is to say in Englyſhe. Broder Ranulph monke of Chelſtre compiled and made thys booke of the Cronycles. **CR.** The Lyte of Le

gyons ſ is Chelſtre ſtondech in the Marche of Englonde towarde Wales bytweene two armes of the ſe that ben named de and Merlee. This Lyte in tyme of Brytons was heed and chpſe cyte of all Wenedocia that is North wales. The founder of this cyte is vnknown for who ſ ſeech the foundementes of the grete stones wolde rather wene that it were Romayns werke or werke of Spayntes/ than it were sette by werkynge of Brytarns. This Lyte somtyme in Brytſhe ſpeche heet. Caerthleon Regeſtria in latin and Chelſtre in Englyſhe and the cyte of Legyons also. for there laye a wynter ſ legyons of knyghtes that Julius Cezar ſente for to wynne Irlande. And after Claudius cezar ſente Legyons out of ſ cyte for to wynne the plonde that he called Dracades/ what euer wylliam Malmeſbury by tellynge of ocher men mente of this cyte. This cyte hath plente of lye uelode of corn of fleſhe of fylthe/ and ſpecyally of pryce of ſamon/ this cyte receyuech grete marchaundyle and ſendethe oute also. Also nyghe this cyte ben ſalte welles/ metall and ooz/ Northumbres dyltroyed this cyte somtyme. But afterwarde Elſleda lady of Mercia buylded it agayne and made it moche more. In thys ſame cyte ben wayes vnder the erth with bowtes and ſtone werke wonderly wrought/ thre chambre werkes/ grete ſtones ygraueu with olde mennes names therein There is also Julius cezar name wonderly in ſtones ygraue. and ocher nooble mennes also with the wytyng aboute. This is the cyte that Ethelfride kynge of Northumberlonde. diltroyed/ and ſlew there ſaſte by nyghe twoo thouſande monkes of the mynſter of Bangor This is the cyte that kynge Edgar come thider somtyme with vii. kynges that were ſubget to hym. A metter brykethe oute in this manere in prayſynge thys cyte. Chelſtre caſtell towne as it were name taketh of a caſtell. It is vnknown what man

*the same cyte*

## The descrypcyon of Englonde

buylded this cyte nowe. Tho Legereestria  
 chees heet now towne of legyones Nowe  
 Walshe and Englyshe holde this cytee  
 of grete pyre. Stones on walle semeth  
 werke hercules all. There longe w myg  
 ght to dure that hepe is a hyght. Saxon  
 small stones set vpon grete ben attones  
 Ther vnder gronde/lofynge double vou  
 te is founde/ That helpech with londes/  
 many men of western londes/ fyll the fles  
 che and corne lowe this cyte towne hath  
 ynowe/ Shyppes and chaffare/ le water  
 byngeth ynowe thare/ Godefall ther is  
 that was Emperour er this/ And for the  
 Henry kynge/ crthe is there ryght dwel  
 lynge/ Of kynge Haraldc/ poude is ther  
 yet J halde/ Bachus and Marcurious/  
 Mars and Venus. also Lauerna Prothe  
 us and Pluta/ regnen there in the towne  
 ¶ Treuysla. God wote what this is too  
 mcne/ but poctes in theyr mancre speche  
 faynen as though euery kynde craft and  
 luyngge had a dyuerse god eueryche fro  
 other. And so they feyned a god of bata  
 yll and of fyghtynge called hym Mars.  
 and a god of couetyle and rychelle and  
 marchaundyse and called hym Mercuri  
 us. And so Bachus is called god of wyne  
 Venus goddesse of loue and beaute/ La  
 uerna god of theeft and of robbery. Pro  
 theus god of fallhede and of gyle. Plu  
 to god of helle. And so it semeth that the  
 se verles wold meane/ that these forlaid  
 goddes regne and ben serued in Chestre  
 Mars with fyghtynge & tokyngge. Mar  
 curius with couetyle & rychelle. Bachus  
 with grete drynkynge. Venus with loue  
 lewdly. Lauerna with theeft and robbery  
 Protheus with fallhede and gyle. Then  
 is Pluto not vnserued that is god of hel  
 ¶ R: Ther babylon lore more myght/ ha  
 the trowth the more.

Take hede that Englonde conteyn  
 eth xxxii. shyres and prouynces  
 that nowe ben called Erldoms reuered  
 Cornwale and the ylonde. ¶ Allre The  
 se ben the names of the Erldoms & shy  
 res. Kent Soulex Sothery Hamplhyre  
 Barokshyre that hath his name of a ba  
 re oke that is in y foreste of wyndelore for  
 at that bare oke men of that shyre were  
 wonte to come togyder and make theyr  
 treatys/ and there take counseyll and ad  
 uyle. Also wyldshyre that heet somtyme  
 y prouynce of Semeran Somersete Dor  
 sete Deuonshyre that now is called deuo  
 nia in latyn. These. ix. South shyres the  
 Tamyle departed from the other deale  
 of Englonde whiche were somtyme go  
 uerned and ruled by the westsaxons law  
 Bestlex Myddellex Southfolke Northe  
 folke Herdeforth shyre huntynghdon shy  
 re Northampton shyre Cambridgelshyre  
 Beddeforth shyre Bupkyngham shyre.  
 Lecestre shyre Derby shyre Notyngham  
 shyre Lyncolnshyre Porke shyre Durha  
 mshyre Northumberlonde Caerleyllshyre  
 with Lumberlonde Appelby shyre with  
 Westmerlonde Lancastre shyre that con  
 teyneth fyue yfell shyres. These xvj. tene  
 North and Best shyres were somtyme go  
 uerned and ruled by the lawe called Mer  
 cia in latyn and marchene lawe in En  
 glyshe It is to wyte y Porke shyre stret  
 cheth from the Ryuer of Humbre vntoo  
 the Ryuer of Teyle/ And yet in Porke  
 shyre ben. xxii. hondredys: hondred & can  
 dredes is all one. Landrede is one worde  
 made of walshe and Jryshe/ and is too  
 menyngge a countree that conteyneth an  
 hondred townes/ and is also in Englysh  
 the called Wepentak/ for somtyme in the  
 comynge of a newe lorde tenauntes were  
 wonte to yelde vppe theyr wepen in ste  
 de of homage. Duramshyre stretcheth  
 frome the Ryner of Teyle vnto the Ry  
 uere of Tyne. And for to speke propi ely

Of prouynces and shyres.

ca. x.

Landred is a country/ & tithyn  
 an hundred townes/ & is call  
 in Englysh Wepentak. It  
 is called in French Fumetym/ &  
 is the name of a newe lord/ &  
 tithyn the word went to yelde v  
 wepen in steade of homage

## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

of Northumberlonde it stretteth froo þ  
Ryuer of Tyne vnto þ Ryuer of Twe  
de That is in the begynnynge of Scot  
londe. Then yf the countre of Northum  
berlonde that was somtyme frome Hū  
bre vnto Twe de be nowe a counted for  
one shyre & one Erledom as it was som  
tyme. Then ben in Englonde but. xxxii  
shyres. but yf the countree of Northum  
berlonde be departed into. vi. shyres that  
ben Euerwyk shyre Durams hire North  
umberlonde Caerlepyl shyre Appelbylshy  
re Lancastre shyre. then ben in Englon  
de. xxxvi. shyres withoute Cornewale &  
also without the plondes. Kyngge wylly  
am made all these prouynces and shyres  
to be descryued and moten. Then were  
founden. xxxvi. shyres and halfe a shyre  
Townes two and fyfty thousande and  
foure score paryshe chyrches. xlv. thou  
sande and two knyghtes fees. lxxv. thou  
sande / wherof men of relygpon haue. xx  
vii. thousande & xv. knyghtes fees. But  
nowe the woodes ben hewen downe and  
the londe newe tyllid and made moche  
more than was at that tyme and many  
townes and byllages buylded & so ther  
ben many mo byllages & townes nowe  
than were in that tyme. And were as a  
fore is wryten that Cornewale is not let  
amonge the shyres of Englonde it may  
stonde amonge them well ynough for it  
is neyther in wales ne in Scotlond but  
it is in Englonde and it Joyneþ vntoo  
Deuenshyre / & so may ther ben accomp  
ted in Englonde. xxxvii. shyres and an  
halfe with the other shyres.

### De legibus legūq; vocabulis.

**D**onwallo that hyght Moliuncius  
us also made fyrite lawes in bry  
tayne the whiche lawes were called Mo  
liuncius lawes / and were solempnely ob  
serued vnto wyllyam Conquerours ty

me. Moliuncius ordeyned amonge hys  
lawes that Lytees Temples & wayes  
that leden men therto / and plowe men  
solowes sholde haue pteuplege and fre  
dome for to saue all men that wolde fle  
therto for locour and refuge. Then af  
terwarde Mercia quene of Brytons that  
was Gwptelinus wyfe of her the pro  
upnce had the name of Mercia as som  
man suppole. She made a lawe full of  
wytte and of reason / & was called Mer  
chene lawe. ¶ Gildas that wrote þ Cro  
nicles and hystories of the Brytons tor  
ned these two lawes oute of Bryton spe  
che into latyn. And afterwarde kyngge  
Aluredus torned all out of latyn in too  
Saxons speche / and was called marche  
ne lawe. Also the same kyngge Aluredus  
wrote in Englyshe and put to an other  
lawe that hyght westsaxon lawe Then  
afterwarde Danes were lordes in thys  
londe / and so came forth the thyrde law  
that heet Dane lawe. Of these thre law  
es saynt Edward the thyrde made one  
commune lawe that yet is called saynt  
Edwardes lawe. I holde it welle done  
to wryte here & expowne . many termes  
of these lawes Myndebruch hurtyng of  
honoure and woilshyppe. In frenche bles  
chur dhonour. Burbruch in frenche bles  
chur de court ou de cloys Grithbruche  
brekyngge of peas / Mylkenyngge chaū  
gynge of speche in court. Shewynge let  
tyngge forth of marchaundyse. Hamlo  
ne or Hamfare a vere made in hous. for  
stallyngge wronge or bette downe in the  
kynges hyghe waye frithloken surete in  
defence. Sak forfayte Soka lute of co  
urte and therof comethe loken. Theam  
Sute of bondemen fyghtyngge wytte A  
merlemente for fyghtyngge. Blodewytte  
A merlemente forshedynge of bloode.  
flyt wytte a mendes for chydyngge of blo  
de Leyrwytte A mendes for lyenge by a  
bounde woman Gultwytte A mendes  
for trespas. Scot A gadryngge to werke

## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

of bayllyes. Hydage tayllage for hydes of londe. Daneghelde tayllage gyuen to the Danes that was of euery bona taterre. That is euery ore londe thre pens A weppntak and an hondred is all one for the countre of townes were wonte to gyue by weppn in the comynge of a lorde. Restage custome chalenged in cheppnyges fares and stallage custome for stan dyng in stretes in fayre tyme.

**O**f kyngdoms of boundes and marches bytwene them. ca. xii.

**T**he kyngdome of Brytayne stode withoute departynge hole and all one kyngdome to the Brytons from the fyrste Brute vnto Julius Cezars tyme/ and fro Julius Cezars tyme vnto leucrus tyme this londe was vnder trybuteto the Romayns. Neuerthelesse kynges they hadde of the same londe from Seuerus vnto the laste prynce Gracya successours of Brytayne kyled and Romayns regned in Brytayn Afterwarde the Romayns lefte of theyr regnyng in Brytayne by cause it was ferre frome Rome/ and for grete belynesse that they hadde in other lye. Thenne Scottes and Pyctes by mylledynge of Maxim<sup>us</sup> the tyraūt pursued Brytayn and warred ther with grete strength of mē of armes longe tyme vnto the tyme that the Saxons come at the prayenge of the britons agaynste the Pyctes/ and put oute Gurmonde the Frythe kyng with his Pyctes and the Brytons also with her kyng that heet Careticus & drofe hem oute of Englonde into wales/ and soo þe Saxons were byctours and cuery pryncce after his strengthe made hē a hēge. And so departed Englonde into seuen kyngedomes. Nethes afterwarde thele seuen kyngedomes euerychone after other came all in to one kyngedome.

All hole vnder the prynce Adelstone Nethes the Danes pursued this londe fro Adelwolfys tyme that was Aluredes fader vnto the thyrde saynt Edwardes tyme aboute a hondred. lxx. yere that regned contynuelly therin. xxiii. yere and a ytell moie. & after hym Harald helde the kyngdome. ix. moncthes. And after hym Normas haue regned vnto this tyme. But howe longe they shall regne he wote to whome no thyng is vnknewen. **¶** Of the forsayd seuen kyngdomes and her marches and boundes whan they beganne and howe longe they endurede here shall I somewhat shortly tell. **¶** Alfre. The fyrste kyngdome was the kyngdome of Kente. that stretcheth fro the east Occyan vnto the Ryuer of Tanyle. There regned the fyrste Hengistis/ and began to regne by the acomptynge of Dyonise the yere of our lorde a hondred. lv. that kyngdome dured thre hondred and. lviij. yere. xv. kynges vnto the tyme that Baldrede was put oute and Egbert kyng westlaxon Joyned that kyngdome to his owne the seconde kyngdome was at Southelaxon that had in the east lye Kente. in þe south the see and the yle of wyght/ in þe weste Hamphyre/ and in the north sothery there Ella regned fyrste with his thre sones/ and began to regne the yere after the comynge of þe Angles euen. xxx. but that kyngdome within thorte tyme passed into the other kyngdomes/ The thirde kyngdom was of eastlaxon/ and had in the east lye the see. in the west the countre of London/ in the south Teme and in the north Southfolke. The kynges of this countre of westlaxon fro the fyrste. Sebertes tyme vnto the tyme of the Danes were. x. kynges the whiche were subgett somdele to other kynges. Neuertheles ofteste and lengeste they were vnder the kynges of Mercia and vnto that tyme that Egbert the kyng of westlaxon Joyned that kyngedome to hys owne



## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

The fourth kyngdome was of east Angles and conteyneth Northfolke & Southfolke/and had in the east syde/and in þe north syde the see/and in the north west Lambrigelhyre/in the west sayt Edmōdes dyche and Herfordshyre/and in the south Essex/And this kyngdom dured vnder twelue kynges vnto the tyme that kyng Edmonde was slayne. And then the Danes toke wrongfully both the kyngdoms of east Angles and of estlaxon Afterwarde the Danes were put out & dryuen awaye or made subgette. And then the elder kyng Edwarde Ioynded both the kyngdomes too his owne. The fyfte kyngdom was of westlaxon and dured lengeste of al these kyngdōs/and hadde in the east syde southlaxon/in the north Tamyle/in the south and in the west the see Ocean. In that kyngdom regned Serdryk with his sone Kentyk. and began to regne the yere of oure lordes fyue hondred and:ix. and thenne after the comynge of Angles. lxxi. so sayth Denys the other kyngdoms passed into this kyngdom: The lxxi. kyngdom was of Mercia and was grettest of all. The marches and the meres therof were in þe west syde of the Ryuer Dee fast by Cheltre and Seuarne faste by Shrowesbury/ vnto Brystowe/in the east the east see/in the south Tamyle vnto London/in the north the Ryuer of Humber. and so westwarde and downwarde vnto the Ryuer Merle vnto þe corner of Wythall/ there Humber falleth into the west se. Penda Wybbes sone regned fyrste in this kyngdom in the yere of our lord Ihesu cristte. vi. hondred. xxvi. so sayth Denys and fro the comynge of Angles an hondred lxxv. yere. This kyngdom dured vnder xviii. kynges aboute two hondred. lxxiii. yere vnto the laste Colwulf the Danes betoke that kyngdom to kepe whan buried the kyng was put oute/ but the elder Edwarde the kyng put oute the danes and Ioynded the kyngdome of Mer

cia to his owne kyngdome. Necheles at the begynnynge this kyngdome of mercia was departed into thre/ in west mercia/ in myddell Mercia/ & este/ Mercia The. vii. kyngdome Was Northam/ humberlonde that is þe kyngdome of Northumberlonde / the meres and Marches therof were by west and by east the se of Ocean/ by southe the Ryuer of Humber and so downwarde towarde the weste by thende of the shires of Notynghā and of Derby vnto the Ryuer of Merle and by north the Scottes see/ that heet forthe in Scottes/ Werts in Brytyshe. the Scottes see in Englyshe/ Thys kyngdome of Northumberlonde was fyrste dealed in two prouynces/ That one was the south syde and heet/ Depra and that other was the north syde & heet Brenicia/ as it were two kyngdomes/ and the Ryuer departed thele two kyngdomes that tyme/ for the kyngdome of Depra was from the Ryuer of Humber vnto the Ryuer of Tyne. The kyngdome of Brenicia was fro Tyne to the Scottyshe see/ And whanne Pyctes dwelled there as Beda sayth. li. iii. ca. ii That Ninian that holy man conuerted men of the south syde. I da the kyng regned there fyrste and began to regne the yere of oure lordes fyue hondred xlvi. so sayth Dyonys. In Depra regned kyng Elle the yere of oure lordes fyue hondred. xlix. Thysle two kyngdomes were otherwhyle as it is sayde departed bytwene two kynges and somtyme all hole vnder one kyng/ and dured as it were. xx. Englyshe kynges. CCC. xxi. yere Atte laste Osbertus and Elle/ were slayne in the. ix. yere of her kyngdom the Danes slewe theym/ and Northumberlonde was voyd without kyng viii. yere. Then afterwarde the Danes regned in Northumberlonde. xxxvi. yere vnto the oonyng of the kyngdom Adelstone he made subgett the kynges Danes Scotteshe and wallshe and regned

## The descrypcyon of Englor.

fyyste allone in Englonde & helde ȳ h̄y gedome of Englonde all hole & all one kyngdom ȳ was the yere of oure lord. viii. C. xxviii That Ryuer of merle was somtyme ȳ marke & mere bytwene the kyngdom of Mercia & the kyngdom of Northūberlond / ȳ may be shewed in two maners fyrst by this properte of this merle / ȳ is as moche to laye as a see ȳ is a boude & a mere for it departed one kyng dome from an other. Also it is wryten in Cronicles of Henry & Alfrede ȳ kyng edwarde ȳ elder fastned a castell at Hamcestre in Northūberlond / but ȳ cyte Mācestre is fro the Ryuer of Mersee scarle by thre myle.

**O**f bysshopriches & theyr sees ca. xiii

**I**dcus was ȳ fyrste kyng cristened of the Brytons / in his tyme were thre Archebysshops sees in Brytayne / one was at London / an other at yorke / & the thyrde at Lacerukh ȳ cyte of Legyons in Glamorgan / that cyte is now called Lacerleō. To these Archebysshoppes sees were subgette. xxviii. bysshops & were called flammes. To the Archebysshops see of Londō was subgett Cornewayle & all myddell Englonde vnto Humbre. To Yorke all Northūberlōde frō ȳ bowe of Hūbre with all Scotlōde. To Lacerleon all wales / ther were in wales. vii. bysshops / & now ben but four Tho Seuarne departed Englonde & wales. ¶ Wilhel. de pon. l. i. But in the Saxons tyme thoughe saynt Gregori. had graunted London the preuylge of tharchebysshops see. Netheles saynt aulfen ȳ was sente into Englonde by saynt Gregori. tomed tharchebysshop see out of London into Caūterbury. After saynt Gregories dayes at ȳ prayer of kyng Ethelbryght & Lptezeyns & burgeyles of Caūterbury / ther tharchebysshops se hath dured vnto nowē klauē ȳ in ȳ mēne tyme Offa. kyng of Mercya was wro

the with men of Caūterbury / & benam thē ȳ worshyp / & worshypped Adulphe bysshop of Lychfeld w̄ ȳ archebysshops palle by assent of Adryan ȳ pope vpon caas by yestes sente. Netheles vnder Kenulph ȳ kyng it was restored to Caūterbury agayne. The worshyp of ȳ see of Yorke hath dured there alwaye & yet dureth though Scotlōde be withdraw fro his subieccyon by passynge of tyme ¶ Girinitenere. li. i. The archebysshoppes see was tomed out of Lacerleon into Menecia ȳ is in the west syde of Demicia vpon ȳ Iryshe se in saynt Dauids tyme vnder kyng Arthur / from saynt Dauids tyme vnto Samplos tyme were in Menecia. xxiii. Archebysshops. Afterwarde fylle a pestilence in all Wales of ȳ pelowe euyll / ȳ is called the Jaūdis And then Sampson the Archebysshop toke with hym the palle and wente into Brytayne Armonica the lasse Brytayne and was there bysshop of Dolensis. frome that tyme vnto the fyrste Henryes tyme kyng of Englonde were at Menecia whiche is called saynt Dauids. xxi bysshops all withoute palle / whether it were for vnconnyng or for pouerte. Ne uertheles alwaye fro that tyme the bysshops of wales were sacrid of ȳ bysshop of Menecia of saynt Dauids / and the bysshop of Menecia was sacred of the bysshops of wales as of his suffrigans and made no professyon ne subiection to none other chirche. Ocher bysshops that come afterwarde were sacred at Caūterbury by compellyng and heest of the kyng / in token of that sacryng & subieccyon. Boniface archebysshop of Caūterbury that was Legate of the Crosse longe in euery Cathedrall chirche of wales solempnely. Amas he was the fyrst archebysshop of Caūterbury that loyd in wales / & that was done in the seconde Henryes tyme. ¶ R. But nowē bene but two primates in all Englōde of caūterbury and of Yorke. To ȳ pypmate of

## The descryptyon of Englonde.

Caunterbury ben subgette. xiiii. bysshops in Englonde & iiii. in wales. The pry- mate of yorke hath but two suffrygans in Englonde þ ben the bysshop of Laerleyll & of Durham: Of all these sees & chaungynge of her places I shall shew you here folowynge. Take hede in the begynnynge of holy churche in Englonde bysshops ordeyned theyr sees in lowe places & symple þ were couenable for cōtēplacōn for prayers & deuocion. But in wplyam conquerours tyme by done of lawe: Canon it was ordeyned þ bysshoppes sholde come out of small townes in to greate cytees. Therefore was the see of Dorchestre chaūged to Lyncoln: Lyche- felde to Chestre. Telforde to Norwyche Shyrborn to Salebury. welles to Ba- the. Cornewayle to Exestre. & Selelepe to Chichestre. The bysshop of Rochestre hath no paryllhe but he is the archebyl- shops chapelayn of Caūterbury. Syth þ see of Caūterbury was fyrst ordeyned by saynt Austē it chaūged yet neuer his place. Chichestre hath vnder hym oonly Southsex & þ ple of wyght. & had hysle fyrste in Selelepe in þ tyme of þ arche- bysshop Theodore. & þ see dured there. CCC. xxxiii. yere vnder. xx. bysshops fro þ fyrst wilfredē vnto þ laste Stygand at þ cōmaundement of kyng wplyam conquerour chaūged þ see fro Selelepe to Chichestre.

### De episcopis occidētalibz Wilhelmus

**H**lue mynde þ all the prouynce of westlaxon hadde alwaye one byl- shop fro þ begynnynge vnto Theodor- us tyme by graūte of kyng Alstō kyng of westlaxon þ fyrst Birinus ordeyned a see at Dorchestre þ is a symple towne by south Drenforde belyde walyngford bytwene þ metynge togyder of Temle & Tame whan Birinus was dede. Ken- walcus þ kyng ordeyned a see at Wyn- chestre as his fader had purposed there

agilbert a frenshimā was fyrst bylshop of all þ prouynce of westlaxon. fro that tyme þ cyte & the see of Dorchestre per- ceyned & longed to þ prouynce of Mercia / that cyte standeth within Temle. & þ Temle departed bytwene Mercia & westlaxon. After that Agilbert was put out of wynchestre that tho byght wyne to thē was there an Englyshe bylshop that was called wyne. Some men sup- pose that this cyte hath þ name of thys wyne. & is called Wynchestre as it were wyne cyte. At þ laste he was put out. & after hym come Leutherius the forlady Agelbertes neuw. After Leutheri<sup>9</sup> heda a while was bylshop there. whan he was dede. Theodorus the archebylshop ordeyned two bylshops to the prouynce of westlaxon. Danyell at wynchestre to hym were subgette two countres: Sothe- ry and Southamplhyre. & to hym were subget lxx countrees. Barkshyre Wyl- shyre Somersete Dorseteshyre Deuen- shyre and Cornewayle. ¶ Treupla. It semethe by this that westlaxon confes- ned. Sothery Southamplhyre Dorsete shyre Deuenshyre Cornewayle. ¶ Wil- hel. Afterward in elder Edwardes tyme to these two sees were ordeyned by com- maundement of formolus the pope thre othe sees. At welles for Somersete. At Kyrtōn for Deuenhyre. and . At saynt Germain for Cornewayle. Notte lon- ge afterwarde the lxxc see was sette At Rammelbury for wilshyre. At the last by commaundement of kyng wplyam conqueroure all these sees saue wynchel- tre were torned and chaūged ooute of small Townes in to greate Cytees for Shyrborn and Rammelbury were for- ned in to Salebury. Now to that see is subgette Barkshyre wylshyre & Dor- sete. The see of Welles was torned too Bath. therto is now subget all Somer- sete. The sees of Kyrtōn and of Cor- newale were chaūged to Exestre therto is subget Deuenhyre & Cornewayle.

## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

### De orientali bus episcopis.

**I**T is knowen that the est Saxons alway fro the begynnynge to now we were subgette to the bysshop of London. But the prouynce of east Angles þ contepneth Norfolk and Suffolke had one bysshop at Donwyk / the bysshoppe heet felyx and was a Bourgon & was bysshop. xvii. yere / after hym Thomas was bysshoppe. v. yere / After hym boniface. xvii. yere. Thenne Bp̄ly afterwarde was ordeyned by Theodorus and ruled the prouynce whyle he myght endure by hymselfe allone / After hym vnto Egbertes tyme kyng of westsaxon an hundred. xliii. two bysshops ruled that prouynce one at donwik and an other atte Elyngham. Neuertheles after Eudecas tyme kyng of Mercia lefte and was only one see atte Elyngham vntoo the. v. yere of wpylliam conqueroure / whanne Herfastus the. xiii. bysshop of the estre / ne chaunged his see to Tetforde / & his successour herbertus chaunged the se fro Tetforde to Norwiche by leue of kyng wpylliam the reed. The see of Ely þ is nyghe therto the fyrste kyng Henry ordeyned the. ix. yere of his regne / & made subgett therto Lambryggel hyre that was tofore aparte of the bysshopryche of Lyncoln / & for quytynge therof / he gaaf to the bysshop of Lyncoln a goode towne called Spaldynge.

### De episcopis Merciorum. wilhelmus

**H**ere take hede that as the kyngdom of Mercia was alwaye greeteste for the tyme / so it was dealed in mo bysshopryches & specially by grete herte by kyng Oswa. whiche was. xl. yere kyng of Mercia / he chaunged the archebyshops see fro Caunterbury to Lychfeld by assent of Adryan the pope. Thenne

the prouynce of Mercia and of Lyndeles far in the fyrste begynnynge of her cryl tendom in kyng wulfrans tyme hadde one bysshop at Lychfelde / the fyrste bysshop that was there heet Dwyna. the seconde heet Celath and were both Scottes / after them the thyrde Trumphere / the fourth Jarmuanus / the fyft Thedde Butin Edelfredes tyme that was wulfrans broder whan Thedde was deede / Theodorus tharchebysshoppe ordeyned there Wynfred Theddes deken. Netheles apud Hyndon after that for he was vnburome in some poynte / he ordeyned there Serwulf abbot of Medamstede þ is named burgh. But after Serwulfus fourth yere Theodorus tharchebysshop ordeyned fyue bysshops in the prouynce of Mercia. And so he ordeyned Wolel at wyrcestre / Ludwyn at Lychfelde / the forsayd Serwulf at Chestre. Edelwyn at Lyndeleye atte cyte Sidenia / and he toke Bata monke of the abbaye of Hylde at whytby & made hym bysshop of Dorchestre belyde Drenforde. Tho this dorchestre heet Dorkynge / & so the see of þ longed to westsaxon in saynt Bp̄pnes tyme longed to Mercia from Theodorus tharchebyshops tyme Ethelred kyng of Mercia had destroyed Kente / thys bysshop Serwulf toke Pycas bysshop of Rochestre that come out of Kente & made hym first bysshop of Herdforde at last whā Serwulf was dede Hedda was bysshop of Lychfelde after hym & Wilfred flemmed out of Northüberlonde was bysshop of Chestre. netheles after two yere alfred kyng of Northüberlōd deped & Wilfred tomed agayne to his owne se hagulstaldē / & so Hedda held both þ bysshopryches of Lychfeld & of Chestre. aft̄ h̄ come albyn þ heet wor also / & aft̄ h̄ come thre bysshops. toria at chestre witta at Lychfelde / And Bata was yet atte Dorchestre. After hys deche bysshops of Lyndeley helde his see. iiii. hondred. liiii. yere vnto Remigius chaunged the se to

## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

lynco:n by leue of þ̄ fyrste kynge wyl/  
lyam But in Edgars tyme bysshop Le  
of winus Jopned both bysshopyches to  
gyder of Chestre & Lyndeffar whyle his  
lyfe endured.

¶ De episcopis Northumbrianis.  
Wilhel. de pon. li. ca. xi.

**A**T Yorke was one see for all þ̄  
prouynce of Northūberlōde pau  
linus helde fyrst þ̄ se & was ordeyned of  
þ̄ bysshop of Caūterbury / & helde þ̄ see  
of Yorke. vii. yere Afterwarde whanne  
kynge Edwyn was slayne & thynge we  
re dystroubled. Paulinus went thens by  
water awaye into Kent from whens he  
come fyrste and toke with hym the pall  
¶ Wilhel. li. iii. And soo þ̄ bysshopyche  
of Yorke ceased. xxx. yere / & þ̄ yle of the  
palle ceased there an hondred. xxv. yere  
vnto þ̄ Egbert þ̄ bysshop þ̄ was þ̄ kyn  
ges broder of þ̄ lōde recouered it by auc  
toute of the pope. ¶ R. whan saynt Ol  
wolde regned Apdanus a Scot was bys  
shop in Brenicia þ̄ is the north syde of  
Northumberlonde / after hym finian  
after hym Salman ¶ Wilhel: vby s. At  
last he wente in to Scotlonde w̄ greate  
indygnacion / for wylfre vnder toke hym  
for he helde vnlawfully Esterdape. xxx  
yere after þ̄ Paulin<sup>s</sup> was gone frō thēs  
Wilfred was made bysshop of Yorke.  
¶ Beda li. iiii. But while he dwelled lō  
ge in Fraūce aboute his sacrynge at ex  
cptynge of quartadecimanox / that were  
they þ̄ helde Esterdape þ̄. xiiii. dape of  
þ̄ mone. Thedde was ytake oute of hys  
abbape of Eystynge & wrongfully putte  
oute into þ̄ se of Yorke by assente of h̄y  
ge Olwy. But thre yere afterwarde. the  
odorus tharchebysshop dyd hym awaye  
& allygned hym to the prouynce of Mer  
cia / & restored wilfred to the see of yor  
ke. But after by cause of wrathe þ̄ was  
bytvene hym & the kynge Egfrype was  
put out of the see by Theodorus helpe.

tharchebysshop that was corrupt wiche  
some manere mede this was done after  
that Wilfred had ben bysshop of Yor  
ke / & Lambert at Hagustalde chyrche / &  
Eata at Lyndeffar chyrche that now is  
called holy plonde in the Ryuer of Twe  
de. Apdanus founde fyrste the see. And  
Theodorus made Sadhedus bysshopp  
of Repoune þ̄ was comen agayne out of  
Lyndeleye. Wilfred had be abbot of Re  
poune. Theodorus sente Trunwynus  
to þ̄ londe of Dycetes in thendes of En  
glonde faste by Scotlonde in a place þ̄  
heet Candida cala. & whiterne also. the  
re saynt Ninian a Bryton was fyrst to  
under & doctour. But all these sees out  
take yorke fayled lytyll & lytell / for the  
see of Candida cala þ̄ is Gallewaye þ̄  
tho longed to Englonde & dured many  
yeres vnder. x. bysshops vnto þ̄ it had no  
power by destroyenge of þ̄ Dycetes. The  
sees of Hagustalde & of Lyndeffar was  
lōtyme all onc vnder. ix. bysshops about  
four score yere & ten & dured vnto þ̄ co  
myng of þ̄ Danes. In that tyme vnder  
Hyngar & Hubba arduf þ̄ bysshop yede  
longe about w̄ saynt Luberts body vn  
to kynge Aluredes tyme kynge of west  
saxon / & þ̄ se of Lyndeffar was sette at  
Kunegestre þ̄ is salled Runyngysburgh  
also / þ̄ place is called now Hbbelford v  
pon Twede. At þ̄ laste the. xvii. yere of  
kynge Egbert kynge Edgars lone / þ̄ se  
was chaūged to Durham / & saynt Lut  
berts body was brought thyder by þ̄ do  
yng of Edmonde þ̄ bysshop / & fro þ̄ tyme  
forwarde þ̄ se of Hagustalde & of l̄y  
deffar fayled vtterly. The fyrste kynge  
Henry in þ̄. ix. yere of his regne made the  
newe see at Caerlepl. The archebysshop  
of Caunterbury hath vnder hym. xiiii.  
bysshops in Englonde. & iiii in wales he  
hath Rochestre vnder hym and that se  
hath vnder hym a parte in Kente alone  
London hath vnder hym Essex Myd  
delsex & half Herdforth shyre. Chychel  
tre hath vnder hym Southsex and the

## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

**P**le of Wyght. Wynchestre hath vnder hym Hamphyre and Southrey. Salebury hath vnder hym Barkshyre wyldshyre Dorsete. Exetre hath vnder hym Deuentshyre and Cornewayle. Bath. hath vnder hym Somerssetteshyre alone. Wyrcestre hath vnder hym Gloucestre shyre Wyrcestre shyre and half warwykshyre: Herfordse hath vnder hym Herfordshyre and some of Shropshyre. Chestre is bysshop of Couentre and of Lychfelde and hath vnder hym Chestre shyre Staffordshyre Derbyshyre halfe Warwykshyre and some of Shropshyre and some of Lancastre shyre fro the Ryuer of Wersee vnto the Ryuer Ryppe. Lyncoln hath vnder hym the prouynces that ben bytwene Tenle and Humber that ben the shyres of Lyncoln of Lecestre of Northampton of Huntynghdon of Bedford of Hokingham of Drenford and halfe Herfordshyre. Ely hath vnder hym Lambrygeshyre outakemeronde. Norwyche hath vnder hym Herlonde Norfolk and Suffolk. Also tharchebysshop of Caunterbury hath foure suffrygans in Wales that ben Landaf saynt Daupes Bangor & saynt allaph. The archebysshop of Yorke hath now but two bysshops vnder hym that bene Durham and Cartlepyll. ¶ And soo ben but two prymates in Englonde what of hem shall doo to the other & in what manere poynt he shall be obedyent and vnder hym. It is fully cōteyned within aboute the yere of our lordc Ihesu cryste a thousande: lxxii. tofore the fyrste kynge wylliam & the bysshops of Englonde by commaundement of the pope. the cause was handled and treated bytwene þe forsayd prymates and ordeyned and demed that the primate of Yorke shall be subgette to the primate of Caunterbury in thynges that longen to the worshipp of god and to the byleue of holy chirche so that in what place euer it be in Englonde that the primate of Caunterbury wyl

hote and cōstreyne togader a counseyl of clergy the primate of yorke is holden with his suffrygans for to be there and for to be obedyent to the ordynaūce that there shall be lawfully ordeyned. Whan the primate of Caunterbury is dede the primate of yorke shall come to Caunterbury and with other bysshops he shall sacre hym that is cholen/ & so with othere bysshops he shall sacre his owne primate/ yf the primate of Yorke be dede/ his succellour shall come vnto the bysshop of Caunterbury and he shall take his ordenaunce of hym and take his othe with prolessyon and lawfull obedyence. After aboute the yere of our lordc. xi. C. lxxxv. in the tyme of kynge Rycharde ben reylons lette for the ryght partte for eyther primate and what one primate dyde to þe other in tyme of Thurstinus of Thomas and of other bysshops of yorke fro me the conqueste vnto kynge Hentres tyme the chyrd. Also there it is layd howe eche of them start fro other. This place is but a forspelyng and not a full trea-tyes therof. Therefore it were noyfull to charge this place w all thylke reasons

¶ Of howe many manere people haue dwelled therin. ca. xlii.

**B**rytons dwelled fyrst in this y-  
 blond þ. xviii. yere of hely þe prophete. þ. xi. yere of Solinus postum<sup>9</sup> kyng of Katyns. xliii. after the takynge of Troie/ tofore the buyldynge of Rome CCC. xxii. yere. ¶ Beda. li. j.º They come hyder & toke hir cours from armeny þe now is þe other Britayn they held longe tyme þe south countres of þe ylonde. It befell afterward in Hespasian<sup>9</sup> tyme duke of Rome/ that the Pyctes shynped oute of Scycya in to Dcean/ and were dryuen abowte wiche the wynde and entred in to the Northe costes of Ylonde and foude there Stottes and prayed to haue a place to dwell. Inne & myght

## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

none gete. for Irlonde as Scottes sayd myght not sustayne both people Scottes sente the Pictes to the north syde of englonde and behyght them helpe ayenste the Brytons that were theyr enemyes if they wolde ayple/and toke them wyues of theyr doughters /vpon suche condici on yf doubtte fylle/who sholde haue ryg ht to be hÿge they sholde rather chele hē of þ moder syde thā of þ faðr syde of the womē hÿ rather thā of þ mē hÿ. ¶ Gau fre. In Hespalyan the Emperours tyme whan Marius Aruiragus lone was hÿ ge of Brytons Dne Rodryk kynge of Pictes cam out of Scicia and ganne to destroyed Scotlonde/Marius the kynng slewe this Rodryk & gaue the north par tye of Scotlonde that heet Catherensia to the men that were came with Rodryke and were ouercome by hym/for to dwel inne/But these men hadde no wyues ne none myght haue of the nacion of Bry tons/therfore they saylled into Irlonde & toke to theyr wyues Iryshmens dou ghters by that couenaūte that þ moder blood sholde be put tofore in successyon of herytage. ¶ Sir ca. xvii. Methes Siri nus super Dyrgilium sayth that Pictes agatyrles that had some dwellynge pla ce aboute the waters of Scicia/and they ben called Pictes of Peryntynge & smys tynge of woundes/therfore they are cal led pyctes as paynted men. These men and these gothes ben all one people for whan Maximus the tyraunt was wen te out of Brytayne into fraunce for to occupye thempyre. Then Gratianus & Valentinianus that were brethern and felowes of thempyre brought these go thes out of Scicia with grete gyftes w̄ flaterynge and fayre beheltes intoo the nozth countre of Brytayne. for they we re stalworth and stronge men of armes and so these theues & bybonrs were ma de men of londe & of cōtree & dwelled in the northe countrees And helde there

Cytees and townes. ¶ Gaufre. Caran cius the tyraunt slewe Vallianus/and gaf the Pictes a dwellynge place in Al bania that is Scotlonde/there they dwel led longe tyme afterwarde and medled with Britons. ¶ R. Then syth þ Pictes occupied fyrste the north syde of Scot londe. It semeth that the dwellynge pla ce that this Carancius gaf them is the south syde of Scotlonde that stretcheth from the thwarthe ouer walle of Roma yns werke to the Scottes the see/and con teyneth Galleway and Lodouia that is Lodewaye. ¶ Therfore Bedeli. iiii. ca. ij. spekech in this manere. Ninian the ho ly man conuerted the southe Pictes. Af terwarde the Saxons come and made þ countree longe too Brenicia the northe partice of Northumbrelonde vnto the ty me that Kynadius Alpinus lone kynge of Scotlonde put out þ Pictes & made that countre that lyeth bytwene Twed and the Scottes the see longe to his kyng dom. ¶ Beda. li. i ca. i. Afterwarde lon ge tyme the Scottes were ledde by duke Renda and came out of Irlonde that is propre countree of Scottes and with lo ue or with strength made hem a place fast by the pyctes in the north syde of that ar me of the see/that brekech into the lond in the weste syde that departed in olde tyme bytwene Britons and Pictes. Of this duke Renda the Scottes hadde the name and were called Darlendinus as it were Rendaes parte/for in her spech a parte is called dal. ¶ Sir p. The pyc tes myghte haue no wyues of Brytons but they toke hem wyues of Irysh the scof tes and promysed hem fayre for to dwel with them/and graunted hym a londe by the see syde/there the see is narowe That londe is called now. Galleway Marianus Irysh the Scottes the loded at Argall þ is scotten clyf for Scottes lon ded ther for to do harme to þ Brytons or for þ place it next to Irlonde for to co me a londe in Brytayne. ¶ Beda And

pyctes and gothes, brethyn al  
lon pyctes

## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

So the Scottes after the Brytons & Pictes made the thyrde people dwellynge in Brytayne. ¶ R. Thenne after that come the Saxons atte prayenge of þ Britons to helpe them ayenst the Scottes & Pictes. And the Brytons were sone put out into wales. And Saxons occupped the lō de lytell and lytell. and este more too the Scottyshe see. And so Saxons made the fourthe manere of men in the plonde of Brytayne. ¶ Bcda li. v. ca. ix. for Saxons and Angles came out of Germani a/ yet some Brytons that dwell nygh cal len hem shortly Germainys. ¶ R. Nethel aboute the yere of oure lord. viii. hundred Egbarctus kynge of westsaxon commaunded and bad all men calle the men of þ londe Englyshmen. ¶ Alfre Then after that the Danes pursued the londe. abowte a twoohundred yere/ that is for to saye fro the forsayde Egbarctus tyme vnto saynt Edwardes tyme/ and made the fyfte manere of people in the plonde. But they fayled afterwarde. Atte laste come Normans vnto duke wyllyam and subdued Englyshmen/ & yet kepe theye the londe and they made the syxth peple in the Plonde. But in the fyrste kynge Henryes tyme come many flemynge & receyued a dwellynge place for a tyme be syde Haplos in the west syde of Englonde/ and made the seuenth people in the y londe. Nethel by commaūdenient of þ same kynge they were put thens and dry uen to Hauerfordes syde in the west syde of wales. ¶ R. And so nowe in Brytayn Danes and Pictes fayllen all oute/ and fyue nacjons dwellen therein that beene Scottes in Albania/ that is Scotlonde. Brytayne in Chambria that is Wales: but that flemynge dwelle in þ is weste wales. And Normans and Englyshme ben medled in all the plond/ for it is now doubte in stozyes how and in what manere they were putte awaye and dystroyed out of Brytayne. Nowe it is too declare how the Pictes were dystroyed & fayled

¶ Sir p. ca: vii. Brytayne was somtyme occupped with Saxons / & peas was made and stablyshed with the Pictes/ thenne the Scottes that came with the Pictes sawe that the Pictes were nobler of dedes and better men of armes though they were lasse in nombrie than the Scottes. Thenne the Scottes haunynge therof enuye tomed to theyr naturall treason þ they haue ofte vled for in treason they passe othe men and ben traytours as it were by kynde. for they prayed all þ Pictes and specyally the grete of them to a feest. and wayted her tyme whan the Pictes were mery and had well dronke they dic we by nayles that helde vp holowe bē ches vnder the Pictes and the Pictes vnto ware sodaynly fyll in ouer the hammes into a wonderfull pytfalle. Thenne the Scottes fell on the Pictes and slew thē and lefte none alyue. And so of two manere people the better warrpours were holy destroyed. But the othe that been the Scottes which ben traytours all vnylyke to the Pictes toke prouffte by that fals treason/ for they toke all that londe and holde it yet vnto thys tyme and calle it. Scotlonde after hir owne name. In kfyg Edgarus tyme Rynadius Alpinus sone was duke and leder of the Scottes and warred in Pictelonde and destroyed the Pictes. he warred syx lythes in Saxon & toke all the londe that is bytwene Twe de and the Scottyshe see wiche wronge and wiche strengthe.

¶ Of the langages of maners and vlsage of the people of that londe. ca. xv.

AS it is knowen how many maner of people ben in this Plonde there ben also so many langages and tonges. Nethel walsh and Scottes that ben not medled with othe nacjons kepe yet theyr langage & speche but yet þ Scottes þ were sōtyme confederate & dwelled w Pictes draw sō what after theyr speche



## The descrypcyon of Englonde.

But the flemynges that dwell in þ west syde of wales haue lefte her straunge speche and speken lyke to Saxons/also Englyshmen though they had fro þ begynnyng thre maner of speches. southerne Northern & myddell speche in the myddel of the londe as they come of thre maner of people. Germania. Netheles by comynixion and medlynge fyrst with Danes and afterwarde with Normans in many thynges the countre langage is appared/for some vse straunge wlatynge chytterynge harrynge garrynge & gryllytynge This apparinge of þ langage cometh of two thynges/one bycause þ chylidrene that gone to scole lerne to speke fyrst Englyshe/and than ben compelled to conuere we her lessons in frenshe & that haue ben vled syn the Normans come into Englonde: Also gentylmens chylidren be lerned and taught from theyr yonth too speke frenshe/and by londeshmen wyl counterfete and lyken hymself to gentylmen and are bely to speke frenshe for to be more lette by/wherfore it is layd by a comyn prouerbe. Jack wolde be a gentylman yf he coude speke frenshe. ¶ Treuisa. This was moche vled tofor the grete dech. but syth it is somdele chaunged/for syr Ioan Lorne wayle a mayster of grammer chaungede the techynge of grammer scole and constructioun of frenshe in too Englyshe. And other scole maysters vse the same waye now in the yere of our lord. a. M. CCC. lxxxv. the. ix. yere of kyng Rycharde the seconde/ & leue all frenshe in scoles & vse all constructioun in englyshe wherin they haue auantage one way that is that they lerne the soner theyr grammer/and in a nother dysauantage. for nowe they lerne no frenshe nor can none/whiche is hurt for them that shal passe the see. And also gentylmen haue moche lefte to teche theyre chylidren to speke frenshe. ¶ R. It semeth a grete wonder þ Englyshmen haue so grete dyuersyte in theyr owne langage in lown & in spes

kyng of it whiche is all in one ylonde. And the langage of Normandy is comē out of an other londe and hath one manere sowne amonge all them that speke it in Englonde/for a man of Kente southerne western & Northern mē speken frenshe all lyke in lowne and speche but they can not speke theyr Englyshe so. ¶ Treuisa. Netheles ther ben as many dyuerse maner of frenshe in the reame of fraunce/as dyuerse Englyshe in the reame of Englonde. ¶ R. Also of the forlaid tonge whiche is departed in thre is grete wonder/for men of þ east with men of þ west accorde better in lownynge of theyr speche/than men of þ north w men of þ south Therefore it is þ men of mercii þ ben of myddell Englonde as if were partiners w þ endes/vnderstonde better þ syde langages northern & southern than northern & southern vnderstonde eyther other ¶ Wilhel de pō. li. iii. All þ lagage of þ northūbrics & specpall at yorke is so sharpe chytynge froctynge and vnshappe/that we southern men may vnnech vnderstonde that langage. ¶ I suppose the cause be that they be nyghe to the alpens that speke straungely. And also by cause the kynges of Englonde abyde and dwelle more in the south countre than in the north countree. The cause why they abyde more in the south countree than in the north countree/is by cause that there is better coznelonde more people mo noble cytees & mo profytable haucens in the south countree than in the north countree:

¶ De gentis huius moribus. Sir. in itinere.

¶ **H**ow the maners & doynges of wallshmen and of Scottes ben tofore lonewhat declared. Nowe I purpose to telle and declare the condyciō is of the medled people of Englonde. But þ flemynges that been in the weste syde of Wales be now all turned as they were Englyshe

## The descrypcyon of Englonde

men by cause they companye with Englyshmen. And they be myghty and strōge to fyght/and ben the moost enemyes that walschmen haue/and vse marchau dyle and clothyng and ben full redy too putte themself in auentures and to peryl in the see & londe bycause of grete wyngunge & ben redy somtyme to the plowe and somtyme to dedes of armes whanne tyme and place axeth. It semech of these men a grete wonder that in a boon of a wechers ryght sholder whan the flesshe is soden awaye and not rosted they knowe what hane bedone/is done/& shall be done as it were by sprypte of prophete and a wonderfull crafte. They telle what is done in ferre coutres/tokenes of peas or of warre/þ state of þ ropame/sleyng of men & spoulebreche/suche thynges they declare certayne of tokenes and lygnes þ is in suche a sholder bone. ¶ R. But the Englyshmen that dwelle in Englonde ben medled in the plonde & ben ferre fro the places that they spronge of fyrste tennene to the contrarpe dedes lyghtelye withoute entysyng of ony other men by hyr own assente: And vnely also vnpatient of peas/enemyes of besynes/and full of slouthe. ¶ Wilhel. de pon. li. iij. sayth. That whan they haue dystroyed theyr enemyes all to the grounde/thenne they fyghten wíth theyme seife and sleeth eche other/as voyd and an empti stomak werkech in it selfe. ¶ R. Netheles men of the south ben elper and more mylde than me of the north. for they be more vnstable & more cruell and more vnely. The myddell men ben parteners with both. Also they vse them to glotony more than other men and ben more costlewe in mete and clothyng. Men suppose that they tooke that vyce of kynge Herdeknot that was a Dane. for he heef sette forth twyes double messe at Dwyner and at souper alsoo These men ben spedefull on hors and a fote. Able and redy to all maner dedys of armes/and ben wonte to haue vyctorye

and maystrye in euery fyght where noo treason is walkyng/and ben curpous & can well tell dedys and wondres that they haue seen. Also they gone in dyuerse londes vnneth ben ony men ryche in her owne londe or more gracious in ferre and in straunge londe/they can better wyne & gete newe than kepe hir owne herytage/ Therefore it is that they be sprad so wyde and wene that euery londe be theyr owne. The men be able to all manere sleight and wytte/but tofore the dede blonderyng and halty: And more wysse after the dede than tofore. and leuen of lyghly what they haue begonne. ¶ Solinus li. vi. Therfore Eugen<sup>9</sup> the pope sayde that Englyshmen were able to do what euer they wolde/and to be sette and put tofore all other/ne were that lyght wylletteth. And as Hamball sayde that the Romayns myghte not be ouercome but in ther owne countre soo. Englyshmen may not be ouercome in straunge londes but in her owne countre they be lyghely ouercome. ¶ R. These men despylen her owne and prayle other mennes. And vneth be pleased nor apayd with theyr owne estate what befalleth and become the other men/they wyll gladly take to the self. Therefore it is that a yeman arayeth hym as a squyer/a squere as a knyght a knyght as a duke/a duke as a kynge/ Yet some go a bouthe and wyll be lyke to all manere state and ben in no state. for they take euery degre that be of no degre for in beyng outward they be myntrals and herowdes. in talkyng grete spekers In etyng and drynkynge glotons/ In gaderyng of catell hucksters and tauerners. In araye tormentours. In wyngynges argi. In trauayle tantaly. In takyng hede dedaly. In beddes sardanapaly/ In chyrcches mawmetes. In courtes thondre only in preuylege of clergi & in prebendes they knowleche hēself clerkes. ¶ Treuysa As touchyng the termes of latyn as argi/tantali/dedali / sardanapaly/pe

## The descrypcyon of Wales.

musste vnderstonde them as þ̄ poetes feyned of them. Argus was an herde & kepte bestes he had an hondred een: and Argus was also a thyp/a thypman and a chapman/and so Argus myght se before and behynde and on euery syde. Therfore he that is wyle and ware and can se that he be not deceyued may be called argus. And so the Cronycle sayth in plurrell nombre þ̄ Englyshmen ben argp. þ̄ is to saye they se about where as wynnynge is/ That other woide tantaly/þ̄ poete feyneth that Tantalus siewe his owne sone wherfor he is dampned to perpetuall penaunce/and he standeth alway in water vp to the neyther lyppe & hath alwaye rype apples & noble fruyte hanginge downe too the ouerlyppe/ but the fruyte ne the water may not come with in his mouthe. he is soo holde and standeth bytwene mete and drynke & maye neyther ete ne drynke/and is euer an hongred and a thyrste that wo is hym alpye by this manere lykenesse of Tantalus they that do ryghte noughte there as is moche is to doo in euery syde ben called tantaly. It semeth that it is to saye in traualy they be tantaly/for they do ryght nought therto. The thyrde woide is dedale/take hede that Dedalus was a subtil and a slye man. And therfore by lykenes they that ben subtil & slye they be called dedaly. And the fourth woide is sardanapaly/ye shall vnderstonde þ̄ Sardanapalus was kynge of Assyres and was full vnchast/and vled hym for to lye losce. And by a maner of lykenes of hym they that lye vnchastly ben called sardanapaly. ¶ R. But amonge all Englyshmen medled togyders is so grete a chaungynge and dyuerslyte of clothyng and of araye and so many maners & dyuerse shappes that well nyghe is ther ony man knowen by his clothyng and his araye of what some euer desire that he be Therof prophecied an holy Anker in kynge Egelfredes tyme in

this manere. Henry li. vi. Englyshmen for as moche as they vse them to dronk lewnes to treason and to rechelesnes of goddes hous/ fyrste by Danes and then by Normans/and at the thyrde tyme by the Scottes that they holde the mooste wretches and lest worth of all other they shall be ouercome. Thenne the worlde shall be so vnstable and so dyuerse and varyable that the vnstableness of thoughtes shall be bytokened by many manere dyuerslyters of clothyng.

### There foloweth the descrypcyon of the londe of Wales.

Of the londe of wales. ca. xvi

**N**owe this boke taketh on honde Wales after Englonde. So take I my tales. And wende into wales. To that noble blood. Of Pryamus blood. Knowleche for to wynde. Of greate Juppters kynne. For to haue in mynde Dardanus kynde. In these four cycles I fonde To tell thestate of that londe Cause of the man I shall telle And then prayse the londe and welle. Thenne I shall wryte with my penne. All the maners of the men Thenne I shall fonde. To telle meruaylles of the londe.

Of the name and wherfore it is named wales. ca. xvij.

**W**ales nowe is called wallia. And somtyme it heet Cambria for Camber Brutes sone Was prynce and there dyde wone.

## The descrypcyon of Wales.

Thenne wallia was to mene  
 for Gwalaes the quene  
 Prynce Ebrancus chyld  
 Was wedded theder mylde  
 And of that lord Gwalon  
 Withdraweth of the coun  
 And put to l.i.a.  
 And thou shalte fynde wallia  
 And though this londe  
 Be moche lesse than Englonde  
 As good glebe is one as other  
 In the doughter as in the moder

**O**f the commodytes of the londe of  
 Wales. ca. xviii.

**W**hough that londe be luyt  
 It is full of corn and of fruyte.  
 And hath grete plenty wys  
 Of fleshe and eke of fysh  
 Of beestes tame and wylde  
 Of hors sheep oxen mylde  
 Good londe for all sedes  
 For corn gras and herbes that spredes.  
 Ther ben woodes and medes  
 Herbes and flourcs there spredes  
 Ther ben Ryuers and welles  
 Daleyes and all hylles  
 Daleyes brynge forth flood *food*  
 And hylles metals good  
 Cooll groweth vnder londe  
 And gras aboue at honde  
 There lyme is coppous  
 And slates for hous  
 Hony and mylke whyte  
 There is deynste and not lyte  
 Of braket meete and ale  
 Is grete plente in that vale  
 And all that nedeth to the luyt  
 That londe bryngeth forth ryue  
 But of grete ryches to be drawe.  
 And close many in horte sawe  
 It is a corner small.  
 As though god fyrste of all.  
 Made that londe so fele  
 To be selere of all hyle  
 Wales is deled by.

A water that heet Twy.  
 Northwales from the south.  
 Twy delecth in places full couth.  
 The south heet Demicia  
 And the other Benedocia.  
 The fyrste shoteth and arowes beres  
 That other delecth all with speres.  
 In wales how it be  
 Were somtyme courtes thre.  
 At Larnerthyn was that one  
 And that other was in Wone  
 The thyrde was in Powlyp  
 In Pegwern þ nowe is Shrowesbury.  
 There were byllhops seuen  
 And nowe ben foure euen  
 Under Saxons all atte honde  
 Somtyme vnder prynces of that londe

**O**f the maners and rytes of the wal  
 themen. ca. xix.

**T**he maner luyng of that londe  
 As well dyuerse from Englonde  
 In mete and drynke and clothyng.  
 And many other doynge  
 They be clothed wonder well  
 In a shyrt and in a mantell  
 A cryspe breche well fayne  
 Bothe in wynde and in rayne  
 In this clothyng they be bolde  
 Though the weder be ryght colde  
 Without theses alway.  
 Euermore in this araye  
 They go fyght playe and lepe  
 Stande lytely and slepe  
 Without surcot gowne cote and kyrtell  
 Without topen tabarde clok or bell  
 Without lace & chaplet that her lappes  
 Without hode hatte or cappes  
 Thus arayd gone the legges  
 And alwaye with bare legges  
 They kepe none other gopnge  
 Though they mete with the kyng  
 With arowes and short speres  
 They fyght with them that them deres  
 They fyght better yf they neder  
 Whan they go than whan they ryden  
 In Rede of castell and toure

## The descrypcyon of Wales.

They take wood and mareys for socour  
 Whan they seen it is to do.  
 In fyghtynge they wolde be a go  
 Gylidas sayth they ben variable.  
 In peas and not stable.  
 If men axe why it be  
 It is no vonder for to se  
 Though men put out of londe  
 To put out other wolde fonde  
 But all for nought at this stonde  
 For all many woodes ben at gronde  
 And put the see amonge  
 Ben castels buyled stronge  
 The men may dure longe vn ete  
 And loue well conume mete *comune*  
 They can ete and ben murp.  
 Without grete curp  
 They ete brede colde and hote  
 Of barley and of ote  
 Brode cakes rounde and thynne  
 As well semeth so grete kynne  
 Selde they ete brede of whete  
 And selde they done ones ete *ovens here*  
 They haue gruel to potage  
 And lekes kynde to companage  
 Also butter mylke and cyche  
 Shape endlonge and comer wese  
 Suche messes they ete snell.  
 And that maketh hem drynke well  
 Meete and ale that hath myght  
 Theron they spende dape and nyght  
 Euer the redder is the wyne.  
 They holde it the more fyne  
 Whan they drynke atte ale  
 They tell many a lewde tale  
 For whan drynke is in handlynge  
 They ben full of Janglynge  
 Atte meete and after eke.  
 Her solace is salte and leke  
 The husbonde in his wyle  
 Telleth that a grete pyre  
 To gyue a gaudron with growele  
 To hem that lytten on his mele  
 He delecth his meete at meele  
 And gyueth euery man his dele.  
 And all the ouer pluse  
 He kepeth to his owne vse

Therefore they haue wood.  
 And myshappes also  
 They eten hotelamon alway  
 All though phylpk say nay.  
 Her houies ben lowe with all  
 And made of yerdes small.  
 Not as in cytees nyghe  
 But ferre a londer and not to hygh  
 Whan all is eten at home  
 The to theyr neyghbours wyl they rom  
 And ete what they may fynde and se  
 And then come home aye  
 The lyre is ydle that they ledes  
 In brennyngge slepyngge & luche dedes.  
 Walshmen vse with her myght  
 To wellhe theyr ghestes fete a nyght  
 If he wellhe her fete all and somme.  
 Then they knowe þ they be welcome  
 They lyue so esely in a route  
 That selde they bere purs aboute.  
 At her breche oure and home  
 They hongre theyr money and combe.  
 It is wonder they be so hende.  
 And hate crak at nether ende  
 And withoute ony coze  
 Make theyr wardrope atte doze.  
 They haue in grete mangery  
 Harpe tabour & ppp for mynstrally  
 They bere corps with sorowes greete  
 And blowe loude hornes of gheet.  
 They prayle fast Troyan blood.  
 For therot come all her brode.  
 Nygh kyn they wyl be  
 Though they passe an hondred degre.  
 Aboue other men they wyl hem dyght.  
 And worlhypp prestes with her myght  
 As angels of heuen ryght  
 They worlhypp seruantes of god almy  
 Oft gyled was this brode *ghc*  
 And yerned batayll all for woode  
 For Metlyns prophecy  
 And ofte for sorfelegre  
 Beste in maners of Brytons  
 For company of Saxons.  
 Ben comed to better ryght  
 That is knowen as clere as lyght  
 They tyllen gardyns selde & downes.

## The descryptyon of Wales.

And drawe hem to goodc towne  
 They ryde armed as woll god  
 And go y holed and y hooded.  
 And lytten fayre at her mele  
 And slepe in beddes fayre and fele  
 So they seme nowe in mynde  
 More Englyshmen than wallsh kynde  
 ¶ Men axe why they now do so  
 More than they woult to do  
 They lyuen in more pees  
 Bycause of theyr ryches ✠  
 For theyr catell sholde slake  
 ¶ If they vled ofte wrake  
 Drede of losse of her good  
 Make them nowe styll of mode  
 All in one it is brought  
 Haue nochyng and drede nought  
 The poete sayth a sawe of preef.  
 The foot man syngeth tofore the theef  
 And is bolder on the waye  
 Than the hors man ryche and gaye

¶ Of þ meruayls & wondres of wales

(ca. xx.)

**U** Here is a pole at Brechnok  
 Therin of fyssh is many a flock  
 Offt he chaungech his hewe on cop  
 And bereth about a gardyn crop  
 Offt tyme howe it be  
 Shape of hous there shalt thou se  
 Whan the pole is froze it is wonder  
 Of the noyle that is ther vnder  
 ¶ If the prynce of the londe hote  
 Byrdes synge well mery note  
 As meryly as they can  
 And synge for none other man  
 Belydes Laerleon  
 Two myle fro the town ✠  
 Is a roche well bryght of leem  
 Ryght apenst the sonne beem  
 Goldclyf that roche byght  
 For it shyneth as god full bryght  
 Suche a flour in stoon is nought  
 Without fruyt yf it were sought  
 If men coude by craft vndo  
 The daynes of therth and come therto  
 Many benyfece of kynde

Ben nowe hyd fro mannes mynde  
 And ben vnknowe yet.  
 For defaute of mannes wytte  
 Grete tresour is hyd in grounde  
 And after this it shall be founde  
 By grete studye and besynes  
 Of hem that comen after vs  
 That olde men had by grete nede  
 We haue by bely dede ✠ Trevisa.  
 In boke ye may rede  
 That kynde fayleth not at nede  
 Whan noman had craft in mynde  
 Then of craft halpe god and kynde.  
 Whan no techer was in londe  
 Men of craft by goddes honde  
 They that had craft so thenne  
 Taught forth craft to other men  
 Some craft that yet come not in place.  
 Some man shall haue by gods grace  
 ¶ R. An ylonde is with noyle & stryfe.  
 In west wales at Kerdyf  
 Faste by Seuarne stonde  
 Barry byght that ylonde  
 In that byther syde in a chene  
 Shalt thou here wonder done  
 And dyuerse noys also  
 ¶ If thou put thyne eere to  
 Noys of leues and of wynde  
 Noys of metals thou shalt fynde  
 Frotynge of pren & westones þ shalt he  
 Hetyng of ouens then with fyre ✠  
 All this may well be,  
 By wawes of the see  
 That brekech in thare  
 With suche noys and fare  
 At Pendrok in a stede  
 fcuodes do oft quede  
 And throwech foule thyng inue  
 And despyleth also synne  
 Neyther craft ne bedes may  
 Do thens that sorow away  
 Whan it greuceth soo  
 To the men it bodeth woo  
 At crucynar in west wales  
 Is a wonder butyals  
 Euery man that cometh it to se  
 Semeth it euen as moche as he

page 7 and 8  
no fortune

## The descrypcyon of Wales;

Hoole wepen there a nyght  
 Shall be broken er dape lyght  
 At nemyn in northwales  
 A lptell ylonde there is  
 That is called bardylay  
 Monkes dwell there alway  
 Men lyue so longe in that hurst  
 That the oldest depeth fyrste  
 Men saye that Merlyn there buryed is.  
 That hyght also syluestris  
 There were Merlynstweyne  
 And prophecied beyne  
 One heet Ambrose an Merlyn  
 And was y gotten by gobelyn  
 In demicia at carmerthyn  
 Vnder kynge Dorygeryn  
 He tolde his prophecye  
 Euen in snowdonye.  
 Atte heed of the water of coneway  
 In the lyde of mount eryry  
 Dynas embreys in wallthe.  
 Ambrose hylle in Englyshe  
 Kynge Dorygere late on  
 The waterlyde and was fulle of wone.  
 Then Ambrose Merlyn prophecied.  
 To fore hym ryght tho **Treuila**  
 What wytte wolde wene  
 That a fende myght gete a chyld  
 Some men wolde mene  
 That he may no luche werke welde  
 That fende that goth a nyght  
 Wymmen full ofte to gyle  
 Incubus is named by ryght  
 And gyleth men otherwhyle  
 Succubus is that wyght  
 God graunt vs none luche vyle  
 Who that cometh in hys gyle  
 Wonder hap shall he smyle  
 With wonder dede  
 Bothe men and wymmen lede  
 fendes woll hepe  
 With craft and brynge an hepe.  
 So fendes wylde  
 May make wymmen bere chyld  
 Yet neuer in mynde  
 Was chyld of fendes kynde  
 For withoute eye

Ther myght no luche chyld depe.  
 Clergy maketh mynde  
 Deth sleeth no fendes kynde  
 But deth slewe Merlyn.  
 Merlyn was ergo no gobelyn  
 An other Merlyn of Albynlonde  
 That nowe is named Scotlonde  
 And he had names two  
 Siluestris and Calidonijs also  
 Of that woodc Calidonie  
 For there he tolde his prophecye  
 And heet Syluestris as well  
 For whan he was in batell  
 And sawe aboue a gryfly kynde.  
 And fyll anone out of his mynde  
 And made no more abood  
 But ran anone vnto the wood  
**Treuila.** Siluestris is woode  
 O ther wylde of mode.  
 O ther elles  
 That atte wood he dwelles  
**T.R.** Siluestris Merlyn.  
 Tolde prophecye well and fyn  
 And prophecied well sure  
 Vnder kynge Arthure  
 Openly and not so close.  
 As Merlyn Ambrose  
 There ben hylles in snowdonye  
 That ben wonderly hie  
 With hyght as grete awaye  
 As a man may go adape  
 And heet eryry in wallthe  
 Snowy hylles in Englyshe.  
 In these hylles ther is  
 Kele inough for all beestes of walys  
 These hylles on top beres  
 Two grete fylthe weares  
 Conteyned in that one ponde.  
 Meuet with the wynde an plonde.  
 As though it dyd swymme.  
 And neyher to the bymme.  
 So that herdes haue grete wondet.  
 And wene þ the worlde meuet vnder  
 In that other is perche and fylthe  
 Euery one eyed is  
 So fareth all well  
 In Albania the myllwell

## The descrypcyon of Wales.

In Rutlonde by Tetyndwell  
 Ther is a lypyll well  
 That floweth not alwaye  
 As the see twyes a dape  
 But somtyme it is drye  
 And somtyme full by the eye  
 Ther is in Northwallia  
 In Mon that heet Anglesia  
 A stone accordynge well nyghe  
 As it were a mannes thyghe  
 Howe ferre euer that stone  
 Be born of ony mon.  
 On nyght it goth home his waye  
 That he founde by assaye  
 Hughe thereto of Shrowelbury  
 In tyme of the fyrste Harry  
 For he wolde the lothe kynde  
 That stone to an other he gan bynde.  
 Wych grete cheynes of yren  
 And threwe all J feren  
 Ybounde at one hepe  
 Into a water depe  
 Yet amozowe that stone  
 Was seen cryp in Mon.  
 A choile helde hymselfe full slyghe.  
 And bounde this stone to his thyghe.  
 His thygh was roten or dape  
 And the stone wente a waye.  
 Yf men done lechery.  
 Nyghe that stone by  
 Swote cometh of that stone.  
 But chylde cometh there none.  
 There is a roche ryght wonderly.  
 Therof herynge by contrey *contra*  
 Though ther crye ony man born  
 And blowe also with an horne  
 Noyle there though thou abyde  
 Thou shalt here none in this lyde  
 Ther is an other plonde  
 Fast by mon at honde  
 Hermytes there ben ryue  
 Yf ony of them done stryue  
 All the myle that may be gete  
 Come and ete all theyr mete  
 Thenne celleth neuer that woo  
 Tyll the stryfe celle also  
 As men in this londe

Ben angry as in Irlonde  
 So sayntes of this contreye  
 Ben also wretchfull alwaye *wrathfull*  
 Also in this londe  
 In Irlonde and in Scotlonde.  
 Ben belles and staues  
 That in worshyp men haues  
 And ben worshyped so then  
 Of clerkes and of lewde men.  
 That dreden also  
 To sweren on ony of tho.  
 Staffe eyther belle  
 As it were the gospelle  
 At Balyngwerke is a welle  
 That Sacer heet as men telle.  
 It sprengeth so soxe as men may see  
 What is caste in it throweth aye.  
 Therof sprengeth a grete stronde  
 It were inough for all that londe  
 Seke at that place  
 Haue both hele and grace  
 In the welmes offer than ones  
 Ben founde reed sperclid stones  
 In token of the blood reed  
 That the mayd Wenefrede  
 Shad at that pytte  
 Whan hir throte was kytte  
 He that dyd that dede  
 Hath sorow on his lede  
 His chylidren at all stoundes  
 Berken as whelpes and houndes  
 For to they praye that mayd grace  
 Ryght at that welle place  
 Eyther in Shrowelbury strete  
 There that mayd rested swete

**O**f the descrypcyon of Scotlonde  
 somtyme named Albania. ca. xxi.

**I**t is a comyn law þæt þæt couñtre whi  
 che is now named Scotlode is a  
 outstretchyge of þæt north lyde of Britayn  
 & is deþted in þæt south lyde frō Britayn  
 W armes of þæt / & in þæt other lyde it is be  
 clypped wyth the see. This londe heet so  
 metyme Albania and had þæt name of Al  
 banactus þæt was kyng Brutus sone for  
 Albanactus dwelled fyrste therin or of



## The descryptyon of Scotlonde.

the prouynce Albania þ is a countre of Scicia & nygh to amazona therfor Scotces ben called as it were scytttes for theye come out of Scicia. Afterwarde þ londe heet Pictaupa for þ Pyctes regned ther in a. M. C. C. lxx. yere. And at last heet. Hibernia as Irtonde hyght. ¶ **Cir. i** top for many skylles/one is for affinite & alye that was bytwene them & Irpslme for theye toke theyr wyues of Irtonde & þ is openly seen in her byleue. An clothyngge/in langage & in speche/in wepyn & in maners. An other skyll is for Irpslmen dwelled there sctyme ¶ **Beda. li. j.** Out of Irtonde that is þ propre countre of Scottes come Irpslmen w her duke that was called Renda. And w loue and w strenthe made hem theye lees and cytees helydes the Pyctes in the northlyde ¶ **Cir.** Nowe þ londe is shortlye called Scotlonde of Scottes þ come out of Irtonde & regned therein. C. C. x. yere vnto reed Wppliyams tyme that was Malcolins broder. ¶ **R.** Many euydencs we haue of this Scotlonde that it is oft called & hyght Hibernia as Irtonde dothe. ¶ **Therefore Beda. li. ii. ca. xi.** sayth that Laurence archebysshop of Dunbar was archebysshop of Scottes that dwelled in an ylonde that heet Hibernia & is nexte to Brytayne Beda. li. iii. ca. xxvii. sayth Pestilence of moreyn bare downe Hibernia Also li. iii. ca. ii. sayth þ the Scottes þ dwelled in the southlyde of Hibernia Also: li. iii. ca. iii. he sayth þ Cladde was a ponglynge and lerned the rule of monkes in Hibernia. Also li. iii. ca. xxii. Egfridus kynge of Northuberlonde destroyed Hibernia. Also li. iii. ca. xv. the moſte dele of Scottes in Hibernia & in the same chapitre he called Hibernia proprely named/ þ west ylonde is an hondred myle from eueryche/ Brytayne & departed w the see bytwene & called Hibernia that countre that nowe is called Scotlonde/there he telleth that Adamua abbot of this ylonde sayled to Hibernia for

to teche Irpslmen þ lawfull esterdaye And at last come ayen into Scotlonde. ¶ **Ply. ethi. li. xiiii.** Men of this Scotlonde ben named Scottes in theyr owne langage & Pyctes also. for sctyme her body was peynted in this manere/they wold sctyme w a sharpe egged tole pycke & herue her owne bodyes & make thereon dyuersc fygyres & shappes & peynt hem with ynke or with other peynture or colour/& bycause they were so peyted they were called picti. that is to saye peynted ¶ **Prodotus** Scottes ben lyght of herte straunge & wylde inough/but by medlyng of Englyshmen they ben moche amended/they ben cruell vpon theyr enemyes & hateth bondage moost of ony thyngge and holde for a foule slouth yf a man deye in his bedde/& grete worshyp yf he deye in þ felde. They ben lycpl of mete & mowe faste longe/& eten leide whan the sonne is vp/& eten flesch fysh mylke & fruyt more than brede and though they be fayr of chappet they ben defouled and made vnlemely ynough w theyr owne. clothyngge. They prayse faste þ blages of theyr owne forsaders & despyse other menes doynge/her lode is fruytfull ynough in pasture gardyns & feldes. ¶ **Cir. de. p. ca. xviii.** The prynces of Scottes. as þ kynges of Spayne ben not wont to be enoynted ne crowned. In this Scotlonde is solempne & grete myde of saynt Andrew thapostle: for saynt Andrew had þ north partyes of þ world Scites and Pyctes to his lot for to preche & couert þ people to crystes byleue & at last he was martred in Achaia in grece in a cyte þ was named Patras & his bones were kepte. C. C. lxx. yere vnto Constantyn the peyrouers tyme. & the they were translated i to Costantinople & kept ther. C. x. yere vnto Theodosyus the peyrouers tyme and thenne Dngus kynge of Pyctes in Scotlonde destroyed a greate parte in Brytayne & was belette w a grete hooste of Brytons in a felde called Marke. & he

also of the first Bryde real booke  
in Scotland & is to say in Ireland

### The descrypcyon of Irlonde.

herde saynt Andrewe speke too hym in this manere. Vngus vngus here thou me crystes apostle. I promyle the helpe and socour whan thou hast ouercomen thyn enemyes by my helpe / thou shalt gyue þe thyrde dele of thyn herytage in almesse to god almyghty / and in the worthyp of saynt Andrew / and the sygne of the crosse wente tofore his hooft & the thyrde daye he had vycctory and so torned home a pene and deled his herytage as he was boden. And for he was vncertayne what cyte he sholde deale for saynt Andrewe he fasted thre dayes / he and his men prayed saynt Andrewe that he wolde shew hym what place he shold chese. And one of the wardeyns that kepte the body of saynt Andrewe in Constantynople was warned in his slepe that he sholde go into a place whyder an angell wolde lede hym and so he come into Scotlonde w<sup>th</sup> vij. felowes to the toppe of an hylle named Ragmōde. The same hour lyghte of heuen belhone and beclpypped þe kyng of pyctes that was comynge with hys hooft to a place called Larceuan. There anone were heled many seke men. There met with the kyng Regulus the moke of Constantynople with the relyques of saynt Andrewe. There is founded a chirche in worship of saynt Andrewe þe is heed of all the churches in the londe of pyctes. To this chirche comen pylgrymes oute of all londes. There was Regulus fyrste abbot and gadred monkes And so all the tpen the londe þe the kyng had assygned hym he departed it in dyuerse places amonge abbayes.

### Of the descrypcyon of Irlond. ca. xxii

**H**ibernia that is Irlonde. and was of olde tyme Incorporated into þe lordshyp of Brytayne so sayth Gir. in sua pop. where he descryueth it at fulle. Yet it is worthy & semely to prayse þe londe w<sup>th</sup> large praylpyng / for to come to the

re & full knowlege of þe lōde these tytles that folowe open the waye Therefore I shall tell of the place & stede of that londe how grete and what manere londe it is / wherof that londe hath plente & wher of it hath defaute / also of what men haue dwelled therin fyrste. Of maners of men of that londe. Of the wonders of that londe / and of worthynes of halowes and sayntes of that londe.

### Of the boundynge of Irlonde ca. xxiii

**I**rlonde is the laste of all the west ylondes and hyght hibernia of one hiberus of Spayn that was hermonius broder / for these two bretherne gate and wanne þe londe by conquest. Or it is called hibernia of þe Ryuer hiber<sup>9</sup> þe is in the west ende of Spayn / & þe londe hyght Scotlond also / for Scottes dwelled there so tyme er they came into þe othere Scotlond þe longed to Brytayne / therefore it is wryten in the Martploge. Suche a day in Scotlōd saynt Bryde was born / & þe was in Irlond. this lōde hath in þe southest syde spayn thre dayes sayllþge thēs a syde half / & hath in þe cestiþde þe more Britayn thēs a dayes sayllþge / in the west syde þe endles Ocean & in þe north syde. þe lōde thre dayes sayllþg thēs. ¶ Solin<sup>9</sup>. But þe see þe is bytwene brytayne & Irlōde is al þe yere ful of grete wawes & vnely þe mē may selde sayle sekerly bytwene þe se is. L. xx. myle brode.

### Of þe gretnes & qualyte of þe lōde ca. xxiiii

**I**rlōde is an ylonde grettest aft brytayne / & stretcheth northwarde frō Brendas hylles vnto þe lōde Colubina & cōteþeth. viij. dayes iourney euery iourney. xl. myle & frō Deueli to Patriks hylles & to þe se in þe syde in brede. iij. iourneys / and Irlonde is narrower in the myddell thanne in the endes / all ocherwyle than Brytayne is / as Irlonde is shorter

## The descrypcyon of Irlonde.

northwarde than Brytayne/soo is it lenger southwarde the londe is not playne but full of mountayns of hylles of woodes of marayes and of mores/the londe is softte rayny wynde and low by the see syde and within hylly and sondy. ¶ Solinus. There is grete plente of noble pasture and of leese/therfore the bestes must be oft dryuen out of theyr pasture lest they ete ouermoche for they sholde shend hym selfe yf theye myghte ete at theyre wyll. ¶ Sir. Men of that londe haue communely theyr helth/and straungers haue ofte a perylous flux bycause of the moysture of the mete. The flesshe of hyen is the re hollsome/and swynes flesshe vnhollosme. Men of that londe haue no feuer but only the feuer ague and that ryght leld Therfore the hollomnes of that londe & the clenness out of venymme is worth all þe best and rycheesse of trees of herbes of spicerie of ryche clothes and of precyous stones of þe best londes: The cause of the helth and hollomnes of that londe is the attemperate hete and colde that is therein In quibus rebz sufficit. In this londe be moo hyen than oxen/moze pasture than corn/moze gras than seed/there is plente of lamon/of lamprays/of celes and of other see fysh. Of Egles/of cranes/of pecoches of/ curlewes/of sparouhaukes of gothaukes/and of gentyll fawcons/ Of wulues and ryght shrewed myle they ben atter coppes/bloode soukers eestes þe done none harme/they ben fayres lytel of body & full hardy & stronge/they ben barnacles foules lyke to wylde ghees which growen wonderly vpon trees/as hit were nature wrought agaynste kynde. Men of religion ete the bernacles vpon fastynda yes bycause they ben not engendred with flesshe/wherin as me thynketh they erre for reason is ayenste that. for yf a man had eten of Adams legge he had eten fleshe/& yet Adam was not engendred of fader nor moder/But that flesshe come wonderly of the tree. In this londe is ple

of honny and of mylke of vyne and of vynerdes. ¶ Solinus and Plid. wryten þe Irlonde hath noo bees Necheles it were better wryten that Irlonde had bees and no vynerdes. ¶ Beda sayth that there is grete huntynge to roobuckes/and it is knowe that there ben none. It is no wonder of Beda for he sawe neuer that lond but some man tolde hym suche tales. Also ther groweth that stone Sagaronus. and is called Iris also as it were the rayn bowe yf that stone be holde agaynst þe sonne anone it shall shape a raynbowe/ther is also founden a stone that is called Sagates and white margery perles:

### ¶ Of the defautes of the londe .ca. xxv.

W hete cornes ben there full smalle vnnech yclenced with mannes hōde/releued men/all bestes been smaller there than in other londes. Ther lacketh well nygh all maner fysh the freshe water that is not gendred in the see ther lacken vnkynde faucons gerfaucons/pertriche felsaunte/nyghctyngales/and pyes/there lacken also Roo and bucke/and flespyles wontes and other venemous beestes. Therfore some men feynen and that fauourably þe saynt Patrycke clenede that londe of wormes and of venemous beests but it is more probable and more skylful that this londe was from the begynnynge alway withoute suche wormes/for venemous beestes and wormes deyen there anone yf men bynng them thether oute of other londes. And also venym and poyson brought thether oute of other londes lelen theyr malice as sone as it passeth þe myddell of þe see. also poudre & erth of þe londe cast & lowen in other lōdes dryuen away wormes so ferforth þe yf a turf of þe lōde be put about a worme it sleeth hē or maketh hē thryl þe erth for tescap away In þe londe cockes crow but lytlyl tofore day/so þe fyrste crowyng of cockes in þe londe & þe thyrde in other lōdes be lyke

*That was playne of the*  
*in 2<sup>th</sup> of Spayne*

## The descripcyon of Irlonde.

terre tofore the daye.

**O**f them that fyrste enhabyted Irlon-  
de. ca. xxvi.

**O** Irwaldus sayth þæt Calera Noes ne  
ce drad the flode & fled with thre  
men & fyfty wymmen into that ylonde  
and dwelled therein fyrst þæt laste yere tofor  
Noes flode. But afterwarde Barthola-  
nus Seres sone that come of Japhet No-  
es sone come thether w<sup>th</sup> his thre sones by  
happe or by craft. CCC. yere after Noes  
flood & dwelled there & encreaced to the  
nombre of. ix. M. men & afterwarde for  
stenche of kareyns of gyautes þæt they had  
hplde they deyeden all saue one Ruanus  
þæt lyued a M. v. c. yere vnto saynt patryks  
tyme / & enfornced the holy man of þæt for-  
soylayd men and of all the doynges and  
dedes. Then the thyrd tyme come thyder  
Nymeth oute of Sacia w<sup>th</sup> his. iiii. sones  
& dwelled there. CCC. xvi. yere. And at las-  
te of his of sprynge by dyuerse myshap-  
pes of warres and of moze yne they were  
clene destroyed and the londe lefte voyde.  
CCC. yere after. The fourth tyme fyue du-  
kes þæt were brethern Gandi<sup>9</sup> Genandus  
Sagandus Rucheragus Slau<sup>9</sup> of the  
sayd Nymethes succellours come oute of  
Grece & occupped þæt londe & deled it in fy-  
ue parties / & euery partye cōteyneth. xxii.  
candredes. A Candrede is a couētre that  
conteyneth a. C. townes and they sette a  
stone in þæt myddell of þæt londe as it were  
in þæt nauell & begynnynge of fyue kyn-  
domes. Atte the laste Slauus was made  
kyng of all the londe. The fyfth tyme  
whan this nacion was xxx. yere togpyder  
they were feble four noble men that we-  
re Millelius þæt kynges sones come out of  
Spayne w<sup>th</sup> many other in a nauye of. xl.  
shyppes & two of þæt worthpest of these iiii  
brethern þæt heet Hyberus & Hermon deled  
þæt londe bytwene hem tweyn / but After-  
warde couenaunte was broken bytwene  
hem bothe & Hiberus was slayne Then

Hermon was kyng of all þæt londe. And  
from his tyme to the fyrste Patryks tyme  
were kynges of þæt nacion: C. xxxi. And so  
fro the comynge of Hibernensis vnto the  
fyrste Patryk were. M. viii. c. yere. They  
had þæt name Hibernensis & Hybernia of  
þæt forsayd Hiberus / or els of Hiberus a ry-  
uer of Spayne. They were called also ga-  
tels & Scotts of one Gaptelus that was  
Phenis newwe. This Gaptelus coudee  
speke many langages / after þæt langages  
that were made at Nempioths touer And  
wedded one Scotta Pharoes doughter  
Of these dukes come þæt Hibernensis Mē  
saye þæt this Gaptelus made þæt Iryllhe lan-  
gag and called it Gaptelaf as it were a  
langage gadred of all langages & ton-  
ges. Atte þæt laste Belinus kyng of Bry-  
tayne had a sone & hyght Gurguncius  
come oute of Donnemarke atte ylondes  
Orades / he foude men that were called  
Balclensis / and were come theder out of  
Spayne / these men prayed & besought to  
haue a place to dwelle in. And the kyng  
sente them to Irlonde that was tho voyd  
& waste. & ordeyned and sente with them  
dukes and captayns of his owne / and so  
it semeth þæt Irlonde sholde longe to Bri-  
tayne by ryght of olde tyme. From þæt fyr-  
ste saynt Patryk vnto fedliundius þæt hy-  
ges tyme. CCC. yere regned. xxxiii. ky-  
ges eueryche after ocher in Irlonde. In  
this fedliundius tyme Turgelius duke  
& captayne of Norwayes brought theder  
men of Norwaye & occupped þæt lond and  
made in many places depe deches & cas-  
tels sengl double & tryble & many war-  
des strongly walled & many therof ston-  
de yett all hole / but Iryllhmen retche not  
of castels / for they take wodes for castels  
& marayes and moores for castell dyches  
but at laste Turgelius deyed by gyleful-  
les of women / & Englyshmen saye that  
Gurmundus wanne Irlonde and made  
thylke dyches / & made no menzion of tur-  
geli<sup>9</sup> / and Iryllhmen speke of Turgeli<sup>9</sup>  
and knowe not of Gurmūdus. Thertfor

## The descrypcyon of Irlonde.

it is to wete that Gurmūdus had wonne Britayne & dwelled therein & sente Turgelius w̄ grete strength into Irlōde for to wyne that londe & bycause turgelius was captayne & leder of that byage and Journey and seen amonge them therfore Irysshmen speke moche of hym as a noble man that was seen in þ̄ londe and knowen. At laste whan Gurmūdus was slayn in frauce Turgelius loved the kynges doughter of Irlonde and her fader behyght Turgelius þ̄ he wolde sende her hym to the lowe larcherin w̄ xv. maydens. and Turgelius promysed to mete there with xv. of the noblest mē that he had & helde couenaūt & thought no gyle but there come xv. yonge berdeles men clothed lyke wymmen w̄ short swerdes vnder h̄r clothes & fyll on turgelius & slewe hym ryght there & soo he was traytously slayne after he had reigned. xxx. yere. Not longe after thre brethren Amelanus Siracus & Juorius come into Irlonde with her men out of Norwaye as it had ben for loue of peas and of marchaundyse and dwelled by the see sydes by assente of Irysshmen that were alwaye ydle as Doules knyghtes & the Norwayes buylded thre cyttees Deuelyn Waterforde and Lymeryche and encreaced and after were rebell apenste men of þ̄ londe & brought fyrste sparthes in to Irlonde So fro Turgelius tyme vnto roderyks tyme kyng of Connacia that was the laste that was kyng of all the londe were. xvii. kynges in Irlonde and so þ̄ kynges that reigned in Irlonde fro þ̄ hermons tyme vnto the laste Roderyks tyme were in all. C. lxxi. kynges þ̄ were not crowned neyther enoynted ne by lawe of herytage but by myght maystrye & strength of armes. The seconde Henry kyng of Englonde made this Roderyk subget the yere of kyng Henryes age. xl. and of his regne. xviii. y. yere of our lorde. xi. hondred. lxxii.

Of the condicions and matters of Irlonde.  
ca. xxvii.

**S**olinus sayth that men of this lōde ben straunge of nacion houseles and grete fyghters and acout ryght and wronge all one thyng & ben lynge of clothyng scarle of mete cruell of herte angry of speche & drynketh fyrst blood of dede men that ben slayne and then wellthen theyr bylages therwith & holde them payd with tielthe and fruye in stede of mete & with mylke in stede of drynke & vlen moche playen & ydlenes and huntynge & trauayll but lytell. In theyr chyldhode they ben harde nourysht and harde fed and they be vnlemely of maners & of clothyng & haue breche and hosen allone of wolle and straffe hodes that stretcheth a cubyte ouer þ̄ sholders behynde & foldynges in stede of mantels and of clokes. Alto they vse no sadels bootes ne spores whan they ride but they dryue theyr horses with a chābred yerde in þ̄ ouer ende. In stede of byttes with trenches and of bydels of rest they vse bydels that lecte not theyr hors to ecc theyr mete they fyght vnarmed naked in body ne theles with two dartes & speres & with brode sparthes they fyght with one honde. These men forsaken tyllynge of lōde & kepen pasture for bestes. They vse longe berdes and longe lockes hangynge downe behynde her hedes they vse no craft of flaxe of wolle of metall ne of marchaundyse but gyue hem to ydlenes and to slouth and reken rest for lphynge and for fredome for hpyches. And thoughe Scotlonde the doughter of Irlonde vse harpe tymbre and labour. Netheles Irysshmen be conynge in two manere Instrumentes of mulyke in harpe and tymber that is armed with wyre and strenges of bras In whiche Instrumentes though they play hastely and swyftely they make ryghte merve armonye & melodye with chycke

## The descrypcyon of Irlonde.

fewnes verbles and notes and begynne  
 from hemoll and playen secretly vnder  
 dyne sowne in the greate strenges/and  
 torne ayen vnto the same/so that the gree  
 test partye of the crafte hydeth the craft  
 as it wolde seme as though the craftelo  
 hydde sholde be ashamed yf it were sa  
 ke. These men ben of euill maners in  
 her lyuyng they paye no tythynges they  
 wedde lawfully/they spare not theyr a  
 lyes/but the brother wedde the brothers  
 wyfe/they ben helye to betray her neygh  
 bours & othe they bere sperches in their  
 hondes in stede of staues & fyght ayenst  
 them & truste moost to them/these men  
 ben varyable and vntedfaste trechours  
 and gylefull who that dealeth with the  
 nedethe more to beware of gyle than of  
 crafte of peas than of brennyng bron  
 des/of hony thā of galle/of malyce thā  
 of knyghthode/they haue suche maners  
 that they ben not stronge in warre and  
 in batayle ne trewe in peas/they become  
 gossybs to them that they wyll falsly be  
 traye in the gossybrude and holy kynred  
 Eueryche drynketh others bloode whā  
 it is shedde/they loue somdele hir nou  
 ryce and her playfers whiche that souke  
 the same mylke that they souked whyle  
 they were chylde. And they purslew her  
 brethern/theyr colyns and theyr othere  
 kyn/& despylen theyr kyn whyles they  
 lyue/and auenge theyr deth whan they  
 ben slaync. Soo longe hath the vsage of  
 euill custome endured amonge them &  
 it hath gotten the maystrye ouer them &  
 torneth trealon into kynde so ferforthe  
 that they ben traytours by nature. And  
 alyens and men of straunge londes that  
 dwelle amonge them foloyng theyr ma  
 ners that vnneth there is none but he is  
 belmetted with theyr trealon also. Amō  
 ge them many men pyssen lyttinge and  
 wymmen standyng. There ben many  
 men in that lōde foule shapen in lymes  
 & in body/for in theyr lymmes they lac  
 ke the benefyce of kynde Soo that noo

where ben none better shapen than they  
 that ben there well shapen & none worse  
 shapen than they that ben euill shapen  
 And skylfully nature hurte and defou  
 led by wychednes of lyuyng bynygethe  
 suche foule gromes and euill shapen of  
 hem that with vnlawfull delyng with  
 foule maners and euill lyuyng so wyc  
 kedly defouled kynde & nature. In thys  
 londe and in wales olde wyues and wy  
 men were wonte and ken yet as men sa  
 ye ofte for to scape themselves in lyknes  
 of hares for to mylke theyr neyghbours  
 kynne and stele her mylke and ofte grey  
 houndes rennen after them and purslew  
 en them and wenen that they be hares.  
 Also some by craft of Nygromācyē ma  
 ken fatte swyne for to be reed of colour  
 and selle them in markettes and fayres  
 But as lone as these swyne passe onye  
 water they torne into theyr owne kynde  
 whether it be strawe heye gras or curues  
 But these swyne maye not be kepte by  
 no craft for tendure in lyknes of swy  
 ne ouer thre dayes: Amonge these wond  
 res and othe take hede that in the vo  
 termost ende of the worlde falleth newe  
 meruaylles and wondres: As though hē  
 de playde with large loue secretlye and  
 ferre in thendes/than openly and nygh  
 in the myddell, therfore in this plonde bē  
 many gyselye wondres & meruaylles.

**Of the meruaylles and wondres of  
 Irlonde,** ca. xxviii.

**M**Any men telleth that in þ north  
 syde of Irlonde is the londe of ly  
 fe. In that plond noman may deye but  
 whan they ben olde and vexed with gre  
 te fekenes/they ben born out into þ nex  
 te lond and deye ther. There is an othe  
 plonde in Irlōde that no woman therein  
 may bere a chylde/but yet she may con  
 ceoue. Also ther is an plonde in whiche  
 no dede body maye roten. In bltonia þ  
 is blster is an plonde in a lake wonderly

## The descrypcyon of Irlonde.

departed in tweyne In that one parte is grete dysturbaunce and dyscomforth of fendes and in that other partye grete ly kynge & comforth of holy angels Ther is also saynt patryks purgatory þ was shewed at his prayer to cōferme his pre chynge and his loze whan he preched to myshyleued men of sorowe and payne that euyll men sholde suffre for her euyl werkes And of Joy & of blyss that gode men shall resceyue for her holy dedes he telleth that who that suffreth the paynes of purgatory yf it be enioyned hym for penaunce he shall neuer suffre the paynes of hell/ but he depe fynally without repentaunce of synne/ as the ensample. is lette more full at this chapytre ende.

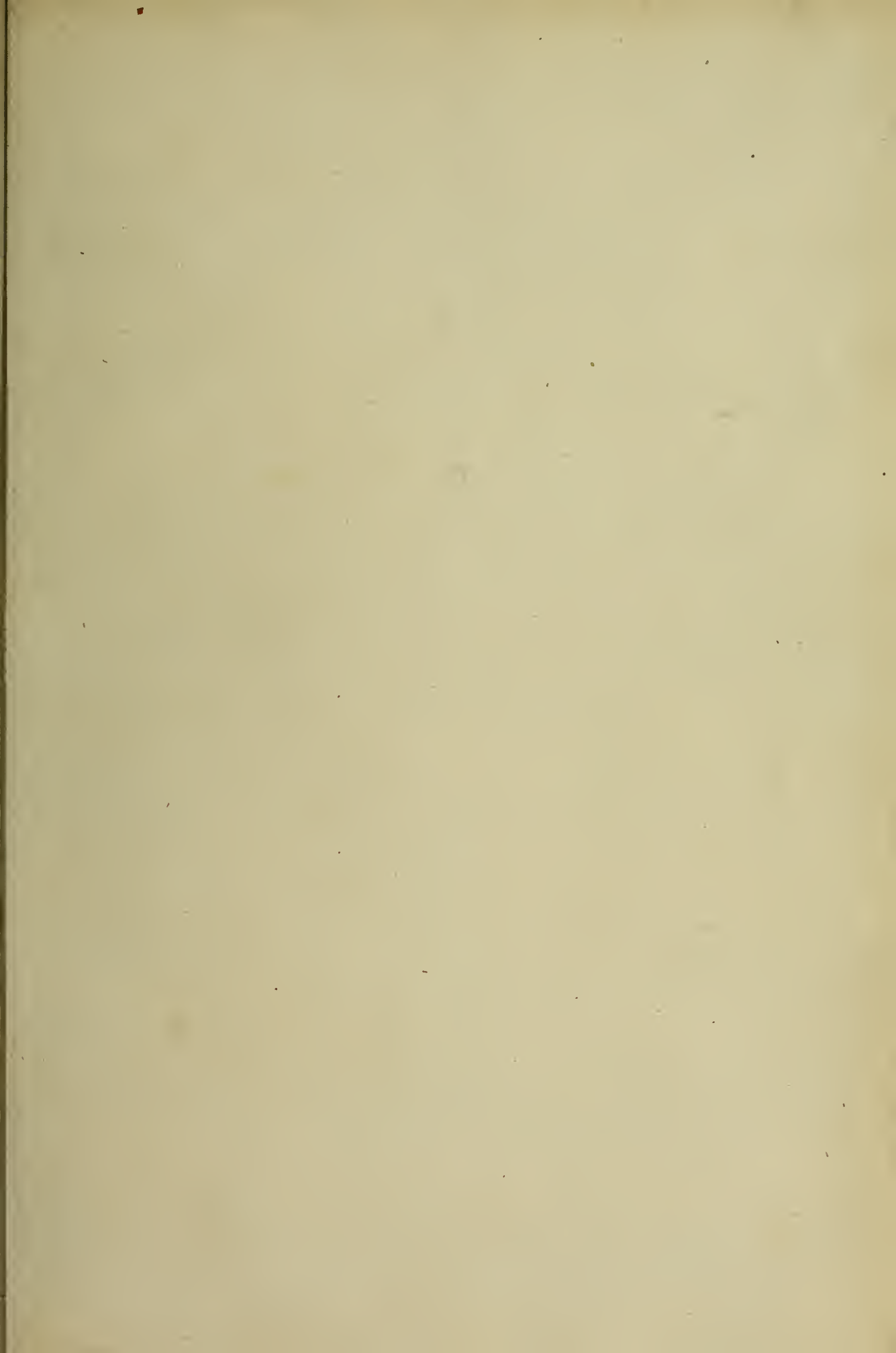
**Treuila.** But truly noman maye be laued but yf he be very repentaunt what somcuer penaunce he do/ and euery mā that is very repentaunt at his lyues ende shall be sekerly laued/ though he neuer here of saynt Patryks purgatorye. There is an ylonde in cōnacte Sale/ that is in the se of Lonaccia halowed by saynt Brandon that hath no myle/ there dede bodyes ben not buryed but ben kept out of the erthe and roten not. In Hamonia is a well/ who that wassheth hym w that water of that welle he shall waxe/ hore on his heed. There is an other wel in Dlonia who soeuer is wasshen ther/ in he shall neuer waxe hore afterwarde/ There is a welle in Hounstre or Hamonia/ yf ony man touche that welle a none shall falle grete rayne in all þ pro uynce/ and that rayne shall neuer cesse/ tyll a puelle that is a clene mayden synge a masse in a chapelle that is false by and blesse the water/ and with mylke of a cowe that is of one heer besprynge the welle/ and so reconcle the welle in this straunge manere. At Glyndalcan about the oratory of saynt Keywyn wythes be ryth apples as it were apple trees & ben more holsome than laurye. That holy/ saynt brough forth these apples by pra

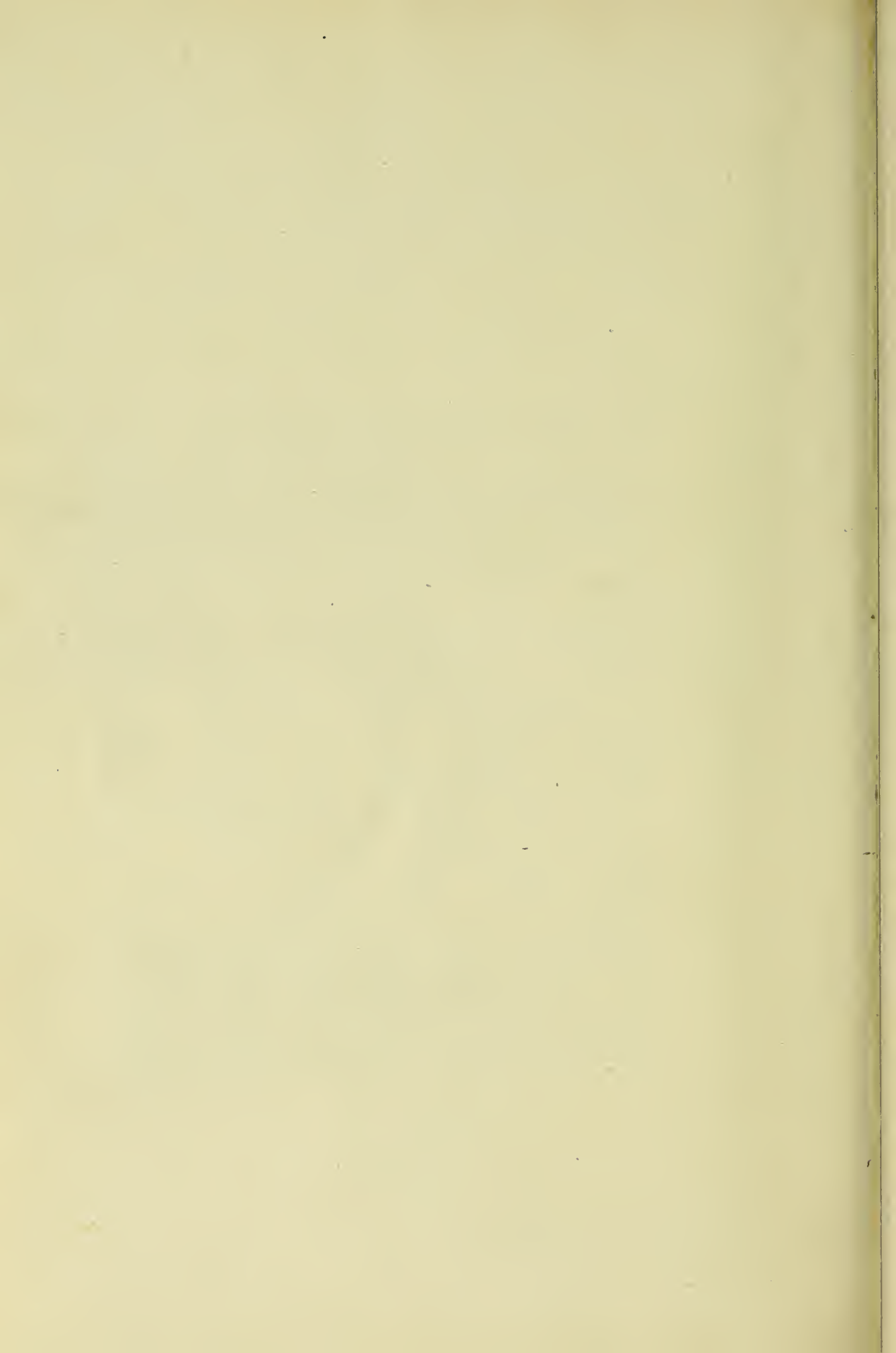
yers for to hele his chylde that was seke There is a lake in Dister & moche fyssh therin/ whiche is. xxx. myle in lengthe & xv. in brede. The Ryuer San renneche out of that lake into the north Ocean and men saye that this lake beganne in this maner. There were men in that cou tree that were of euyl lyuynge/ coeutes cū brutis. And there was a well in that londe in grete reuerence of olde tyme/ & alway couered/ yf it were leste vncouered the welle wolde ryle and drowne all the londe. And so it happed that a woman wente to that well for to fetch water and hyed her fast to her chylde that wepte in the cradell/ and lest the well vncouered/ thenne the well sprange so fast that it drowned the woman & her chylde and made all the countre a lake and a fyssh pond. for to proue that this is so the it is a grete argument/ that whanne the weter is cleve/ fysshers of that water se in the grounde vnder the water rōude toures and hygh shapen as steples and churches of that londe. In the north syde of Irlonde in the countre of Dlyryens euery. vii. yere at the prayer of an holy Abbot. tweyne that ben wedded a man and a woman muste nedes be exyled and forshapen into lyknes of wolues & abyde out. vii. yere. And at ende of. vii. yere/ yf they lyue they come home agayne and take agayne theyr owne shappe/ & then shall other tweyne go forth in theyr stede and so forshapen for other. vii. yere. Ther is a lake in this londe yf a poole of tree pyght and styked therin þ parte of the shafte or poole that is in the erthe shall come into prou/ and that parte þ abydeth in the water shall come into stone/ and the parte þ abydeth aboue shall be tree in his owne kynde. Also ther is a lake þ comethe hasell into as the & as the into hasell yf it be done therein. Also in Irlonde been thre samon lepes there as samons lepe ayent a roche a longe spe res lenche. Also in Legunia is a ponde

Will con. Will Rufus hen i. seppan hen. i. secundum  
Vig. h. i. t. c. i. h. i. Ed. p. n. i. Ed. g. s. e. c. u. n. d. u. m.  
Ed. t. e. c. h. i. s. s. e. c. u. n. d. u. m. h. i. s. q. u. a. r. g. u. n. t. i. s. s. e. c. u. n. d. u. m.  
Ed. q. u. a. r. g. u. n. t. i. s. s. e. c. u. n. d. u. m. h. i. s. s. e. c. u. n. d. u. m. h. i. s. s. e. c. u. n. d. u. m. h. i. s. s. e. c. u. n. d. u. m.









Aa, blank  
CCs " } cut away  
D<sub>4</sub> probably blank }  
Otherwise perfect  
pro Blumental for  
Galt

A number of leaves marked in  
margins, mostly blank, but in a  
few cases there has been a  
little restoration (e.g. a4-5)



## The Chronicles of England

ONE of the Library's most attractive recent additions is a copy of the *Cronycle of Englonde*, printed in London by Wynkyn de Worde in 1502. The book is of unusual rarity; it is believed, indeed, that the Library's copy is the only example of this edition in the United States. The first edition was printed in 1480 by England's pioneer printer, William Caxton, who issued a second in 1482; de Worde, Caxton's pupil and successor, still used some of his master's types and his handsome half-page device with his initials. Before the end of the fifteenth century four other editions were published by presses in London and St. Albans. But copies of any of these are very rare indeed; there are scarcely half a dozen in America.

The *Descrypcyon of Englonde*, which forms the last section in the book, is reprinted from an edition published by Caxton in 1480 to accompany the chronicle. It consists of descriptive chapters taken from Book I of Ranulphus Higden's *Polycronicon*, translated by John Trevisa. Caxton published the complete *Polycronicon* in 1482; the Library has a copy of the second edition, printed by de Worde in 1495.

The book is a fine clean folio in black letter, in two columns. There are three woodcuts. One (the title for the *Descrypcyon of Englonde*) is a large landscape, full of winding roads, castles, and flying birds. This was used by de Worde for Bartholomaeus Anglicus's *De Proprietate Rerum*, 1495, and then in his preceding editions of the *Cronycle*. The other two are smaller. The first, which appears in all de Worde's editions of the work, shows the Tower of Babel under construction — a five-story building in Norman style, with timbers and blocks of stone still dangling from the sides. The other, copied from the 1497 volume, is a city scene crowded with roofs and church steeples; after the custom of the time it appears twice, representing both London and Rome.

The text has a complicated history. Caxton's *Cronicles* of 1480 was printed from a manuscript translation of the French *Brut d'Angleterre*, compiled from Latin sources in the thirteenth century and called the *Brut* because it began with the story of the legendary king Brutus, who was supposed to have settled Britain. This myth, first circulated a century earlier by Geoffrey of Monmouth in his *Historia Britonum*, enjoyed vast popularity then and for years to come. It was put into rhyme by the Anglo-Norman poet Wace, and this metrical version was translated into English by Layamon about 1180. In the fourteenth century the French prose *Brut* was also translated into English, with various continuations. The present *Cronycle* reproduces an earlier edition published by Wynkyn de Worde in 1497, which had itself been reprinted from the 1483 edition produced at St. Albans. For this reason the work is also commonly known

as the *St. Albans Chronicle*. The text differs somewhat from Caxton's original, including at the beginning a *Fructus Temporum* drawn largely from Rolewinck's *Fasciculus Temporum*, first printed at Cologne in 1475, and also a good deal of material concerning other countries, especially the lives of the Popes, partly at least from the same source.

The prologue, like a modern "blurb," gives an imposing bibliography, from Geoffrey, Bede, and Gildas to Livy and Saint Augustine, and adds, "In this newe translacyon are conteyned many notable and meruaylous thynges." The rest of the prologue, however, is a fine example of the medieval passion for symmetry and classification. For all men "desyring to haue a very knowlehe [sic] of these Cronycles or of any other," it asserts, it is necessary to understand six things. These are, first, the states of things, which are two: the state of Deviation, down to the Birth of Christ, and the state of Reconciliation, after Christ. Second come the divisions of time, which are three; third, the four principal kingdoms; fourth, the diversity of laws, which are five; fifth, the nobleness or unnobleness of deeds, which includes seven types of character; and sixth, the true counting of years, according to eight methods. Having mastered these, the student may begin to apply himself.

**A**FTER the prologue the *Brut* proper opens with the story of Dioclesian and his thirty-three daughters, "soo fayre that yt was wonder." Fair or not, they all cut their husbands' throats one night and were straightway banished by their father. They landed in England, and called the island Albion after the eldest, Albine. Years later, however, Brutus, great-grandson of Aeneas of Troy, landed at Totnes, subdued the giants who then inhabited the wilderness, and built New Troy where London now stands. The long line of pre-Roman kings was descended from him, and the country itself became Britain.

Most of the material in this part of the book goes back to Geoffrey of Monmouth, that garrulous historian whose reputation for truth was even in his own day none too good. He seems to have invented the whole Brutus lineage, on the strength of an ancient Welsh manuscript which, curiously enough, no one else ever saw. Yet English literature would be the poorer without at least one tale to which he first gave currency, and which appears here as the story of "kyнге Leyr . . . and of the answere of his yongest doughter, that gracyously was maryed to the kyнге of Fraunce."

The story of King Arthur is here too, but it contains only the germ of the half-magical account that appears in Malory. This is the king of Britain who conquered the Saxons, the Scots, the French, and even the Emperor of Rome; whose court was frequented by all the best knights of every country in the world, so that the king was forced to invent the Round Table, that no one man might be honored above another. Only

The descrypcyon of Englonde.  
The descrypcyon of Englonde.

Here foloweth a lytell treatyse the Which treateth of the descrypcyon of this londe Whiche of olde tyme Was named . Albany . And after Brytayne And now is called Englonde and speketh of the nobleste and Worthynesse of the same.



A Woodcut from the "Cronycle of Englonde," Printed in London in 1502  
Facsimile Somewhat Reduced





his birth, contrived by Merlin's enchantments, and his passing in 546, when he was borne to "Auioun" for the healing of his wounds, are at all mysterious.

Throughout the history of the early rulers of Britain is interspersed with that of the Old Testament and the city of Rome. English historians had, of course, limited access to original sources for classical or Eastern events, and had to reconcile the chronology of the Bible with their own notions as best they could. This resulted occasionally in peculiar confusions. Thus, in this chronicle as in others, we find the British (!) kings Brenne and Belin conquering "Rome and all Lombardy and Germany" and taking "homage and feaute of erles barons and of all other" about 796 B.C. — nearly half a century before Rome was founded at all, according to modern reckoning, and a good four hundred years before the real Brennus, a Gaul, led his men against the city.

Down to the battle of Halidon Hill, where the English defeated the Scots in July 1333, the English prose *Brut* follows the French prose *Brut*. After that date there were a number of different English continuations, several of them carrying the history down to the battle of Towton in 1461. The one which Caxton used must have been very similar to a manuscript now in the British Museum, and was probably composed in the late 1460's.

The flavor of these chronicles, which took the place of history, almanac, and news-reel for their readers, is nowhere more marked than in the final section, beginning with the capture of Rouen by the English in 1419. In 1422, for instance, it records — doubtless with a touch of malice — that King Henry V held a great feast in Paris to which everybody flocked, while the poor king of France "held none astate ne rule, but was lefte almoost alone." In the same year "the wedercoke was set vppon Poules steple at London"; and King Henry died in August, and was buried with great solemnities, of which full details are given. Nine years later the brilliant career of Joan of Arc gets a scant twenty-five lines — from the English viewpoint, naturally. On the other hand, public ceremonies, riots, royal councils, and all sorts of odd personal items receive full publicity.

Fact and sensation meet in the same paragraph. A random extract from the year 1428 gives a fair sample: "This same yere was grete habundaunce of rayne, that the substaunce of heye and also of corne was dystroyed, for it rayned almost euey other daye. And this same yere the good Erle of Salesbury syr Thomas of Mountagu layde syege vnto Orlyaunce atte the whiche syege he was slayne with a gonne that come out of the towne on whoos soule god haue mercy amen. For sythe yt he was slayne Englysshmen neuer gate ne preuayled in Fraunce, but euer after beganne to lese lytyll & lytyll tyll all was loste. Also this same yere a Bryton murthred a good wedowe in hir bed withoute

Algate whiche wedowe found him for almesse, and he bare awaye all that she hadde." With some relish the chronicler goes on to relate how the unhappy criminal took the cross and prepared to leave England as a penance, but on passing the scene of the murder was attacked by all the women of the parish, who "slewe & made an ende of hym there. Notwithstandynge y<sup>e</sup> constables & many other men beyng present for to kepe hym."

The *Cronycle* is not, however, without value merely because it gossips. Mr. C. L. Kingsford points out certain information on Henry V's accession and some of the real reasons behind the French campaign which led to Agincourt, all of which appeared in Caxton's printed text for the first time, and were adopted by later chroniclers like Hall and Holinshed. From the latter Shakespeare derived the material for the council at Leicester in the first act of *Henry V*. Mr. Kingsford notes a similar instance of the indirect influence of this text in *Henry VI*.

THE *Descrypcyon of Englonde* appended to the *Cronycle* must be a disappointment to anyone not an antiquarian. It is taken from Higden's *Polycronicon*, Book I, Chapters XXXIX-LX; and instead of furnishing a description of England as Higden himself saw it, it is drawn almost entirely from tales handed down by men who died before Higden was born. Divided into fifteen chapters in this text, it describes England's boundaries, its climate and products, its marvels, its roads, rivers, and shires, its episcopal sees, and the customs of the natives.

In the last case, Higden might have done better by his own countrymen than to copy unflattering excerpts from Giraldus Cambrensis (a Welshman) and Henry of Huntingdon, with caustic additions of his own. For the rest of his material Higden uses Pliny, Solinus, Geoffrey, Bede, Alfred of Beverley, and three or four others. Trevisa, who made the translation about 1387, perhaps half a century after Higden was writing, adds a few insertions here and there. The chapter on language still has fresh interest, for it shows what strides spoken English was making in that period. Higden had complained of the mixture of tongues in various parts of the country, declaring that "some vse straunge wlaffyng chytterynge harrynge garrynge & grysbytynge." (He does not say where he picked up his own vocabulary.) This he believed was due to the fashion of speaking French and learning French instead of English in school. Trevisa, however, objected that since the Black Death this situation no longer prevailed, and "gentylnen haue moche lefte to teche theyre chyl dren to speke Frensshe."

On the whole, however, there is little in the *Descrypcyon* that is not secondhand. It is rather a pity that Higden could not say what London looked like in his day, instead of quoting William of Malmesbury on the subject; and that he felt it necessary to devote a whole chapter to such

wonders as the inland salt springs which became fresh from Saturday to Monday, and the pond which adjusted its temperature to each swimmer. But such stories die hard; in 1577, when William Harrison was writing his own *Description of England* for Holinshed's *Chronicle*, his four "notable things" were the four chief wonders of Higden: the wind on the Peak; Stonehenge; the caves at Cheddar; and the clouds of rain which gathered on the western hills.

The descriptions of Wales, Scotland, and Ireland follow that of England; but they are much briefer, only three or four pages in length. Wales is described in rough verse.

CAXTON bore ample witness to his own admiration for history in the prologue to the *Polycronicon* of 1482. "He is, and euer hath ben reputed the wysest," he wrote, "whiche by the experyence of aduerse fortune hath byholden . . . the noble Cytees, maners, and variaunt condycions of the people of many dyuerse Regyons . . . Yet he is more fortunat, and may be reputed as wyse . . . that may by the redyng of historyes . . . come vnto the knowleche of . . . the same wysedome and polycye. In which historyes so wreton in large and aoured volumes, he syttyng in his chambre or studye maye rede, knowe and vnderstande the polytyke and noble actes of alle the worlde as of one Cyte." Evidently for him history, "assertryce of veryte and moder of alle philosophye," meant a good deal more than a mere record of battles, councils, and unseasonable comets. He would probably have been pleased, if not surprised, to know the effect the *Cronicles* was to have on the long and distinguished series of historical works which followed; for Geoffrey's *Historia Britonum* did not appear in print until the Paris edition of 1508, and the *Bruts* of Wace and of Layamon were left unprinted for centuries. Hence Caxton's edition had a great deal to do with the circulation of the Brutus legend and many other stories.

It was only five years after the *Cronicles* that the battle of Bosworth Field put an end to the Wars of the Roses. As they gradually achieved a new unity under the successive rulers of the House of Tudor, the English began to wake up to the pride of their national heritage, and chronicles, scattered wide by the increase of printing shops, became popular reading matter — a taste warmly encouraged by the crown, since it made devoted subjects. So many Elizabethan plays were based on English history that in 1612 Thomas Heywood declared there was no man "of that weake capacity, that cannot discourse of any notable thing recorded even from William the Conqueror, nay from the landing of Brute, untill this day." The first real tragedy in English was *Gorboduc*; Lear and Cymbeline were familiar characters; and several other British heroes had drawn the applause of London audiences. It may even have been in unconscious recognition of the fact that, as late as

1795, when W. H. Ireland conceived the idea of forging a Shakespeare play, he chose Vortigern for his subject.

The chronicles of Fabyan, Stow, Hall, Holinshed and others contribute, each in its own fashion, both glamor and historical depth to the background of Elizabethan literature. The Library's collections include contemporary editions of nearly all of these, so that one could, if one wished, trace the attitude of English historians for a hundred and fifty years from the original texts. Towards the Trojan story, at least, that attitude is remarkably unchanging, down to William Camden. Almost the only protesting voice was that of the Italian Polydore Vergil, who with all the brashness of a foreigner had no hesitation in calling Geoffrey of Monmouth an impudent liar. (The Library has the first edition of his *Anglica Historia*, Basel 1534, in a beautiful Grolier-type binding which marks the book the property of "Thomas Wotton and his friends.") But of course no true Englishman would believe an Italian when the high ancestry of his race was in question.

It was during the seventeenth century that Brutus and his line slowly died of disbelief. In 1590 William Camden hinted a suspicion that the whole story was a piece of genealogical snobbery on the part of Geoffrey of Monmouth — adding a gently humorous aside to the reader which amounted to, "Come now, what do *you* think?" John Stow's *Annals* countered this only feebly with the reproof that "the impugners of this ancient History, must not with so light a breath as they doe, seem to blow away the authority of so many graue testimonies." John Speed, writing in 1611, was more than unpleasant, contending that even if Englishmen were descended from the kings of Troy — which they were not — the descent was nothing to brag about.

It was left for Milton, scholar and historian but poet too, to take the middle road as modern critics do, and accept the fables of early Britain for just what they were, "be it for nothing else but in favour of our English Poets and Rhetoricians, who by their Art will know how to use them judiciously."

HONOR McCUSKER

CHRONICLES OF ENGLAND. [THE ST. ALBANS  
CHRONICLE, with the Descriptions of England, Wales,  
Scotland and Ireland]. (Fol. 1, blank, cut away; fol. 2<sup>a</sup>,  
col. 1 :) Here begynneth a shorte & a breue table on  
(sic) these Cronycles . . . (Colophon :) Here endeth this  
present Cronycle of Englonde with  $\bar{y}$  fruyte of tymes.  
compyled in a booke, and also enprynted by one some  
tyme scole mayster of saynt Albons, vppon whoos  
soule god haue mercy. Amen. And newly in . . .  
M.CCCCC.ii. Enpr̄yted . . . By me Wynkyn de Worde.  
(Fol. 169<sup>b</sup> Caxton's device, McKerrow 1<sup>b</sup>; fol. 170 blank,  
cut away; fol. 171<sup>a</sup> :) The descrypcyon of Englonde.  
Here foloweth a lytell treatyse the which treateh (sic)  
of the descrypcyon of this londe whiche of olde tyme  
was named. Albyon . And after Brytayne And nowe is  
called Englonde and speketh of the noblesse and worthy-  
nesse of the same. (Beneath this is a large woodcut  
suggesting a panoramic view of England; fol. 191<sup>a</sup>, col. 2,  
line 28 :) Fynysshed & enprynted . . . by me wynkyn de  
worde . . . M.CCCCC. and. ij. mensis Mayus. (Fol. 191<sup>b</sup>  
the device as on fol. 169<sup>b</sup>; fol. 192 blank and cut away).

Sm. folio, black letter, printed in double columns; with  
a large woodcut on the title to "The descrypcyon of Eng-  
londe" and two smaller ones in the text, one representing  
the Tower of Babylon and the other (used twice) represent-  
ing Rome and London, also a small woodcut of The Cross  
and a decorative square used many times at the heads of  
chapters; one leaf torn and mended and a number of  
leaves mended in the margins, generally in the blank  
portions only, but in a few cases some letters restored in  
facsimile; a few contemporary MS. annotations, otherwise  
a sound and perfect copy (except for the blanks) in thick-  
boarded black morocco, gilt edges

1502.

SECOND EDITION PRINTED BY WYNKYN DE WORDE, OF WHICH  
ONLY THREE OR FOUR PERFECT COPIES ARE KNOWN. It has been  
stated that the work should open with a title, but such is not the case.  
The first leaf is usually missing, but was present in an imperfect copy  
recently in my possession and was blank.

This is usually called the St. Alban's Chronicle, as it was first  
printed at that town in 1483. It is an enlargement of Caxton's  
Chronicle of 1480. The *Description of Britain* at the end is by Caxton,  
printed with his Chronicle of 1480, and sometimes found separate.  
This St. Alban's Chronicle was reprinted by Machlinia without date  
(c. 1485) and again by Gerard Leeu, at Antwerp, 1493, and often  
since. Wynkyn de Worde's first edition appeared in 1497 and is of  
extreme rarity. Dibdin in *Typographical Antiquities* II. 71. from  
Herbert's MSS. says that there are no woodcuts in the editions of  
1497 or 1502. Herbert therefore never saw the edition of 1502, for  
in it there are three cuts. Caxton's *Description* is from the "Poly-  
Chronicon."

On Aa<sub>2</sub> is the contemporary inscription: "Sum Joannis Boule  
et Amicorū" and in a somewhat later hand "Boule olim dicty  
Ba[mfyld?] and lower "John Bamfy[lde?]."

